TABLE OF CONTENTS

Brake

Electrical System

Attachments

SAFETY

WHEEL LOADER SAFETY

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TO THE OPERATOR OF A WHEEL LOADER

⚠ DANGER!

Unsafe use of the wheel loader could lead to serious injury or death. Operating procedures, maintenance and equipment practices or traveling or shipping methods that do not follow the safety guidelines on the following pages could cause serious, potentially fatal injuries or extensive damage to the machine or nearby property.

Please respect the importance of taking responsibility for your own safety, and that other people who may be affected by your actions.

Safety information on the following pages is organized into the following topics.

⚠ WARNING!

Improper operation and maintenance of this machine can be hazardous and could result in serious injury or death.

Operator and maintenance personnel should read this manual thoroughly before beginning operation or maintenance.

Keep this manual in the storage compartment to the rear of the operator's seat, and have all personnel involved in working on the machine periodically read the manual.

Some actions involved in operation and maintenance of the machine can cause a serious accident, if they are not done in a manner described in this manual.

The procedures and precautions given in this manual apply only to intended uses of the machine.

If you use your machine for any unintended uses that are not specifically prohibited, you must be sure that it is safe for any others. In no event should you or others engage in prohibited uses or actions as described in this manual.

HCE delivers machines that comply with all applicable regulations and standards of the country to which it has been shipped. If this machine has been purchased in another country or purchased from someone in another country, it may lack certain safety devices and specifications that are necessary for use in your country. If there is any question about whether your product complies with the applicable standards and regulations of your country, consult HCE or your HCE distributor before operating the machine.

⚠ SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL ⚠

Be Prepared - Get to Know All Operating and Safety Instructions

This is the Safety Alert Symbol. Wherever it appears - in this manual or on safety signs on the machine - you should be alert to potential for personal injury or accidents. Always observe safety precautions and follow recommended procedures.

LEARN SIGNAL WORDS USED WITH SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL

Words "**CAUTION**," "**WARNING**," and "**DANGER**" used throughout this manual and on labels on machine indicate hazards or unsafe practices. All three statements indicate that safety is involved. Observe precautions indicated whenever you see the Safety Alert "Triangle," no matter which signal word appears next to the "Exclamation Point" symbol.

⚠ CAUTION!

This word is used on safety messages and safety labels and indicates potential of a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against a generally unsafe practice.

⚠ WARNING!

This word is used on safety messages and safety labels and indicates potential of a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in serious injury or death. It may also be used to alert against a highly unsafe practice.

⚠ DANGER!

This word is used on safety messages and safety labels and indicates imminent hazard of a situation that, if not avoided, is very likely to cause death or extremely serious injury. It may also be used to alert against equipment that may explode or detonate if handled or treated carelessly.

Safety precautions are described in SAFETY from page 6 on.

HCE cannot predict every circumstance that might involve a potential hazard in operation and maintenance. Therefore the safety messages in this manual and on the machine may not include all possible safety precautions. If any procedures or actions not specifically recommended or allowed in this manual are used, you must be sure that you and others can do such procedures and actions safely and without damaging the machine. If your unsure about the safety of some procedures, contact a HCE distributor.

GENERAL SAFETY ESSENTIALS

ACCESSORY APPLICATIONS

This wheel loader has been designed primarily for moving earth with a bucket. For use as a grapple or for other object handling, contact Daewoo. Lifting-work applications are permitted in approved lift configuration, to rated capacity only, with no side-loading (unless prohibited by local regulation). Do not use machine for activities for which it was not intended. Do not use bucket for lifting work, unless lift slings are used in approved configuration.

LOCATION OF SAFETY LABELS

Location of safety labels (decals) can vary from unit to unit. Refer to appropriate Operation and Maintenance Manual, and Parts Manual for your unit.

There are several specific warning signs on this machine. The exact location of hazards and the description of the hazards are reviewed in the appropriate Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Please become familiarized with all warning signs.

Make sure that all of the warning signs are legible. Clean the warning signs or replace the warning signs if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not visible. When you clean the warning signs, use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety signs. Solvents, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the warning sign. Loose adhesive will allow the warning sign to fall off.

Replace any safety sign that is damaged, or missing. If a safety sign is attached to a part that is replaced, install a safety sign on the replacement part.

UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATIONS

Any modification made without authorization or written approval from Daewoo can create a safety hazard, for which the machine owner must be held responsible.

For safety’s sake, replace all OEM parts with the correct authorized or genuine Daewoo part. For example, not taking the time to replace fasteners, bolts or nuts with the correct replacement parts could lead to a condition in which the safety of critical assemblies is dangerously compromised.

GENERAL HAZARD INFORMATION

SAFETY RULES

Only trained and authorized personnel can operate and maintain the machine.

Follow all safety rules, precautions and instructions when operating or performing maintenance on the machine.

Do not operate the machine if you are not feeling well, if you are taking medication that makes you feel sleepy, if you have been drinking, or if you are suffering from emotional problems. These problems will interfere with your sense of judgement in emergencies and may cause accidents.

When working with another operator or with a person on work site traffic duty, be sure that all personnel know the nature of the work and understand all hand signals that are to be used.

Always observe strictly any other rules related to safety.

SAFETY FEATURES

Be sure that all guards and covers are installed in their proper position. Have guards and covers repaired immediately if damaged.

Be sure that you understand the method of use of safety features such as transmission lever neutral lock and the seat belt, and use them properly.

Never remove any safety features. Always keep them in good operating condition.

Failure to use safety features according to the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual could result in serious bodily injury.

INSIDE OPERATOR'S COMPARTMENT

When entering the operator's compartment, always remove all mud and oil from the soles of your shoes. If you operate the accelerator and brake pedals with mud or oil stuck to your shoes, your foot may slip and this may cause a serious accident.

Clean grease and dirt from pedals and controls. This contributes to safe operation. Cleaning also provides an opportunity to inspect equipment. Minor damage can be repaired or corrected before major problems result.

Keep cab floor and consoles free of tools and personal items.

After using the ashtray, make sure that any matches or cigarettes are properly extinguished, and be sure to close the ashtray. If the ashtray is left open, there is danger of fire.

Do not stick suction pads to the window glass. Suction pads act as a lens and may cause fire.

Do not leave lighters laying around the operator's compartment. If the temperature inside the operator's compartment becomes high, there is danger that the lighter may explode.

Do not use cellular telephones inside the operator's compartment when driving or operating the machine. There is danger that this may lead to an unexpected accident.

Never bring any dangerous objects such as flammable or explosive items into the operator's cab. To ensure safety, do not use the radio or music headphones when operating the machine. There is danger that this may lead to a serious accident.

When operating the machine, do not put your hands or head out of the window.

When standing up from the operator's seat, always place transmission neutral lock lever in the "LOCK" position and set pilot cutoff switch to "O" (OFF) position. If you accidentally touch the work equipment levers when they are not locked, the machine may suddenly move and cause serous injury or damage.

When leaving the machine, lower the work equipment completely to the ground, set transmission neutral lock lever in the "LOCK" position, set pilot cutoff switch to "O" (OFF) position, "APPLY" parking brake, and shut down engine. Use the key to lock all the equipment. Always remove the key and take it with you.

CLOTHING AND PERSONAL PROTECTIVE ITEMS

Contain long hair, and avoid loose clothing and jewelry. They can catch on controls or in protruding parts and cause serious injury or death.

Figure 1

Do not wear oily clothes. They are highly flammable.

Full eye protection, a hard hat, safety shoes and gloves may be required at the work site. While working on the machine, never use inadequate tools. They could break or slip, causing injury, or they may not adequately perform intended functions.

BREATHING MASKS, EAR PROTECTION MAY BE REQUIRED

Do not forget that some risks to your health may not be immediately apparent. Exhaust gases and noise pollution may not be visible, but these hazards can cause disabling or permanent injuries.

ASBESTOS DUST HAZARD PREVENTION

Asbestos dust can be HAZARDOUS to your health if it is inhaled. Materials containing asbestos fiber can be present on work site. Breathing air that contains asbestos fiber can ultimately cause serious or fatal lung damage. To prevent lung damage from asbestos fiber, observe following precautions;

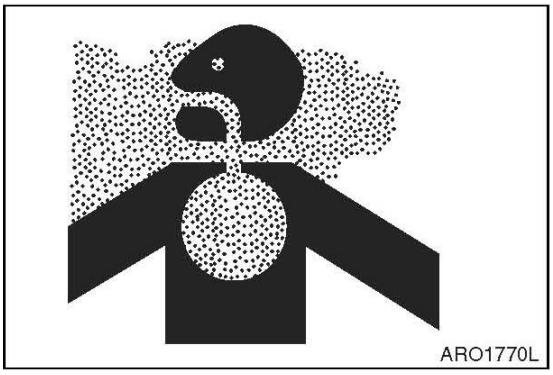


Figure 2

- Use a respirator that is approved for use in an asbestos-laden atmosphere.
- Never use compressed air for cleaning.
- Use water for cleaning to keep down the dust.
- Work on the machine or component with the wind at your back whenever possible.
- Always observe any rules and regulations related to the work site and working environment

MOUNTING AND DISMOUNTING

Before getting on or off the machine, if there is any oil, grease, or mud on the handrails, steps, or track shoes, wipe it off immediately. Always keep these parts clean. Repair any damage and tighten any loose bolts.

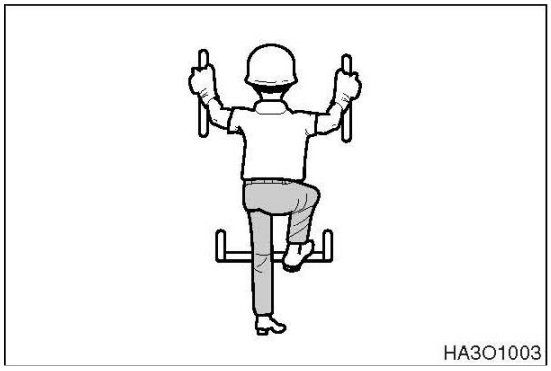


Figure 3

Never get on or off a moving machine. In particular, never get on or off a moving machine. These actions may lead to serious injury.

When getting on or off the machine, always face the machine, and maintain a three-point contact (both feet and one hand or one foot and both hands) with the handholds and steps to ensure that you support yourself securely.

Never hold any control levers when getting on or off the machine.

Never get up from operator's seat or leave operator's station and dismount machine if engine is running.

FUEL, OIL AND HYDRAULIC FLUID FIRE HAZARDS

Figure 4

Fuel, oil and antifreeze will catch fire if it is brought close to a flame. Fuel is particularly flammable and can be hazardous.

Always strictly observe the following.

Add fuel, oil, antifreeze and hydraulic fluid to the machine only in a well-ventilated area. The machine must be parked with controls, lights and switches turned "OFF." The engine must be "OFF" and any flames, glowing embers, auxiliary heating units or spark-causing equipment must be doused, turned off and/or kept well clear of the machine.

Static electricity can produce dangerous sparks at the fuel filling nozzle. In very cold, dry weather or other conditions that could produce a static discharge, keep the tip of the fuel nozzle in constant contact with the neck of the fuel filling nozzle, to provide a ground.

Keep fuel and other fluid reservoir caps tight and do not start the engine until caps have been secured.

PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING FLUIDS AT HIGH TEMPERATURE

Immediately after operations are stopped, the coolant, engine oil, and hydraulic oil are at high temperature and the radiator and hydraulic tank are still under pressure. Attempting to remove the cap, drain the oil or coolant, or replace the filters may lead to serious burns. Always wait for the temperature to go down, and follow the specified procedures when carrying out these operations.

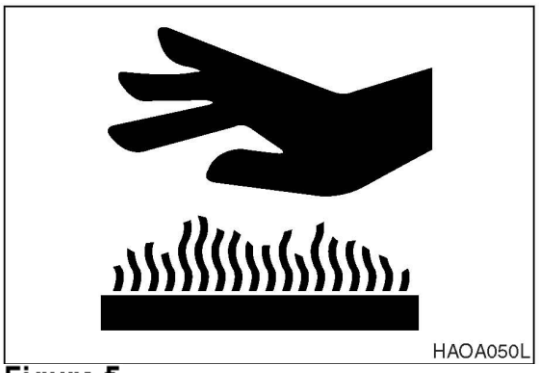


Figure 5

To prevent hot coolant from spurting out, shut down engine, wait for the coolant to cool, then loosen the cap slowly to relieve the pressure. To prevent hot oil from spurting out, shut down engine, wait for the oil to cool, then loosen the cap slowly to relieve the pressure

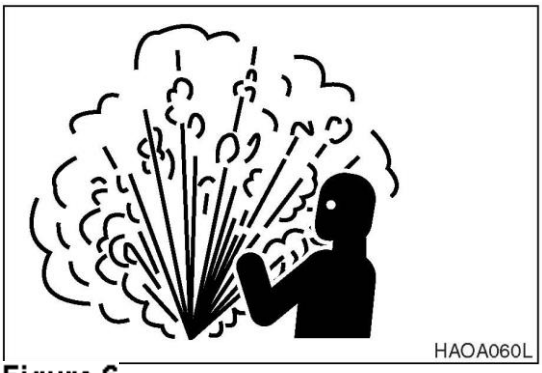


Figure 6

INJURY FROM WORK EQUIPMENT

Do not enter or put your hand, arm or any other part of your body between movable parts, such as between the work equipment and cylinders, or between the machine and work equipment.

If the control levers are operated, the clearance between the machine and the work equipment will change and this may lead to serious damage or personal injury.

If going between movable parts is necessary, always position and secure the work equipment so that it cannot move.

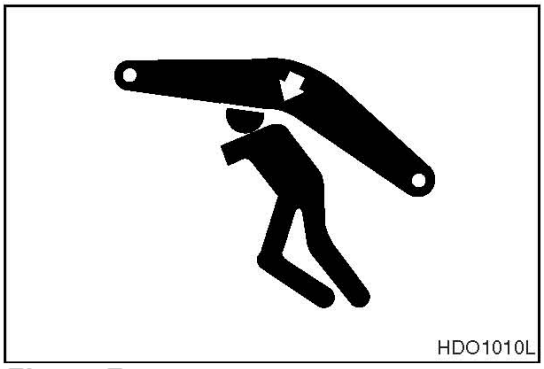


Figure 7

FIRE EXTINGUISHER AND FIRST AID KIT

As a precaution if any injury or fire should occur, always do the following.

- Be sure that fire extinguishers have been provided and read the labels to ensure that you know now to use them. It is recommended that an appropriately sized (2.27 kg [5 lb] or larger) multipurpose "A/B/C" fire extinguisher be mounted in the cab. Check and service the fire extinguisher at regular intervals and make sure that all work site crew members are adequately trained in its use.

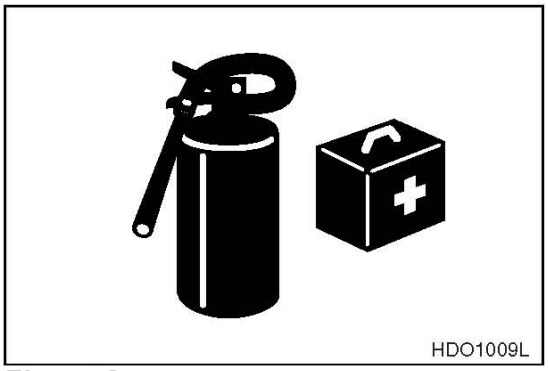


Figure 8

- Provide a first aid kit in the storage compartment and keep another at the work site. Check the kit periodically and make any additions if necessary.
- Know what to do in case of injury from fire.
- Keep emergency numbers for doctor, ambulance service, hospital and fire department you're your telephone.

If the machine catches fire, it may lead to serious personal injury or death. If a fire occurs during operation, escape from the machine as follows;

- Turn the starter switch "OFF" and shut down engine.
- If there is time, use the fire extinguisher to extinguish as much of the fire as possible.
- Use the handrails and steps to escape from the machine.

The above is the basic method for escaping from the machine, but changing the method may be necessary according to the conditions, so carry out practice drills at the work site.

PROTECTION FROM FALLING OR FLYING OBJECTS

On work sites where there is danger that falling objects or flying objects may hit the operator's cab select a guard to match the operating conditions to protect the operator.

Work in mines, tunnels, deep pits or on loose or wet surfaces could produce danger of falling rock, roll over or hazardous flying objects. Additional protection for operator's cab could be required in form of a FOPS/Falling Object Protective Structure and/or ROPS/Roll Over Protective Structure reinforcement system (Option).

Any reinforcement system that is installed on machine must pass safety and certification standards and carry appropriate labeling and rating information. For example, most often added type of reinforcement system, FOPS, must meet or exceed Society of Automotive Engineers standard SAE J1356, "Performance Criteria for Falling Object Guards for Wheel loaders. (Option)"

Figure 9

Figure 10

Never attempt to alter or modify any type of protective structure reinforcement system, by drilling holes, welding or remounting or relocating fasteners. Any serious impact or damage to system requires a complete integrity reevaluation. Reinstallation, recertification and/ or replacement of system may be necessary.

INSTALL ADDITIONAL SAFETY EQUIPMENT IF CONDITIONS REQUIRE

Laminate glass protection for the front, side or rear windows may also be recommended depending upon particular site conditions.

Contact your HCE distributor for available safety guards and/or recommendations if there is any danger of getting hit by objects that could strike the operator's cab. Make sure that all other work site crew members are kept well away from wheel loader and safe from potential hazards.

MAINTAIN STANDARD SAFETY EQUIPMENT IN GOOD CONDITION

Machinery guards and body panel covers must be in place at all times. Keep well clear of rotating parts. Pinch point hazards such as cooling fan and alternator drive belts could catch hair, jewelry or oversize or very loose clothing.

Safety labels must be replaced if they are damaged or become unreadable. Information on labels gives work crew members an important safety reminder. Part numbers for each decal and required mounting locations are shown on pages 1-2 through 1-4 of this section.

ATTACHMENT PRECAUTIONS

Options kits are available through your dealer. Contact HCE for information on available one-way (single-acting) and two-way (double-acting) piping / valving / auxiliary control kits. Because HCE cannot anticipate, identify or test all attachments that owners may wish to install on their machines, please contact HCE for authorization and approval of attachments and their compatibility with options kits.

ACCUMULATOR

The pilot control system is equipped with an accumulator. For a brief period of time after the engine has been shut down, the accumulator will store a pressure charge that may enable hydraulic controls to be activated. Activation of any controls may enable the selected function to operate under force of gravity.

When performing maintenance on the pilot control system, the hydraulic pressure in the system must be released as describe in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

The accumulator is charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas, so it is extremely dangerous if it is handled in the wrong way. Always observe the following precautions;

- Do not drill or make any holes in the accumulator or expose it any flame, fire or heat source.
- Do not weld on the accumulator, or try attaching anything to it.
- When carrying out disassembly or maintenance of the accumulator, or when disposing of the accumulator, the charged gas must be properly released. Contact your HCE distributor.
- Wear safety goggles and protective gloves when working on an accumulator. Hydraulic oil under pressure can penetrate the skin and cause serious injuries.

ENGINE VENTILATION

Engine exhaust gases can cause loss of judgment, loss of alertness, and loss of motor control. These gases can also cause unconsciousness, serious injury and fatal accidents.

Make sure of adequate ventilation before starting engine in any enclosed area.

You should also be aware of open windows, doors or ductwork into which exhaust may be carried, or blown

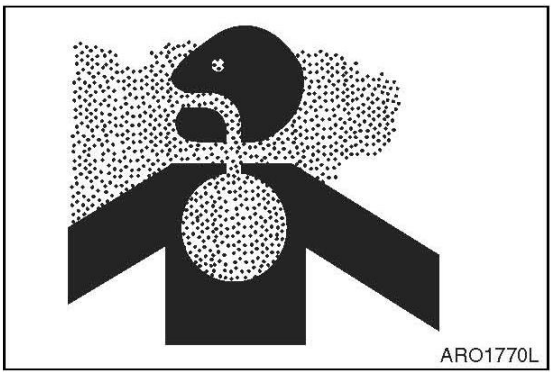


Figure 11

BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

WORK SITE PRECAUTIONS

Before starting operations, thoroughly check the area for any unusual conditions that could be dangerous.

Check the terrain and condition of the ground at the work site, and determine the best and safest method of operation.

Make the ground surface as hard and horizontal as possible before carrying out operations. If there is a lot of dust and sand on the work site, spray water before starting operations.

If you need to operate on a street, protect pedestrians and cars by designating a person for work site traffic duty or by erecting fences and posting "No Entry" signs around the work site.

Erect fences, post "No Entry" signs, and take other steps to prevent people from coming close to or entering the work site. If people come close to a moving machine, they may be hit or caught by the machine, and this may lead to serious personal injury or death.

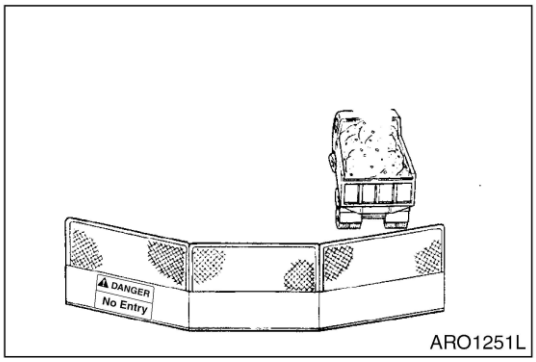


Figure 12

Water lines, gas lines, phone lines and high-voltage electrical lines may be buried under the work site. Contact each utility and identify their locations. Be careful not to damage or cut any of these lines.

NEVER be in water that is in excess of the permissible water depth. Refer to "Operation Manual."

Any type of object in the vicinity of the boom could represent a potential hazard, or cause the operator to react suddenly and cause an accident. Use a spotter or signal person working near bridges, phone lines, work site scaffolds, or other obstructions.

Minimum levels of insurance coverage, work permits or certification, physical barriers around the work site or restricted hours of operation may be mandated by governing authorities. There may also be regulations, guidelines, standards or restrictions on equipment that may have to be followed for local requirements.

There may also be regulations related to performing certain kinds of work. If there is any question about whether your machine and work site complies with the applicable standards and regulations contact your local authorities and agencies.

Avoid entering soft ground. It will be difficult for the machine to escape.

Avoid operating your machine to close to the edge of cliffs, overhangs, and deep ditches. The ground may be weak in such areas. If the ground should collapse, the machine could fall or tip over and this could result in serious injury or death.

Remember that the soil after heavy rain, blasting or after earthquakes, is weakened in these areas.

Earth laid on the ground and the soil near ditches is loose. It can collapse under the weight of vibration of your machine and cause your machine to tip over Install the head guard (FOPS) if working in areas where there is danger of falling rocks.

CHECKS BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

Every day before starting the engine for the first time, carry out the following checks. If these checks are not carried out properly, there is danger of serious injury.

- Completely remove all wood chips, leaves, grass, paper and other flammable materials accumulated in the engine compartment and around the battery. They could cause a fire.
  Remove any dirt from the window glass, mirrors, handrails, and steps.
- Do not leave tools or spare parts laying around in the operator's compartment. The vibration of the machine when traveling or during operations may cause them to fall and damage or break the control levers or switches. They may also get caught in the gap of the control levers and cause the work equipment to malfunction or move dangerously. This may lead to unexpected accidents.
- Check the coolant level, fuel level, and hydraulic tank oil level, and check for clogged air cleaner and damage to the electrical wiring.
- Adjust the operator's seat to a position where it is easy to operate the machine, and check the seat belt and mounts for damage and wear.
- Check the operation of the gauges and the angle of the mirrors, and check that the safety lever is in "LOCKED" position.
- If any abnormalities are found in the above checks, carry out repairs immediately.

ENGINE STARTING

- Walk around your machine before getting in operator’s cab. Look for evidence of leaking fluid, loose fasteners, misaligned assemblies or any other indications of possible equipment hazard.
- All equipment covers and machinery safety guards must be in place, to protect against injury while machine is being operated.
- Look around work site area for potential hazards, or people or property that could be at risk while operation is in progress.
- NEVER start engine if there is any indication that maintenance or service work is in progress, or if a warning tag is attached to controls in cab.
- A machine that has not been used recently, or is being operated in extremely cold temperatures, could require a warm-up or maintenance service before start up.
- Check gauges and monitor displays for normal operation before starting engine. Listen for unusual noises and remain alert for other potentially hazardous conditions at start of work cycle.
- Check tire inflation and check tires for damage or uneven wear. Perform maintenance before operation.
- Do not short circuit the starting motor to start the engine. This is not only dangerous, but may also damage the machine.
- When starting the engine, sound the horn as an alert.
- Start and operate the machine only while seated.

BEFORE OPERATING MACHINE

If checks are not carried out properly after starting the engine, it may result in a delay in discovering abnormalities in the machine, and this may lead to personal injury or damage to the machine.

Carry out the checks in an open area where there are no obstructions. Do not let anyone near the machine when carrying out the checks.

- Check the operating condition of the equipment, and the actuation of the bucket, boom, and travel systems.
- Check the machine for any abnormal noise, vibration, heat, smell, or abnormality with the gauges. Check also for leakage of air, oil, and fuel.
- If any abnormality is found, repair the problem immediately. If the machine is used without repairing the problems, it may lead to unexpected injury or failure.
- Clear all personnel from directly around machine and from the area.
- Clear all obstacles from the machine's path. Beware of hazards.
- Be sure that all windows are clean. Secure the doors and the windows in the open position or in the shut position.
- Adjust the rear view mirrors for best visibility close to the machine. Make sure that the horn, the travel alarm (if equipped), and all other warning devices are working properly.
- Fasten the seat belt securely.
- Warm up the engine and hydraulic oil before operating machine.
- Before moving the machine, check the position of undercarriage. The normal travel position is with idler wheels to the front under the cab and the drive sprockets to the rear. When the undercarriage is in the reversed position, the travel controls must be operated in opposite directions

MACHINE OPERATION

IMPORTANT

If you need more information or have any questions or concerns about safe operating procedures or working the wheel loader correctly in a particular application or in the specific conditions of your individual operating environment, please consult your local HCE representative.

OPERATE WHILE SEATED AT OPERATOR'S STATION ONLY

Never reach in through a window to work a control. Do not try to operate wheel loader unless you're in command position - seated at controls. You should stay alert and focused on your work at all times. Do not twist out of seat if job activity behind you (or to the side) requires your attention.

Use a spotter or signal person if you cannot see clearly and something is happening behind you.

Replace damaged safety labels and lost or damaged operator's manuals.

Do not let anyone operate machine unless they've been fully and completely trained, in safety and in operation of the machine.

Figure 13

SEAT BELTS SHOULD BE USED AT ALL TIMES

Whenever engine is running, operator should be seated at the control station with seat belt properly engaged.

Figure 14

MOVEMENT ALARMS

If wheel loader is equipped with an audible travel movement alarm, test alarm on a daily basis. Audible alarm should sound as soon as travel system is engaged.

TRAVEL PRECAUTIONS

When traveling, wheel loader always keeps lights on; make sure that you are in compliance with all state and local regulations concerning warning flags and signs.

Never turn the starter switch to the "O" (OFF) position when traveling. It is dangerous if the engine stops when the machine is traveling. It will be impossible to operate the steering unless the unit is equipped with an emergency steering system.

Pilot control valve lever (joystick) should not be operated while traveling.

Lower work equipment so that it is 400 mm (16 in) above ground.

Never travel over obstacles or slopes that will cause machine to tilt severely. Travel around any slope or obstacle that causes 10° tilt, or more.

Do not operate the steering suddenly. The work equipment may hit the ground and cause the machine to lose its balance, and this may damage the machine or structures in the area.

When traveling on rough ground, travel at low speed, and avoid sudden changes in direction.

Always keep to the permissible water depth.

When traveling over bridges or structures on private land, check first that the bridge or structure can withstand the weight of the machine. When traveling on public roads, check with the local authorities and follow their instructions.

SLOPING TERRAIN REQUIRES CAUTION

Dig evenly around work site whenever possible, trying to gradually level any existing slope. If it's not possible to level area or avoid working on a slope, reducing size and cycling rate workload is recommended.

On sloping surfaces, use caution when positioning wheel loader before starting a work cycle. Stay alert for unstable situations to avoid getting into them. For example, you should always avoid working bucket over downhill side of machine when parked perpendicular to slope. Avoid full extensions of bucket in a downhill direction. Lifting bucket too high, too close to machine, while wheel loader is turned uphill can also be hazardous.

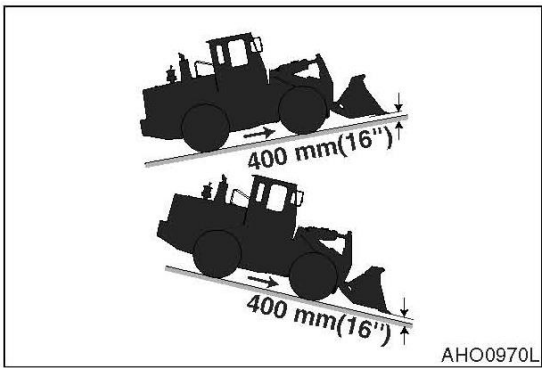


Figure 15

AVOID HIGH-VOLTAGE CABLES

Serious injury or death can result from contact or proximity to high-voltage electric lines. The bucket does not have to make physical contact with power lines for current to be transmitted.

Use a spotter and hand signals to stay away from power lines not clearly visible to operator.

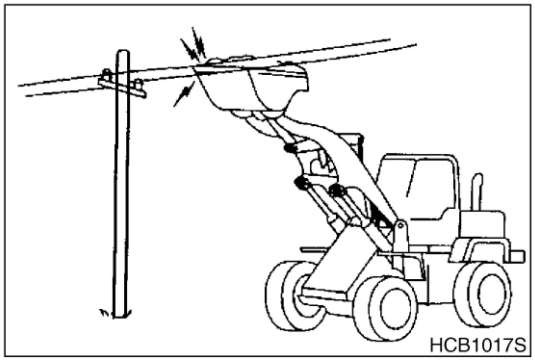


Figure 16

VOLTAGE	MINIMUM SAFE DISTANCE
6.6 kV	3 m (9’ 10")
33.0 kV	4 m (13’ 1")
66.0 kV	5 m (16’ 5")
154.0 kV	8 m (26’ 3")
275.0 kV	10 m (32’ 10")

Use these minimum distances as a guideline only. Depending upon voltage in line and atmospheric conditions, strong current shocks can occur with boom or bucket as far away as 4 - 6 m (13 - 20 ft) from power line. Very high voltage and rainy weather could further decrease that safety margin.

NOTE: *Before starting any type of operation near power lines (either above ground or buried cable-type) you should always contact power utility directly and work out a safety plan with them.*

BEFORE STARTING TO DIG, CONTACT AUTHORITIES

Below ground hazards also include natural gas lines, water mains, tunnels and buried foundations. Know what’s underneath work site before starting to dig.

BE AWARE OF HEIGHT OBSTACLES

Any type of object in vicinity of boom could represent a potential hazard, or cause operator to react suddenly and cause an accident. Use a spotter or signal person working near bridges, phone lines, work site scaffolds, or other obstructions.

USE CARE ON LOOSE SUPPORT

Working heavy loads over loose, soft ground or uneven, broken terrain can cause dangerous side load conditions and possible tip over and injury. Travel without a load or balanced load may also be hazardous.

If temperatures are changing, be cautious of dark and wet patches when working or traveling over frozen ground. Stay away from ditches, overhangs and all other weak support surfaces. Halt work and install support mats or blocking if work is required in an area of poor support.

USE SOLID SUPPORT BLOCKING

Never rely on lift jacks or other inadequate supports when work is being done. Block wheels fore and aft to prevent any movement.

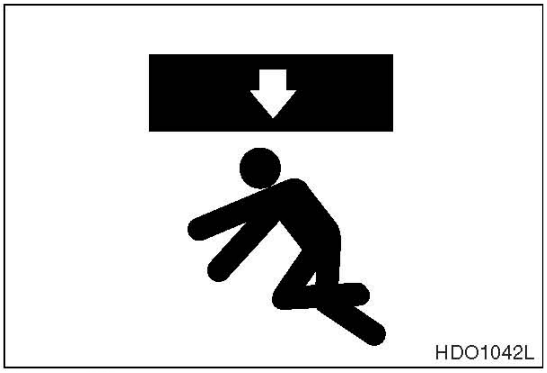


Figure 17

DIGGING BENEATH OVERHANGS

Digging beneath an overhang is dangerous. Overhand could collapse on top of operator and cause serious injury or death. Go on to another digging area before steep overhangs are formed. Know height and reach limits of wheel loader and plan ahead while working. Park wheel loader away from overhangs before work shut down.

DIGGING BENEATH WHEEL LOADER

Digging beneath wheel loader is dangerous. Earth beneath could collapse. This could cause wheel loader to tip, which could cause serious injury or death to operator. Working around deep pits, trenching or along high walls may require support blocks, especially after heavy rainfalls or during spring thaws.

STAY ALERT FOR PEOPLE MOVING THROUGH WORK AREA

When loading a truck you should always know where the driver is.

Avoid loading over the cab of a truck even if the driver is in a safe spot. Someone else could have gone inside, for any number of reasons. Avoid working where unseen passersby might be.

Slow down work cycle and use slower travel speeds in congested or populated areas. Use a commonly understood signal so that other members of work crew can warn operator to slow or halt work in an impending hazardous situation.

Figure 18

BE AWARE OF AND CONFORM TO LOCAL REGULATIONS

Minimum levels of insurance coverage, work permits or certification, physical barriers around work-site or restricted hours of operation may be mandated by governing authorities. There may also be guidelines, standards or restrictions on equipment that may be used to perform certain kinds of work. Check and follow all local requirements, which may also be related to below ground hazards and power lines.

NEVER USE ETHER STARTING AIDS

An electric-grid type manifold heater is used for cold starting. Glowing heater element can cause ether or other starting fluid to detonate, causing injury.

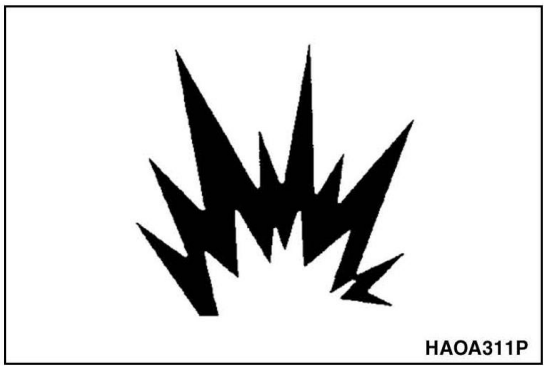


Figure 19

OBSERVE GENERAL SAFETY RULES

Only trained and authorized personnel, with a good knowledge and awareness of safe procedures, may be allowed to operate or perform maintenance or service on wheel loader.

All personnel at work site should be aware of assigned individual responsibilities and tasks.

Communication and hand signals used should be understood by everyone.

Terrain and soil conditions at work site, approaching traffic, weather-related hazards and any above or below ground obstacles or hazards should be observed and monitored by all work crew members.

TAKE TIME TO PROVIDE GOOD VISIBILITY

Be careful not to go close to the edge of a cliff by mistake.

Use the machine only for its main purpose. Using it for other purposes will cause failures.

To ensure an ample view, do as follows:

- When working in dark areas, attach working lights and front lights to the machine. If necessary, set up lighting at the work site.
- Stop operations when the visibility is poor, such as in fog, mist, snow, and rain. Wait for the visibility to improve to a level which causes no problems for the operation.
- Keep dirt and dust off of windows and off lens surfaces of work lights. Stop working if lights, windows or mirrors need cleaning or adjustment.

To avoid hitting the work equipment, always do the following;

- When working in tunnels, on bridges, under electric wires, or when parking the machine or carrying out other operations in places with limited height, be extremely careful not to hit the bucket or other parts.
- To prevent collisions, operate the machine at a safe speed when working in confined spaces, indoors, or in crowded areas.
- Do not pass the bucket over the heads of workers or over the operator's compartment of dump truck.

KEEP "PINCH POINT" AREAS CLEAR – USE CAUTION IN REVERSE

Use a signal person in high traffic areas and whenever operator's view is not clear, such as when traveling in reverse.

Anyone standing near wheels, or working assemblies of the attachment, is at risk of being caught between moving parts of machine.

Never allow anyone to ride on any part of machine or attachment, including any part of operator's cab.

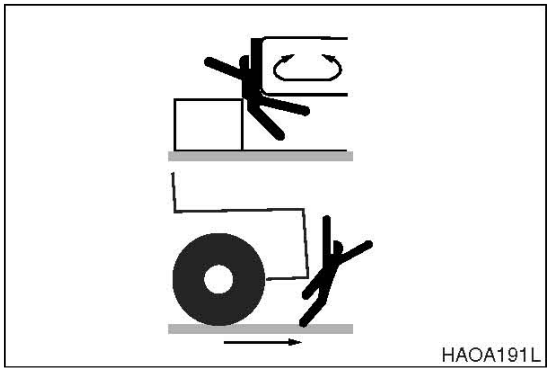


Figure 20

OPERATE CAREFULLY ON SNOW AND ICE AND IN VERY COLD TEMPERATURES

In icy cold weather avoid sudden travel movements and stay away from even very slight slopes. Machine could skid off to one side very easily.

Snow accumulation could hide or obscure potential hazards. Use care while operating or while using machine to clear snow.

Warming up engine for a short period may be necessary, to avoid operating with sluggish or reduced working capacity. Jolting shocks and impact loads caused by bumping or bottoming boom or attachment are more likely to cause severe stress in very cold temperatures. Reducing work cycle rate and work load may be necessary.

When the temperature rises, frozen road surfaces become soft, so the machine travel becomes unstable.

In cold weather, do not touch metal surfaces with your bare hands. If you touch a metal surface in extremely cold weather, your skin may freeze to the metal surface.

PARKING MACHINE

Avoid making sudden stops, or parking machine wherever it happens to be at the end of the work day. Plan ahead so that the wheel loader will be on firm, level ground away from traffic and away from high walls, cliff edges and any area of potential water accumulation or runoff. If parking on inclines is unavoidable, block wheels to prevent movement. Lower bucket or other working attachment completely to ground, or to an overnight support saddle. There should be no possibility of unintended or accidental movement.

When parking on public roads, provide fences, signs, flags, or lights, and put up any other necessary signs to ensure that passing traffic can see the machine clearly, and park the machine so that the machine, flags, and fences do not obstruct traffic.

SHUTDOWN CONTROL FUNCTIONS

After bucket has been lowered to overnight storage position, move all switches and controls to "OFF" position. Pull parking brake knob to "APPLIED" position. This will apply parking brake. Move pilot cutoff switch to "LOCK" position. This will disable pilot control valve lever (joystick). Move key in starter switch to "OFF" position, and remove key from switch.

Engage all lock-down security equipment that may have been installed on machine.

IMPORTANT
When hydraulic system maintenance or service work must be performed, be aware that accumulators in system store fluid under pressure after system has been shut down. To release hydraulic pressure in accumulators, operate control with engine "OFF" until accumulator pressure is completely dissipated.

NEVER LET ANYONE RIDE ON ATTACHMENT

Never let anyone ride on any work attachment, such as the bucket, crusher, grapple, or clamshell (grab bucket). There is a danger of the person falling and suffering serious injury.

Figure 21

MAINTENANCE

USE WARNING TAG DURING SERVICE

Alert others that service or maintenance is being performed and tag operator's cab controls - and other machine areas if required - with a warning notice.

Warning tags for controls are available from HCE distributors; see Figure 22.

Figure 22

CLEAN BEFORE INSPECTION ORMAINTENANCE

Clean the machine before carrying out inspection and maintenance. This prevents dirt from getting into the machine and also ensures safety during maintenance.

If inspection and maintenance are carried out when the machine is dirty, it will become more difficult to locate the problems, and also there is danger that you may get dirt or mud in your eyes or that you may slip and injure yourself.

When washing the machine, do the following;

- Wear shoes with nonslip soles to prevent yourself from slipping and falling on wet places.
- Wear safety glasses and protective clothing when washing the machine with high-pressure steam.
- Take action to prevent touching high-pressure water and cutting your skin or having mud fly into your eyes.
- Do not spray water directly on electrical components (sensors, connector) (1, Figure 23). If water gets into the electrical system, there is danger that it will cause defective operation and malfunction.

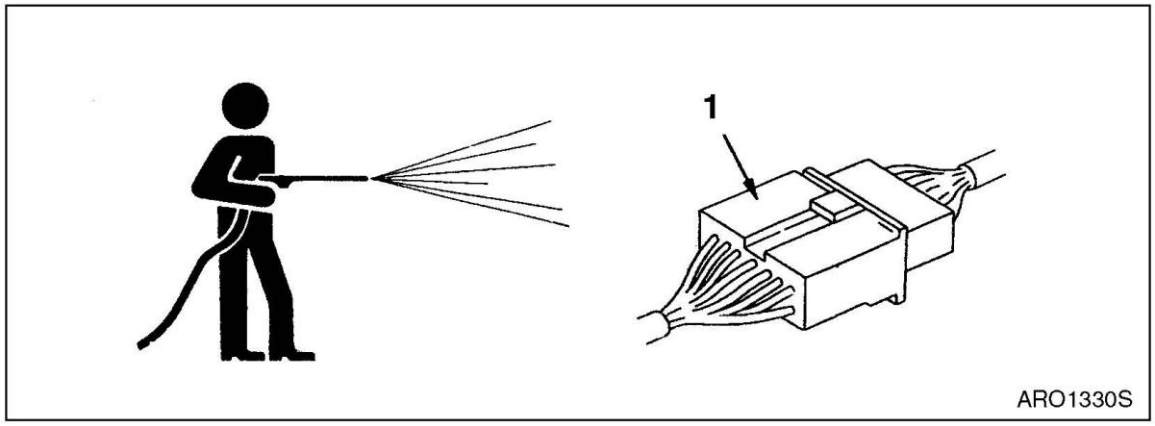


Figure 23

Pick up any tools or hammers that are laying in the work place, wipe up any grease or oil or any other slippery substances, and clean the area to make it possible to carry out the operation in safety. If the work place is left untidy, you may trip or slip and suffer injury.

PROPER TOOLS

Use only tools suited to the task. Using damaged, low qualify, faulty, or makeshift tools could cause personal injury. There is danger that pieces from, chisels with crushed heads, or hammers, may get into your eyes and cause blindness.

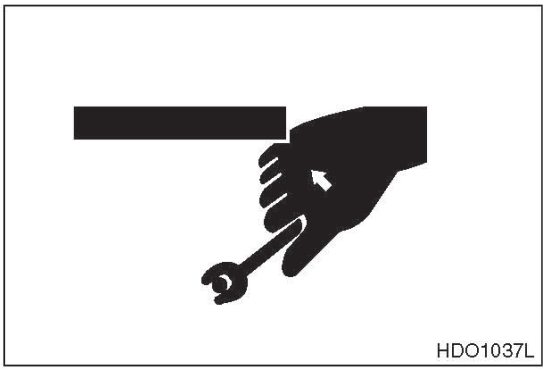


Figure 24

USE OF LIGHTING

When checking fuel, oil, battery electrolyte, or window washing fluid, always use lighting with anti-explosion specifications. If such lighting equipment is not used, there is danger of explosion.

If work is carried out in dark places without using lighting, it may lead to injury, so always use proper lighting.

Even if the place is dark, never use a lighter or flame instead of lighting. There is danger of fire.

There is also danger that the battery gas may catch fire and cause and explosion.

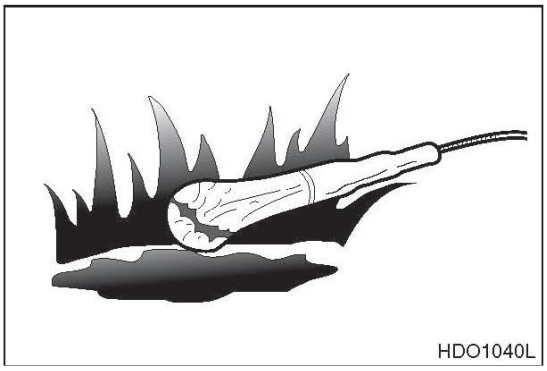


Figure 25

FIRE PREVENTION AND EXPLOSION PREVENTION

All fuels, most lubricants and some coolant mixtures are flammable. Leaking fuel or fuel that is spilled onto hot surfaces or onto electrical components can cause a fire.

Store all fuels and all lubricants in properly marked containers and away from all unauthorized persons.

Store oily rags and other flammable material in a protective container.

Do not smoke while you refuel the machine or while you are in a refueling area.

Do not smoke in battery charging areas or in areas the contain flammable material.

Clean all electrical connections and tighten all electrical connections. Check the electrical wires daily for wires that are loose of frayed. Tighten all lose electrical wires before you operate the machine. Repair all frayed electrical wires before you operate the machine.

Remove all flammable materials before they accumulate on the machine.

Do not weld on pipes or on tubes that contain flammable fluids. Do not flame cut on pipes or on tubes that contain flammable fluids. Before you weld on pipes or on tubes or before you flame cut on pipes or on tubes, clean the pipes or tubes thoroughly with a nonflammable solvent.

BURN PREVENTION

When checking the radiator coolant level, shut down engine, let the engine and radiator cool down, then check the coolant recovery tank. If the coolant level in the coolant recovery tank is near the upper limit, there is enough coolant in the radiator.

Loosen the radiator cap gradually to release the internal pressure before removing the radiator cap.

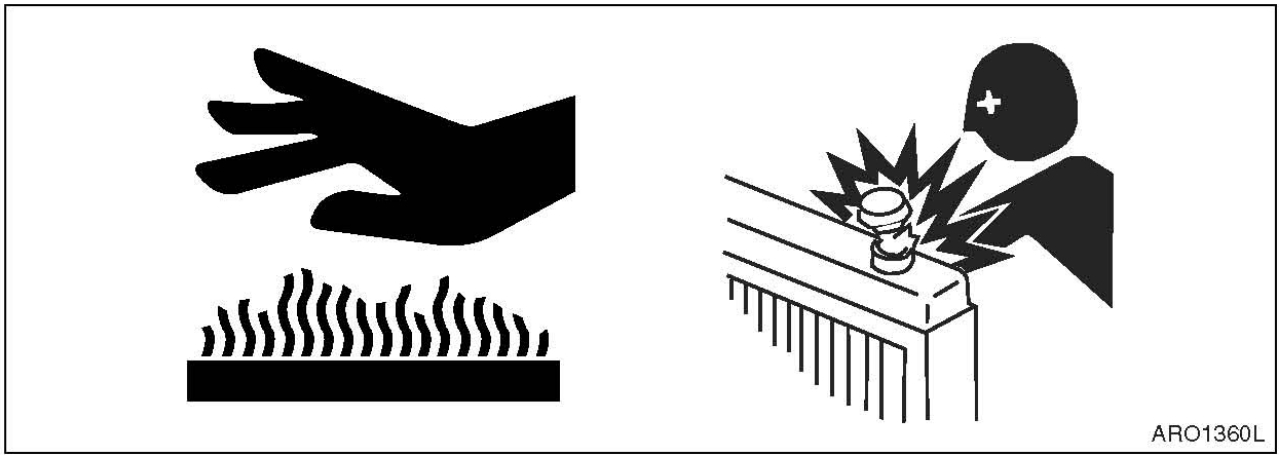


Figure 26

If the coolant level in the coolant recovery tank is below the lower limit, add coolant.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Alkali can cause personal injury. Do not allow alkali to contact the skin, the eyes, or the mouth.

Allow cooling system components to cool before you drain the cooling system.

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact the skin.

Remove the hydraulic tank filter plug only after the engine has been stopped. Make sure that the hydraulic tank filter plug is cool before you remove it with your bare hand. Remove the hydraulic tank filter plug slowly to relieve pressure.

Relieve all pressure in the hydraulic oil system, in the fuel system, or in the cooling system before you disconnect any lines, fittings, or related items.

Batteries give off flammable fumes that can explode.

Do not smoke while you are checking the battery electrolyte levels.

Electrolyte is an acid. Electrolyte can cause personal injury. Do not allow electrolyte to contact the skin or the eyes.

Always wear protective glasses when you work on batteries.

WELDING REPAIRS

When carrying out welding repairs, carry out the welding in a properly equipped place. The welding should be performed by a qualified worker. During welding operations, there is the danger of, generation of gas, fire, or electric shock, so never let an unqualified worker do welding.

The qualified welder must do the following;

- To prevent explosion of the battery, disconnect the battery terminals and remove batteries.
- To prevent generation of gas, remove the paint from the location of the weld.
- If hydraulic equipment, piping or places close to them are heated, a flammable gas or mist will be generated and there is danger of it catching fire. To avoid this, never subject these places to heat.
- Do not weld on pipes or on tubes that contain flammable fluids. Do not flame cut on pipes or on tubes that contain flammable fluids. Before you weld on pipes or on tubes or before you flame cut on pipes or on tubes, clean the pipes or tubes thoroughly with a nonflammable solvent.
- If heat is applied directly to rubber hoses or piping under pressure, they may suddenly break so cover them with a fireproof covering.
- Wear protective clothing.
- Make sure there is good ventilation.
- Remove all flammable objects and provide a fire extinguisher.

PRECAUTIONS FOR REMOVAL, INSTALLATION, AND STORAGE OFATTACHMENTS

Before starting removal and installation of attachments, decide the team leader.

Do not allow anyone except the authorized workers close to the machine or attachment.

Place attachments that have been removed from the machine in a safe place so that they do not fall. Put up a fence around the attachments and take other measures to prevent unauthorized persons from entering.

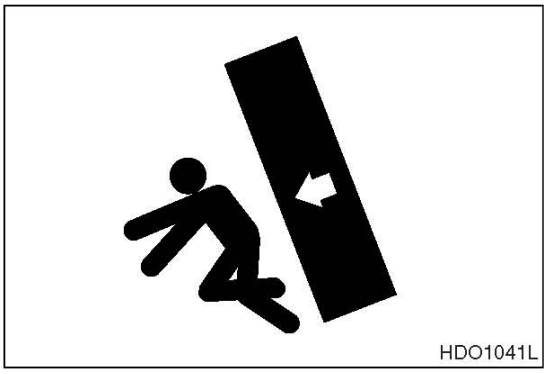


Figure 27

PRECAUTIONS WHEN WORKING ON MACHINE

When carrying out maintenance operations on the machine, keep the area around your feet clean and tidy to prevent you from falling.

Always do the following;

- Do not spill oil or grease.
- Do not leave tools laying about.
- Watch your step when walking.

Figure 28

Never jump down from the machine. When getting on or off the machine, use the steps and handrails, and maintain a three-point contact (both feet and one hand or both hands and one foot) to support yourself securely.

If the job requires it, wear protective clothing.

To prevent injury from slipping or falling, when working on the hood or covers, never use any part except the inspection passage fitted with nonslip pads.

LOCK INSPECTION COVERS

When carrying out maintenance with the inspection cover open, lock the cover securely in position with the lock bar.

If maintenance work is carried out with the inspection cover open but not locked, there is danger that it may suddenly close and cause injury if there is a gust of wind.

CRUSHING PREVENTION AND CUTTING PREVENTION

You should always have at least two people working together if the engine must be run during service. One person needs to remain in the operator's seat, ready to work the controls or stop the machine and shut off the engine.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, never attempt adjustments while the machine is moving or while the engine is running.

Stay clear of all rotating parts and moving parts.

Keep objects away from moving fan blades. The fan blades will throw objects and the fan blades can cut objects.

Do not use a wire rope cable that is kinked or flayed. Wear gloves when you handle a wire rope cable.

When you strike a retainer pin, the retainer pin might fly out. The loose retainer pin can injure personnel.

Make sure that the area is clear of people when you strike a retainer pin. To avoid injury to your eyes, wear protective glasses when you strike a retainer pin.

DO NOT RUN ENGINE IF REPAIRS OR WORK ARE BEING PERFORMED ALONE

You should always have at least two people working together if engine must be run during service. One person needs to remain in operator's seat, ready to work controls or stop machine and shut "OFF" engine.

ALWAYS USE ADEQUATE EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS AND BLOCKING

Do not allow weight or equipment loads to remain suspended. Lower everything to ground before leaving operator's seat. Do not use hollow, cracked or unsteady, wobbling weight supports. Do not work under any equipment supported solely by a lift jack.

DO NOT WORK ON HOT ENGINES OR HOT COOLING OR HYDRAULIC SYSTEMS

Wait for engine to cool off after normal operation. Park wheel loader on firm, level ground and lower all equipment before shutting down and switching "OFF" controls. When engine lube oil, gearbox lubricant or other fluids require change, wait for fluid temperatures to decrease to a moderate level before removing drain plugs.

NOTE: *Oil will drain more quickly and completely if it is warm. Do not drain fluids at temperatures exceeding 95°C (203°F), however do not allow full cool down.*

HYDRAULIC CYLINDER SEALS REQUIRE PERIODIC REPLACEMENT

Check cylinder drift rate at regular intervals. Overhaul seal kits are available through HCE.

HIGH PRESSURE HYDRAULIC LINES CAN STORE A GREAT DEAL OF ENERGY

Exposed hydraulic hoses on arm or boom could react with explosive force if struck by a falling rock, overhead obstacle or other work site hazard. Extra safety guards may be required. NEVER allow hoses to be hit, bent or interfered with during operation.

PRECAUTIONS WITH HIGH PRESSURE LINE, TUBES AND HOSES

When inspecting or replacing high-pressure piping or hoses, check that the pressure has been released from the circuit. Failure to release the pressure may lead to serious injury. Always do the following;

- Wear protective glasses and leather gloves.
- Fluid leaks from hydraulic hoses or pressurized components can be difficult to see but pressurized oil has enough force to pierce the skin and cause serious injury. Always use a piece of wood or cardboard to check for suspected hydraulic leaks. Never use your hands or expose your fingers.
- Do not bend high pressure lines. Do not strike high pressure lines. Do not install lines, tubes or hoses that are bent or damaged.
- Make sure that all clamps, guards and heat shields are installed correctly to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, and excessive heat during operation.
  - If any of the following conditions are found, replace the part.
  - Damage or leakage from hose end.
  - Wear, damage, cutting of covering, or exposure of strengthening wire layer.
  - Cover portion is swollen in places.
  - There is twisting or crushing at movable parts of hose.
  - Foreign material is embedded in the covering.
  - Hose end is deformed.

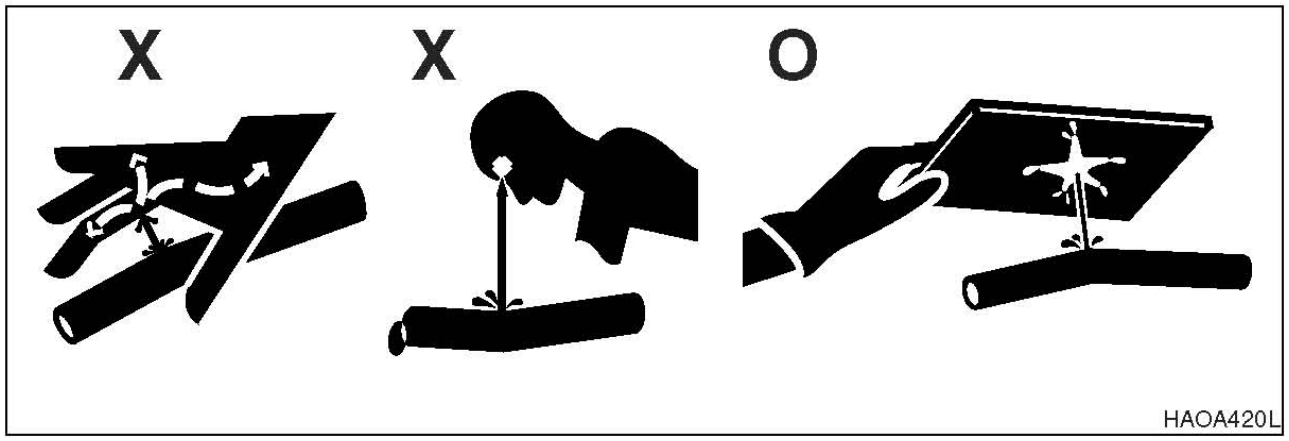


Figure 29

OBTAIN IMMEDIATE MEDICAL ATTENTION IF PRESSURIZED OIL PIERCES SKIN.

⚠ WARNING!
Failure to obtain prompt medical assistance could result in gangrene or other serious damage to tissue.

USE CORRECT REPLACEMENT FASTENERS TIGHTENED TO PROPER TORQUE

Refer to "General Maintenance" section of Shop Manual for information on tightening torques and recommended assembly compounds and always use correct part.

Poor or incorrect fastener connections can dangerously weaken assemblies.

SAFETY-CRITICAL PARTS MUST BE REPLACED PERIODICALLY

Replace following fire-related components as soon as they begin to show any sign of wear, or at regular periodic intervals, whether or not deterioration is visible:

- Fuel system flexible hoses, the tank overflow drain hose and the fuel filler cap.
- Hydraulic system hoses, especially the pump outlet lines and front and rear pump branch hoses.
- Keep mounting brackets and hose and cable routing straps tight. Hose routing should have gradual bends.

DISPOSE OF ALL PETROLEUM-BASED OILS AND FLUIDS PROPERLY

Physical contact with used motor oil may pose a health risk. Wipe oil from your hands promptly and wash off any remaining residue.

Used motor oil is an environmental contaminant and may only be disposed of at approved collection facilities. To prevent pollution of the environment, always do the following;

- Never dump waste oil in a sewer system, rivers, etc.
- Always put oil drained from your machine in containers. Never drain oil directly onto the ground.
- Obey appropriate laws and regulations when disposing of harmful materials such as oil, fuel, solvent, filters, and batteries.

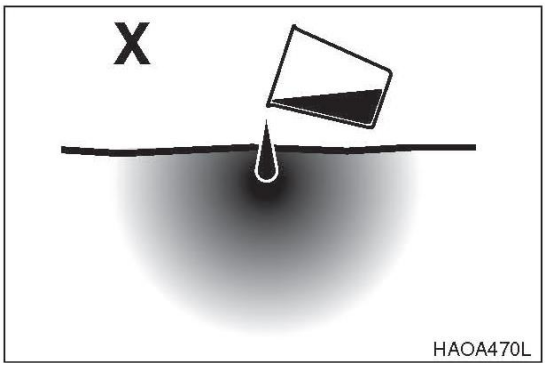


Figure 30

CHECK TIRE PRESSURE AND CONDITION

Maintain tire pressure but do not over inflate. Inspect tires and wheels daily. When inflating tires, follow procedures in Maintenance Section, which include using an extension to allow you to avoid standing in front of or over a tire. Do not change a tire unless you have both experience and proper equipment.

BATTERY HAZARD PREVENTION

Battery electrolyte contains diluted sulfuric acid and batteries generate hydrogen gas. Hydrogen gas is highly explosive, and mistakes in handling them can cause serious injury or fire. To prevent problems, always do the following;

- Do not smoke or bring any flame near the battery.
- When working with batteries, ALWAYS wear safety glasses and rubber gloves.
- If you spill battery electrolyte on yourself or your clothes, immediately flush the area with water.
- If battery electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush them immediately with large quantities of water and see a doctor at once.
- If you accidentally drink battery electrolyte, drink a large quantity of water or milk, raw egg or vegetable oil. Call a doctor or poison prevention center immediately.
- When cleaning the top surface of the battery, wipe it with a clean, damp cloth. Never use gasoline, thinner, or any other organic solvent or detergent.
- Tighten the battery caps securely.
- Explosive battery gas can be set off by sparks from incidental contact or static discharge. Turn "OFF" all switches and engine when working on batteries. Keep battery terminals tight. Contact between a loose terminal and post can create an explosive spark.
- If the battery electrolyte is frozen, do not charge the battery or start the engine with power from another source. There is danger that the battery may catch fire.
- When charging the battery or starting with power from another source, let the battery electrolyte melt and check that there is no leakage of battery electrolyte before starting the operation.
- Always remove the battery from the machine before charging.

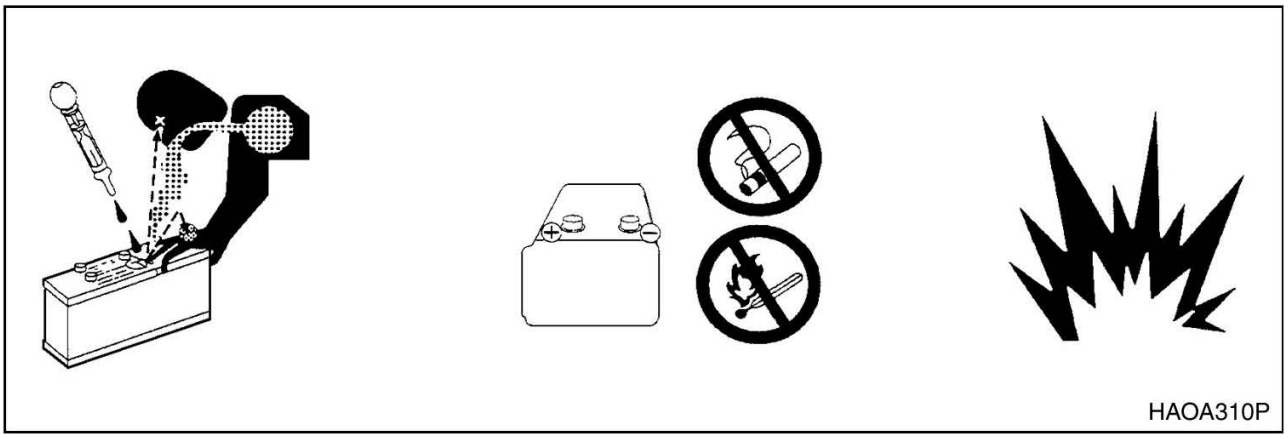


Figure 31

DISCONNECT BATTERIES BEFORE ELECTRICAL SERVICE OR ELECTRICAL WELDING

Remove cable to negative terminal first when disconnecting cable. Connect positive terminal cables first when installing a battery.

USE LOW HEAT PORTABLE LIGHTING

Hot surfaces on trouble lights or portable work lights can set off fuel or battery explosive gases.

BOOST STARTING OR CHARGING ENGINE BATTERIES

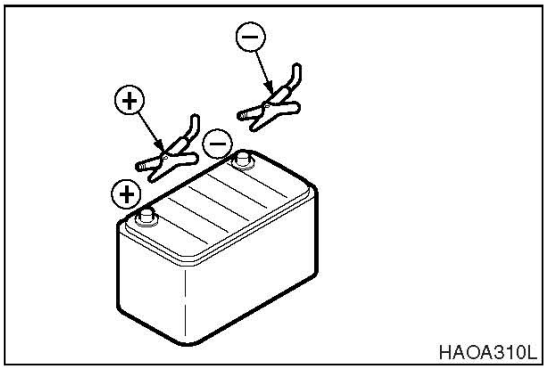


Figure 32

If any mistake is made in the method of connecting the booster cables, it may cause an explosion or fire. Always do the following;

- Turn off all electrical equipment before connecting leads to the battery. This includes electrical switches on the battery charger or boost starting equipment.
- When boost-starting from another machine or vehicle do not allow the two machines to touch. Wear safety glasses or goggles while required battery connections are made.
- 24 volt battery units consisting of two series-connected twelve volt batteries have a cable connecting one positive terminal on one of the 12 volt batteries to a negative terminal on the other battery. Booster or charger cable connections must be made between the nonseries-connected positive terminals and between the negative terminal of the booster battery and the metal frame of the machine being boosted or charged. Refer to the procedure and illustration in Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- Connect positive cable first when installing cables and disconnect the negative cable first when removing them. The final cable connection, at the metal frame of the machine being charged or boost-started, should be as far away from the batteries as possible.

TOWING

PRECAUTIONS WHEN TOWING

If any mistake is made in the method of selecting or inspecting the towing wire or in the method of towing, it may lead to serious personal injury. Always do the following;

- Always use the method of towing given in this Operation and Maintenance Manual. Do not use any other method.
- Use leather gloves when handling the wire rope.
- When carrying out the preparation work for towing with two or more workers, determine the signals to use and follow these signals correctly.
- If the engine on the problem machine will not start or there is a failure in the brake system, always contact your HCE distributor.
- Never go between the towing machine and the towed machine during the towing operation.
- It is dangerous to carry out towing on slopes, so select a place where the slope is gradual. If there is no place where the slope is gradual, carry out operations to reduce the angle of the slope before starting the towing operation.
- When towing a problem machine, always use a wire rope with a sufficient towing capacity.
- Do not use a frayed, kinked rope or a rope with any loss of diameter.

SHIPPING AND TRANSPORTATION

OBEY STATE AND LOCAL OVER-THE-ROAD REGULATIONS

Check state and local restrictions regarding weight, width and length of a load before making any other preparation for transport.

Hauling vehicle, trailer and load must all be in compliance with local regulations governing intended shipping route.

Partial disassembly or tear-down of wheel loader may be necessary to meet travel restrictions or particular conditions at work site.

Refer to the section "Transportation" section of operation manual.

SUMMARY OF SAFETY PRECAUTIONS FOR LIFTING

⚠WARNING!
Improper lifting can allow load to shift and cause personal injury or damage to the machine

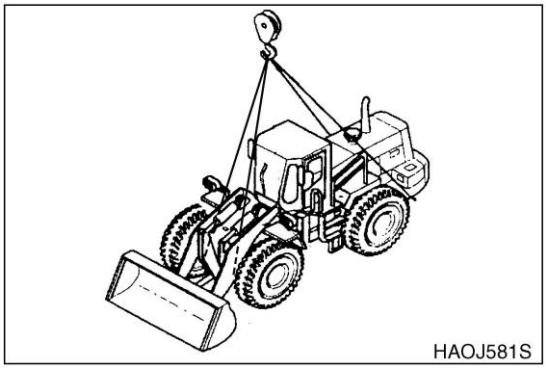


Figure 33

To make safe lifts, the following items must be evaluated by operator and work site crew.

- Condition of ground support.
- Wheel loader configuration and attachments.
- Weight, lifting height and lifting radius.
- Safe rigging of load.
- Proper handling of suspended load.

Taglines on opposite sides of load can be very helpful in keeping a suspended load secure, if they are anchored safely to control points on ground.

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATIONS FOR

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Figure 1 identifies the location of major machine components.

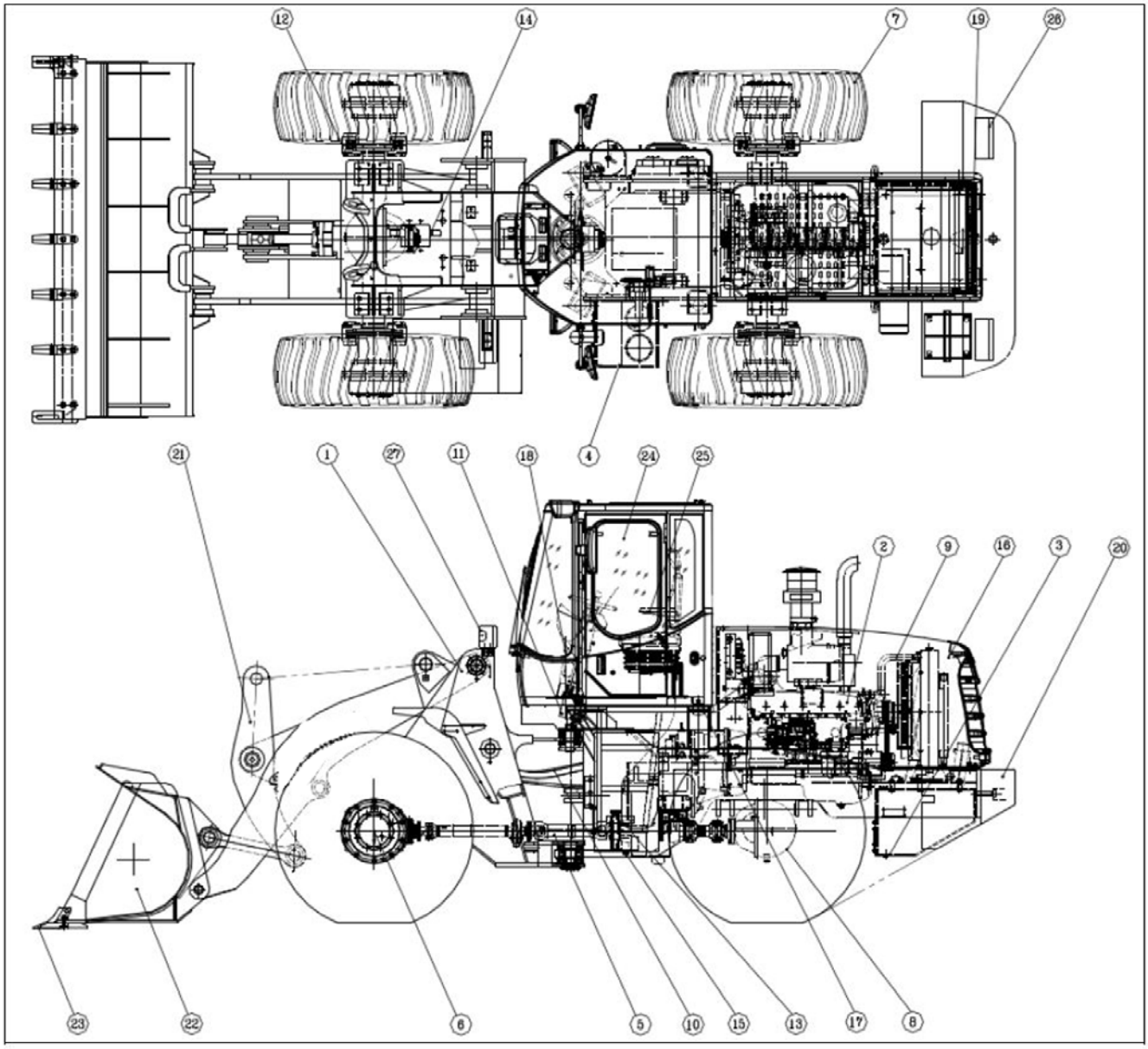


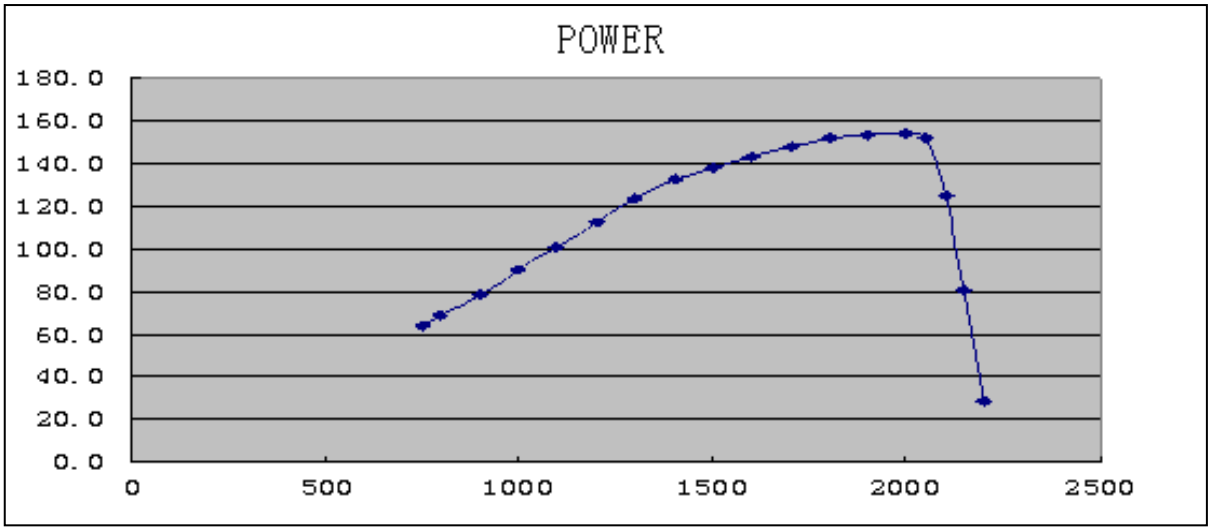
Figure 1

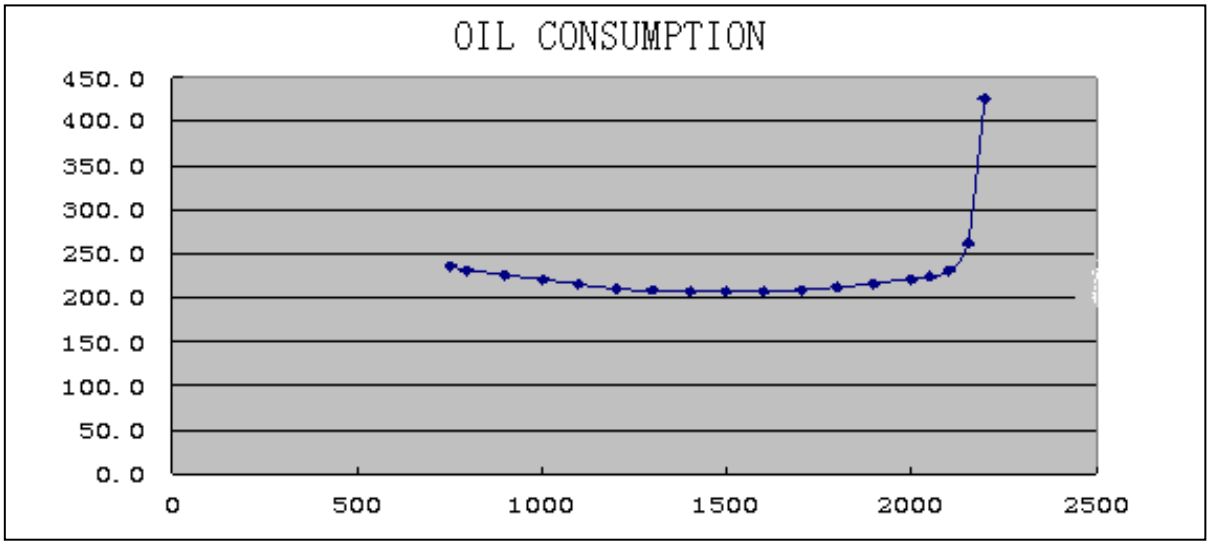
Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Frame	15	Handrail
2	E/G and T/M Ass`y	16	Engine Cover
3	Fuel Tank	17	Damper
4	Oil Tank	18	Cabin Interior
5	Axle and Driving shaft	19	Radiator Grille
6	Axle and Driving shaft	20	Counterweight
7	Tire	21	Working Device
8	Axle Hub	22	Bucket
9	Cooling Pipe line	23	Tooth
10	Main Pipe line	24	Cabin
11	Steering Pipe line	25	Seat
12	Brake Pipe line	26	Lamp: Rear
13	Brake System	27	Lamp: Front
14	Main Control Valve		

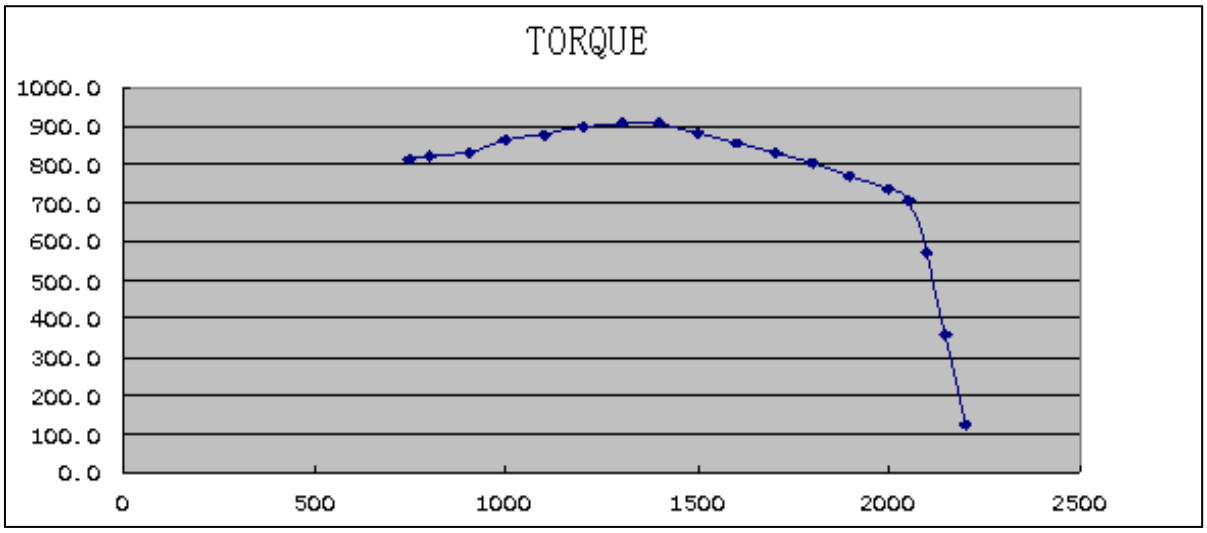
GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Item		HL667VL
Standard Bucket Capacity		3.0 m^3 (3.92 yd^3)
Vehicle Weight		16800 kg (37038 lb)
Engine		
	Type	Weichai
	Rated power (SAE J 1995 gross)	220 ps @ 2,000 rpm (217 hp @ 2,000 rpm)
	Max. Torque (SAE J 1995 gross)	92 kg•m / 1,300 rpm (666 ft lb @ 1,300 rpm)
Transmission		
	Mechanical gear shift	Full Automatic Power shift
	Speeds	4 Forward, 3 Reverse
Brake Systems		
	Service Brakes	4 Wheel, Dry Disks, Single Pedal
	Parking Brake	Dry Disc on Transmission
Performance		
	Travel Speed	36.6/22.7/11.4/6.3km/h
	Steering Angle	+ 40°
	Min. Tire Turning Radius (Tire Center)	5830mm
	Max.Tractive Effort	16,500 kg (36,376 lb)
	Max. Breakout Force	16,000kg (35,273 lb)
	Bucket Rise Time	5.4 Seconds
	Bucket Dump Time	1.5 Seconds
	Bucket Descent Time	4.0 Seconds
Working Range		
	Dump Height at 45° (w/o teeth)	3,127 mm (10’ - 3")
	Dump Reach at 45° (w/o teeth)	1,050 mm (3’ - 5")
	Max Dump Angle at Fully Raised	49°
	Max Tilt Angle at Carry	50°
Travel Dimension		
	Overall Length	8020 mm (26’ - 4")
	Overall Width	2,992 mm (9’ - 10")
	Overall Height	3,450 mm (11’ - 4")
	Wheel Base	3,200 mm (10’ - 6")
	Tread	2,150 mm (7’ - 0")
	Ground Clearance	450 mm (1’ - 6")

ENGINE PERFORMANCE CURVES







Engine Type	WD10G220E23
Rated Power	220 ps @ 2,000 rpm (217 hp @ 2,000 rpm)
Maximum Torque	100kg•m @ 1,300 rpm (722 ft lb @ 1,300 rpm)
Fuel Consumption	220 g / kw.h (165 g / ps.h)
Performance Standard	SAE J 1995 gross

NOTE: *Barometric Pressure: 760 mm (30") Mercury*

Temperature: 20°C (68°F)

W/O Cooling Fan: Driven by engine

Alternator: 24 V, 50 amp

Exhaust System: Complete, attached

Air Cleaner; Installed

WORKING RANGE AND DIMENSIONS

Figure 3, illustrates exterior machine dimensions and working range of machine when it is equipped with a standard bucket.

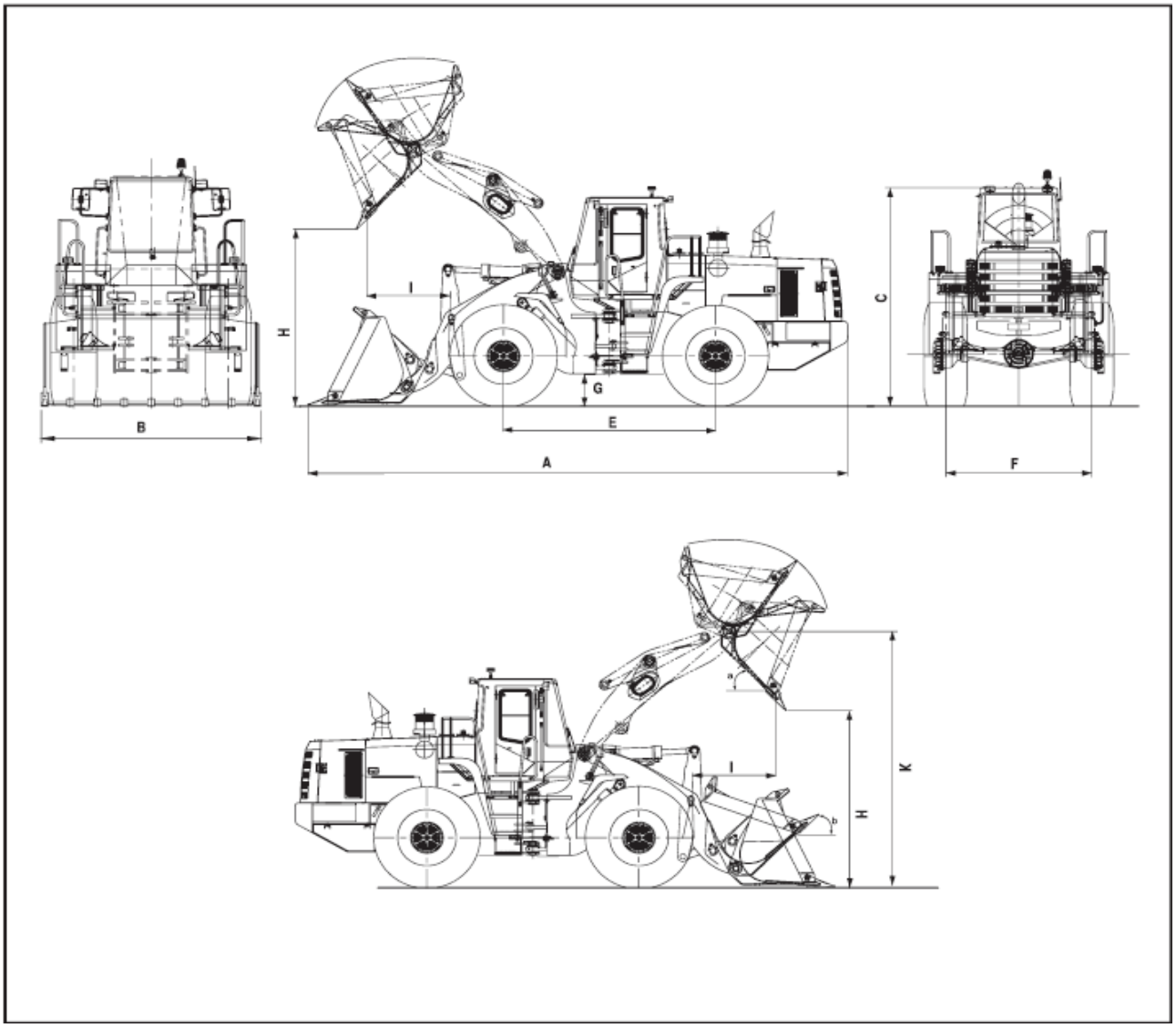


Figure 3

Category	Dimension	Category	Dimension
Overall Length (A)	8020 mm (26’ 4")	Dump Height, to tooth (H)	3080 mm (10’ 1")
Overall Width (B)	2,992mm (9’ 11")	Dump Distance, to Bucket Edge (I)	1290 mm (4’ 3")
Overall Height (C)	3,450 mm (11’ 4")	Dump Height to Bucket Pivot (K)	4,150 mm (13’7")
Wheel Base (E)	3,200 mm (10’ 6")	Max. Dump Angle at Fully Raised (a)	49°
Tread (F)	2,150 mm (7’ 0")	Max. Tilt Angle at Carry (b)	50°
Ground Clearance (G)	450 mm (1’ 6")	Tire Size	23.5-25-16 PR(L3)

WORKING CAPACITIES

BUCKET CAPACITY

Standard toothed bucket has a capacity of 2.9 m3 (3.8 yd3). An optional bucket equipped with a cutting edge and no teeth has a capacity of 2.9 m3 (3.8 yd3).

TIPPING LOAD

Static Tipping Load with bucket at max reach position is 12,393 kg (27,322 lb). With bucket in Fully Turned position, Static Tipping Load is 10,809 kg (23,830 lb).

MATERIAL WEIGHT

The data below describes weight of a cubic meter (cubic yard) of many types of workload materials.

APPROXIMATE WEIGHT OF WORKLOAD MATERIALS

MATERIAL	LOW WEIGHT OR DENSITY 1,100 KG/M³ (1,850 LB/YD³), OR LESS	MEDIUM WEIGHT OR DENSITY 1,600 KG/M³ (2,700 LB/YD³), OR LESS	HIGH WEIGHT OR DENSITY 2,000 KG/M³ (3,370 LB/YD³), OR LESS
Charcoal	401 kg/m³ (695 lb/yd³)	----------	----------
Coke, blast furnace size	433 kg/m³ (729 lb/yd³)	----------	----------
Coke, foundry size	449 kg/m³ (756 lb/yd³)	----------	----------
Coal, bituminous slack, piled	801 kg/m³ (1,350 lb/yd³)	----------	----------
Coal, bituminous r. of m., piled	881 kg/m³ (1,485 lb/yd³)	----------	----------
Coal, anthracite	897 kg/m³ (1,512 lb/yd3)	----------	----------
Clay, DRY, in broken lumps	1,009 kg/m³ (1,701 lb/yd³)	----------	----------
Clay, DAMP, natural bed	----------	1,746 kg/m³ (2,943 lb/yd³)	----------

MATERIAL	LOW WEIGHT OR DENSITY 1,100 KG/M^3 (1,850 LB/YD^3), OR LESS	MEDIUM WEIGHT OR DENSITY 1,600 KG/M^3 (2,700 LB/YD^3), OR LESS	HIGH WEIGHT OR DENSITY 2,000 KG/M^3 (3,370 LB/YD^3), OR LESS
Cement, Portland, DRY granular	----------	1,506 kg/m^3 (2,583 lb/yd^3)	----------
Cement, Portland, DRY clinkers	----------	1,362 kg/m^3 (2,295 lb/yd^3)	----------
Dolomite, crushed	----------	1,522 kg/m^3 (2,565 lb/yd^3)	----------
Earth, loamy, DRY, loose	----------	1,202 kg/m^3 (2,025 lb/yd^3)	----------
Earth, DRY, packed	----------	1,522 kg/m^3 (2,565 lb/y d^3)	----------
Earth, WET, muddy	----------	----------	1,762 kg/m^3 (2,970lb/yd3)
Gypsum, calcined, (heated, powder)	961kg/m^3 (1,620 lb/yd^3)	----------	----------
Gypsum, crushed to 3 inch size	----------	1,522 kg/m^3 (2,565 lb/y d^3)	----------
Gravel, DRY, packed fragments	----------	----------	1,810 kg/m^3 (3,051 lb/y d^3)
Gravel, WET, packed fragments	----------	----------	1,522 kg/m^3 (3,240 lb/y d^3)
Limestone, graded above 2	----------	1,282 kg/m^3 (2,160 lb/y d^3)	----------
Limestone, graded 1-1/2 or 2	----------	1,362 kg/m^3 (2,295 lb/y d^3)	----------
Limestone, crushed	----------	1,522 kg/m^3 (2,565 lb/y d^3)	
Limestone, fine	----------	----------	1,602 kg/m^3 (2,705 lb/y d^3)
Phosphate, rock	----------	1,282 kg/m^3 (2,160 lb/y d^3)	----------

MATERIAL	LOW WEIGHT OR DENSITY 1,100 KG/M^3 (1,850 LB/YD^3), OR LESS	MEDIUM WEIGHT OR DENSITY 1,600 KG/M^3 (2,700 LB/YD^3), OR LESS	HIGH WEIGHT OR DENSITY 2,000 KG/M^3 (3,370 LB/YD^3), OR LESS
Salt	929 kg/m^3 (1,566 lb/yd^3)	----------	----------
Snow, light density	529 kg/m^3 (891 lb/yd^3)	----------	----------
Sand, DRY, loose	----------	1,522 kg/m^3 (2,565 lb/yd^3)	----------
Sand, WET, packed	----------	----------	1,922 kg/m^3 (3,240 lb/yd^3)
Shale, broken	----------	1,362 kg/m^3 (2,295 lb/y d^3)	----------
Sulphur, broken	529 kg/m^3 (891 lb/yd^3)	----------	----------

IMPORTANT

Weights are approximations of estimated average volume and mass. Exposure to rain, snow or ground water; settling or compaction due to overhead weight and chemical or industrial processing or changes due to thermal or chemical transformations could all increase value of weights listed in table..

GENERAL MAINTENANCE

GENERAL MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

WELDING PRECAUTIONS AND GUIDELINES

IMPORTANT

To avoid accidents, personal injury and the possibility of causing damage to the machine or to components, welding must only be performed by properly trained and qualified personnel, who possess the correct certification (when required) for the specific welding fabrication or specialized repair being performed.

⚠ WARNING!

Structural elements of the machine may be built from a variety of steels. These could contain unique alloys or may have been heat treated to obtain particular strength characteristics. It is extremely important that welding repairs on these types of steel are performed with the proper procedures and equipment. If repairs are performed incorrectly, structural weakening or other damage to the machine (that is not always readily visible) could be caused. Always consult HCE After Sales Service before welding on integral components (loader arm, frames, car body, track frames, turntable, attachment, etc.) of the machine. It is possible that some types of structurally critical repairs may require Magnetic Particle or Liquid Penetrant testing, to make sure there are no hidden cracks or damage, before the machine can be returned to service.

⚠ CAUTION!

Always perform welding procedures with the proper safety equipment on hand. Adequate ventilation and a dry work area are absolutely essential. Keep a fire extinguisher nearby and always wear protective clothing and the recommended type of eye protection.

⚠ CAUTION!

Observe the following safety precautions:

1. **Use extra caution and adequate safety shielding when welding near fuel and oil tanks, batteries, hydraulic piping lines or other fire hazards.**
2. **Never weld when the engine is running. Battery cables must be disconnected before the welding procedure is started.**
3. **Never weld on a wet or damp surface. The presence of moisture causes hydrogen embrittlement and structural weakening of the weld.**
4. **If welding procedures are being performed near cylinder rods, operator's cab window areas or any other assemblies that could be damaged by weld spatters, use adequate shielding protection in front of the assembly.**
5. **During equipment setup, always attach ground cables directly to the area or component being welded to prevent arcing through bearings, bushings, or spacers.**
6. **Always use correct welding rods for the type of weld being performed and observe recommended precautions and time constraints. AWS Class E7018 welding rods for low alloy to medium carbon steel must be used within two hours after removal from a freshly opened container. Class E11018G welding rods for T-1 and other higher strength steel must be used within 1/2 hour.**

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM - GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

Always maintain oil level in the system at recommended levels. Assemblies that operate under heavy loads, at high speed, with extremely precise dimensional tolerances between moving parts - pistons and cylinders, or shoes and swash plates, for example - can be severely damaged if oil supply runs dry.

Assemblies can be run dry and damaged severely in a very short time when piping or hoses are disconnected to repair leaks and/or replace damaged components. Hoses that are inadvertently switched during disassembly (inlet for outlet and vice versa), air introduced into the system or assemblies that are low on oil due to neglect or careless maintenance, could all produce sufficient fluid loss to cause damage.

When starting the engine (particularly after long layoff or storage intervals), make sure that all hydraulic controls and operating circuits are in neutral, or "OFF." That will prevent pumps or other components that may be temporarily oil-starved from being run under a load.

Replacement of any hydraulic system component could require thorough cleaning, flushing, and some amount of pre-filling with fresh, clean oil if the protective seal on replacement parts has obviously been broken or if seal integrity may have been compromised. When protective seals are removed before installation and reassembly, inspect all replacement parts carefully, before they are installed. If the replacement part is bone dry (with no trace of factory pre-lube) or has been contaminated by dirt or by questionable oils, flushing and pre-filling with clean hydraulic fluid is recommended.

Vibration, irregular or difficult movement or unusual noise from any part of the hydraulic system could be an indication of air in the system (and many other types of problems). As a general precaution (and to help minimize the risk of potential long-term damage), allow the engine to run at no-load idle speed immediately after initial start-up. Hydraulic fluid will circulate, releasing any air that may have been trapped in the system before load demands are imposed.

A daily walk-around pre-start equipment safety inspection, including a quick visual scan for any exterior evidence of leaking hydraulic fluid, can help extend the service life of system components.

IMPORTANT

Hydraulic system operating conditions (repetitive cycling, heavy work loads, fluid circulating under high pressure) make it extremely critical that dust, grit or any other type of contamination be kept out of the system. Observe fluid and filter change maintenance interval recommendations and always pre-clean any exterior surface of the system before it is exposed to air. For example, the reservoir filler cap and neck area, hoses that have to be disassembled, and the covers and external surfaces of filter canisters should all be cleaned before disassembly.

MAINTENANCE SERVICE AND REPAIR PROCEDURE

GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

Fluid level and condition should always be checked whenever any other type of maintenance service or repair is being performed.

NOTE: *If the unit is being used in an extreme temperature environment (in sub-freezing climates or in high temperature, high humidity tropical conditions), frequent purging of moisture condensation from the hydraulic reservoir drain tap should be a regular and frequent part of the operating routine. In more moderate, temperate climates, draining reservoir sediment and moisture may not be required more than once or twice every few months.*

Inspect drained oil and used filters for signs of abnormal coloring or visible fluid contamination at every oil change. Abrasive grit or dust particles will cause discoloration and darkening of the fluid. Visible accumulations of dirt or grit could be an indication that filter elements are overloaded (and will require more frequent replacement) or that disintegrating bearings or other component failures in the hydraulic circuit may be imminent or have already occurred. Open the drain plugs on the main pump casings and check and compare drain oil in the pumps. Look for evidence of grit or metallic particles.

Vibration or unusual noise during operation could be an indication of air leaking into the circuit (Refer to the appropriate Troubleshooting section for component or unit for procedures.), or it may be evidence of a defective pump. The gear-type pilot pump could be defective, causing low pilot pressure, or a main pump broken shoe or piston could be responsible.

NOTE*: If equipped, indicated operating pressure, as shown on the multidisplay digital gauge on the Instrument Panel ("F-Pump" and "R-Pump") will be reduced as a result of a mechanical problem inside the pump. However, pressure loss could also be due to cavitation or air leakage, or other faults in the hydraulic system.*

Check the exterior case drain oil in the main pumps. If no metallic particles are found, make sure there is no air in the system. Unbolt and remove the tank return drain line from the top part of the swing motor, both travel motors and each main pump. If there is air in any one of the drain lines, carefully pre-fill the assembly before bolting together the drain line piping connections. Run the system at low rpm.

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM CLEANLINESS AND OIL LEAKS

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS FOR HYDRAULIC SYSTEM SERVICE

Whenever maintenance, repairs or any other type of troubleshooting or service is being performed, it's important to remember that the hydraulic system - including both the interior and exterior surfaces of assemblies, and every drop of operating fluid - must be protected from contamination.

Dust and other foreign contaminants are major contributors to premature wear in hydraulic circuits. The narrow tolerances, rapidly moving parts and high operating pressures of the system require that fluid be kept as clean as possible. The performance and dependability of the machine (and the service lift of individual components) can be noticeably reduced if proper precautions are not observed:

- Use a safe, noncombustible, evaporative-type, low-residue solvent and thoroughly clean exterior surfaces of assemblies before any part of the circuit is opened up or disassembled.

  NOTE: *It's just as important to clean the cap and reservoir top before routine fluid changes or quick checks as it is before major repairs. (Accumulated dirt attracts moisture, oil and other fluids - and more dirt.)*
- Keep dismantled parts covered during disassembly. Use clean caps, plugs or tape to protect the disconnected openings of flanges, manifolds and piping.
- Do not allow cleaning solvents or other fluids to mix with the oil in the system. Use clean oil to flush any traces of solvent or other residue before reassembly.
- If metal or rubber fragments are found in the system, flush and replace all fluid in the system and troubleshoot the circuit to identify the source of contamination.

IMPORTANT
Make sure that cleaning solvents will be compatible with rubber materials used in the hydraulic system. Many petroleum based compounds can cause swelling, softening, or other deterioration of system sealing elements, such as O-rings, caps and other seals.

OIL LEAKAGE PRECAUTIONS

Oil that is visibly seeping from joints or seals should always serve as a "red flag" alarm.

Leaks must alert the machine operator and maintenance crew that air, water and dirt have an open, free passageway through which to enter the circuit. Harsh, corrosive salt air, freezing and thawing condensation cycles and working environments that are full of fine dust are especially hazardous. Clogging of valve spools or external piping (especially pilot circuit piping) can gradually diminish or very suddenly put a complete stop to normal hydraulic function. You can prevent having to make these types of repairs by following recommended assembly procedures:

1. Use new O-rings and oil seals whenever hydraulic assemblies are rebuilt.
2. Prepare joint surfaces before assembly by checking alignment and flatness. Clean and repair corrosion or any other damage.
3. Follow bolt torque recommendations and all other assembly requirements

NOTE: *Grease lip seals before assembly*.

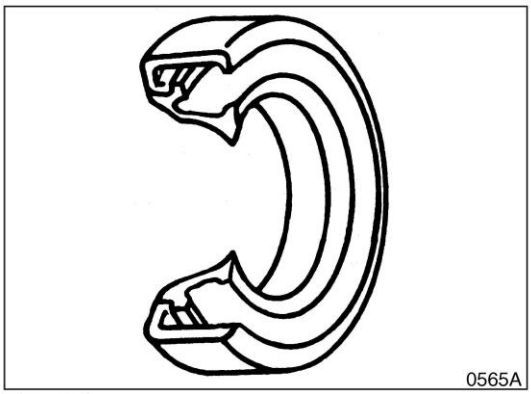


Figure 1

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

GENERAL GUIDELINES

All parts must be clean to permit an effective inspection. During assembly, it is very important that no dirt or foreign material enters unit being assembled. Even minute particles can cause malfunction of close fitting parts such as thrust bearing, matched parts, etc.

⚠ WARNING!
Care should be exercised to avoid inhalation of vapors, exposure to skin and creating fire hazards when using solvent type cleaners.

1. Clean all metal parts thoroughly using a suitable cleaning fluid. It is recommended that parts be immersed in cleaning fluid and moved up and down slowly until all oils, lubricants, and/or foreign materials are dissolved and parts are thoroughly clean.
2. For bearings that can be removed, soak them in a suitable cleaning fluid for a minute or two, then remove bearings from cleaning fluid and strike flat against a block of wood to dislodge solidified particles of lubricant. Immerse again in cleaning fluid to flush out particles. Repeat above operation until bearings are thoroughly clean. To dry bearings, use moisture-free compressed air. Be careful to direct air stream across bearing to avoid spinning bearings that are not lubricated. DO NOT SPIN BEARINGS WHEN DRYING; bearings may be rotated slowly by hand to facilitate drying process.
3. Carefully inspect all bearing rollers, cages and cups for wear, chipping or nicks to determine condition. Do not replace a bearing cone or cup individually without replacing mating cup or cone at the same time. After inspection, dip bearings in light weight oil and wrap in clean lintless cloth or paper to protect them until installation.

   For those bearings that are to be inspected in place; inspect bearings for roughness of rotation, scoring, pitting, cracked or chipped races. If any of these defects are found, replace bearings. Also inspect defective bearing housing and/or shaft for grooved, galled or burred conditions that indicate bearing has been turning in its housing or on its shaft.
4. It is more economical to replace oil seals, O-rings, sealing rings, gaskets and snap rings when unit is disassembled than waiting for premature failures; refer to latest Micro Fiche and/or Parts Book for replacement items. Be extremely careful when installing sealing members, to avoid cutting or

scratching. Curling under of any seal lip will seriously impair its efficiency. Apply a thin coat of Loctite #120 to outer diameter, of metal casing, on oil seals to assure an oil tight fit into retainer. Use extreme care not to get Loctite on lips of oil seals. If this happens, that portion of the seal will become brittle and allow leakage.

When replacing lip type seals, make sure spring loaded side is towards oil to be sealed.

5. If available, use magna-flux or similar process for checking for cracks that are not visible to the eye. Examine teeth on all gears carefully for wear, pitting, chipping, nicks, cracks or scores. Replace all gears showing cracks or spots where case hardening has worn through. Small nicks may be removed with suitable hone. Inspect shafts and quills to make certain they have not been sprung, bent, or splines twisted and that shafts are true.

   NOTE: Spline *wear is not considered detrimental except where it affects tightness of splined parts.*

   Inspect thrust washers for distortion, scores, burs, and wear. Replace thrust washer if defective or worn.

6. Inspect bores and bearing surfaces of cast parts and machined surfaces for scratches, wear, grooves and dirt. Remove any scratches and burrs with crocus cloth. Remove foreign material. Replace any parts that are deeply grooved or scratched which would affect their operation.

BEARING INSPECTION

The conditions of the bearing are vital to the smooth and efficient operation of the machinery. When any component containing bearings is disassembled, always carefully examine the condition of the bearings and all of its components for wear and damage.

Once the bearing is removed, clean all parts thoroughly using a suitable cleaning solution. If the bearing is excessively dirty soak the bearing assembly in a light solution and move the bearing around until all lubricants and or foreign materials are dissolved and the parts are thoroughly clean.

When drying bearings, moisture free compressed air can be used. Be careful not to direct the air in a direction which will force the bearing to dry spin while not being properly lubricated.

After the bearings have been cleaned and dried, carefully inspect all bearing rollers, cages and cups for wear, chipping or nicks. If the bearing cannot be removed and is to be inspected in place, check foe roughness of rotation, scoring, pitting, cracked or chipped races. If any of these defects are found replace the whole bearing assembly. NEVER replace the bearing alone without replacing the mating cup or the cone at the same time.

After inspection lightly coat the bearing and related parts with oil and wrap in a clean lintless cloth or paper and protect them from moisture and other foreign materials until installation.

It is also important to inspect the bearing housing and/or shaft for grooved, galled or burred conditions that indicate that the bearing has been turning in its housing or on its shaft.

If available, use magna-flux or similar process for checking for cracks that are not visible to the naked eye.

The following illustrations will aid in identifying and diagnosing some of the bearing related problems.

NOTE: *The illustrations will only show tapered roller bearings, but the principles of identifying, diagnosing and remedying the defects are common to all styles and types of bearings.*

Normal Bearing

Smooth even surfaces with no discoloration or marks.

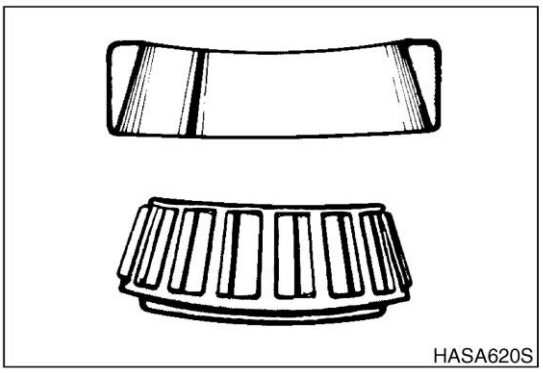


Figure 2

Bent Cage

Cage damage due to improper handling or tool usage.

Replace bearing.

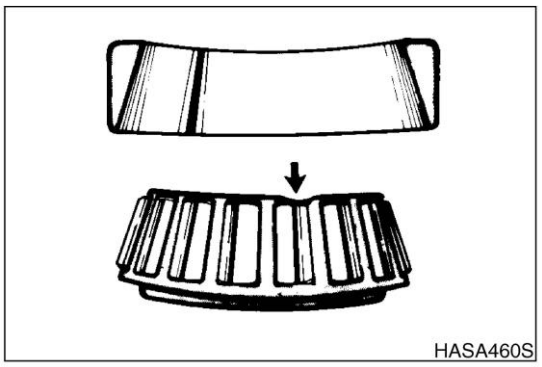


Figure 3

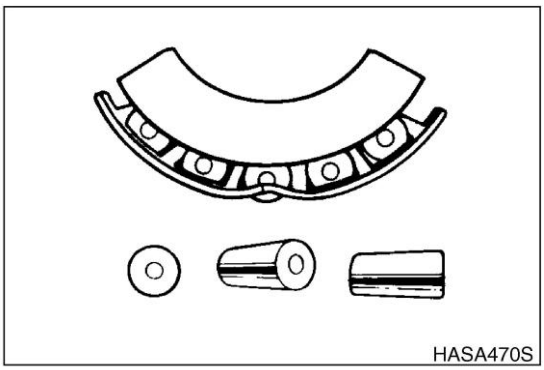


Figure 4

Galling

Metal smears on roller ends due to over heat, lubricant failure or overload.

Replace bearing - check seals and check for proper lubrication.

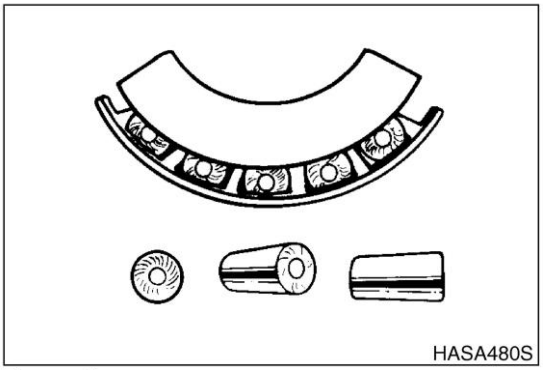


Figure 5

Abrasive Step Wear

Pattern on roller ends caused by fine abrasives.

Clean all parts and housings, check all parts and housings, check seals and bearings and replace if leaking, rough or noisy.

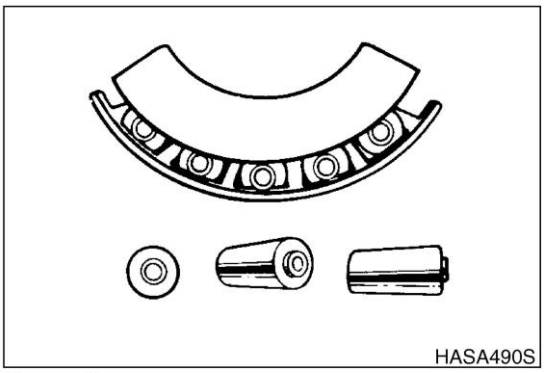


Figure 6

Etching

Bearing surfaces appear gray or grayish black in color with related etching away of material usually at roller spacing.

Replace bearings - check seals and check for proper lubrication.

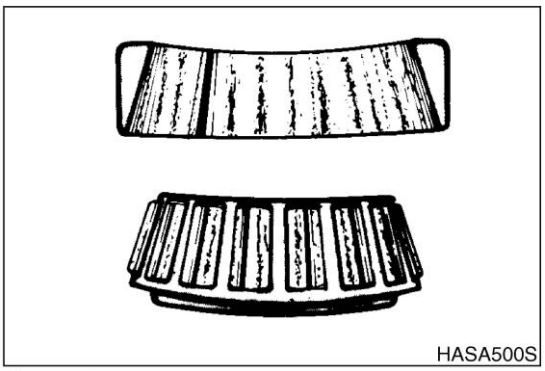


Figure 7

Misalignment

Outer race misalignment due to foreign object.

Clean related parts and replace bearing. Make sure races are properly seated.

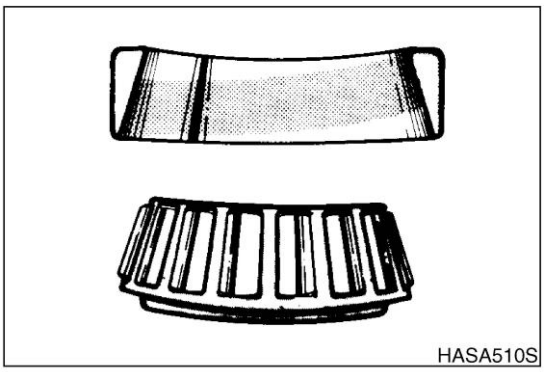


Figure 8

Indentations

Surface depressions on race and rollers caused by hard particles of foreign materials.

Clean all parts and housings, check seals and replace bearings if rough or noisy.

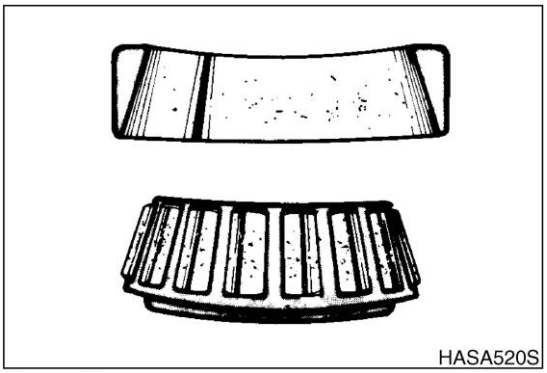


Figure 9

Fatigue Spalling

Flaking of surface metal resulting from fatigue.

Replace bearing - clean all related parts.

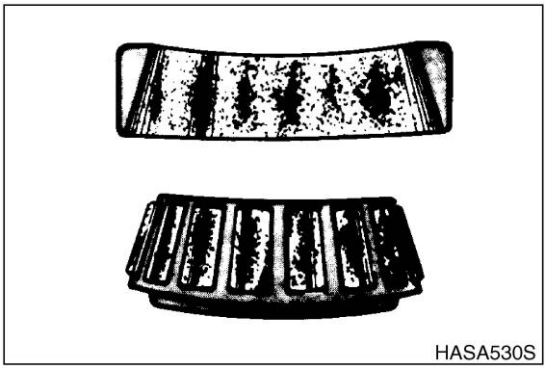


Figure 10

Brinelling

Surface indentations in raceway caused by rollers either under impact loading or vibration while the bearing is not rotating.

Replace bearing if rough or noisy.

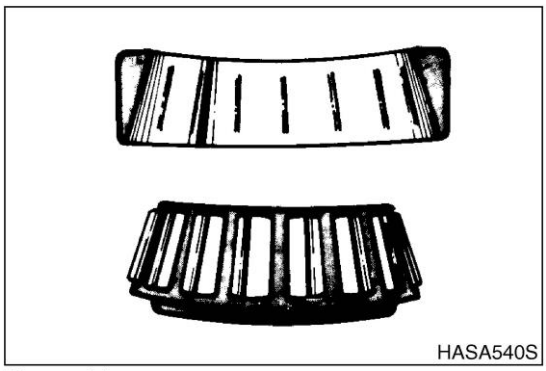


Figure 11

Cage Wear

Wear around outside diameter of cage and roller pockets caused by abrasive material and inefficient lubrication.

Replace bearings - check seals.

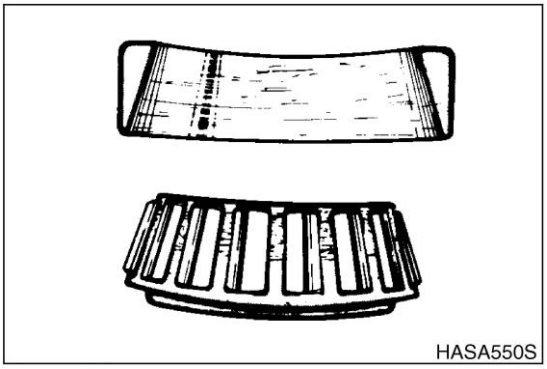


Figure 12

Abrasive Roller Wear

Pattern on races and rollers caused by fine abrasives.

Clean all parts and housings, check seals and bearings and replace if leaking, rough or noisy.

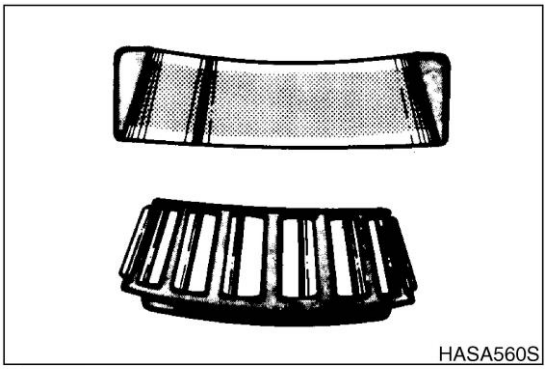


Figure 13

Cracked Inner Race

Race cracked due to improper fit, cocking or poor bearing seat.

Replace all parts and housings, check seals and bearings and replace if leaking.

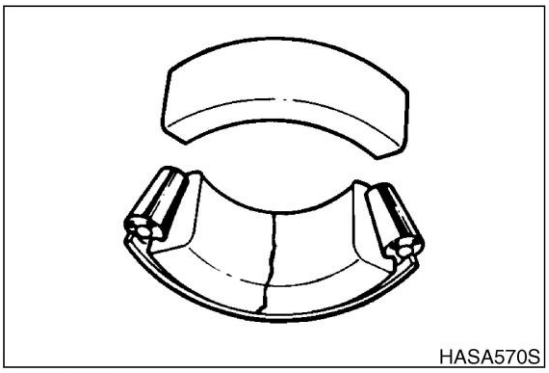


Figure 14

Smears

Smearing of metal due to slippage caused by poor fitting, lubrication, overheating, overloads or handling damage.

Replace bearings, clean related parts and check for proper fit and lubrication.

Replace shaft if damaged.

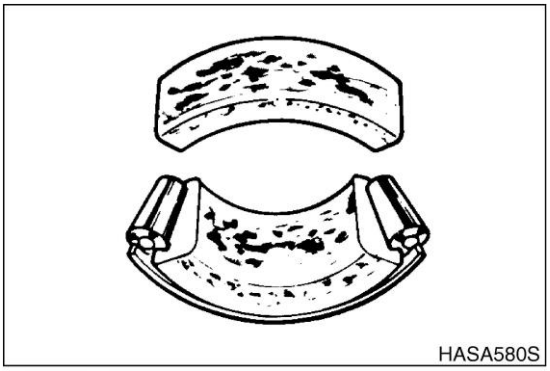


Figure 15

Frottage

Corrosion set up by small relative movement of parts with no lubrication.

Replace bearing. Clean all related parts. Check seals and check for proper lubrication.

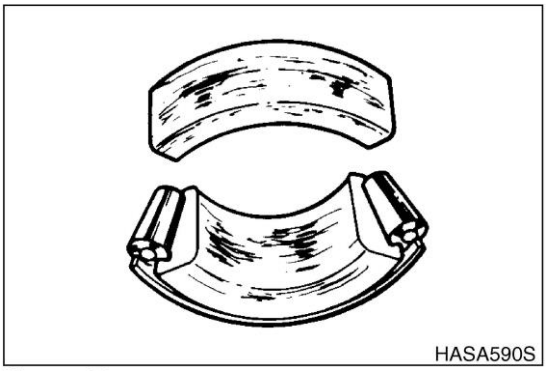


Figure 16

Heat Discoloration

Heat discoloration can range from faint yellow to dark blue resulting from overload or incorrect lubrication.

Excessive heat can cause softening of races or rollers.

To check for loss of temper on races or rollers, a simple file test may be made. A file drawn over a tempered part will grab and cut metal, whereas a file drawn over a hard part will glide readily with no metal cutting.

Replace bearing if over heating damage is indicated.

Check seals and other related parts for damage.

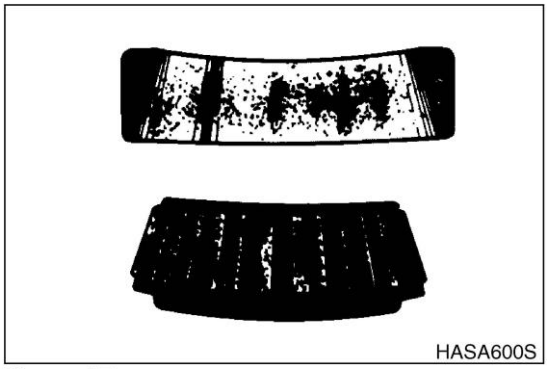


Figure 17

Stain Discoloration

Discoloration can range from light brown to black caused by incorrect lubrication or moisture.

if the stain can be removed by light polishing or if no evidence of overheating is visible, the bearing can be reused.

Check seals and other related parts for damage.

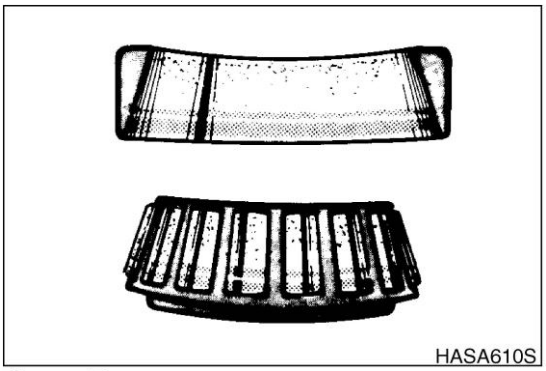


Figure 18

STANDARD TORQUES

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

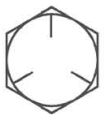
TABLE OF CONTENTS

TORQUE VALUES FOR STANDARD METRIC FASTENERS

NOTE: *The units for the torque values are kg•m (ft lb)*.

Dia. x Pitch (mm)	Grade										
	3.6 (4A)	**4.6 (4D)**	**4.8 (4S)**	**5.6 (5D)**	**5.8 (5S)**	**6.6 (6D)**	**6.8 (6S)**	**6.9 (6G)**	**8.8 (8G)**	**10.9 (10K)**	**12.9 (12K)**
M5 x Std.	0.15 (1.08)	0.16 (1.15)	0.25 (1.80)	0.22 (1.59)	0.31 (2.24)	0.28 (2.02)	0.43 (3.11)	0.48 (3.47)	0.50 (3.61)	0.75 (5.42)	0.90 (6.50)
M6 x Std.	0.28 (2.02)	0.30 (2.16)	0.55 (3.25)	0.40 (2.89)	0.55 (3.97)	0.47 (3.39)	0.77 (5.56)	0.85 (6.14)	0.90 (6.50)	1.25 (9.04)	1.50 (10.84)
M7 x Std.	0.43 (3.11)	0.46 (3.32)	0.70 (5.06)	0.63 (4.55)	0.83 (6.00)	0.78 (5.64)	1.20 (8.67)	1.30 (9.40)	1.40 (10.12)	1.95 (14.10)	2.35 (1.99)
M8 x Std.	0.70 (5.06)	0.75 (5.42)	1.10 (7.95)	1.00 (7.23)	1.40 (10.12)	1.25 (9.04)	1.90 (13.74)	2.10 (15.18)	2.20 (15.91)	3.10 (22.42)	3.80 (27.48)
M8 x 1	0.73 (5.28)	0.80 (5.78)	1.20 (8.67)	1.00 (7.23)	1.50 (10.84)	1.35 (9.76)	2.10 (15.18)	2.30 (16.63)	2.40 (17.35)	3.35 (24.23)	4.10 (29.65)
M10 x Std.	1.35 (9.76)	1.40 (10.12)	2.20 (15.91)	1.90 (13.74)	2.70 (19.52)	2.35 (19.99)	3.70 (26.76)	4.20 (30.37)	4.40 (31.18)	6.20 (44.84)	7.20 (52.07)
M10 x 1	1.50 (10.84)	1.60 (11.57)	2.50 (18.08)	2.10 (15.18)	3.10 (22.42)	2.80 (20.25)	4.30 (31.10)	4.90 (35.44)	5.00 (36.16)	7.00 (50.63)	8.40 (60.75)
M12 x Std.	2.40 (17.35)	2.50 (18.08)	3.70 (26.76)	3.30 (23.86)	4.70 (33.99)	4.20 (30.37)	6.30 (45.56)	7.20 (52.07)	7.50 (54.24)	10.50 (75.94)	12.50 (90.41)
M12 x 1.5	2.55 (18.44)	2.70 (19.52)	4.00 (28.93)	3.50 (25.31)	5.00 (36.16)	4.50 (32.54)	6.80 (49.18)	7.70 (55.69)	8.00 (57.86)	11.20 (81.00)	13.40 (96.92)
M14 x Std.	3.70 (26.76)	3.90 (28.20)	6.00 (13.23)	5.20 (37.61)	7.50 (54.24)	7.00 (50.63)	10.00 (72.33)	11.50 (83.17)	12.00 (86.79)	17.00 (122.96)	20.00 (144.66)
M14 x 1.5	4.10 (29.65)	4.30 (31.10)	6.60 (47.73)	5.70 (41.22)	8.30 (60.03)	7.50 (54.24)	11.10 (80.28)	12.50 (90.41)	13.00 (94.02)	18.50 (11.26)	22.00 (158.12)
M16 x Std.	5.60 (40.50)	6.00 (43.39)	9.00 (65.09)	8.00 (57.86)	11.50 (83.17)	10.50 (75.94)	15.50 (112.11)	17.90 (129.47)	18.50 (133.81)	26.00 (188.05)	31.00 (224.22)
M16 x 1.5	6.20 (44.84)	6.50 (47.01)	9.70 (70.16)	8.60 (62.20)	12.50 (90.41)	11.30 (81.73)	17.00 (122.96)	19.50 (141.04)	20.00 (144.66)	28.00 (202.52)	35.50 (256.77)
M18 x Std.	7.80 (56.41)	8.30 (60.03)	12.50 (90.41)	11.00 (79.56)	16.00 (115.72)	14.50 (104.87)	21.00 (151.89)	27.50 (198.90)	28.50 (206.14)	41.00 (296.55)	43.00 (311.01)
M18 x 1.5	9.10 (65.82)	9.50 (68.71)	14.40 (104.15)	12.50 (90.41)	18.50 (133.81)	16.70 (120.79)	24.50 (177.20)	27.50 (198.90)	28.50 (206.14)	41.00 (296.55)	49.00 (354.41)
M20 x Std.	11.50 (83.17)	12.00 (86.79)	20.50 (148.27)	18.00 (130.19)	25.00 (180.82)	22.50 (162.74)	35.00 (253.15)	39.50 (285.70)	41.00 (296.55)	58.00 (419.51)	68.00 (491.84)
M20 x 1.5	12.80 (92.58)	13.50 (97.64)	20.50 (148.27)	18.00 (130.19)	25.00 (180.82)	22.50 (162.74)	35.00 (253.15)	39.50 (285.70)	41.00 (296.55)	58.00 (419.51)	68.00 (491.84)
M22 x Std.	15.50 (112.11)	16.00 (115.72)	24.50 (177.20)	21.00 (151.89)	30.00 (216.99)	26.00 (188.05)	42.00 (303.78)	46.00 (332.71)	49.00 (354.41)	67.00 (484.61)	75.00 (542.47)
M22 x 1.5	17.00 (122.96)	18.50 (133.81)	28.00 (202.52)	24.00 (173.59)	34.00 (245.92)	29.00 (209.75)	47.00 (339.95)	52.00 (44.76)	56.00 (405.04)	75.00 (542.47)	85.00 (614.80)
M24 x Std.	20.50 (148.27)	21.50 (155.50)	33.00 (238.68)	27.00 (195.29)	40.00 (289.32)	34.00 (245.92)	55.00 (397.81)	58.00 (419.51)	63.00 (455.67)	82.00 (593.10)	92.00 (655.43)
M24 x 1.5	23.00 (166.35)	35.00 (253.15)	37.00 (267.62)	31.00 (224.22)	45.00 (325.48)	38.00 (202.52)	61.00 (441.21)	67.00 (484.61)	74.00 (535.24)	93.00 (672.66)	103.00 (744.99)

TORQUE VALUES FOR STANDARD U.S. FASTENERS

TYPE	S.A.E. GRADE	DESCRIPTION	BOLT HEAD MARKING
1	1 OR 2	WILL HAVE NO MARKINGS IN THE CENTER OF THE HEAD. Low or Medium Carbon Steel Not Heat Treated.	
5	5	WILL HAVE THREE RADIAL LINES. Quenched and Tempered Medium Carbon Steel.	
8	8	WILL HAVE 6 RADIAL LINES. Quenched and Tempered Special Carbon or Alloy Steel.	

Recommended torque, in foot pounds, for all Standard Application Nuts and Bolts, provided:

1. All thread surfaces are clean and lubricated with SAE-30 engine oil. (See Note.)
2. Joints are rigid, that is, no gaskets or compressible materials are used.
3. When reusing nuts or bolts, use minimum torque values.

NOTE: *Multiply the standard torque by:*

0.65 when finished jam nuts are used.

0.70 when Molykote, white lead or similar mixtures are used as lubricants.

0.75 when parkerized bolts or nuts are used.

0.85 when cadmium plated bolts or nuts and zinc bolts w/waxed zinc nuts are used.

0.90 when hardened surfaces are used under the nut or bolt head.

NOTE: *When reusing bolts and nuts in service, use minimum torque values.*

The following General Torque Values must be used in all cases where **SPECIAL TORQUE VALUES** are not given

NOTE: *TORQUE VALUES LISTED THROUGHOUT THIS MANUAL ARE LUBRICATED (WET) THREADS; VALUES SHOULD BE INCREASED 1/3 FOR NONLUBRICATED (DRY) THREADS.*

THREAD SIZE	HEAT TREATED MATERIAL GRADE 5 AND GRADE 8			
	GRADE 5 (3 RADIAL DASHES ON HEAD)		GRADE 8 (6 RADIAL DASHES ON HEAD)	
	FOOT POUNDS (ft lb)	NEWTON METER (N•m)	FOOT POUNDS (ft lb)	NEWTON METER (N•m)
1/4" - 20	6	8	9	12
1/4" - 28	7	9	11	15
5/16" - 18	13	18	18	24
5/16" - 24	15	20	21	28
3/8" - 16	24	33	34	46
3/8" - 24	27	37	38	52
7/16" - 14	38	52	54	73
7/16" - 20	42	57	60	81
1/2" - 13	58	79	82	111
1/2" - 20	65	88	90	122
9/16" - 12	84	114	120	163
9/16" - 18	93	126	132	179
5/8" - 11	115	156	165	224
5/8" - 18	130	176	185	251
3/4" - 10	205	278	290	393
3/4" - 16	240	312	320	434
7/8" - 9	305	414	455	617
7/8" - 14	334	454	515	698
1" - 8	455	617	695	942
1" - 14	510	691	785	1064
1 1/8" - 7	610	827	990	1342
1 1/8" - 12	685	929	1110	1505
1 1/4" - 7	860	1166	1400	1898
1 1/4" - 12	955	1295	1550	2102
1 3/8" - 6	1130	1532	1830	2481
1 3/8" - 12	1290	1749	2085	2827
1 1/2" - 6	1400	2034	2430	3295
1 1/2" - 12	1690	2291	2730	3701
1 3/4" - 5	2370	3213	3810	5166
2" - 4 1/2	3550	4813	5760	7810

NOTE: If any bolts and nuts are found loose or at values less than what the chart states, it is recommended that the loose bolt and/or nut be replaced with a new one.

TYPE 8 PHOSPHATE COATED HARDWARE

This chart provides tightening torque for general purpose applications using original equipment standard hardware as listed in the Parts Manual for the machine involved. **DO NOT SUBSTITUTE**. In most cases, original equipment standard hardware is defined as Type 8, coarse thread bolts and nuts and thru hardened flat washers (Rockwell "C" 38 - 45), all phosphate coated and assembled without supplemental lubrication (as received) condition.

The torques shown below also apply to the following:

1. Phosphate coated bolts used in tapped holes in steel or gray iron.
2. Phosphate coated bolts used with phosphate coated prevailing torque nuts (nuts with distorted threads or plastic inserts).
3. Phosphate coated bolts used with copper plated weld nuts.

Markings on bolt heads or nuts indicate material grade ONLY and are NOT to be used to determine required torque.

NOMINAL THREAD DIAMETER	STANDARD TORQUE ±10%	
	KILOGRAM METER (kg•m)	FOOT POUNDS (ft lb)
1/4"	1.1	8
5/16"	2.2	16
3/8"	3.9	28
7/16"	6.2	45
1/2"	9.7	70
9/16"	13.8	100
5/8"	19.4	140
3/4"	33.2	240
7/8"	53.9	390
1"	80.2	580
1 - 1/8"	113.4	820
1 - 1/4"	160.4	1160
1 - 3/8"	210.2	1520
1 - 1/2"	279.4	2020
1 - 3/4"	347.1	2510
2	522.8	3780

TORQUE VALUES FOR HOSE CLAMPS

The following chart provides the tightening torques for hose clamps used in all rubber applications (radiator, air cleaner, operating lever boots, hydraulic system, etc.).

CLAMP TYPE AND SIZE	TORQUE			
	RADIATOR, AIR CLEANER, BOOTS, ETC.		HYDRAULIC SYSTEM	
	KILOGRAM METER (kg•m)	INCH POUNDS (in lb)	KILOGRAM METER (kg•m)	INCH POUNDS (in lb)
"T" Bolt (Any Diameter)	0.68 - 0.72	59 - 63	-------	------
Worm Drive - Under 44 mm (1-3/4 in) Open Diameter	0.2 - 0.3	20 - 30	0.5 - 0.6	40 - 50
Worm Drive - Over 44 mm (1-3/4 in) Open Diameter	0.5 - 0.6	40 - 50	-------	------
Worm Drive - All "Ultra-Tite"	0.6 - 0.7	50 - 60	0.5 - 0.6	40 - 50

TORQUE VALUES FOR SPLIT FLANGES

The following chart provides the tightening torques for split flange connections used in hydraulic systems. Split flanges and fitting shoulders should fit squarely. Install all bolts, finger tight and then torque evenly.

NOTE: *Over torquing bolts will damage the flanges and/or bolts, which may cause leakage.*

FLANGE SIZE (*)	BOLT SIZE	BOLT TORQUE	
		KILOGRAM METER (kg•m)	INCH POUNDS (in lb)
1/2"	5/16"	2.1 - 2.5	15 - 18
3/4"	3/8"	3.0 - 3.7	22 - 27
1"	3/8"	3.7 - 4.8	27 - 35
1 - 1/4"	7/16"	4.8 - 6.2	35 - 45
1 - 1/2"	1/2"	6.4 - 8.0	46 - 58
2"	1/2"	7.6 - 9.0	55 - 65
2 - 1/2"	1/2"	10.9 - 12.6	79 - 91
3"	5/8"	19.1 - 20.7	138 - 150
3 - 1/2"	5/8"	16.2 - 18.4	117 - 133

(*) - Inside diameter of flange on end of hydraulic tube or hose fitting.

NOTE: *Values stated in chart are for Standard Pressure Series (Code 61) Split Flanges.*

TORQUE WRENCH EXTENSION TOOLS

Very large diameter, high grade fasteners (nuts, bolts, cap screws, etc.) require a great deal of turning force to achieve recommended tightening torque values.

Common problems that could occur as a result are:

- Recommended torque exceeds the measuring capacity of the torque wrench.
- Specialized sockets do not fit the adapter on the front end (nose) of the torque wrench.
- Generating adequate force on the back end (handle) of the wrench is difficult or impossible.
- Restricted access or an obstruction may make use of the torque wrench impossible.
- A unique application requires fabrication of an adapter or other special extension.

Most standard torque wrenches can be adapted to suit any one of the proceeding needs or situations, if the right extension tool is used or fabricated.

TORQUE MULTIPLICATION

A wrench extension tool can be used to increase the tightening force on a high capacity nut or bolt.

For example, doubling the distance between the bolt and the back (handle) end of the torque wrench doubles the tightening force on the bolt.

It also halves the indicated reading on the scale or dial of the torque wrench. To accurately adjust or convert indicated scale or dial readings, use the following formula:

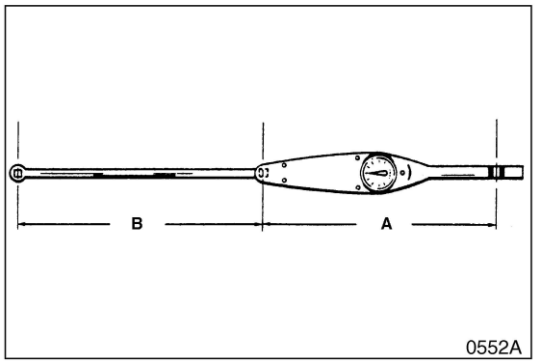


Figure 1

I = A x T / A + B where:

I = Indicated force shown on the torque wrench scale or dial.

T = Tightening force applied to the nut or bolt (actual Torque).

A = Length of the torque wrench (between the center of the nut or bolt and the center of the handle).

B = Length of the extension.

As an example, if a 12" extension is added to a 12" torque wrench, and the indicated torque on the dial reads "150 ft lb," the real force applied to the bolt is 300 ft lb:

$$I = \frac{A \times T}{A + B} = \frac{12 \times 300}{12 + 12} = \frac{3600}{24} = 150$$

NOTE: *The formula assumes that there is no added deflection or "give" in the joint between the extension and torque wrench. Readings may also be inaccurate:*

- If the extension itself absorbs some of the tightening force and starts to bend or bow out.
- If an extension has to be fabricated that is not perfectly straight (for example, an extension made to go around an obstruction, to allow access to a difficult to tighten fastener), the materials and methods used must be solid enough to transmit full tightening torque.

OTHER USES FOR TORQUE WRENCH EXTENSION TOOLS

Torque wrench extensions are sometimes made up for reasons other than increasing leverage on a fastener. For example, a torque wrench and extension can be used to measure adjustment "tightness" of a linkage or assembly. Specially fabricated extensions can be used to make very precise checks of the force required to engage or disengage a clutch mechanism, release a spring-applied brake assembly, or "take up" free play in most any movable linkage.

Once the value of the adjustment force is established, repeated checks at regular intervals can help to monitor and maintain peak operating efficiency. These types of adjustment checks are especially useful if physical measurements of linkage travel are difficult to make or will not provide the needed degree of precision and accuracy.

To allow the assembly or mechanism to accept a torque wrench, welding a nut or other adapter on the end of a linkage shaft or other leverage point will allow turning the shaft or assembly manually.

TIGHTENING TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS (METRIC)

(For coated threads, prelubricated assemblies.)

⚠ CAUTION!

Disassembly, overhaul and replacement of components on the machine, installation of new or replacement parts and/or other service-related maintenance may require the use of thread or flange sealing assembly compound.

Use the information on this page as a general guide in selecting specific formulas that will meet the particular requirements of individual assembly installations. HCE does not specifically endorse a specific manufacturer or brand name but the following table of "Loctite" applications is included for which cross-references to other makers' products should also be widely available.

IMPORTANT

Use primer "T" or "N" for all cold weather assembly of fastener adhesives, with Thread locker sealers 222, 242/243, 262, 271, 272, or 277.

I. "Loctite" Fastener Adhesives

Product	Application	Color	Removal	Break-away Cure Strength (in lb) of Sealer Alone
222	Low strength for 6 mm (1/4") or smaller fasteners.	Purple	Hand tools	45
242 or 243	Medium strength for 6 mm (1/4") and larger fasteners.	Blue	Hand tools	80
262	High strength for high grade fasteners subject to shock, stress and vibration.	Red	Heat/260°C (500°F) Remove HOT (NO solvent)	160
271	Extra high strength for fine thread fasteners up to 25 mm (1") diameter.	Red	Heat/260°C (500°F) Remove HOT	160
272	High temperature/high strength for hostile environments to 232°C (450°F).	Red	Heat/316°C (600°F) Remove HOT	180
277	Extra high strength for coarse thread fasteners 25 mm (1") diameter and larger.	Red	Heat/260°C (500°F) Remove HOT	210

II. "Loctite" Pipe Thread Sealant

Product	Application	Color	Removal	Required Setup
545	"No-filler/non-clog" formula for high-pressure hydraulic systems. Over-application will not restrict or foul system components.	Purple	Hand tools	4 Hours (or 1/2 hour with Locquic "T" Primer)
656	Solvent-resistant, higher viscosity tapered thread sealer.	White	Hand tools	4 Hours (or 1/2 hour with Locquic "T" Primer)

III. "Loctite" gasket/flange sealer

Product	Application	Color	Notes
518	Gasket eliminator specifically made for aluminum flanges/surfaces. For hydraulic systems to 34,475 kPa (5,000 psi).	Red	Use Locquic "N" primer for fast (1/2 - 4 hours) setup. Unprimed setup 4 - 24 hours.
504	Low pressure/wide-gap gasket eliminator compound. Fills gaps to 0.0012 mm (0.030"), cures to rigid seal.	Orange	Use Locquic "N" primer for faster (1/2 - 4 hours) setup. Unprimed setup 4 - 24 hours.
515	General purpose, fast setup, flexible-cure gasket eliminator. For nonrigid assemblies subject to shock, vibration or deflection.	Purple	Use Locquic "N" primer for faster (1/4 - 2 hours) setup. Unprimed setup 1 - 12 hours.

IV. "Loctite" retaining compounds

Product	Application	Color	Notes
609	For bushings, sleeves, press-fit bearings, splines and collars. For gaps to 0.0002 mm (0.005"), temperatures to 121°C (250°F).	Green	Use Locquic "N" primer for increased bond strength and all cold temperature applications.
620	For high temperatures to 232°C (450°F).	Green	Same as 609, above.
680	For high strength bonds and tight clearance gaps, to 0.00008 mm (0.002").	Green	Same as 609, above.

V. "Loctite" Adhesives

Product	Application	Color	Notes
380	Black Max instant adhesive for shock and vibration-resistant bonds.	Black	May take 120 hours to reach full cure strength.
454	Adhesive for porous surfaces.	Clear	Full strength in 24 hours.
480	Increased strength (+50%), shock and vibration-resistant.	Black	Full strength in 24 hours.

UPPER STRUCTURE

COUNTERWEIGHT

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Specifications

NOTE: ***Weight***

	Weight
	1568 kg (3,457 lb)
(Long Boom)	1848 kg (4,074 lb)

Counterweight

1. Parts list

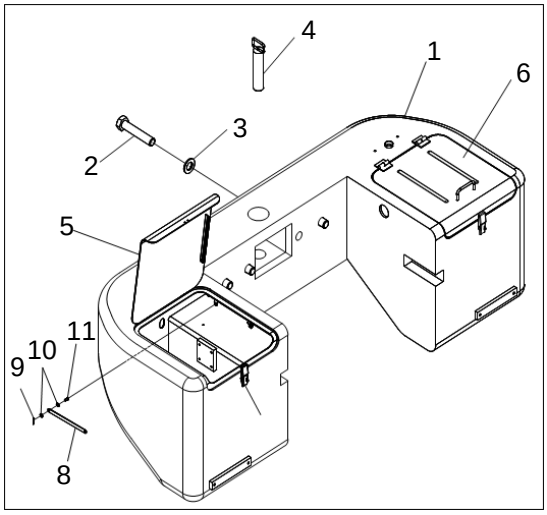


Fig. 1

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	COUNTERWEIGHT	7	LOCK
2	BOLT	8	PLATE
3	WASHER;HARDEN	9	PIN;SPLIT
4	PIN	10	WASHER;PLAIN
5	COVER(R,H)	11	PIN
6	COVER(L,H)		

2. TORQUE

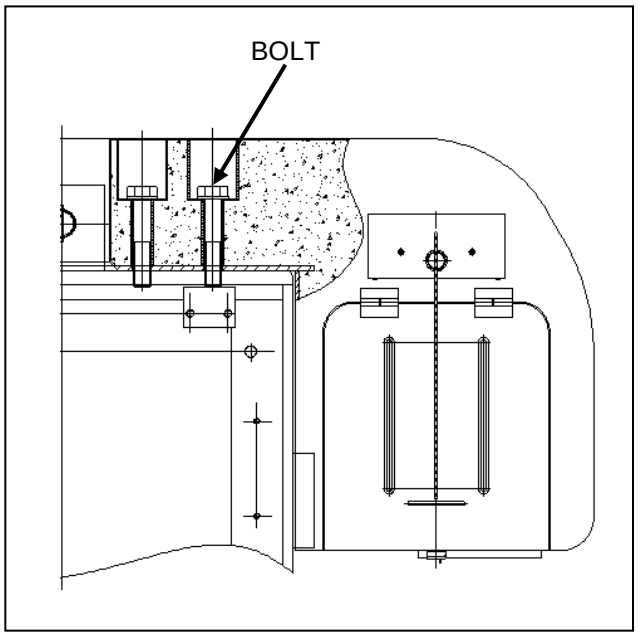


Fig. 2

NOTE: *1) Tighten bolt to torque value list in the following table.*

100 kg • m (726 ft lb)

SP002341

HYDRAULIC OIL TANK

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

PARTS LIST

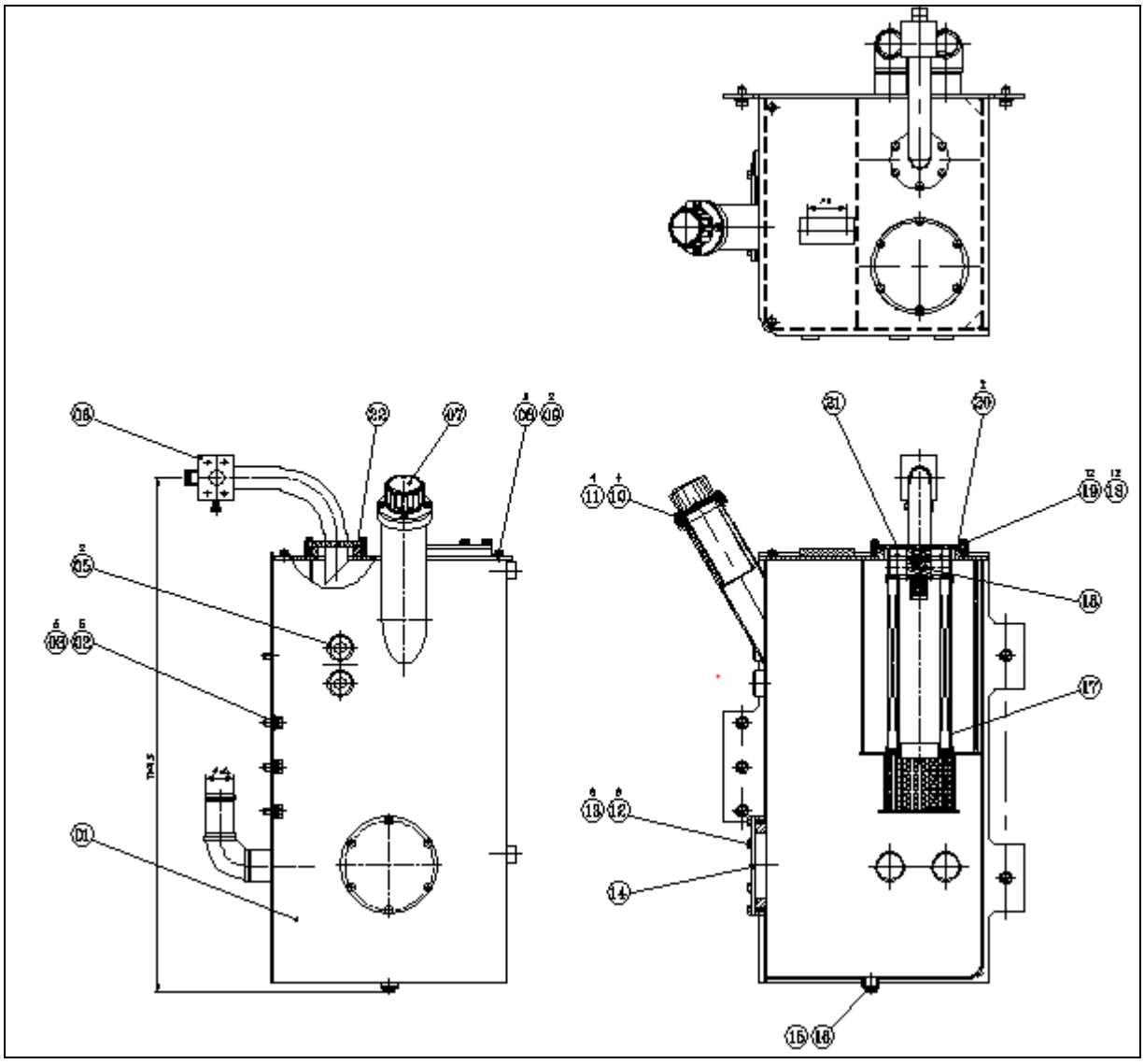


Figure 1

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
01	Oil Tank	06	Drain Plug
02	Cover	07	Return Filter
03	Return Pipe	08	Spring
04	Level Gauge	09	Air Breather
05	Flange		

SPECIFICATIONS

	HL667VL
TYPE	Pressure seal
Capability (sys)	177 L
Breather	
Starting pressure	0.035MPa
Return filter	
Filter precision	12μ
Flow	800L/min
Pressure descending	≤0.05 MPa

LOWER STRUCTURE AND CHASSIS

CENTER JOINT (ARTICULATION JOINT)

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Description

The loader frame is an articulated type: the front frame is joined to the rear frame with two hinge pins around which the loader pivots for steering.

⚠ CAUTION!

When the loader is steered, the area near center hinge pins becomes so narrow that you may get caught between front and rear frames. Before trying to service the loader, make sure to set frame lock plate.

Prior to moving (traveling) the loader, make sure the frame lock plate is set to original position.

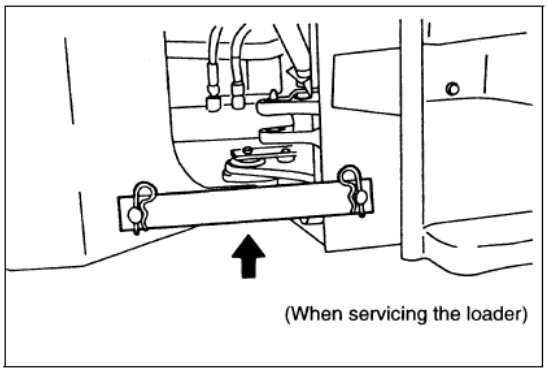
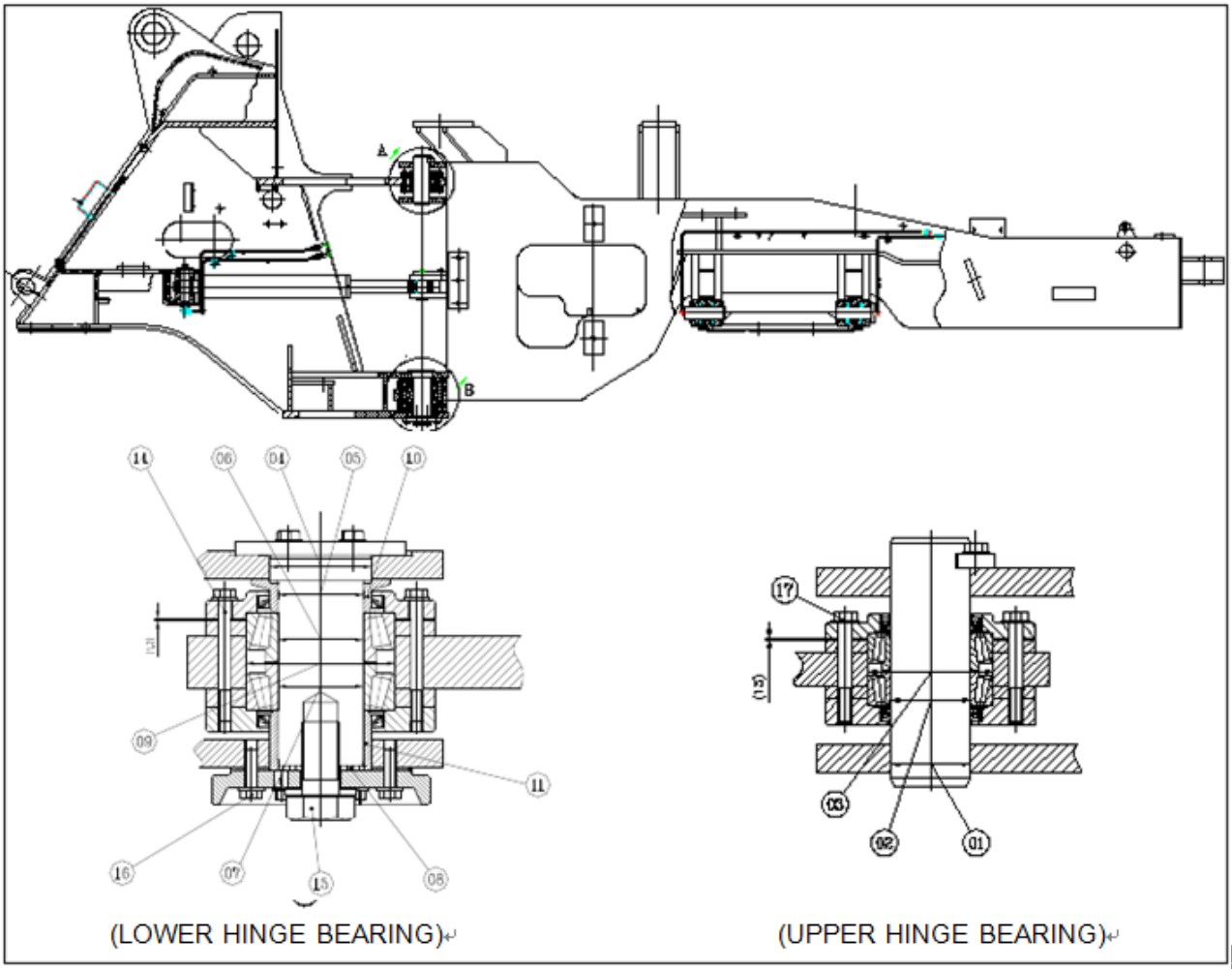


Figure 1

Maintenance Standard

Figure 2



UNIT : *mm*

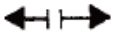
No.	Check item	Criteria					Remedy
1	Clearance between upper hinge pin and rear frame	Standard size	Tolerance		Standard Clearance	Clearance limit	Replace
		70	0	+0.174	0.1-0.193	-	
			-0.019	+0.1			
2	Clearance between upper hinge pin and bearing	70	0	0	-0.015-0.019	-	
			-0.019	-0.015			
3	Clearance between bearing and front frame	110	0	0	-0.035-0.018	-	
			-0.018	-0.035			
4	Clearance between lower hinge pin and front frame	95	0	+0.307	0.22-0.394	-	
			-0.087	+0.22			
5	Clearance between lower hinge pin and spacer(small)	80	0	+0.434	0.36-0.453	-	
			-0.019	+0.36			
6	Clearance between lower hinge pin and bearing	80	0	0	-0.015-0.019	-	
			-0.019	-0.015			
7	Clearance between lower hinge pin and spacer(large)	80	0	+0.434	0.36-0.453	-	
			-0.019	+0.36			
8	Clearance between front frame and spacer(large)	95	0	+0.307	0.22-0.394	-	
			-0.087	+0.22			
9	Clearance between lower hinge bearing and rear frame	140	0	0	-0.04-0.02	-	
			-0.02	-0.04			
10	Height of lower hinge spacer(small)	$31.5^{0}_{-0.1}$	-	-	-	0	
11	Height of lower hinge spacer(large)	$54.5^{0}_{-0.1}$	-	-	-	0	
12	Shim thickness for lower hinge and cap(rear frame)	0.5~1.0	-	-	-	-	
13	Shim thickness for upper hinge and cap(front frame)	0.5~1.0					
14	Tightening torque of lower hinge cap mounting bolt(M12)	When adjusting with shim: 4±0.2 kg·m					Retighten
		Final value: 13±1.0 kg·m					
15	Tightening torque of lower hinge cap mounting bolt(M36)	When adjusting with shim: 30kg·m					
		Final value: 110±1.0 kg·m					
16	Tightening torque of lower hinge pin mounting bolt	30±1.0 kg·m					
17	Tightening torque of upper hinge cap mounting bolt	30±1.0 kg·m					

ENGINE AND DRIVE TRAIN

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DESCRIPTION OF THE ILLUSTRATION MARKS

	Dismounting (assembly parts)		Oil coating
	Fitting (assembly parts)		Special tools, such as K --- ---, KUKKO, --- ---, TS --- ---W
	Marking (do before disassemble, adjust when assemble)		Pay attention to assembly direction
	Filling- full charge (such as lubricating oil, cooling water etc.)		Deflating
	Draining off (lubricating oil or cooling water)		Unloosing (such as: unloose clamping equipment)
	(loose-proof-fixed) Coat fluid sealant		Clamping (such as: reinforcing clamp equipment)
	Accident preventing (marks for dangerous occasion)		Inspecting-adjusting (such as: tightening torque, dimension pressure and clearance)
	Replacement when reassembly		Inspecting

USAGE INSTRUCTION

OPERATING NOTICE FOR NEW DIESEL ENGINE

For construction machinery application, the engine should be running under part load(the accelerator should be controlled under 3/4 full load)during its initial 60h running.

The lubricating oil should be replaced after the primary running period, otherwise the engine parts possibly be over worn or damaged. Proper protection and maintenance will—ensure your better performance, more economical and longer service life.

Check the oil pressure gauge, temperature meter alarm indicator light and other instrument every day.

Keep daily maintenance as per this manual .

PACKAGE OPENING OF ENGINE

When opening the packing of engine, you should firstly check the surface of engine and the amount of accessories as per packing list, then proceed on as following：

1. Clean the anticorrosive coating and preservative of outer parts.
2. Drain off the seal diesel oil from fuel filters and fuel supply system(the engine is also allowed to be started before seal diesel oil draining, but not allowed to be operated at full load until the seal diesel oil of fuel supply. System has been used up and the usual fuel has been provided).
3. Turn the flywheel and inject solvent to air intake manifold till the seal oil of cylinder has been drained off.
4. As per the agreement between Weichai and the customer, the engines supplied with empty oil sumps should be filled with oil.
5. As per the agreement between Weichai and the customer, and as per customer's requirement before delivery, coolant performance should be checked if the engine has been filled up with coolant. The coolant could be remained to use if its anti-freezing performance could meet -30℃or -35℃ and pH is 7-8(1itmusless), and its total rigidity number is 5-15°d [9-27°f (rigidity)], otherwise it should be drained off and replaced by new coolant containing antifreeze. The volume of coolant filled to engine is approximately 40 liter.

INSPECTION BEFORE STARTING

Inspect the coolant level.

Inspect the fuel level.

Inspect the lubricating oil level.

STARTING

Put the power switch and starting key at the starting position.

Put the gearlever at empty gear-matching position.

Step down footplate of clutch and footplate of accelerator, pull the handle of extra fuel supply device for starting(if have), and starting the engine. The handle of the device should be reset after engine is started. If the engine can, t be started, repeat the above operating after about l minute. Oil pressure gauge should immediately indicate number values after engine started. The extra fuel supply device for auxiliary starting device should not to be used during starting in thermal state.

Low temperature starting - Maintenance Manual of 5ton Diesel Engine with electric control flame preheating device.

When the temperature of coolant inside the engine is lower than-23℃, turn on the electronic key, the preheating indicator lighting, the heating plug is heated, and the preheating indicator will be automatically flickered after 50S. When the heating plug is heated to 850-950℃, press down the start button, connect the starter, the electromagnetic valve will be automatically opened, and the heating plug will be provided with fuel to proceed flame preheating, and the engine can be easily started under-25℃.

With low temperature auxiliary starting device

One bottle of starting fuel will be provided with the truck which fitted with low temperature auxiliary starting device. It can't be preserved when the ambient temperature is higher than 50℃. To prevent from fire，it should be put at a cool place in summer.

Starting process： Input starting fuel to the tank under the instrument plate in the driver-cab，pull the hand-pump three times before connecting the starter，after the engine run several rotations continue to pull the hand- pump till the engine started，but don't pull too many times before starting；In the case of very low temperature，continue to pull the hand-pump after starting till the engine runs smoothly. With this auxiliary device，the engine can be started easily under -40 ℃.

RUNNING OF DIESEL ENGINE

When the engine running at the speed lower than the speed of the biggest torque，it is not allowed to continue running on full load over l min.

After running on full load，the engine should run in idling speed for 3-5 minutes before stopped.

Often watch and check the oil pressure gauge and coolant temperature meter.

Stop the engine if the pressure and temperature cannot meet the standard requirement.

NOTE : *Diesel engine can not continue to run when the coolant temperature is lower than 60 ℃ or higher than 100℃，because this would damage the engine .*

ENGINE'S RUNNING STOP

Put the hand-accelerator of injection pump at zero position，stop the engine，and readjust the hand-accelerator.

NOTE: *The engine should run in idling speed for 1-2 minutes before stopped.*

GUIDE FOR MAINTENANCE OF DIESEL ENGINE

DAILY MAINTENANCE INSPECTION

1. Check the oil level.
2. Check the coolant level.
3. Check the fuel level.
4. Check whether the fan is damaged.
5. Check whether the V-belt is cracked or scratched.
6. Check whether the accessories are fixed well.
7. Check whether the water or oil is leaking.
8. Check whether the charging indicator light is in order.
9. Inspect sufficient grease.
10. Inspect oil pressure and water temperature is normal condition.
11. Inspect that exhaust temperature, sound and vibration are normal condition.
12. Inspect rotary speed is stable.

PERIODIC MAINTENANCE

Regular maintenance can be conduct on as per the following table. If the operating condition is heavy dust content or the engine running on started-stopped frequently, the regular maintenance period should be shortened accordingly.

Maintenance Period:

Period	Running hours(h)
The first inspection	30-50
Periodical inspection	Every 250
Maintenance I(WD1)	Every 500
Maintenance2(WD2)	Every 1000
Maintenance 3(WD3)	Every 2000
Maintenance4(WD4)	Every 4000

NOTE: *The above maintenance period is calculated based on 1,500 running hours per year of the diesel engine. If the running hours of diesel engine per year are less than 500 hours, the maintenance period is 0.5 times of the above maintenance period. If the running hours of diesel engine are more than 1,500 hours, the maintenance period is 1.5 times of the above maintenance period.*

Replacement and Work in Inspection and Maintenance of Engine:

Diesel Engine Maintenance Item	1# Inspection	P	WD1	WD2	WD3	WD4
Replace diesel engine oil (once a year at l east)	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Lubricate water pump (via grease cup)	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Replace oil filter	▲	In replacement of engine oil				
Check and adjust valve clearance	▲		▲	▲	▲	▲
Check injector nozzle opening pressure	▲				▲	▲
Replace fuel filter			▲	▲	▲	▲
Clean fuel pump coarse filter			▲	▲	▲	▲
Check coolant quantity and add enough c oolant	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Replace coolant		Every 24 months				
Fasten cooling pipe clamp	▲					
Fasten connecting parts of intake pipe, ho se and flange	▲		▲	▲	▲	▲
Check air filter maintenance light			▲	▲	▲	▲
Clean dust cup of air filter (excluding auto matic dust exhauster type)		▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Clean air filter main element	When indicator light comes on					
Replace air filter main element				▲		
Replace air filter safety element	After 5 times of main filter element cleaning					
Check and fasten V-belt	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Check supercharger bearing clearance						▲
Check fuel injection pump in special maint enance station						▲
Adjust idle speed	▲					

MAINTENANCE RECORD

Engine number_____ Model _____

User _____ Equipment _____

Date	Running Kilometers / hours or interval hours	Actual Kilometers	Maintenance contents	operator	Remark

MAINTENANCE CONTENTS

Daily Maintenance

Preventive maintenance should be done everyday in order to understand the engine's condition.

Before starting the engine should check the oil level coolant level and the fuel level.

Inspect：

- Leakage
- Fast wearing parts
- Any unconventionality

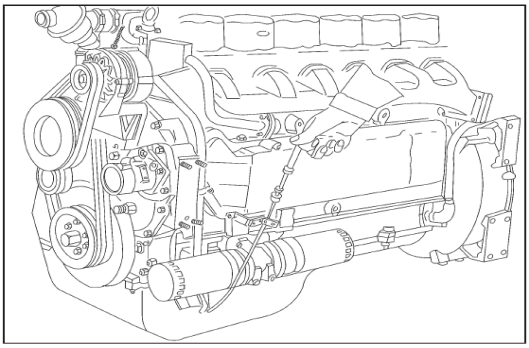


Figure 1

Inspect the oil level height

When the oil level is lower than the lower limit or higher than the upper limit, it is not allowed to start the engine.

After the engine stopped, inspect the oil level at least 5 minutes later in order to ensure the oil can flow back to the oil sump. The oil volume tolerance between the lower limit and the upper limit is 3 liters.

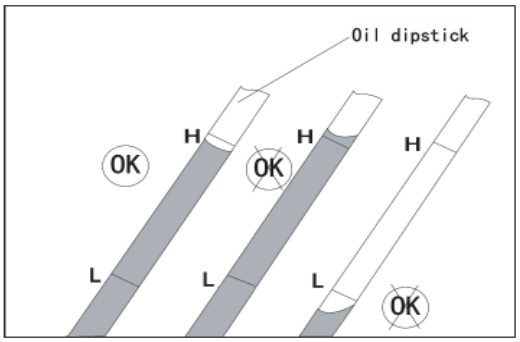


Figure 2

Inspect the coolant level

Inspect the coolant level through the vitreous view hole, if the coolant is not sufficient, open the inlet cover and fill into the coolant.

NOTE: *When opening the inlet cover , must press down the exhaust button firstly to prevent hot coolant from injuring people.*

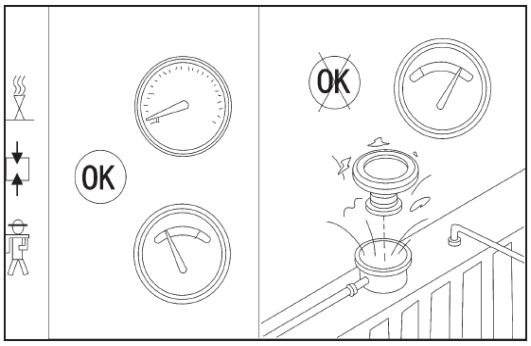


Figure 3

Inspect the fan

Check whether the plastic fan is distorted. For steel fan, check whether the rivet loosened and the vane is curved to ensure reliable running.

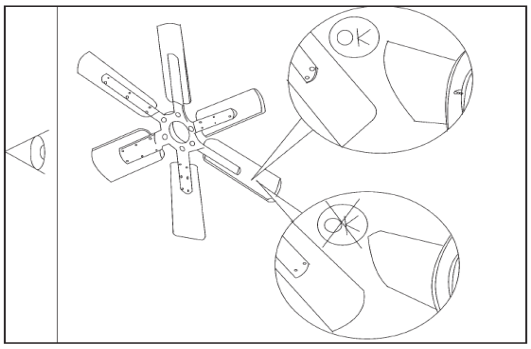


Figure 4

Inspect the V-belts

Inspect the V-belts with your eyes to find if there is any crack or scratch on the V-belts. Replace them if necessary.

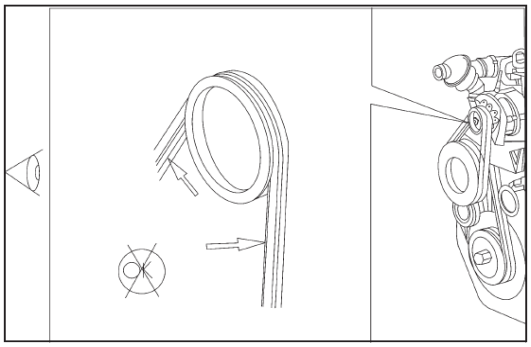


Figure 5

Drain off the water and deposit from the small filter cup fitted on the fuel delivery pump.

Unscrew the bottom bolt of the small filter cup, dismount it and drain off the water and deposit, then re-install the cup again.

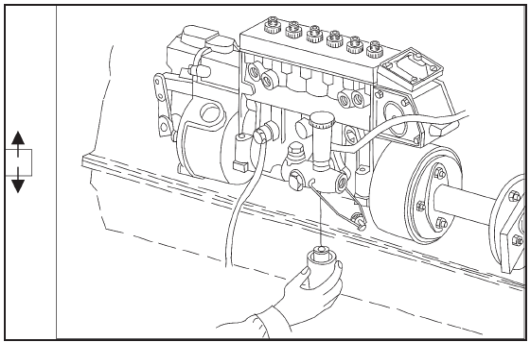


Figure 6

Maintenance Content of Different Levels

The following contents will be added except daily maintenance items:

Replace the oil and oil filter.

The oil will be polluted after using, the pollution contents is of accordance with the consumption of fuel and oil.

NOTE: *The replacement period of oil under proper using condition cannot beyond 250h (10,000Kilometers).*

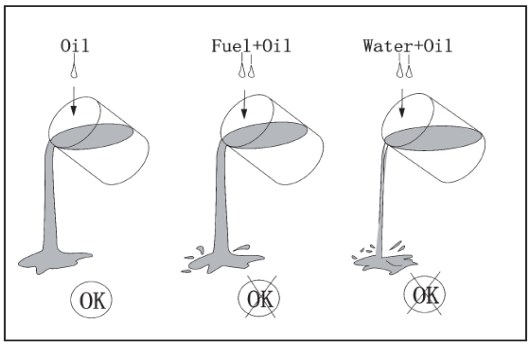


Figure 7

Replace the oil and oil filter to clean the impurities containing in oil.

NOTE: *The oil should be drained off when it is hot*.

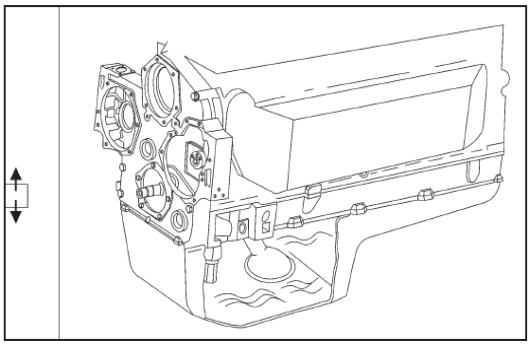


Figure 8

Remove the whorl plug，prepare a container to collect 20L of oil.

NOTE: *Hot oil can injure people.*

TOOL: 32mm open-ended wrench

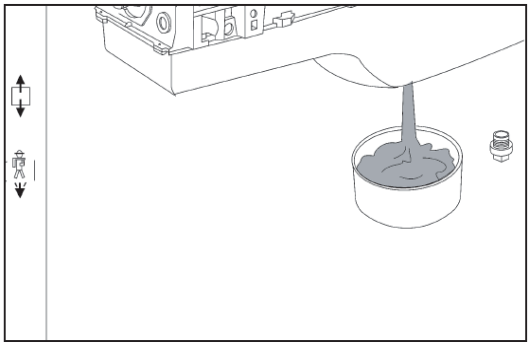


Figure 9

Clean the end surrounding of the filter，and remove it.

TOOL: The special wrench for filter.

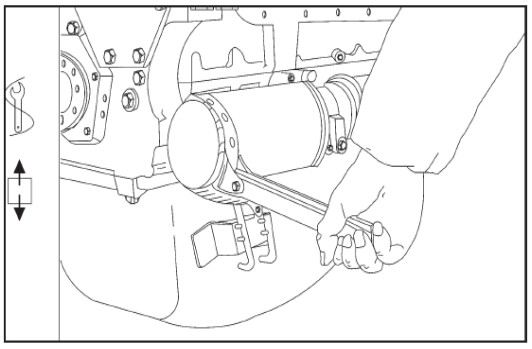


Figure 10

Install the new oil filter.

NOTE: *Adjust the seal ring and smear some lubricating oil on it while fitting the oil filter.*

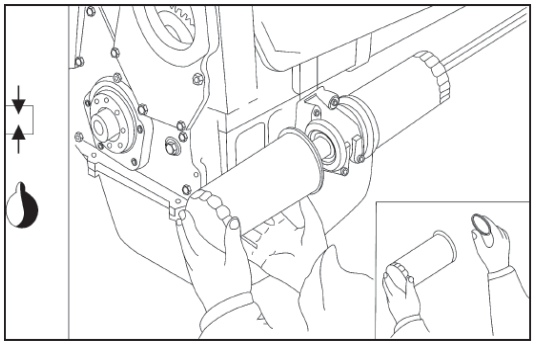


Figure 11

Check and clean the screw thread and seal ring, and then install the whorl plug.

TOOL: 32mm open-ended wrench

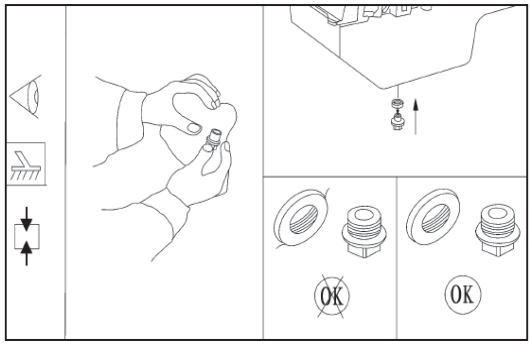


Figure 12

Fill the clean oil up to the upper limit, the capacity of the oil sump is 20L.

NOTE: *Oil details refer to page 28*

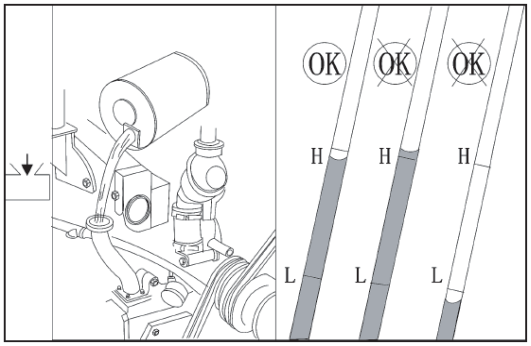


Figure 13

Run the engine at idling speed and check the filter to find whether it leaks or not.

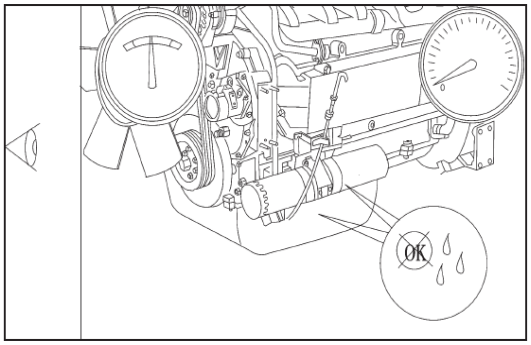


Figure 14

Stop the engine and make the oil run into the sump from the upper parts 5 minutes later, then check the oil level, fill oil up to the upper limit if necessary.

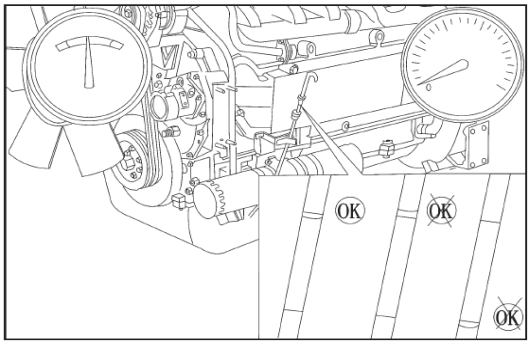


Figure 15

Check and adjust the valve clearance.

Disassemble 6 cylinder head covers.

TOOL: 13mm sleeve wrench

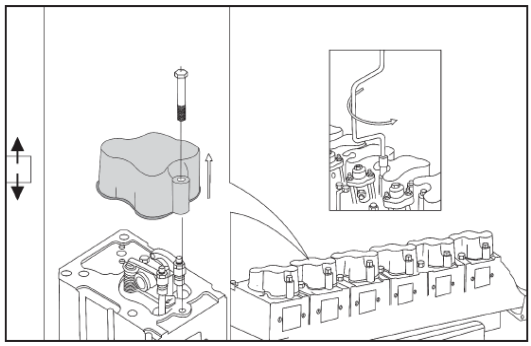


Figure 16

Turn the flywheel until its OT scale and the mark on its housing are aligned, push the piston to the position of TDC of compression stroke of 1st cylinder(the intake and exhaust valve of 1st cylinder are closed) .

TOOL: 32mm wrench for turning the crankshaft

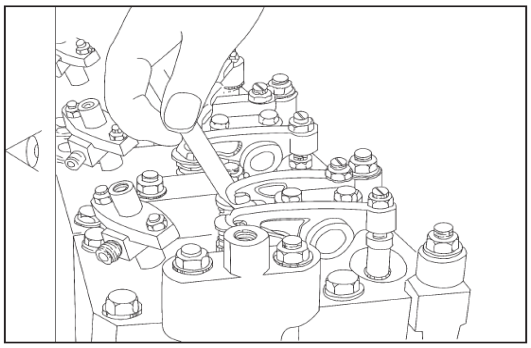


Figure 17

The clearance of intake valve is 0.30mm

The clearance of exhaust valve is 0.40mm

NOTE: *When check the clearance of valve , the engine should be at the Cool condition—its temperature is less than 60℃ . When the clearance gauge glides between the top of valve rod and rocker arm and can be felt retarded and sticky , the measuring result is proper .*

TOOL: Clearance gauge

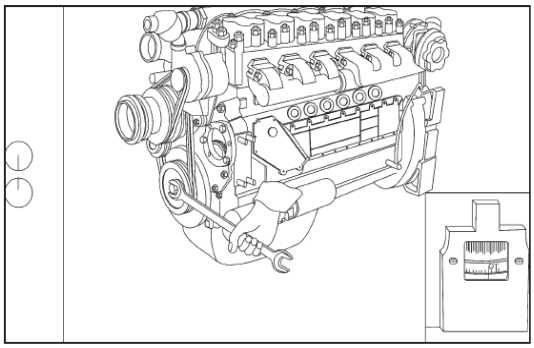


Figure 18

The piston of 1st cylinder is at TDC of the compression stroke.

Check and adjust the valve clearance as step A(I-air intake Valve E-air exhaust valve)

Adjust the clearance by gauge and tighten the fixing nut of rocker arm， re-check the clearance till it meets the requirement.

TOOL： 6# screwdriver and 14mm double offset ring wrench.

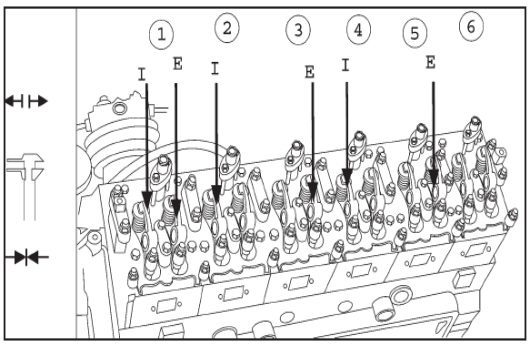


Figure 19

Turn the crankshaft 360°by the spanner；it can also be turned 360° after marking on the vibration damper.

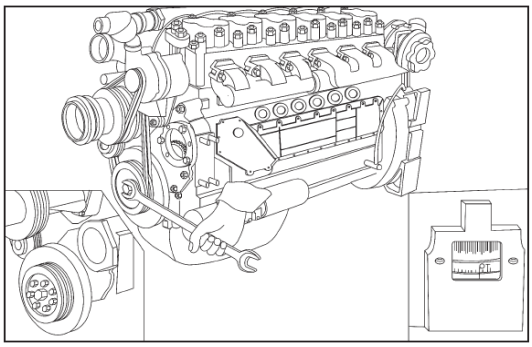


Figure 20

Adjust the valve clearance as step B Loosen the fixing nut of rocker arm，adjust the clearance by gauge then tighten the nut again.

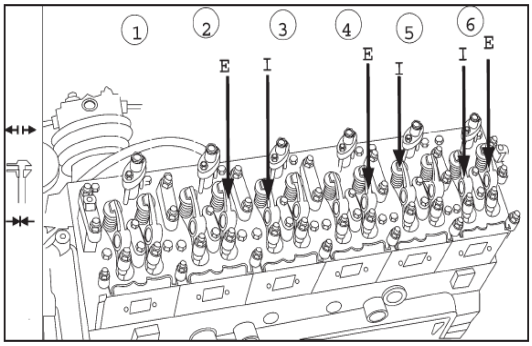


Figure 21

Install the gasket and cylinder head cover.
The tightening torque of bolt is 23N·m (recommended)
Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

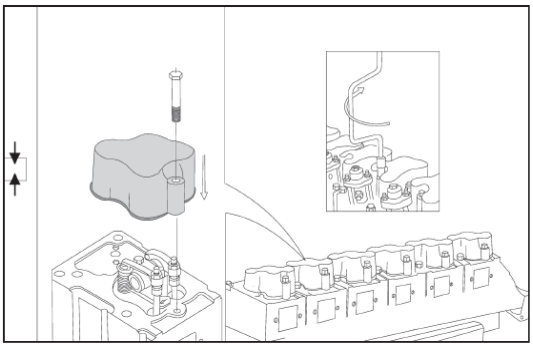


Figure 22

Check the tension of V-belts Measure the flexibility of the V-belt at the middle of its biggest span, generally the requirement result should be less than l0mm under strong press by your thumb.

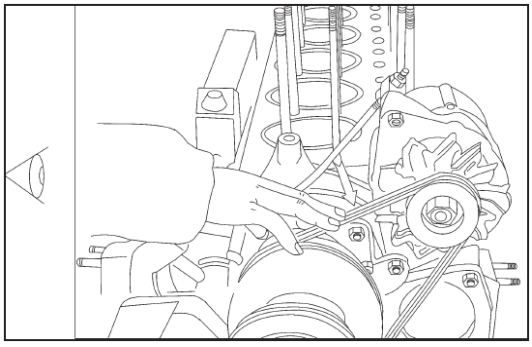


Figure 23

16mm open-ended wrench If the flexibility is more than 10mm, it means the V-belt has been loosen. The nut for tension pulley needs to be relaxed, strain the V-belt again and tighten the nut.

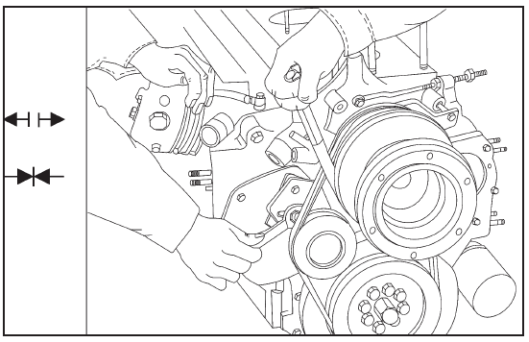


Figure 24

Check whether the rubber pipes of cooling system is aging or cracked, the steel wire hoop is loosening. If it is necessary, tighten or replace the parts to ensure good sealing performance.

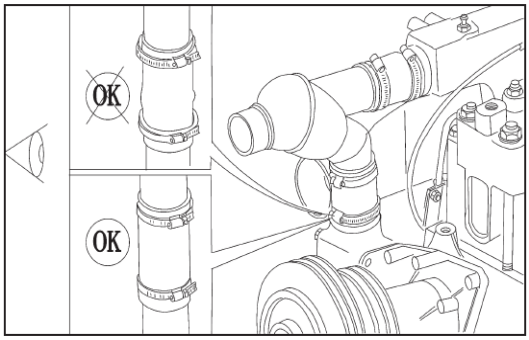


Figure 25

Add the following maintenance contents every 500h (20, 000 Kilometers)

Replace the fuel filter.

Tool：13mm open-ended wrench

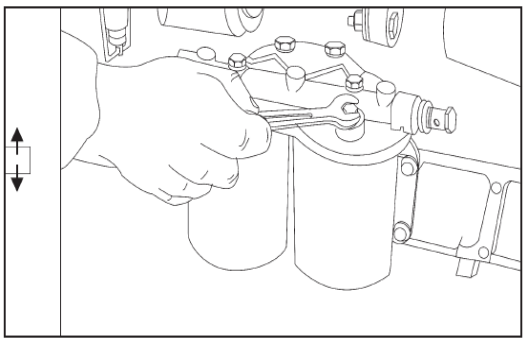


Figure 26

Clean the end surrounding of the fuel filter, unloosen the upper bolt and disassemble the fuel filter.

Install the new fuel pre-filter element and filter element.

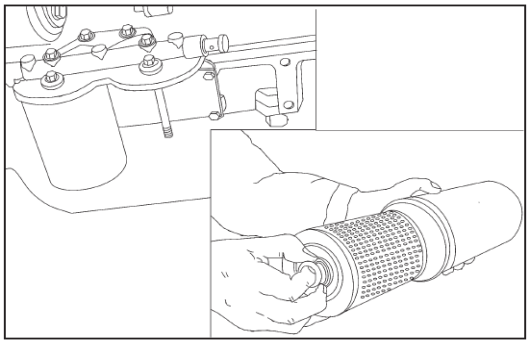


Figure 27

Install the replaced fuel filter on the bracket and tighten the bolt.

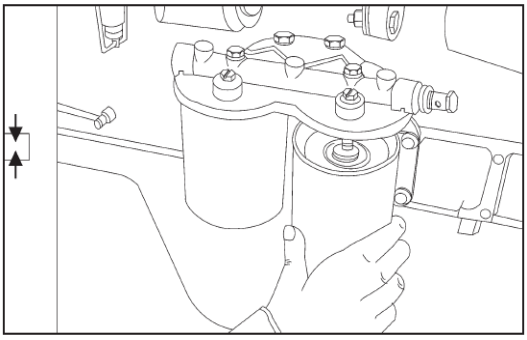


Figure 28

Drain off the air from the fuel delivery pipe and fuel tilter
Open the fuel draining bolt at the inlet of injection pump

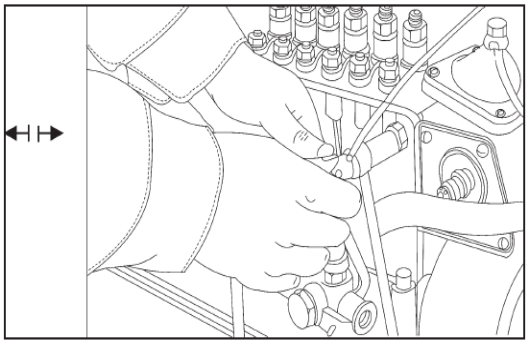


Figure 29

Press the fuel delivery pump plug till the fuel drained off from the draining bolt outlet does not contain air, then tighten the bolt.

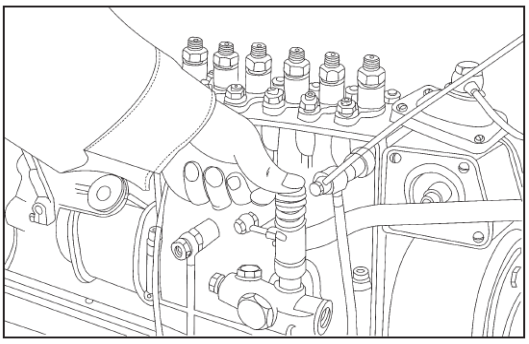


Figure 30

Check the air intake system
Check whether the air intake rubber pipes are aging or cracked, the steel wire hoop is loosening. If it is necessary tighten or replace the parts to ensure good sealing performance.

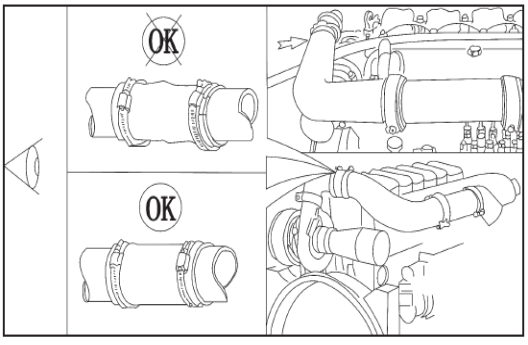


Figure 31

Check the air filter element

The max. permitted inlet resistance of diesel engine is 7kPa, and the max. inlet resistance of diesel engine must be inspected with the engine running at rated speed and with full load. When the inlet resistance reaches the max. permitted limited value, clean or replace the element in accordance with the provision of manufacturer.

CAUTION: *It is forbidden to operate engine without air filter, or entrance of dust and impurity into the engine will result in early wear.*

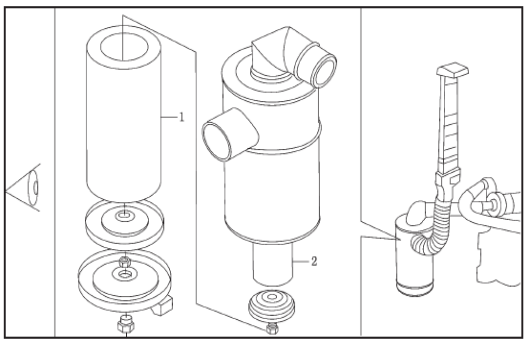


Figure 32

1. Paper filtering element
2. Blanketry safety filtering element

Dismantle the element from air filter, and bat the end face slightly in order to make the dust fall down, or blow it reversely with compressed air (blow from inside to outside).

CAUTION: *Do not blow through the filter paper.*
Do not clean the filter paper with water and oil.
Do not bat or knock the element heavily.

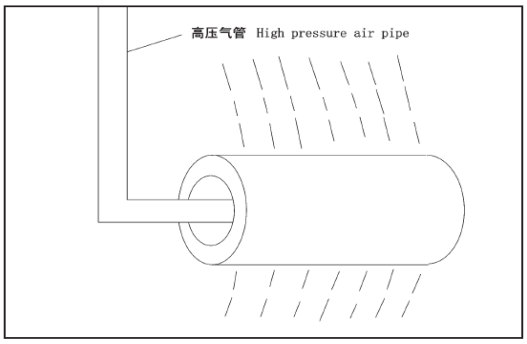


Figure 33

Maintenance during long-term storage

In order to prevent rust and corrosion, the diesel engine is oil sealed before ex-work. Usually, the oil seal period for the diesel engine is one year. Whenever the oil seal period exceeds one year, check and take necessary supplementary measures.

Preservation: First fill the diesel engine with sealing oil and coolant with anti-rust agent, start the engine and run at idling speed for 15~25min. Spray sealing oil to air compressor intake 2min before stopping of the engine. After stop, remove the pipeline connecting intercooler and engine, so that the starter drives the engine to rotate. The sealing oil is sprayed into the cavities of intake pipe, turbo-supercharger, etc. Apply sealing oil on all the exposed surfaces and the extended shaft ends.

Protection in storage period: Block all the oil, air and water inlets and outlets with cap or banded plastic cloth; and seal up the whole diesel engine with weather rust proof film.

Add external package if transportation is needed.

THE MAIN SYATEM FLOW CHART OF ENGINE

- Lubricating system;
- Cooling system:
- Intake and exhaust system;
- Fuel supplying system;

To understand the main system flow chart of the engine will give help to you for operating and maintaining the engine.

Lubricating System

1. Strainer
2. Oil pump
3. Oil filter
4. Oil cooler
5. Main oil passage
6. Safety valve of oil pump
7. Safety valve
8. Oil release valve for main oil passage
9. Bypass valve of oil filter

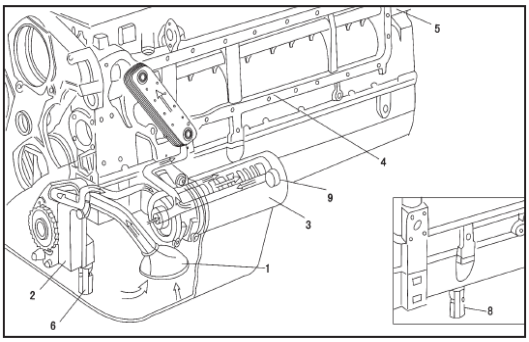


Figure 34

Lubricating for main moving parts

1. The oil flowing from the oil cooler.
2. Main oil passage.
3. Oil to the main crankshaft journal.

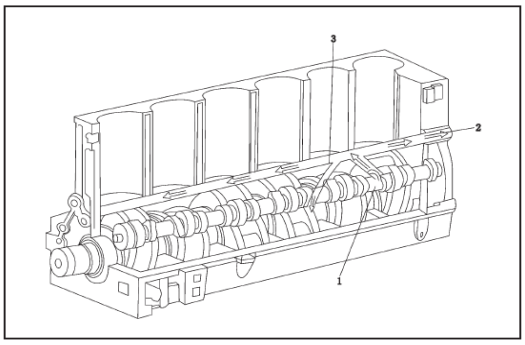


Figure 35

4. Connecting rod journal. Connecting rod journal.
5. The main journal of crankshaft.
6. Oil to connecting rod beating.

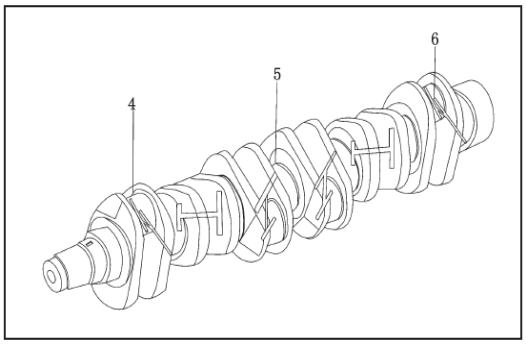


Figure 36

7. The branch oil passage passing to main Dearing.
8. Sub-passage of oil.
9. Oil injection nozzle to Cool piston.
10. Camshaft beating.

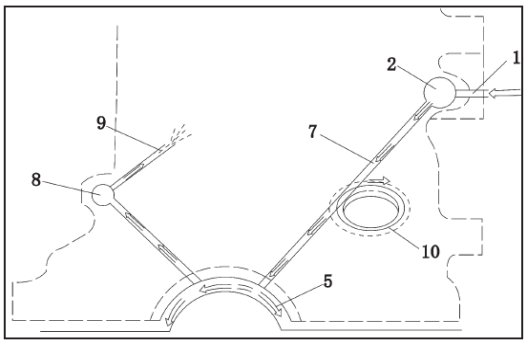


Figure 37

11. Lubricating air compressor through the oil from sub-passage.
12. Lubricating fuel injection pump through the oil from sub-passage.

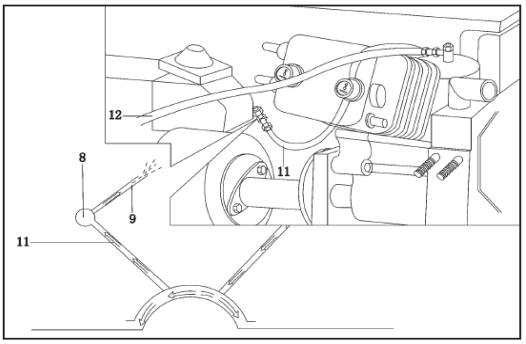


Figure 38

Lubricating for rocker arm system

1. Oil flowing from the oil branch
2. Tappet oil hole
3. Push rod oil hole
4. Oil hole of rocker arm bolt
5. Oil hole of rocker arm passage

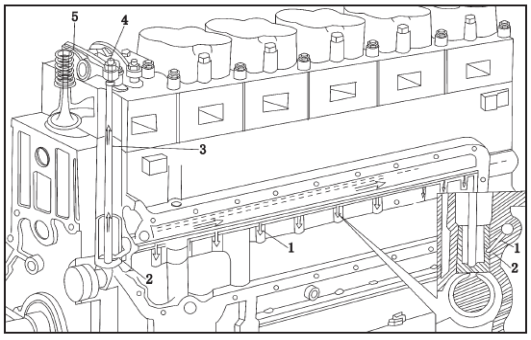


Figure 39

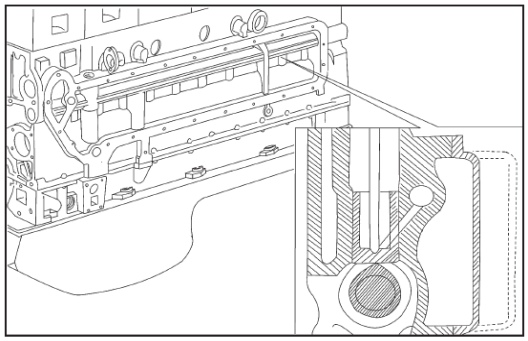


Figure 40

Cooling System

1. Water pump inlet
2. Water pump
3. Water channel of oil cooler
4. Water jacket of cylinder block

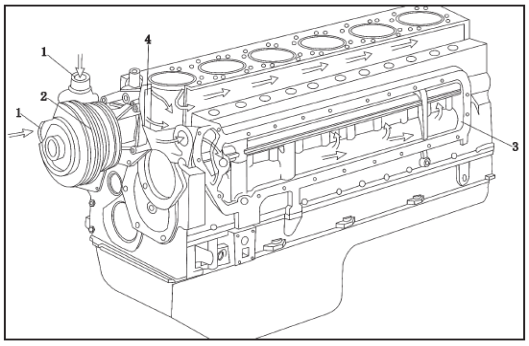


Figure 41

1. Water jacket of cylinder block
2. Cooling water flowing from water jacket of cylinder block
3. Cylinder head gasket
4. Cooling water passing through the water passage of cylinder head
5. Cooling water outlet

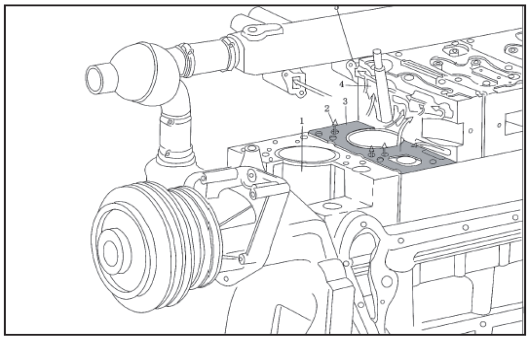


Figure 42

1. Coolant flowing from cylinder block
2. Thermostat
3. Bypass valve
4. Coolant flowing into water pump
5. Bypass valve closed
6. Coolant flowing into the radiator

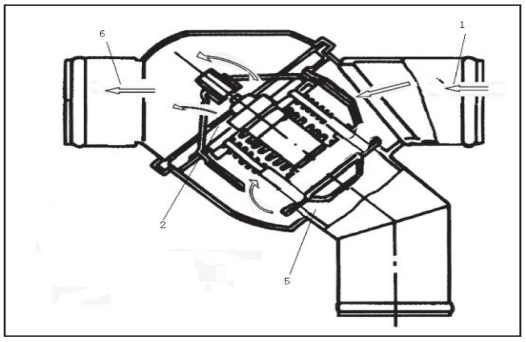


Figure 43

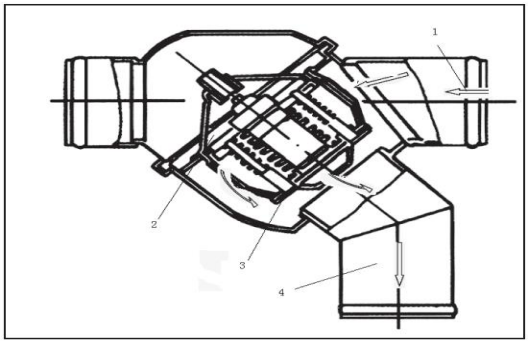


Figure 44

Intake and Exhaust System

1. The fresh air passing through the air filter flows into turbocharger
2. The turbocharged air flows into intake manifold.
3. Intake manifold
4. Intake valve

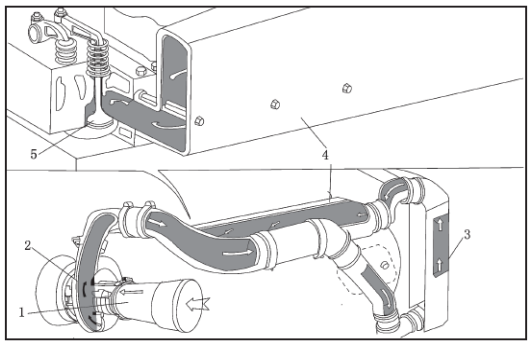


Figure 45

1. Exhaust Valve
2. Exhaust manifold
3. Exhausting gas flowing into the turbo of turbocharger
4. Exhaust outlet of turbocharger1

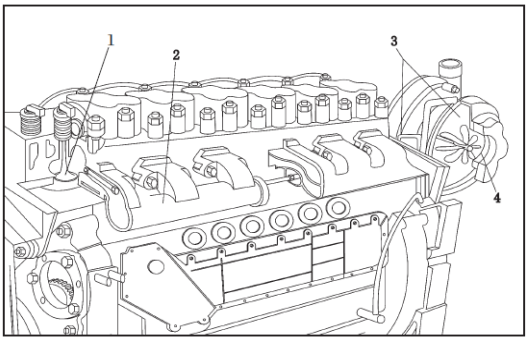


Figure 46

Fuel Supplying System

1. Fuel from the fuel tank
2. Fuel delivery pump
3. Fuel filter
4. Fuel delivery pipe
5. Air connecting pipe for smoke controlling device
6. Fuel injection pump
7. High pressure fuel pipe
8. Injector
9. Fuel returning pipe of Injector
10. Fuel pipe back to the fuel tank

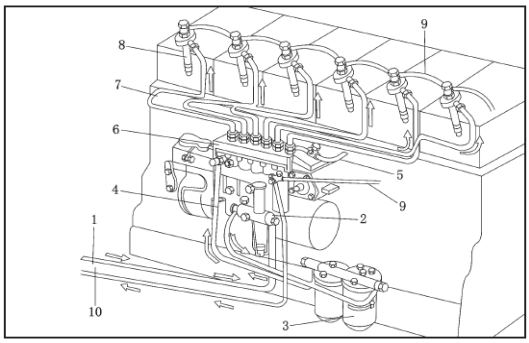


Figure 47

TIGHTENING TORQUE AND TIGHTENING METHOD OF HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS

Main-Bearing Bolt:

Total nos.:14pcs M18 bolts

Tool：22mm sleeve wrench

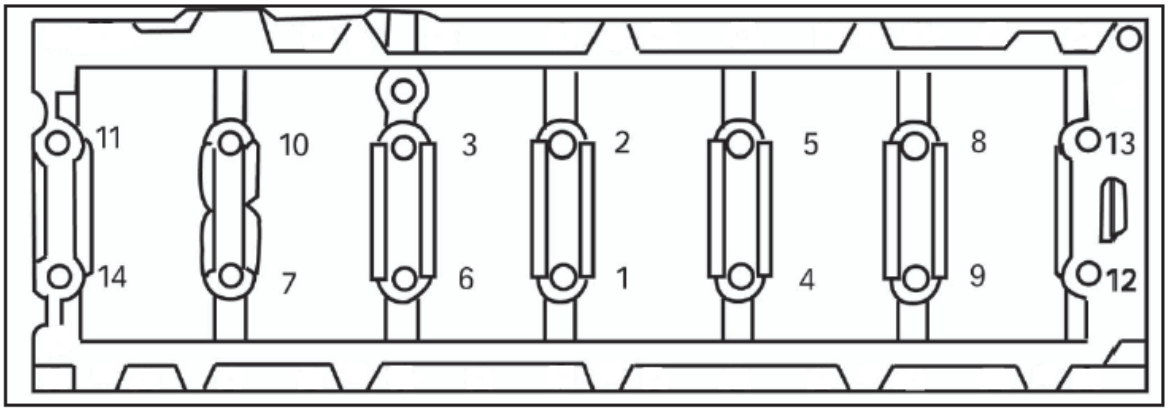


Figure 48

Tighten bolts in twice (tightening sequence see the figure above)

The first time：80N·m

The second time：250+25N·m

Cylinder Head Bolt：

Total nos.：24pcs M16 main bolts，Tool：22mm sleeve wrench

Total nos.：21pcs nuts of M12 auxiliary bolt，Tool：17mm sleeve wrench

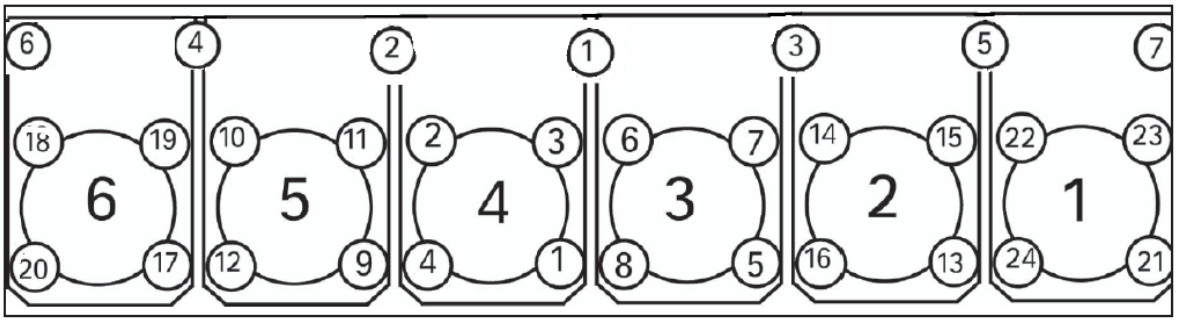


Figure 49

Following such tightening sequence：

Step 1：Align cylinder head after assembly, i.e. the exhaust port side of cylinder heads should be in the same plane. All the bolts should be tightened beforehand，and the torque is 30 N·m.

Step 2：Tighten 24pcs main bolts as the sequence in above figure，and the torque is 200N·m.

Step 3：Tighten 21pcs auxiliary bolts as the sequence in above figure, and the torque is100N·m.

Step 4：Turn the main bolts 90°as the sequence in above figure.

Step 5：Turn the auxiliary bolts 90°as the sequence in above figure.

Step 6：Turn the main bolts 90°as the sequence in above figure again, and the torque range is 240—340N·m.

Step 7：Turn the auxiliary bolts 90°as the sequence in above figure again the torque range is 120～160N·m.

Replace those bolts that cannot reach required torque range. The main bolt is allowed to be reused for 3 times, and the auxiliary bolt is allowed to be reused for 2 times.

Connecting rod Bolt：Connecting rod Bolt：

Total nos.：2pcs M14x1.5 for each connecting rod

Tool：19mm sleeve wrench

Step 1：Tighten tightly, then tighten these bolts symmetrically with a torque of 120N·m.

Step 2：Turn these bolts 90°±50°. and the torque range is 170～250N·m.

Replace those bolts that can not reach required torque range.

NOTE：*The connecting rod bolts that have been used should not be reused．*

Flywheel Bolt：

Total nos.: 9pcs M14x1.5

Tool: 22mm sleeve wrench.

Step 1:Tighten these bolts symmetrically with a torque of 60N·m.

Step 2:Turn these bolts 180°±5°, and the torque range is 230～280N·m.

Replace those bolts that can not reach required torque range.

NOTE：*The flywheel bolt is only allowed to be reused for 2 times．*

Bolt for Flywheel Housing：

Total nos.: 13pcs M12 bolts

Tool: box wrench

Step 1: Tighten these bolts with a torque of 40N·m.

Step 2: Turn these bolts 120°±5°respectively, and the torque range is110-140N·m.

Replace those bolts that can not reach required torque range.

The flywheel housing bolt is allowed to be reused for 2 times.

NOTE：*Smear thread and bearing surface of high strength bolts described above with lubricating oil before tightening．*

Bolt for Intermediate Gear Shaft

Total nos.: 4pcs M10 bolts

Tool: sleeve wrench

Step 1: Tighten these bolts symmetrically with a torque of 60N·m.

Step 2: Turn these bolts 90°, and the torque range is 100~125N·m.

Replace those bolts that can not reach required torque range.

Smear the thread with Loctite 242 thread locker before tightening.

The bolt of intermediate gear shaft is allowed to be reused for three times.

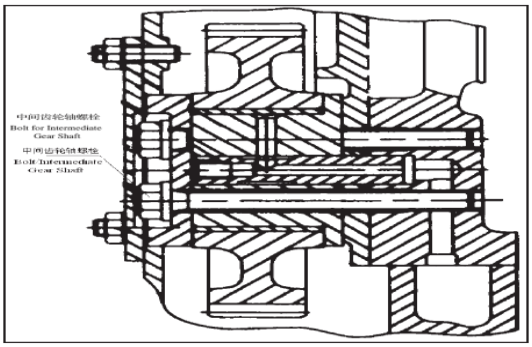


Figure 50

Bolt / Oil Pump Idler Gear Shaft

Total nos.: 1 piece M 10 bolt

Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench Tighten the bolt with a torque of 60^{+5}_{0} N·m.

Coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 THREADLOCKER.

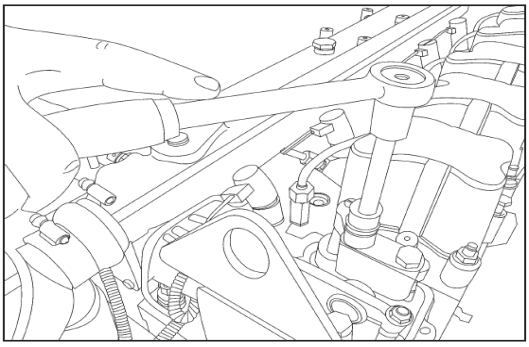


Figure 51

Bolt / Rocker-Arm Support

Total nos.: 12pcs M12 bolts

Tool: 18mm sleeve wrench these bolts with a torque of 100N·m.

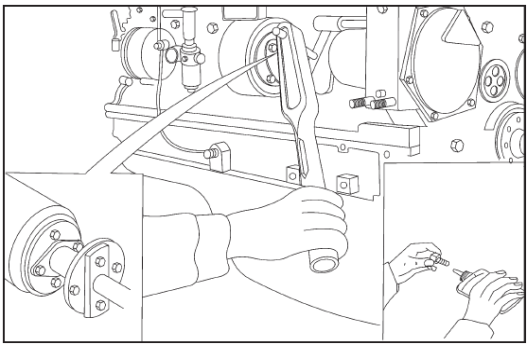


Figure 52

Hex head Bolt/Binding Coupling and Injection Pump

Total nos.: 1 piece M14x1.5 bolt.

Tool: 18mm box wrench the both with a torque of 150^{+15}_{0} N·m.

Coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 THREADLOCKER before tightening

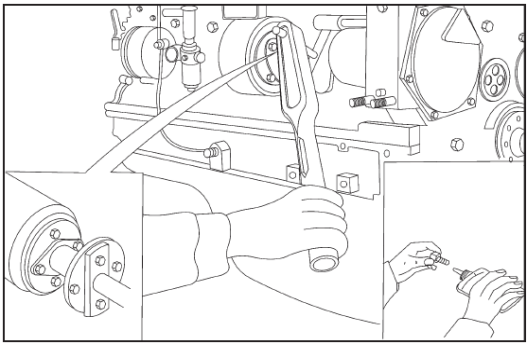


Figure 53

Tight Nut/Injection Pump Driving Gear

Total nos.: 1 piece M24x1.5 nut

Tool: 36mm sleeve wrench

Tighten the nut with a torque of 450~500N·m.

Coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 THREADLOCKER before tightening.

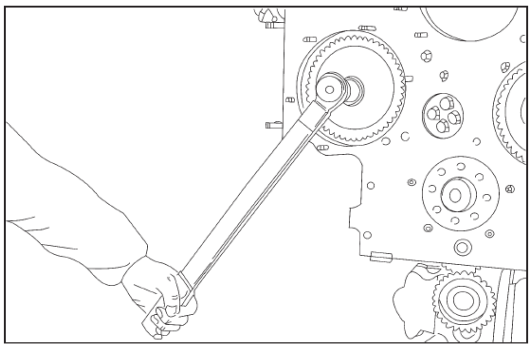


Figure 54

Bosh Camshaft Gear

Total nos.: 4pcs M8 bolts

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

Tighten these bolts symmetrically with a torque of 35N·m.

Coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 THREADLOCKER before tightening.

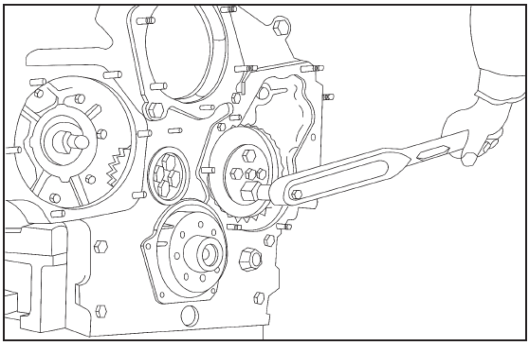


Figure 55

12Bolt/Attaching Damper Pulley and Crankshaft

Total nos.: 8pcs M10 bolts

Tool: 16ram sleeve wrench

Tighten these bolts symmetrically with a torque of 60^{+5}_{0} N·m.

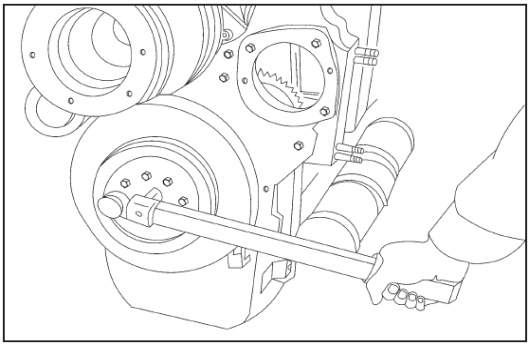


Figure 56

Tight bolts / Attaching Injection Pump and Bracket

Total nos.: 4pcs M10 socket head bolts

Tool: 6mm inner hexagon wrench

Tighten these bolts in sequence, and the torque is 45^{+5}_{0} N·m.

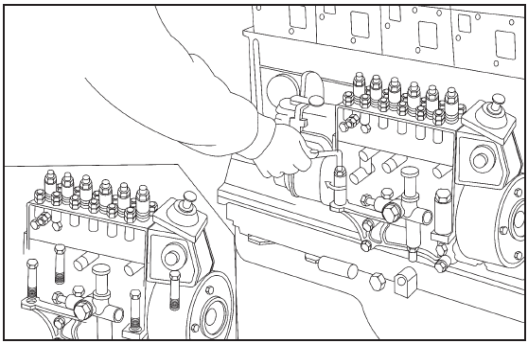


Figure 57

Bolts/Exhaust Manifold

Total nos.: 12pcs M 10 bolts

Tighten these bolts symmetrically with fl torque of (65~80)N·m.

NOTE: Coat the thread and bearing surface with Molybdenum disulfide Lube before tightening .

The exhaust pipe bolt is allowed to be reused for twice.

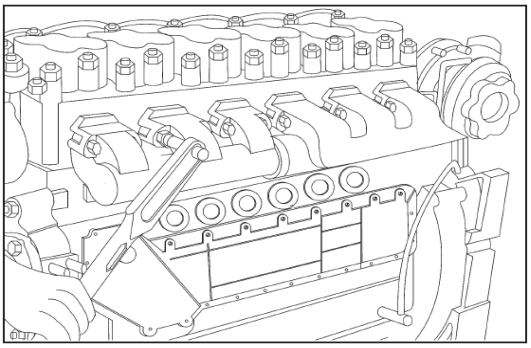


Figure 58

FUEL, LUBRICANT, COOLANT AND AUXILIARY MATERIALS FOR DIESEL ENGINE

Fuel

In summer: No.0 diesel fuel (GB252)

In winter: No.-10 light diesel fuel GB252. When the temperature in winter is lower than -15℃, use No.-20 diesel fuel. When the temperature in winter is below -30℃, use No.-35 diesel fuel.

Oil

Volume of oil: 16L, however, the lubricant volume is measured by the dipstick.

Selection of oil: For the safe and reliable running of the diesel engine, please choose oil grade 15W/40CF-4 or 20W/40CF-4. Grade 15W/40CF-4 oil can be used within the range of -15℃ ~ +30℃ while grade 20W/40CF-4 oil should be used in the range of -10℃ ~ +30℃ (Weichai special engine oil is recommended).

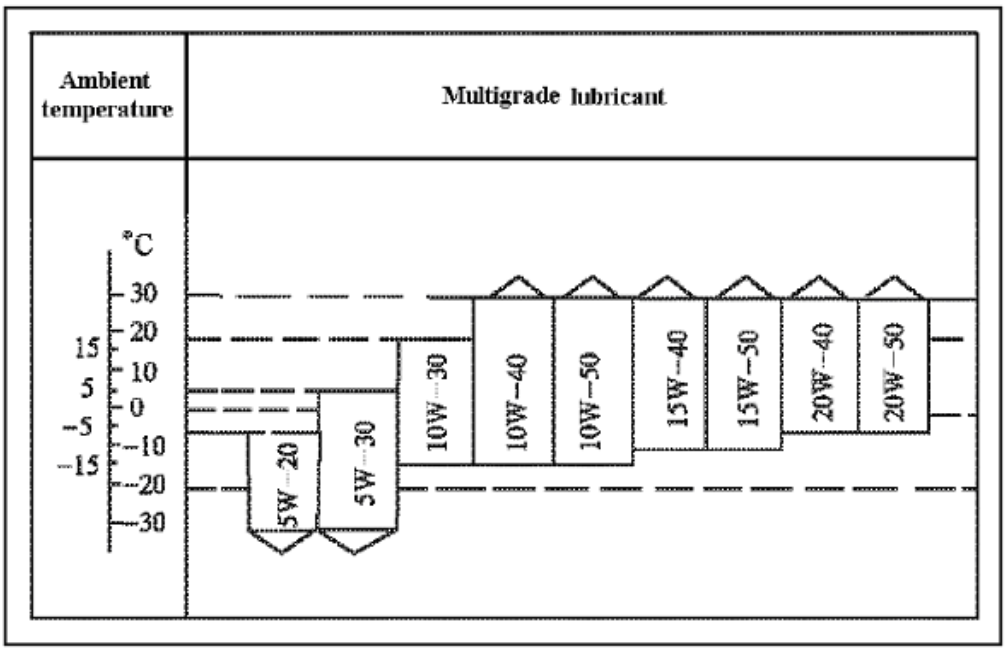


Figure 59

Antifreeze additive of engine cooling system

The commonly used antifreeze additive is ethylene glycol. Long-acting antifreeze additive with reliable quality made in China is allowable. Refer to relevant instructions for the detailed methods employed. Recently recommended long-acting antifreeze additives in China are: long-acting antifreeze additive JFL-336 and long-acting antifreeze additive FD-30＃.

CAUTION: *Periodically replace the long-acting antifreeze additives as per relevant requirements.*

Calculation of the antifreeze additives (for reference only):

Total capacity of the coolant: 30L (filling the engine with a radiator)

Inspection temperature of the antifreeze right now: -20℃

The lowest antifreeze temperature required: -30℃

Calculation methods: Get the point of the coolant total amount "30L" on the x-coordinate; draw a line across this point and find intersection 1 and intersection 2 of the -20℃ slant and the -30℃ slant (refer to Fig. 6-1).

Get: the amount of anti-freeze additive at -20℃ is 13.5L; the difference of the anti-freeze amount at -30℃ and that at -20℃ is 4L.

As for the 4L difference value, must add 50% of the amount to calculate. Because before filling the antifreeze additive, some coolant must be drained. Then, the antifreeze additive mixed with.

Auxiliary Materials List of 5ton Diesel Engine

Serial No.	Name	Color	Function and Application
1	Fine Molybdenum Powder	Black	Apply to smooth surface of metal to prevent biting. eg: Apply to exterior surface of cylinder liner.
2	Molybdenum disulfide Lube	Dark Grey	To prevent adhesion of parts under higher temperature. eg, Apply to the bolts of exhaust outlet of turbocharger.
3	Loctite 242 glue	Blue	Apply to thread to seal. eg, Apply to bolts and thread.
4	Loctite 262 glue	Red	Apply to thread to lock and seal. eg, Apply to auxiliary bolts of cylinder head.
5	Loctite510 glue	Red	Apply to surface of metal to seal. eg, Apply to bond surface of cylinder block and crankcase.
6	Loctite 271 glue	Red	Apply to surface of metal to seal. eg, Apply to oil channel plug.
7	Loctite 277 glue	Red	Sealing of plug and hole. eg, Apply to the water reservoir plug of cylinder block.
8	Lithium Grease	Achromatic Color	Grease for Water Pump

NOTE: *To ensure the proper operation of our diesel engines，please use the correct brand fuel and oil as this manual described．*

ELECTRICAL APPLIANCE

This section consists of generator, starter, sensor of water temperature indicator, induction plug of oil pressure, etc.

Generator

The generator is three-phase alternator, after silicon rectification the current change into direct current.

Output Voltage：28V DC

Current：27A(In order to meet customer's demand, the currents of 35A and 55A are available for option)

Rotation Direction：clockwise

Maximum Allowable Speed：11000 r／min

Rated Load Speed：6000 r／min

Circuit Diagram：

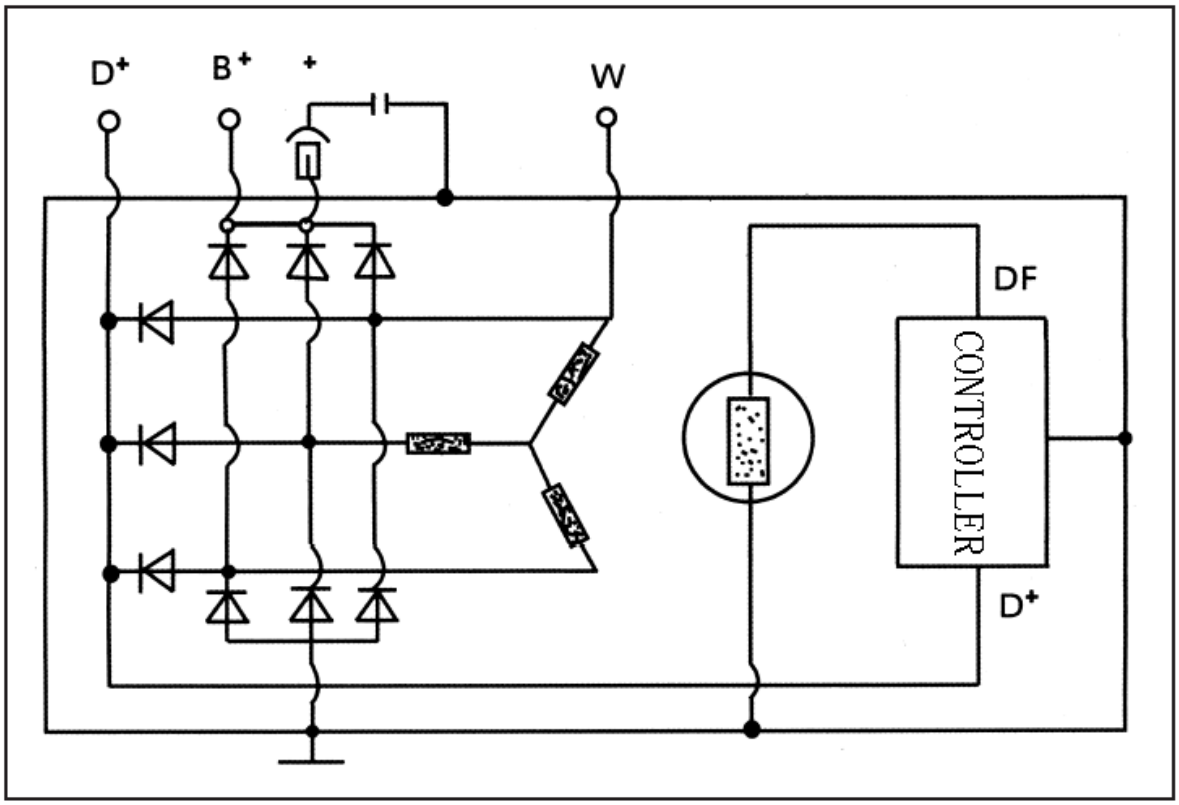


Figure 60

Connection Pole D+ connect to Charging(electri6cation)Indicating Lamp, the screw specification：M4

W connect to Speed Measuring Motor, the screw specification：M5

B+ connect to the positive electrode of battery, generator shell is grounded, the screw specification：M6

Starter

The starter is DC starter, Voltage：24V, Power：5.4kW, 7.5kW or 8.1 kW, Rotation Direction：clockwise (View direction：face to the output end of the engine)

The starter of which mode number is 3 is divided into two types: 9-tooth (used for SAE Ⅱ flywheel housing) and 11-tooth (used for SAE I and 6135 flywheel housings). (7.5kW and 8.1kW 9-tooth starters are not available currently). The starter of which mode number is 3.5 is divided into two types: 10-tooth and 11-tooth. The 11-tooth is BOSCH pre-meshed starting

Circuit Diagram：

External Connection Pole： 30 connect to the positive electrode of battery, the screw specification：M10

3 1 grounding the screw specification：M10

50 connect to the electromagnetic switch the screw specification：M6

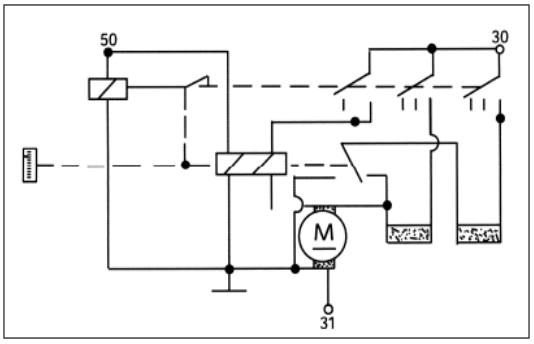


Figure 61

Induction plug of oil pressure

Operating Temperature：-25~100℃ Measurement Range：0--500kPa

Alarm Pressure：45~75kPa

Rated Voltage：6~24V

Sensor of water temperature meter

Operating Temperature：-25～120℃

Rated Voltage：6~24V

Battery 2x12V 135Ah or 165Ah or 195Ah 2×12V 135Ah or 165Ah or 195Ah

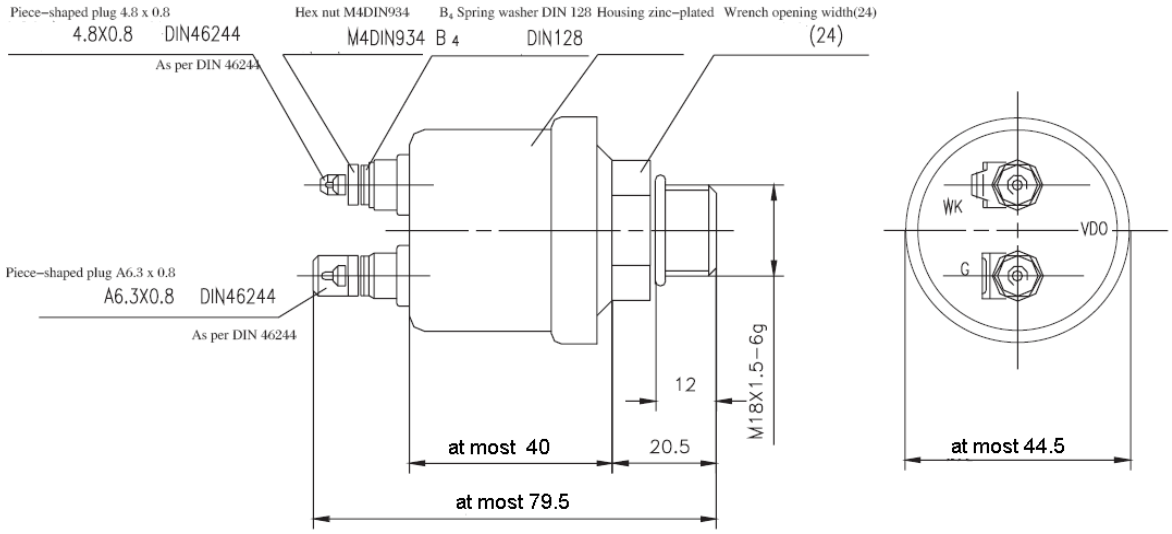


Figure 62

ADJUSTMENT AND REPLACEMENT OF MAIN COMPONENTS

Cooling System

Replace the V-belts

Loosen the tightening nut of the generator to remove generator belt.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

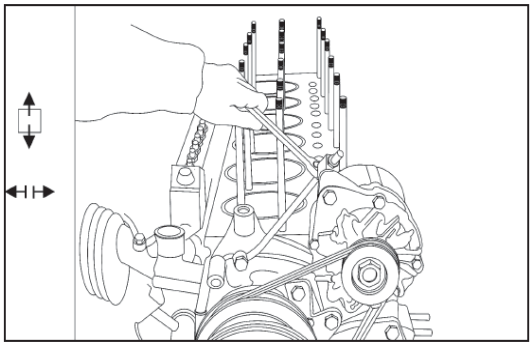


Figure 63

Loosen the M10 self-lock nut (2)of tension pulley, remove the V-belt of water pump.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

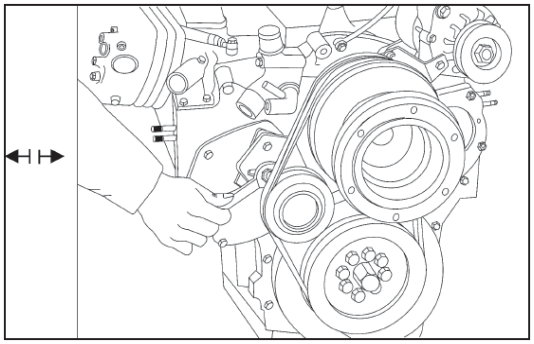


Figure 64

Replace the V-belts, tighten self-lock nuts (2)and the nuts of tension bolts again.

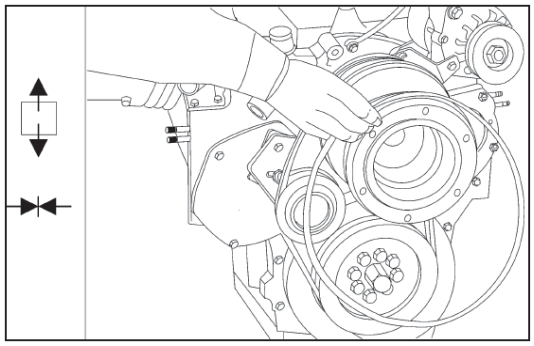


Figure 65

Replace Water Pump

Loosen the tightening bolts of generator to remove the V-belt.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

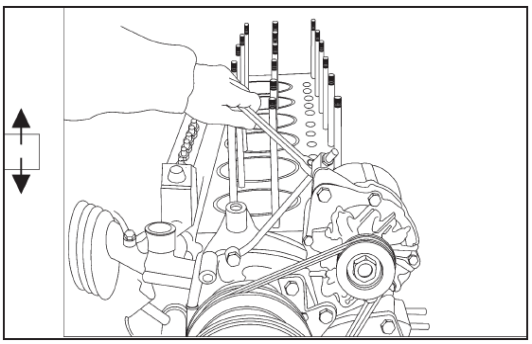


Figure 66

Loosen the bolt from the generator mounting plate.

Tool: 13mm open-ended wrench

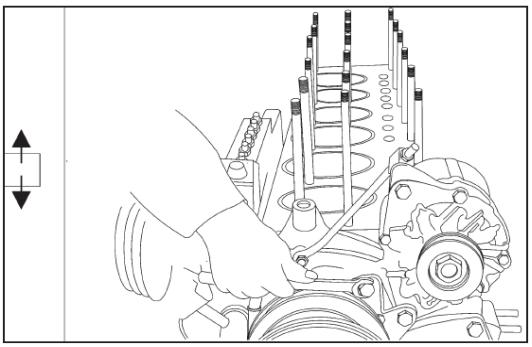


Figure 67

Remove the tightening bolts and hexagon nuts attaching gear case。

Tool: 13mm open ended wrench

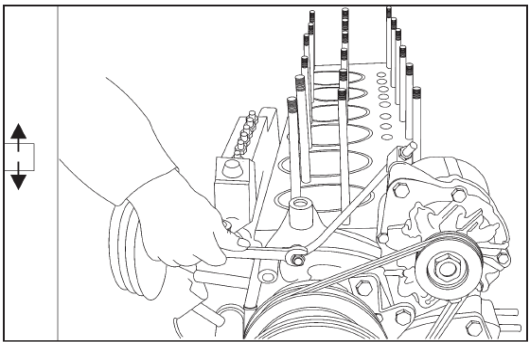


Figure 68

Remove generator.

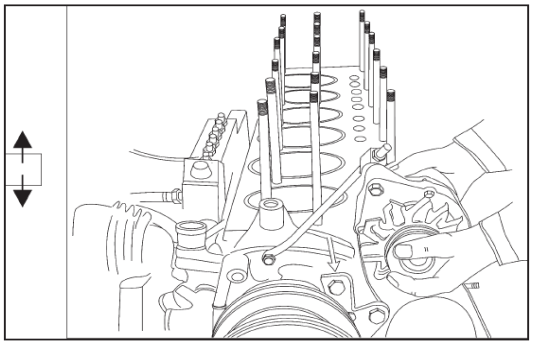


Figure 69

Loosen the hexagon lock nuts of tension pulley to remove the V-belt of water pump.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

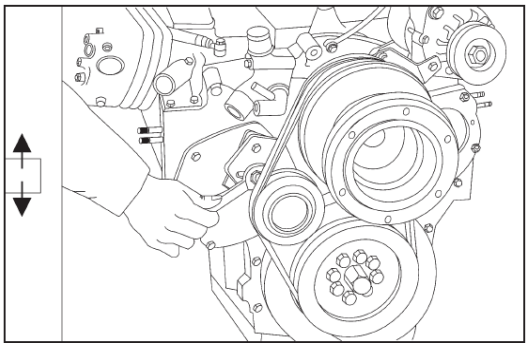


Figure 70

Loosen the rubber hose clamp of water pipe joint.

Tool: 6#Screwdriver

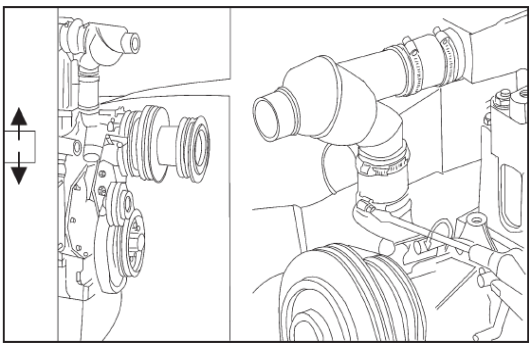


Figure 71

Loosen the bolt of water pipe joint to remove water pipe joint.

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

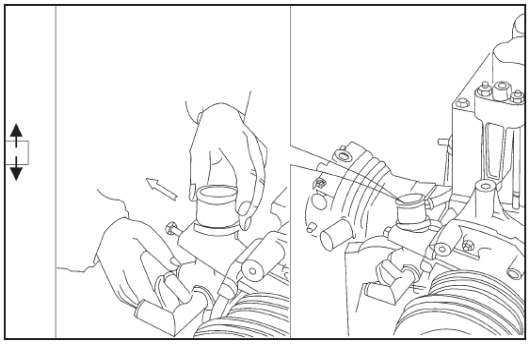


Figure 72

Loosen the 6 hexagon nuts attaching water pump and gear case.

Tool: 13mm open-ended wrench

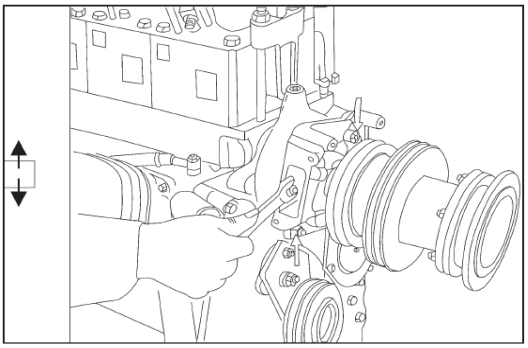


Figure 73

Remove water pump.

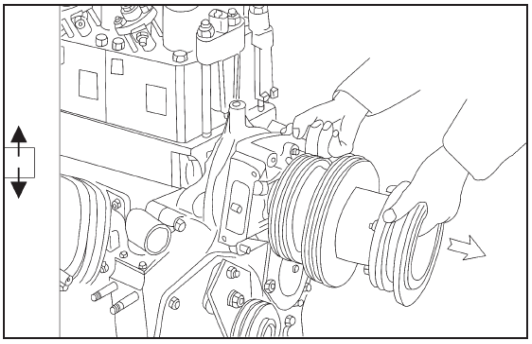


Figure 74

Clean the seal surface of water pump.

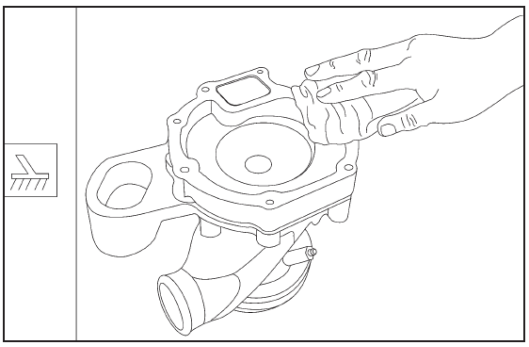


Figure 75

Replace the seal gasket of water pump.

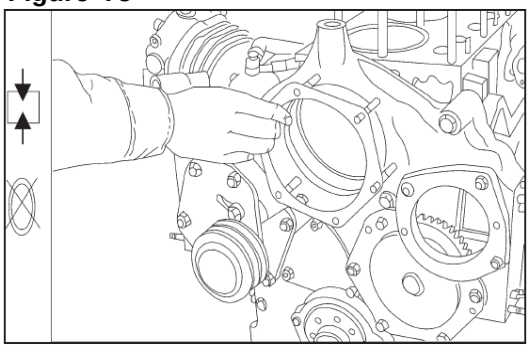


Figure 76

Install the new water pump assembly, tighten 6 hexagon nuts. (There is a nut in the inner side of water pipe joint).

NOTE: *Fill the Lumen of water pump with 120cm3 general Lithium grease . Refill lithium grease With grease cup periodically .*

Tool: 13mm open-ended wrench

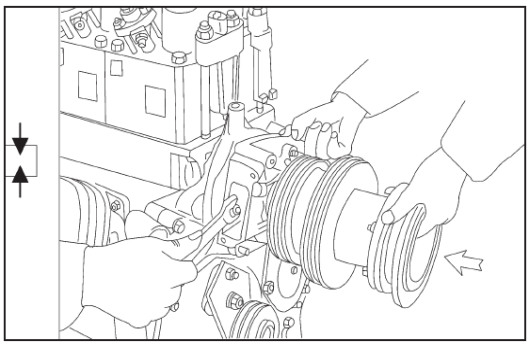


Figure 77

Install the water pipe joint, tighten two M8 bolts of water pipe joint, then install the rubber hose.

Tool: 13mm open-ended wrench

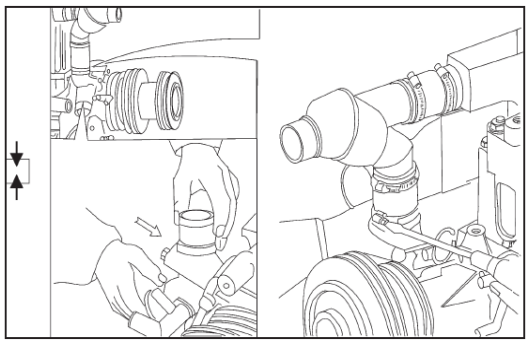


Figure 78

Install generator.

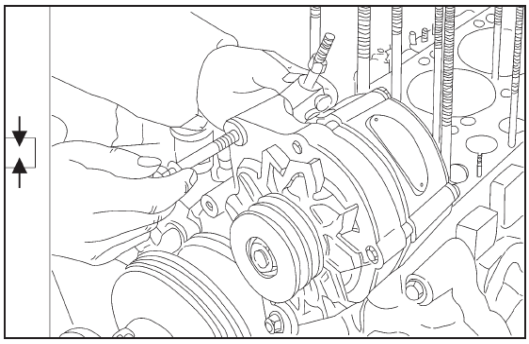


Figure 79

Install the V-belt and adjust the tensely, tighten M10 hexagon lock nuts of tightening pulley.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

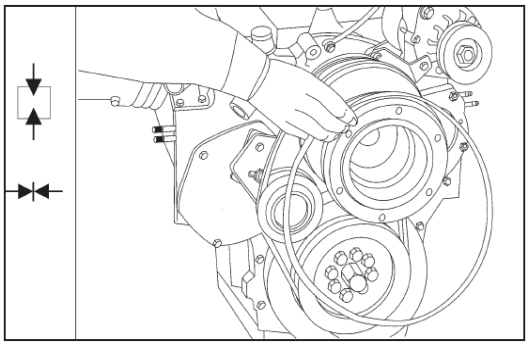


Figure 80

Install the V-belt of generator and adjust the tensely, tighten top nuts of tightening bolts and nuts of mounting plate.

Tool: 13mm and 16mm open-ended wrench

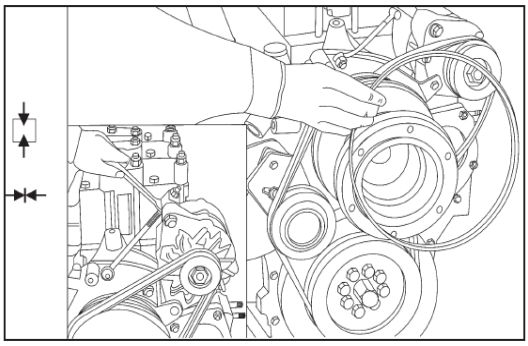


Figure 81

Lubricating System

Replace the oil cooler core

Loosen all of the M8 bolts on the oil cooler cover to remove oil cooler cover (Discharge coolant before demounting the oil cooler cove).

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

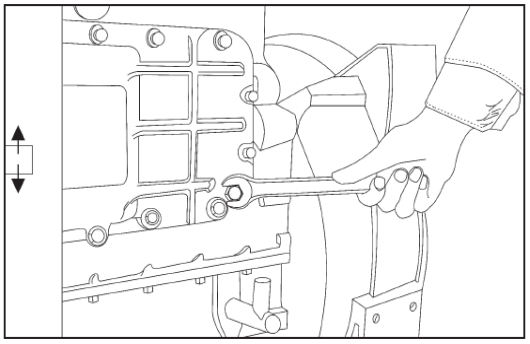


Figure 82

Clean the oil cooler cover and seal surface o f the cylinder block, replace with new gasket of oil cooler cover.

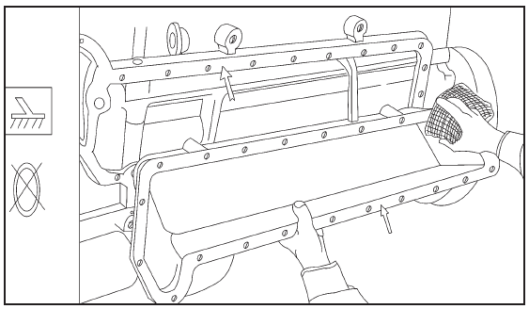


Figure 83

Loosen the 8pcs M 8 bolts of oil cooler element

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench.

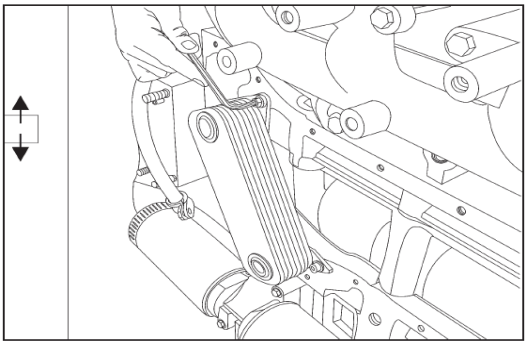


Figure 84

Remove element of oil cooler and clean the bonding surface of flange of oil cooler element.

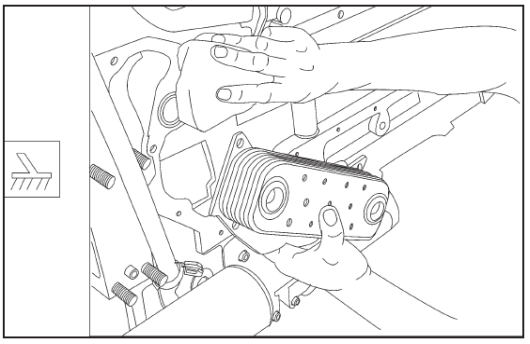


Figure 85

Replace the gasket of oil cooler flange.

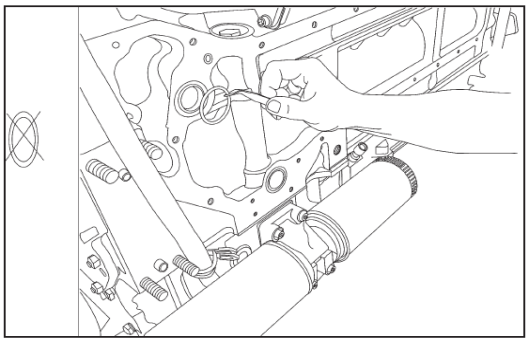


Figure 86

Install the new oil cooler element and tighten the M8 hexagon bolts.

NOTE: *Coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 HEADLOCKER before tightening* .

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

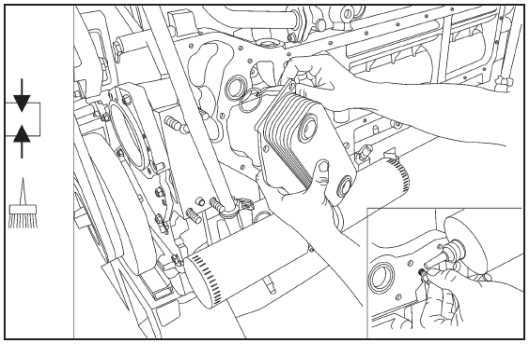


Figure 87

Install the oil cooler c over and tighten all the peripheral M8 hex head bolts.

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

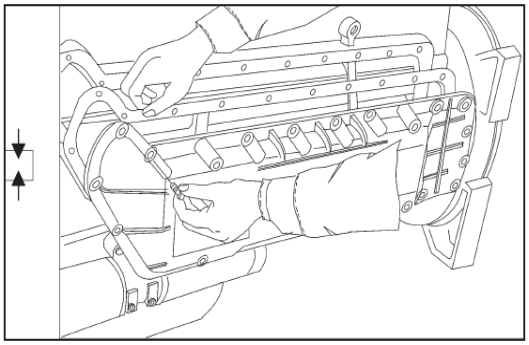


Figure 88

Replace the release valve of main oil channel

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

Loosen all peripheral M8 hex head bolts of oil pan.

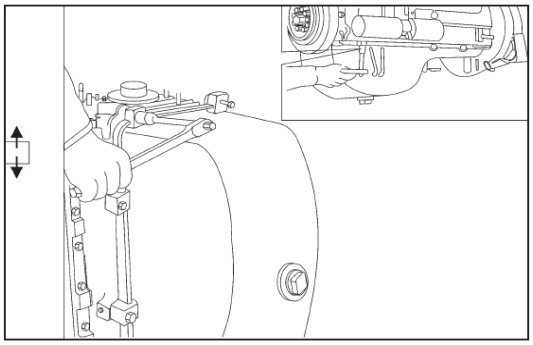


Figure 89

Remove retainer, then remove oil pan.

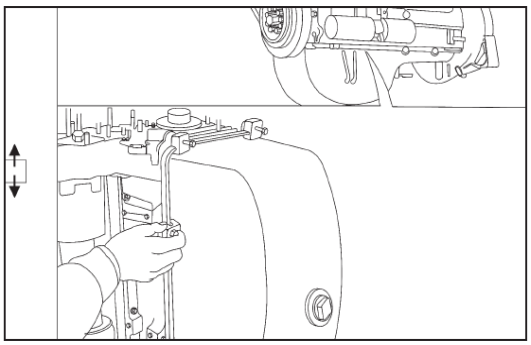


Figure 90

Remove the release valve of main oil channel. When remove the release valve of oil channel, move the male end of hexagonal part on valve body.

Tool: 27mm open-ended wrench

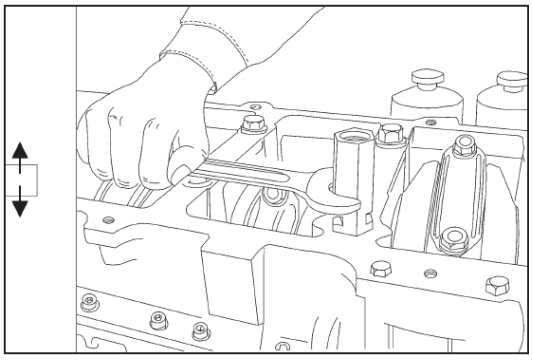


Figure 91

Install new release valve, coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 THREADLOCKER before tightening. When installing new release valve, move the male end of hexagonal part on valve body.

Tool: 27mm open-ended wrench

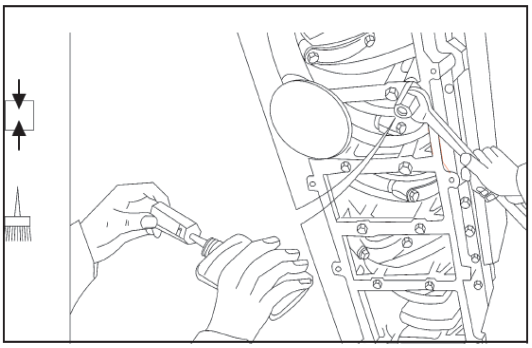


Figure 92

Install oil pan and tighten the M8 hex head bolts.

NOTE: *Make sure packing washer of oil pan was pressed well .*

Tool: 13mm open-ended wrench

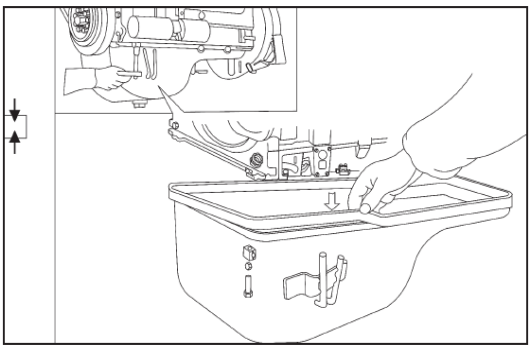


Figure 93

Replace Oil Pump

Remove oil pan and suction pipe。

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench and 16mm open-ended wrench

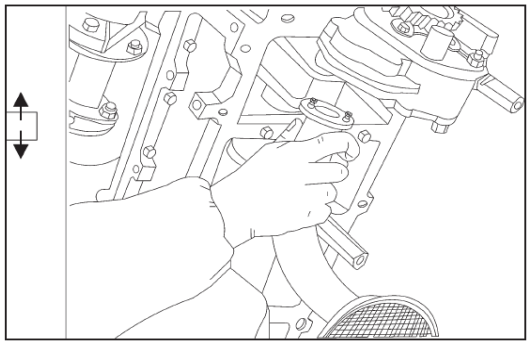


Figure 94

Loosen the mounting plate of oil suction pipe (two-stage oil pump).

Tool: 10mm open-ended wrench

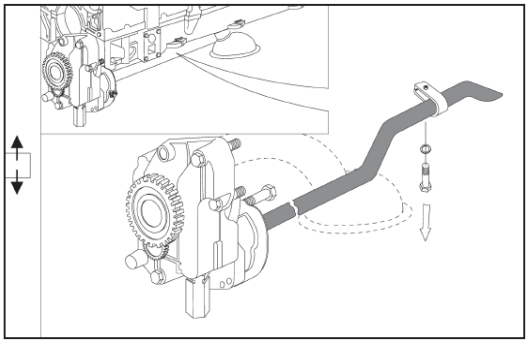


Figure 95

Loosen the M10 hex head bolts of oil suction pipe to remove oil suction pipe.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench (two-stage oil pump)

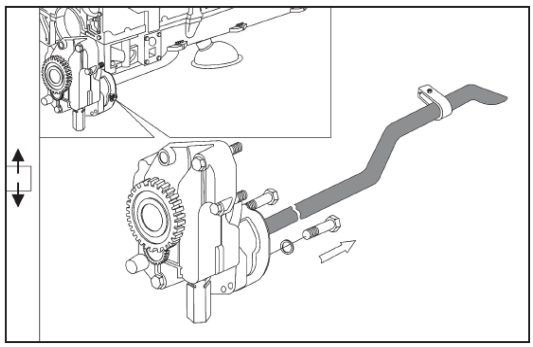


Figure 96

Loosen the hex head bolts of tension pulley and the bolts of crankshaft pulley.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench and 16mm sleeve wrench

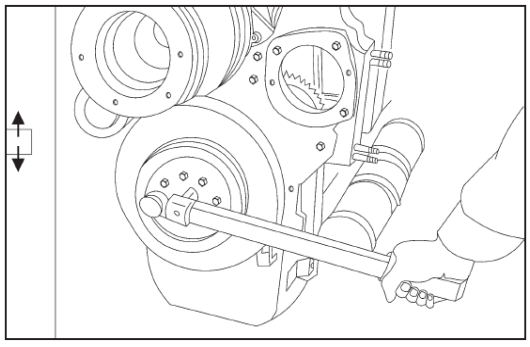


Figure 97

Remove the pulley and damper, the damper and crankshaft is transition fit, the damper can be knocked slightly if it is necessary for removing.

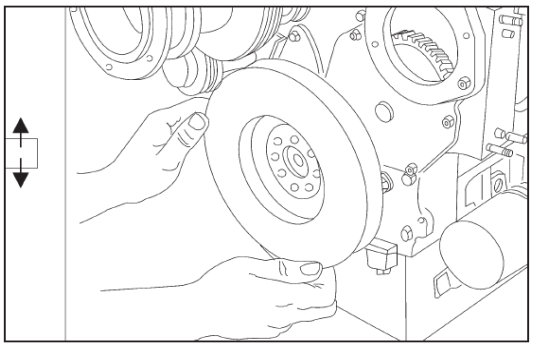


Figure 98

Remove the hex head plug screws of gear case.
Tool: 22mm open-ended wrench

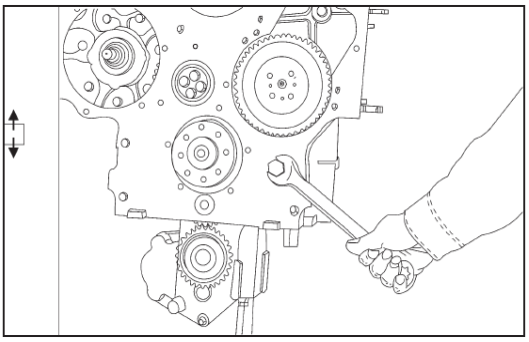


Figure 99

Remove the bolts of intermediate gear shaft of oil pump.
Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench

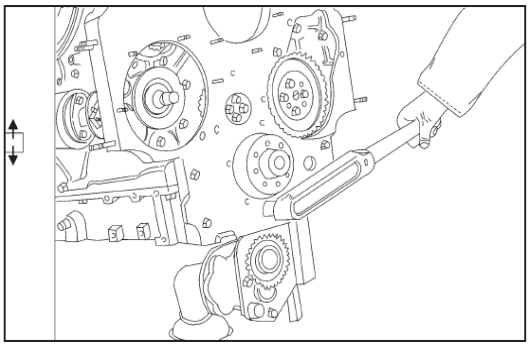


Figure 100

Remove intermediate gear shaft of oil pump with special tool.

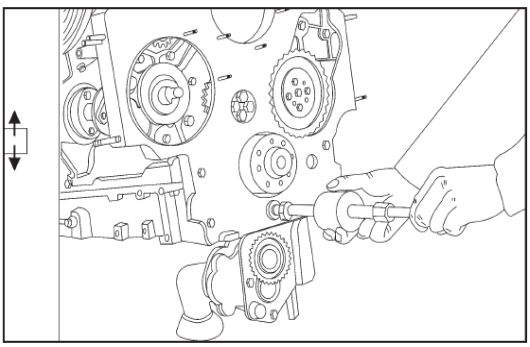


Figure 101

Remove intermediate gear of oil pump.

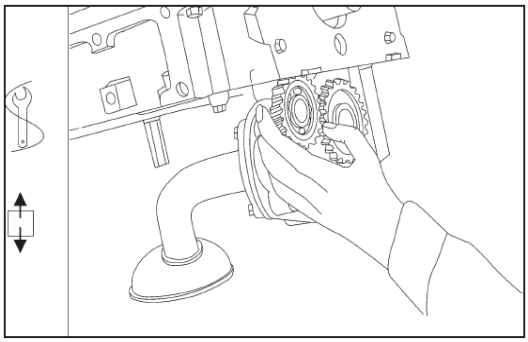


Figure 102

Remove the he x head bolts from the hex plug and another hex head bolt.

Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench

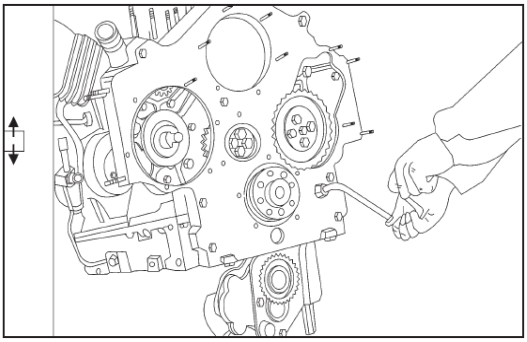


Figure 103

Remove oil pump.

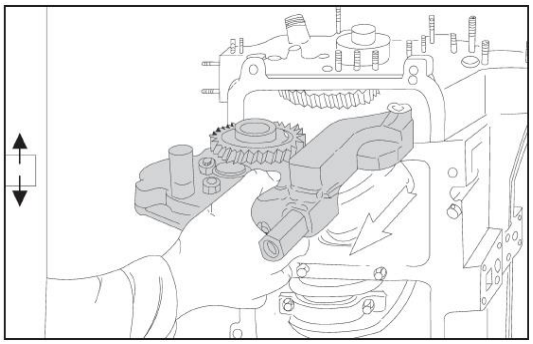


Figure 104

Clean the seal surface between crank Case and 0il pump.

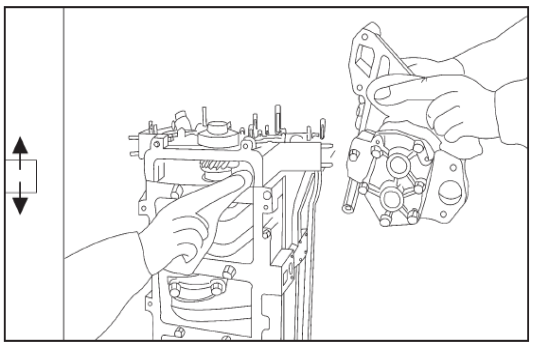


Figure 105

Install new oil pump and gasket, tighten the hex head bolts.
(One of them is in the hex head plug)
Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench

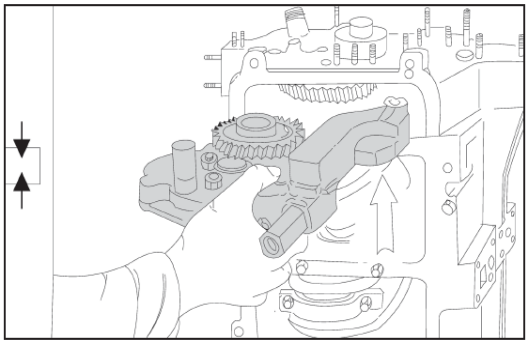


Figure 106

Install intermediate gear of oil pump.
NOTE: *convex towards inside*

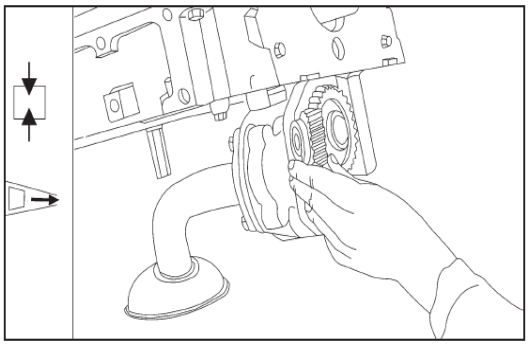


Figure 107

Install intermediate gear shaft of oil pump.

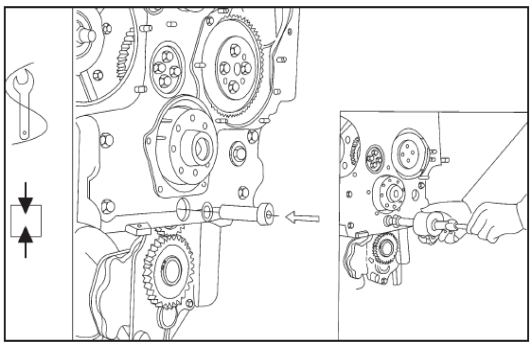


Figure 108

Install the bolts of intermediate gear shaft and tighten them.
Tightening torque：60^{+}5N·m
Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench

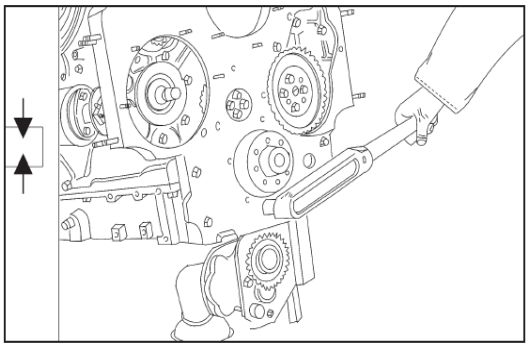


Figure 109

Install damper and pulley.

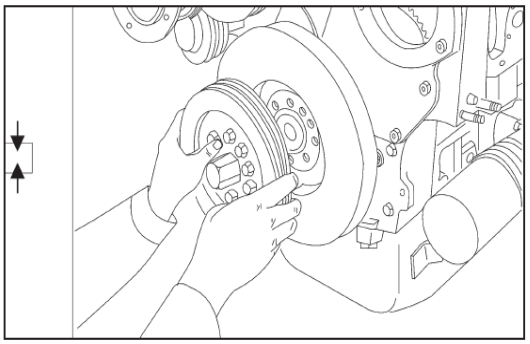


Figure 110

Install the V—belt pulley and adjust the tension, then tighten the hex head lock nuts.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

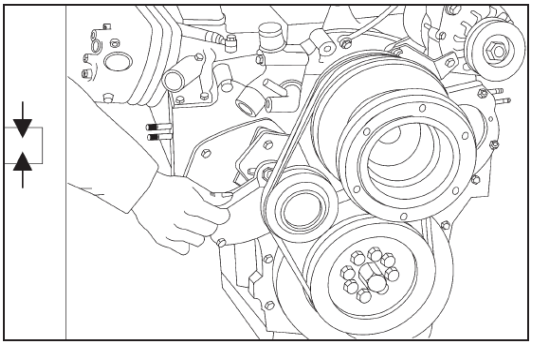


Figure 111

Fuel Supplying System

Replace injection pump

Remove the joint between the high pressure pipe and injection pump.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

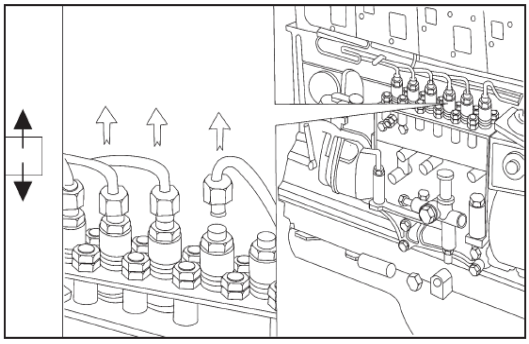


Figure 112

Rotate flywheel slowly, align the calibrating line of flywheel housing to "0T" calibrating line, to fix the position of TDC of compression stroke of the first cylinder.

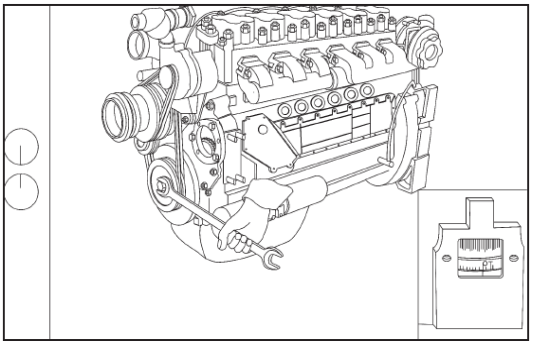


Figure 113

Remove the screws attaching shaft coupling and driving shaft.

Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench

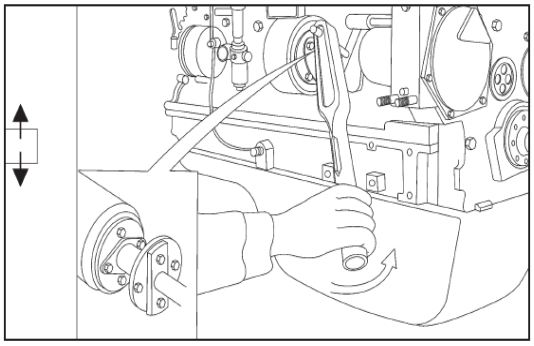


Figure 114

Remove bolts attaching shaft coupling and timing advance unit.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench and 16mm double offset ring wrench

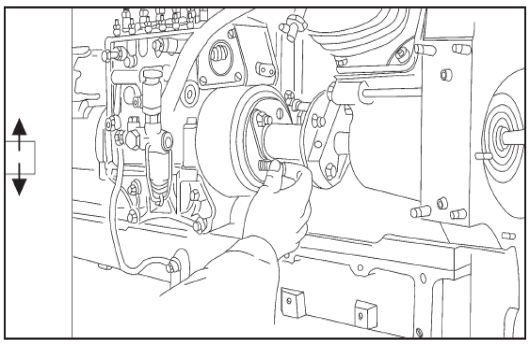


Figure 115

Depart gap of coupling flange attaching the coupling and driving shaft.

Tool: 6# screwdriver 0.5kg

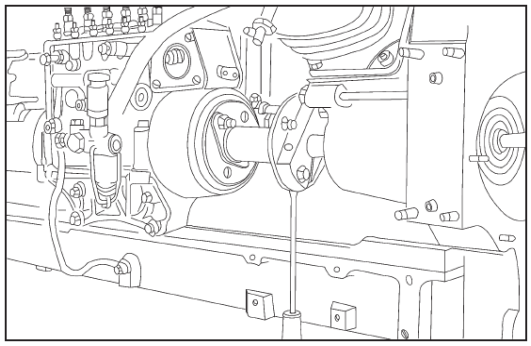


Figure 116

Push shaft coupling backward.

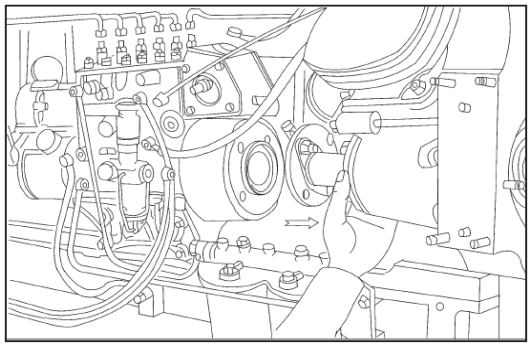


Figure 117

Remove the 4pcs socket head bolts attaching injection pump and bracket

Tool: 8mm inner hexagon wrench

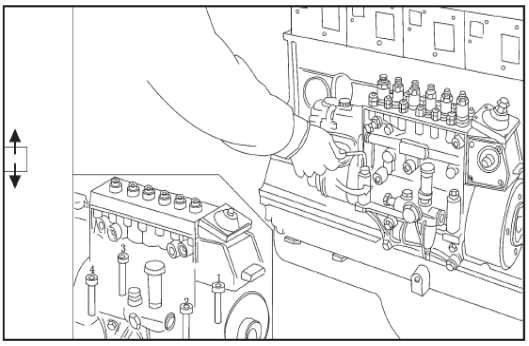


Figure 118

Remove all the connecting pipes from the injection pump.

Tool: 19mm open-ended wrench.

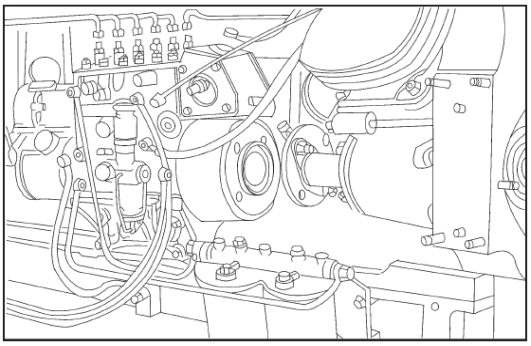


Figure 119

Remove the injection pump and install new injection pump and socket head bolts.

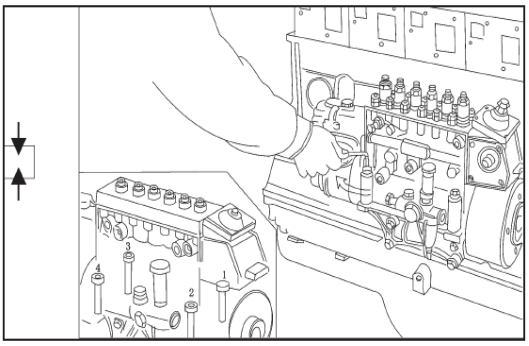


Figure 120

Tighten socket hexagon bolts of injection pump, connect pipeline.

Tightening torque：45^{+5}_{0} N·m

Tool: 8mm sleeve wrench

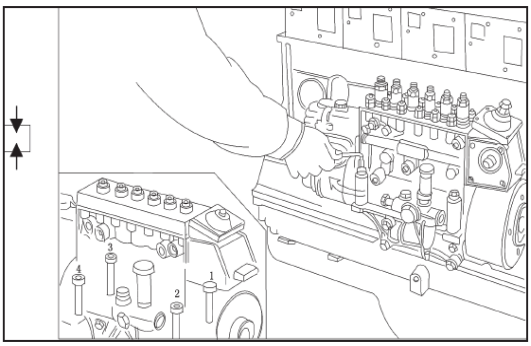


Figure 121

Install bolts attaching injection pump and shaft coupling, coat the thread with LOCTITE 242 THRERADLOCKER before tightening.

Tightening torque: 110N·m.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench and 10mm(double offset ring wrench.

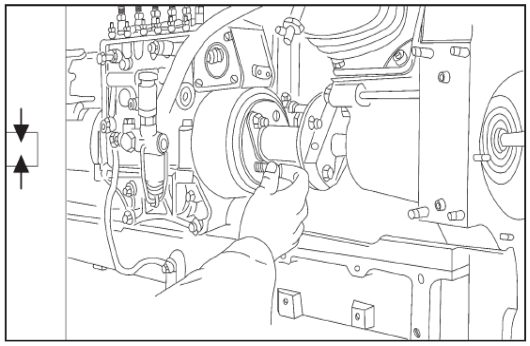


Figure 122

Rotate shaft coupling to watch the fuel oil jiggle at the outlet d any cylinder of the injection pump, then stop rotation.

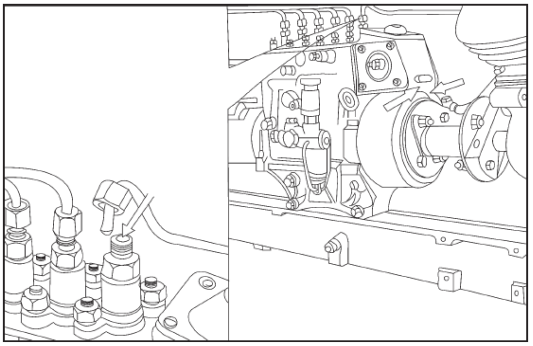


Figure 123

Rotate flywheel to align the indicated needle of flywheel to fuel supply advance angle. (P1earle reference Fuel System Mating List for fuel supply advance angle of each cylinder).

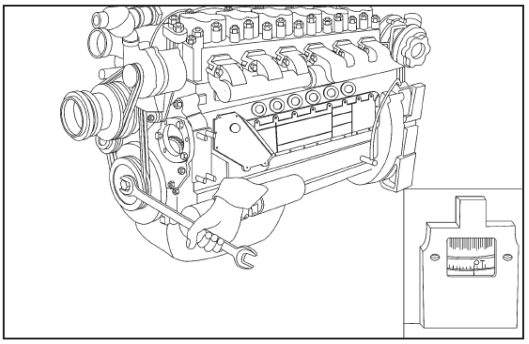


Figure 124

The calibration tails of injection pump is aligned with calibration tails of timing advance unit or flange).

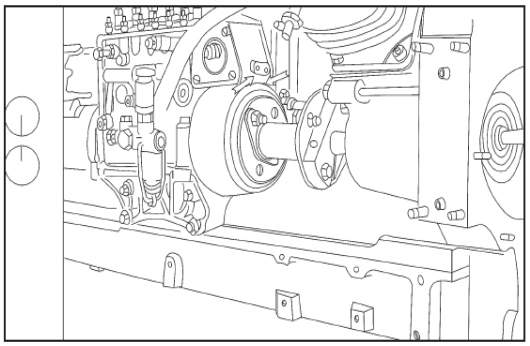


Figure 125

Install bolts attaching shaft coupling and driving haft. Coat the thread with L OCTITE 242 THREADLOCKER before tightening.

Tightening torque: 150^{+5}_{0} N·m.

Tool: 16mm sleeve wrench

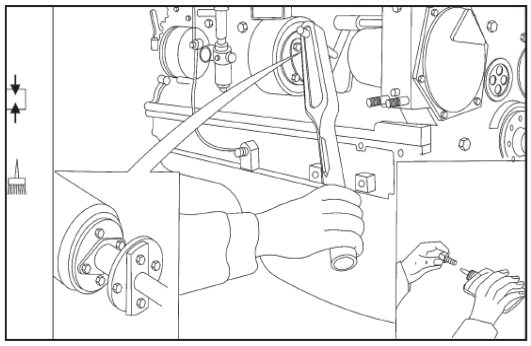


Figure 126

Rotate flywheel to recheck the advance angle of fuel supply, remove bolts attaching shaft coupling and driving shaft for readjustment if necessary.

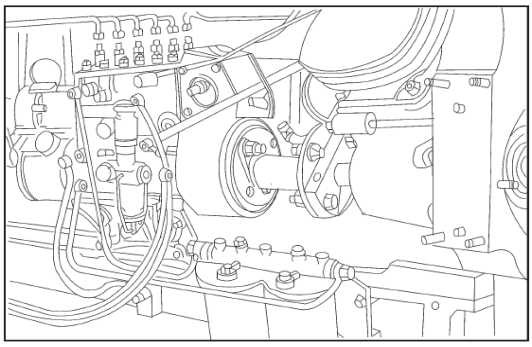


Figure 127

Replace Injection Pump

Clean all round of the injector, remove the joint attaching high pressure fuel pipe and injector.

Tool: 17mm open-ended wrench

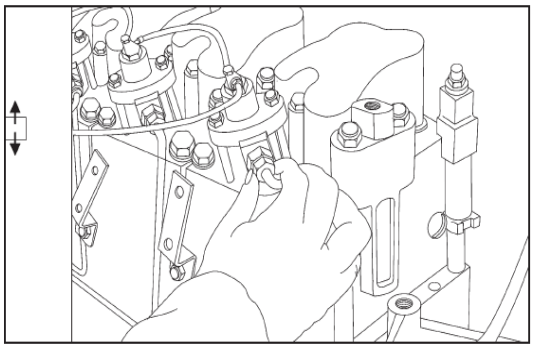


Figure 128

Remove fuel return pipe of the injector.

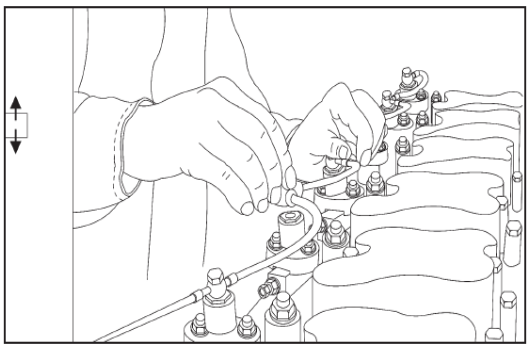


Figure 129

Loosen bolts of mounting plate, then remove mounting plate.

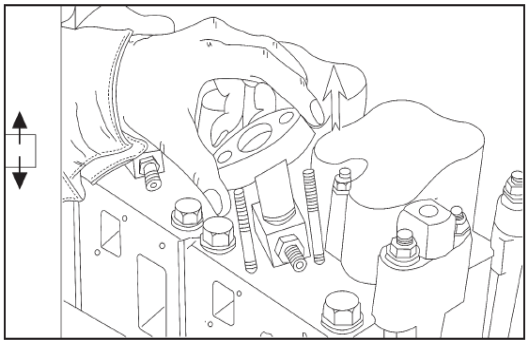


Figure 130

Remove injectors.

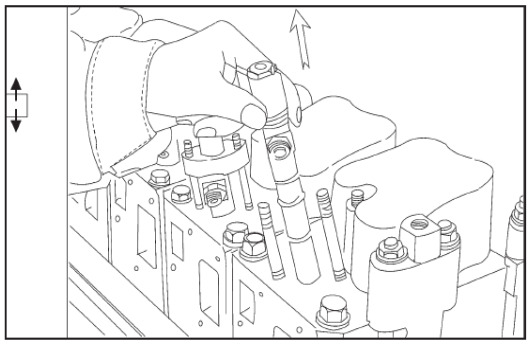


Figure 131

Clean seat hole of injector.

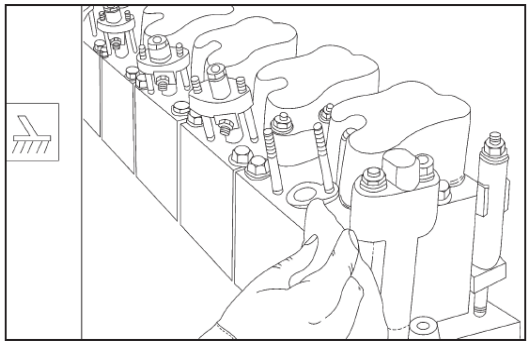


Figure 132

Replace with new copper washer.

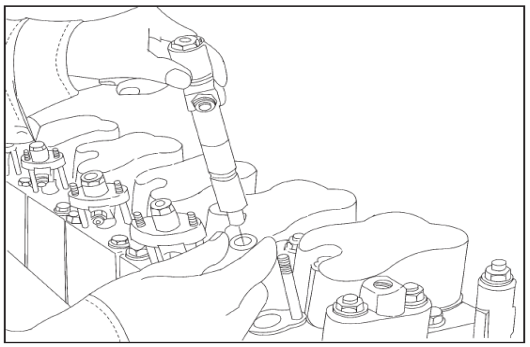


Figure 133

Replace with new injector and install new rubber seal ring.

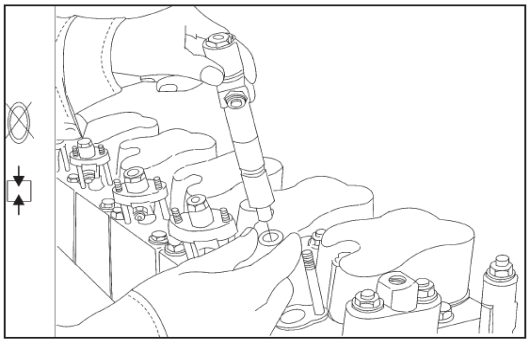


Figure 134

Install new injector into the seat hole.

NOTE: *It is not allowed to appear any mark of pressing rubber cushion after mounting injector .*

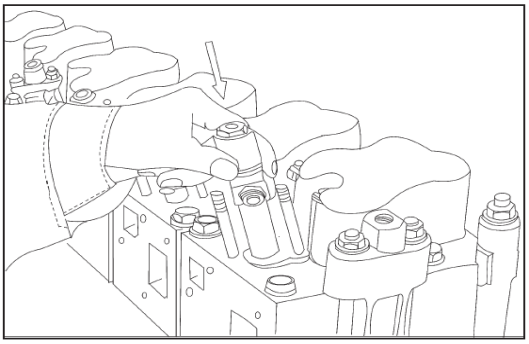


Figure 135

Install the mounting plate of injector.

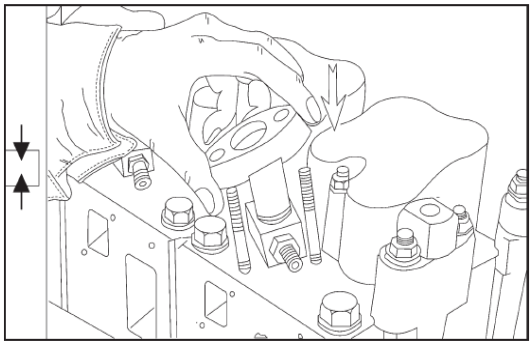


Figure 136

Install bolts or hex head nuts of mounting plate.

Tightening torque：25N·m

Tool: 13mm sleeve wrench

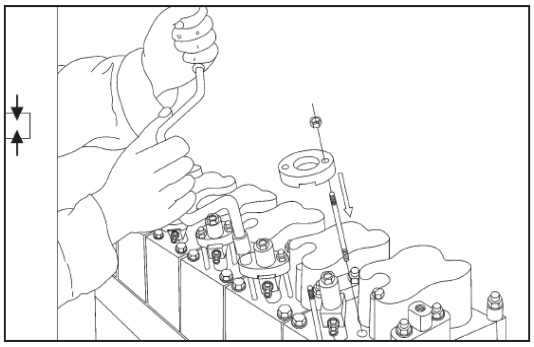


Figure 137

Tighten the joint attaching injector and high pressure fuel pipe, install fuel return pipe.

Tool: 13mm and 17mm open-ended wrench

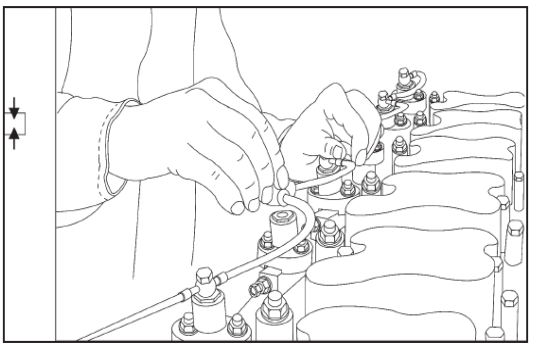


Figure 138

Air Intake System

Replace Turbocharger

Loosen rubber hose clamps from the inlet and outlet of compressor。

Tool: 6mm screwdriver

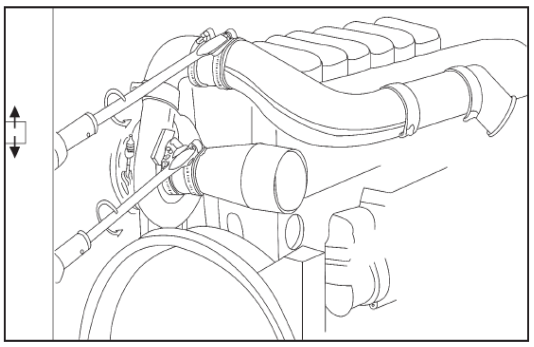


Figure 139

Loosen hose clamp from turbocharger oil return pipe.

Tool: 6mm screwdriver

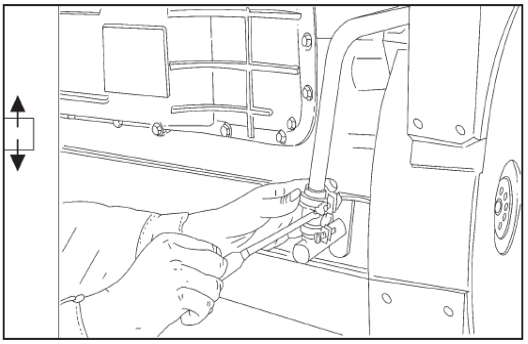


Figure 140

Remove inner head bolts from turbocharger oil inlet sucker, raise flange of sucker.

Tool: 6mm inner hexagon wrench

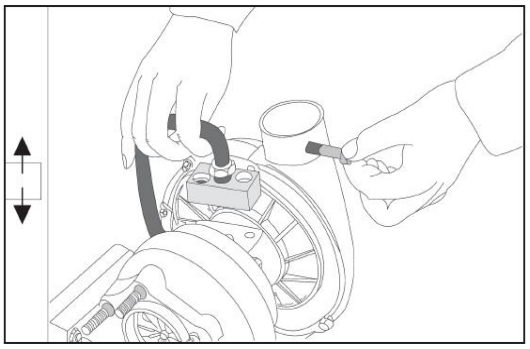


Figure 141

Remove the self-locking nuts from exhaust manifold to remove turbocharger.

Tool: 16mm open-ended wrench

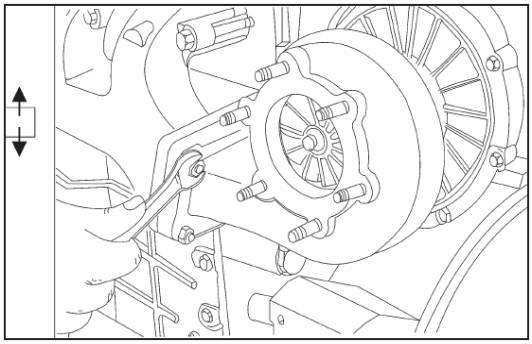


Figure 142

Replace with new turbocharger

NOTE: *If the turbocharger is not replaced immediately, the intake and exhaust manifolds should be covered to prevent anything falling into cylinder.*

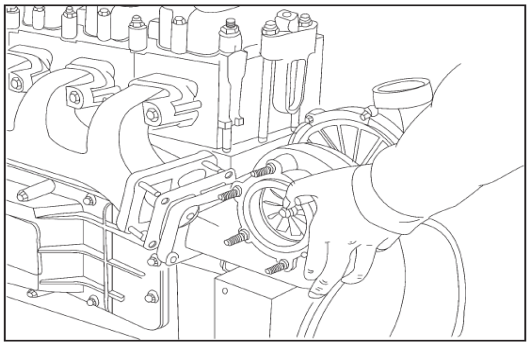


Figure 143

Replace with new gasket for oil return pipe, tighten bolts of oil return pipe.

NOTE: *Make sure to adjust the gasket oil hole and turbocharger flange oil hole, add some clean oil and rotate turbo impeller to let oil flow into bearing case.*

Tool: 6mm inner hexagon wench

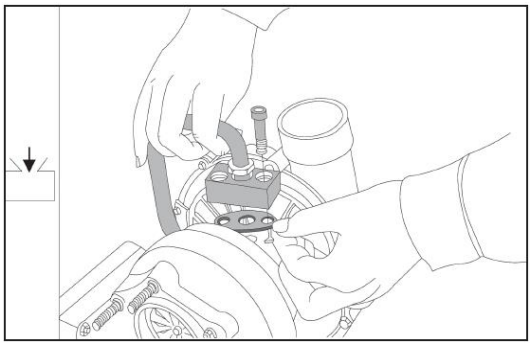


Figure 144

COMMOM TROUBLES AND REMEDY

1. Diesel engine can not start

Cause	Remedy
1. Fuel intake filter screen of supply pump or hose clogged	Clear away the dirt and check if the fuel is clean
2. Air entered into the fuel system	Drain off the air, check the sealing of the connector and repair it
3. Injection pump damaged	Check plunger, fuel outlet valve and repair or replace the broken parts
4. Injector damaged	Check the atomization of injector, and repair it
5. Initial angles of valve gear or fuel delivery is wrong	Cheek and adjust it
6. High pressure line damaged or leaked	Repair or replace
7. Insufficient pressure in cylinder	Check the sealing of the valve and cylinder gasket and the wear of the piston ring. Repair or replace them
8. The temperature is too low	With the addition of start-assist device

2. Stop soon after starting

1. Fuel filter clogged	Dismantle and clean away dirt and water, replace the filter element if necessary
2. Air entered into fuel system	Check fuel pipe and sealing of the connector, tighten air venting bolt, and drain off the air
3. Supply pump doesn't work	Check piston and valve of supply pump, clean and repair
4. Poor quality of fuel	Clean fuel filter and renew fuel
5. Idling speed is too low	Readjust it

3. Insufficient output

1. Air intake clogged (air cleaner choked)	Check the air cleaner and air intake pipe, clean or replace filter element
2. Exhaust back pressure is too high	Check the valve-timing and exhaust pipe, adjust and repair
3. Insufficient pressure in supercharging system	Check and block up the leakage of pipeline
4. Faults in turbocharger	Replace the turbocharger assembly
4.1.Compressor and turbine streets choked up	Clean or replace
4.2. Floating bearing cease to be in effect	Replace
4.3 Carbon deposit or greasy filth in clearance of turbine and compressor back	Clean
5. Intercooler damaged	Replace or repair
6. Leakage or choke of fuel line	Check the sealing of fuel pipe and connector, fuel filter and fuel line, repair, clean or replace the filter element
7. Poor quality of fuel	Clean the fuel tank, filter parts and fuel pipe. Renew the fuel
8. Excessive wear for injection pump or governor	Repair or replace
9. Smoke-limiter diaphragm of injection pump damaged	Repair or replace
10. Air pipe of smoke-limiter damaged	Replace
11. Poor atomizing	Check the injecting pressure, clean away the carbon deposit in nozzle, adjust and repair injector
12. Incorrect timing of valve gear or fuel delivery	Check and adjust it
13. High-speed of governor is adjusted too low	Check the speed-governing and adjust
14. Oil level in the oil sump is too high	Check the oil-dipstick, and drain off unnecessary oil
15. Leakage in cylinder gaskets	Check the compressed pressure at hot state, replace cylinder gaskets
16. Piston ring broken, the clearance of main bearing is too large	Replace worn parts or overhaul the engine
17. Cylinder liner or piston worn, or piston scuffing	Overhaul the engine

4. Fuel consumption is too high

1. Air intake clogged (air cleaner choked)	Check air cleaner and air intake pipe, then clean them
2. Exhaust back pressure is too high	Check exhaust pipe and brake valve, then clean them
3. Poor quality of fuel	Renew the fuel according to requirements
4. Fuel line choked	Check and repair
5. Fuel line leaked	Check and repair
6. Poor atomizing	Check, adjust and repair
7. Incorrect timing of valve gear or fuel delivery	Adjust valve clearance and injection advance angle according to requirements
8. Leakage in cylinder gasket	Check compressed pressure
9. The clearance of main bearing shell is too large Engine need to overhaul	Check and overhaul
10. Piston scuffing	Replace cylinder liner, piston and piston ring
11. Insufficient pressure in supercharging system	Check and block up the leakage of pipeline
12. Faults in turbocharger	Check and replace
13. Intercooler damaged or leaked	Replace or repair

5. Black smoke exhaust

1. Air intake isn't free or exhaust back pressure is too high	Clean
2. Poor quality of fuel	Clean and renew
3. Incorrect timing of valve gear or fuel supply	Adjust according to requirements
4. Poor atomizing	Check, repair or replace injector
5. Excessive injection quantity	Check and adjust (by manufacturer)
6. Insufficient pressure in supercharging system	Check and block up the leakage of pipeline and connector
7. Faults in turbocharger	Check and replace
8. Intercooler damaged or leaked	Replace or repair
9. Incorrect working point of smoke-limiter	Readjust (by manufacturer)

6. Lub-oil gathered in air intake port and air intake pipe of turbocharger

1. The sealing of turbocharger cease to be in effect	Repair or replace turbocharger
2. The gas-oil separator cease to be in effect	Replace
3. Lub-oil level in oil sump is too high	Drain off unnecessary oil according to requirements

7. White, blue smoke exhaust

1. Poor quality of fuel, contains water	Renew fuel
2. Temperature of cooling water is too low	Check working temperature of thermostat, replace if necessary
3. Incorrect timing of valve gear or fuel delivery	Check and adjust
4. Poor atomizing	Check and repair
5. Incomplete combustion, scuffing and the compressed pressure is too low	Check piston ring, cylinder liner, cylinder gasket, and repair them
6. Wear-in between the piston rings and cylinder liners is not good	Go on wearing-in
7. The gaps of the piston rings are not staggered	Adjust, reassembly
8. Piston oil rings cease to be in effect	Replace
9. The fit clearance between piston and cylinder liner is too large	Repair or replace
10. The sealing ring of turbocharger worn	Check and replace
11. The thrust bearing of turbocharger worn	Check and replace
12. The oil return pipe of turbocharger choked.	Clean or repair

8. Uneven engine speed

1. Poor quality of fuel, mingled with water or wax	Clean fuel system, and renew fuel
2. Air entered into fuel suction pipe	Check the sealing of fuel pipe and connector, drain off air
3. Faults in flyweight of governor and speed governing spring	Check and repair (by manufacturer)
4. Uneven fuel delivery	Check and adjust (by manufacturer)
5. Unstable atomizing	Check and repair
6. Surge in turbocharger	Check, Wash compressor streets, clean away the carbon deposit from exhaust passage
7. Bearing of turbocharger damaged	Replace it

9. Cooling water temperature is too high

1. Water level in water tank is too low	Check water leakage, add water
2. Water tank clogged	Clean or repair
3. The belt of water pump loosened	Adjust tension according to requirements
4. Water pump gasket damaged, water pump impeller worn	Check and repair, or replace
5. Faults in thermostat	Replace it
6. Water pipe damaged and air entered	Check the water pipe, connector and gasket. Renew the damaged parts
7. The oil level in oil sump is too low	Check oil leakage, repair and add oil

10. Lub-oil pressure is too low

1. Oil level in oil sump is too low	Check oil leakage, add oil
2. Faults in pressure regulating valve of main oil passage	Check valve, clean and repair
3. Strainer, oil pipes, connector gasket choked or broken	Check strainer and connector , check if there is any sponge in oil passage, repair
4. Lub-oil does not conform to specifications	Renew the lub-oil according to requirements
5. Intake pipe of oil pump leaked	Check the oil pipe and connector, repair or replace
6. Wear-in between the piston rings and cylinder liners is not good	Go on wearing-in
7. The gaps of the piston rings are not staggered	Adjust, reassembly
8. Piston oil rings cease to be in effect	Replace
9. The fit clearance between piston and cylinder liner is too large	Repair or replace
10. The sealing ring of turbocharger worn	Check and replace
11. The thrust bearing of turbocharger worn	Check and replace
12. The oil return pipe of turbocharger choked.	Clean or repair

11. Parts wore quickly

1. Filter element of air cleaner is unqualified or damaged	Check and replace filter element
2. Air leakage in air intake system	Check air intake pipe, gasket and connecting sleeve, repair or replace
3. Oil level in oil sump is too low	Check oil leakage, repair and add oil
4. Oil passage clogged	Clean
5. Oil doesn't conform to specifications	Renew lub-oil according to specifications
6. Piston rings broken or worn	Replace
7. Cylinder liner and piston worn or piston scuffing	Dismantle and check piston and liner, repair or replace
8. Filter element of oil filter can not be replaced in time	Replace it according to specifications
9. Excessive wear of parts, need to over-haul	Check the mileage and overhaul
10. Crankshaft isn't concentric with the shaft of engine follower	Check the mounting support, repair it
11. Wrong oil grade	Adopt correct oil grade

12. Noise is too high

1. Poor quality of fuel	Renew fuel
2. Temp of cooling water is too low	Check thermostat, replace it if necessary
3. Incorrect timing of valve gear or fuel delivery	Check, repair and adjust
4. Poor atomizing	Check, repair and adjust
5. Excessive injection quantity	Check and adjust (by manufacturer)
6. Vibration damper damaged	Check connecting bolt and replace damaged parts
7. Leakage in valve or adjusted unsuitably	Dismantle and check valve, readjust it
8. Excessive gear clearance or tooth broken	Check and replace damaged parts
9.Cylinder liner or piston worn, or piston scuffing	Check and repair, or replace
10. Push rod bended or broken	Replace it
11. Piston rings broken or worn	Check and replace damaged parts
12. Piston rings broken or worn	Check and replace damaged parts
13. Excessive wear in main bearing	Check and replace
14. Excessive thrust clearance of crank-shaft	Replace the thrust ring
15. All main bearings are not concentric	Check and repair
16. Crankshaft isn't concentric with the shaft of engine follower	Check the bolts of support and repair
17. Excessive wear in parts, need to over-haul	Check the mileage and overhaul
18. Surge in turbocharger	Clean compressor streets, and clean away the carbon deposit from exhaust passage
19. Sealing ring of turbocharger sintered	Replace turbocharger assembly
20.Turbocharger bearing damaged, moving parts and fixed parts bumped each other	Replace turbocharger assembly
21. Foreign body entered turbocharger turbine or compressor impeller	Replace turbocharger assembly

13. Starting motor doesn't work

1. Insufficient charging for battery	Check, charge or replace
2. Bad contact in connecting wire	Check up circuit, tighten terminal
3. Fuse broken	Replace
4. Bad contact in brush	Clean brush surface or replace brush
5. Short circuit in starting motor	Check and repair it, or replace the motor assembly

14. Starting motor is powerless

1. Insufficient voltage of battery	Charge or replace
2. Bearing bush worn	Replace bearing assembly
3. Bad contact in brush	Clean brush surface or replace brush
4. Commutator unclean or sintered	Clean away the dirt and furbished using sandpaper, or replace commutator assembly
5. Sealing off at wire end	Re-weld
6. Bad contact for switch	Check and repair
7. Wore clutch slipped	Adjust working moment of clutch or replace

15. Generator doesn't work

1. Wire connecting broken, short circuit, joint loosened	Check the connecting wire of generator or galvanometer repair
2. Coil of rotator and stator shorted, broken	Repair or replace
3. Rectifier tube damaged	Replace
4. Terminal damaged, wire broken	Repair
5. Voltage regulated by regulator is too low	Repair
6. Contact of regulator fused	Repair or replace

16. Insufficient charging of generator

1. Connecting wire broken or shorted, terminal loosened	Repair
2. Coil of rotator and stator shorted or broken partially	Repair or replace
3. Belt of generator loosened	Check and adjust tension
4. Rectifier tube damaged, bad contact in brush	Repair
5. Insufficient voltage of regulator	Regulate
6. Field coil or resistance connecting wire broken	Repair or replace
7. Insufficient electrolyte of battery or battery is too old	Add electrolyte or renew battery

17. Uneven charging current

1. Coil of rotator or stator will short or break	Repair or replace
2. Bad contact in brush	Repair
3. Terminal loosened and bad contact	Repair
4. Voltage regulator damaged	Repair
5. Incorrect regulated voltage	Check and regulate

18. Generator over-charged

1. Shorted in battery	Repair or replace
2. Voltage of regulator is too high	Repair and regulate
3. Bad contact in regulator	Repair
4. Faults in regulator contact, voltage coil or resistance connecting wire broken	Repair or replace

19. Abnormal sound in generator

1. Incorrect mounting for generator	Repair
2. Bearing damaged	Replace
3. Moving parts bumping to fixed parts	Repair or replace
4. Rectifier shorted	Replace
5. Stator coil shorted	Repair or replace

FRONT AXLE

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Structure chart

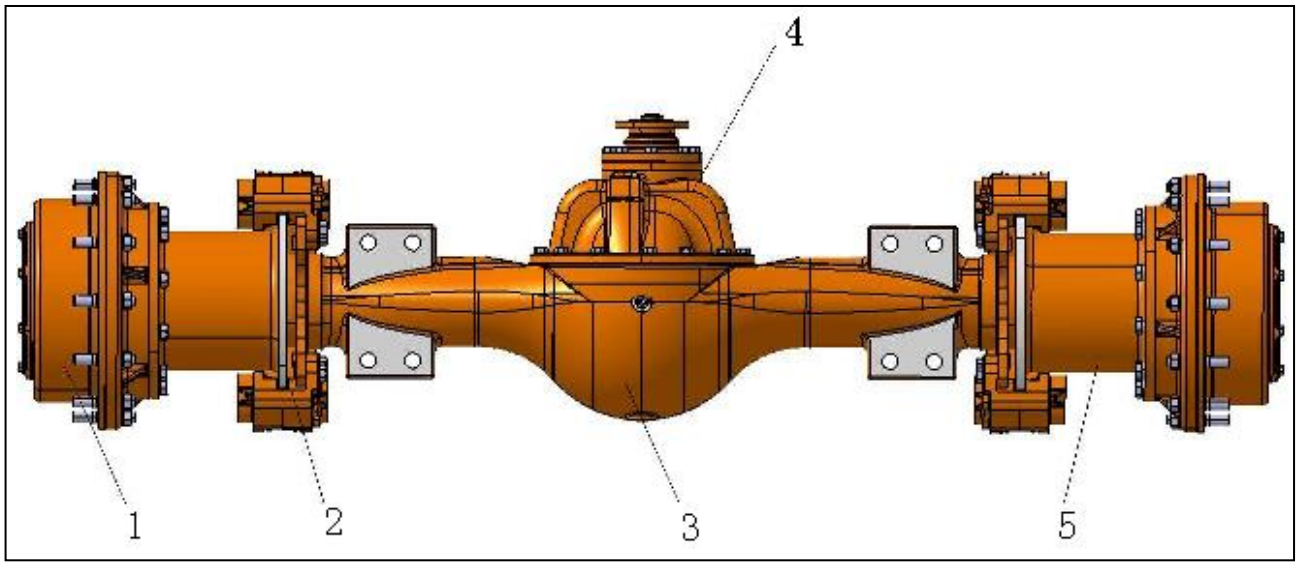


Figure 1

1. EDGE REDUCER ASS'Y 2. BRAKE CLAMP ASS'Y 3. SHELL 4. MAIN REDUCER ASS'Y
5. HUB ASS'Y

Basic parameters of drive axle:

Main drive	Type	Spiral bevel gear grade one reduction
	Reduction ratio	4.625
Hub reduction gear	Type	Grade one planet reduction
	Reduction ratio	4.94
Axle oil	GB13895-1992 gear oil	16Kg

Internal structure of drive axle

Drive axle assembly is one of the most important spare parts of transmission system, its main function is reduce rotation speed from gear box and increase torque, and make wheels at both sides having speed difference. Besides, it also plays the role of bearing and transmitting. Drive axle assembly of loader is mainly composed of shell, main drive (including differential mechanism), semiaxis, hub reduction gear, brake caliper assembly and other parts. Of which, the parts having reduction and differential function is main driver and hub reduction gear; power transmission between main drive and hub reduction gear is realized through semiaxis, multiple spline at both sides of semiaxis and axle shaft gear of differential mechanism and sun gear of hub reduction gear mesh with each other to realize power connection between main drive and hub reduction gear.

PARTS LIST

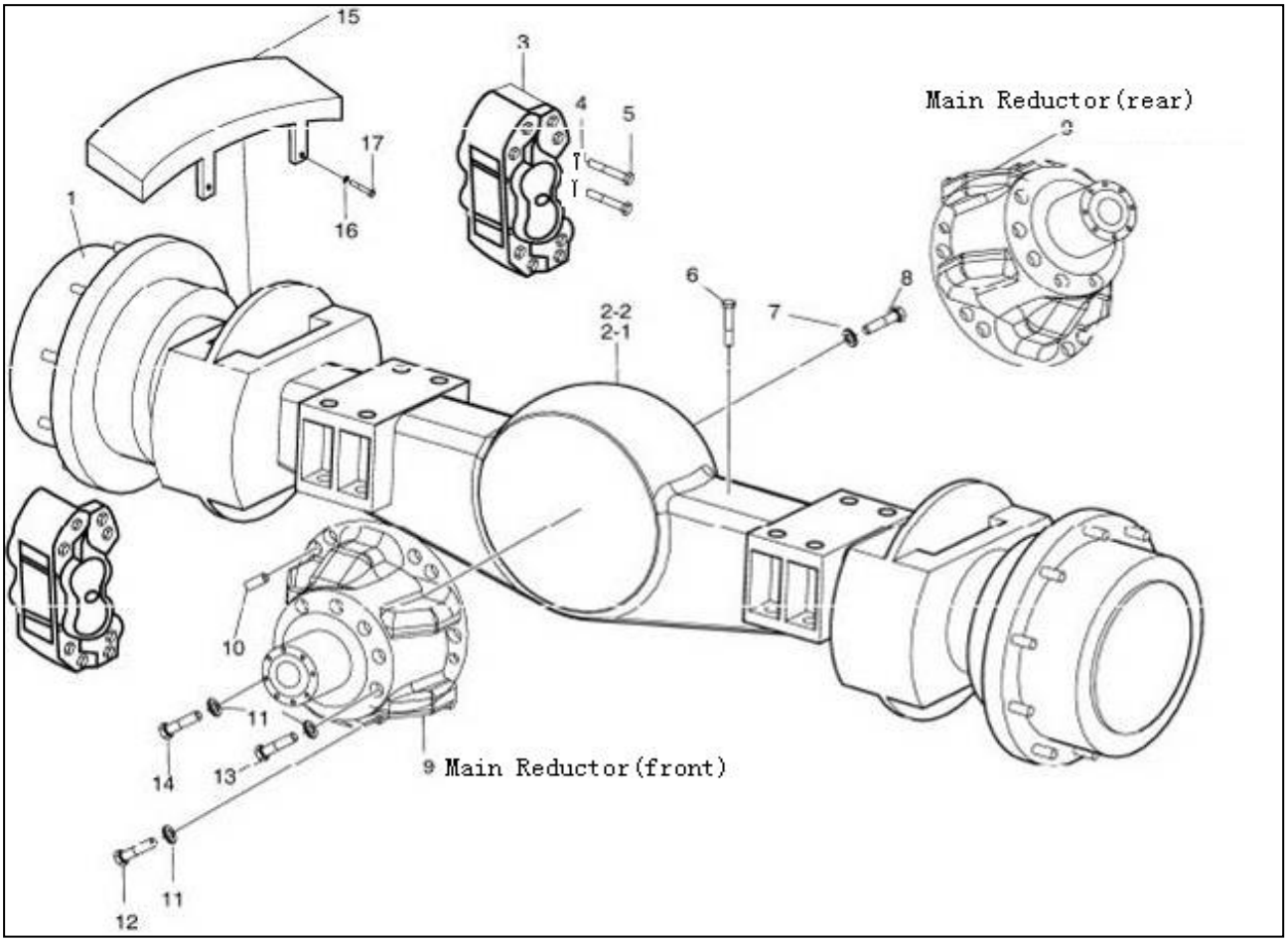


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	REDUCTOR ASS'Y	9	MAIN REDUCTOR（FRONT）
2-1	SUPPORT ASSY,AXLE		MAIN REDUCTOR（REAR）
2-2	REAR DRIVING AXLE SHELLI	10	D12X20 PIN
3	BRAKE ASSY	11	WASHER
4	PIN	12	BOLT M14X1.5X35-10.9
5	BOLT FOR BRAKE	13	BOLT M14X1.5X40-10.9
6	DEFLATION VALVE Z1/8	14	BOLT M14X1.5X60-10.9
7	O-RING25.8X2.65	15	PLATE,COVER
8	PLUG	16	WASHER
		17	BOLT

Hub drive axle assembly

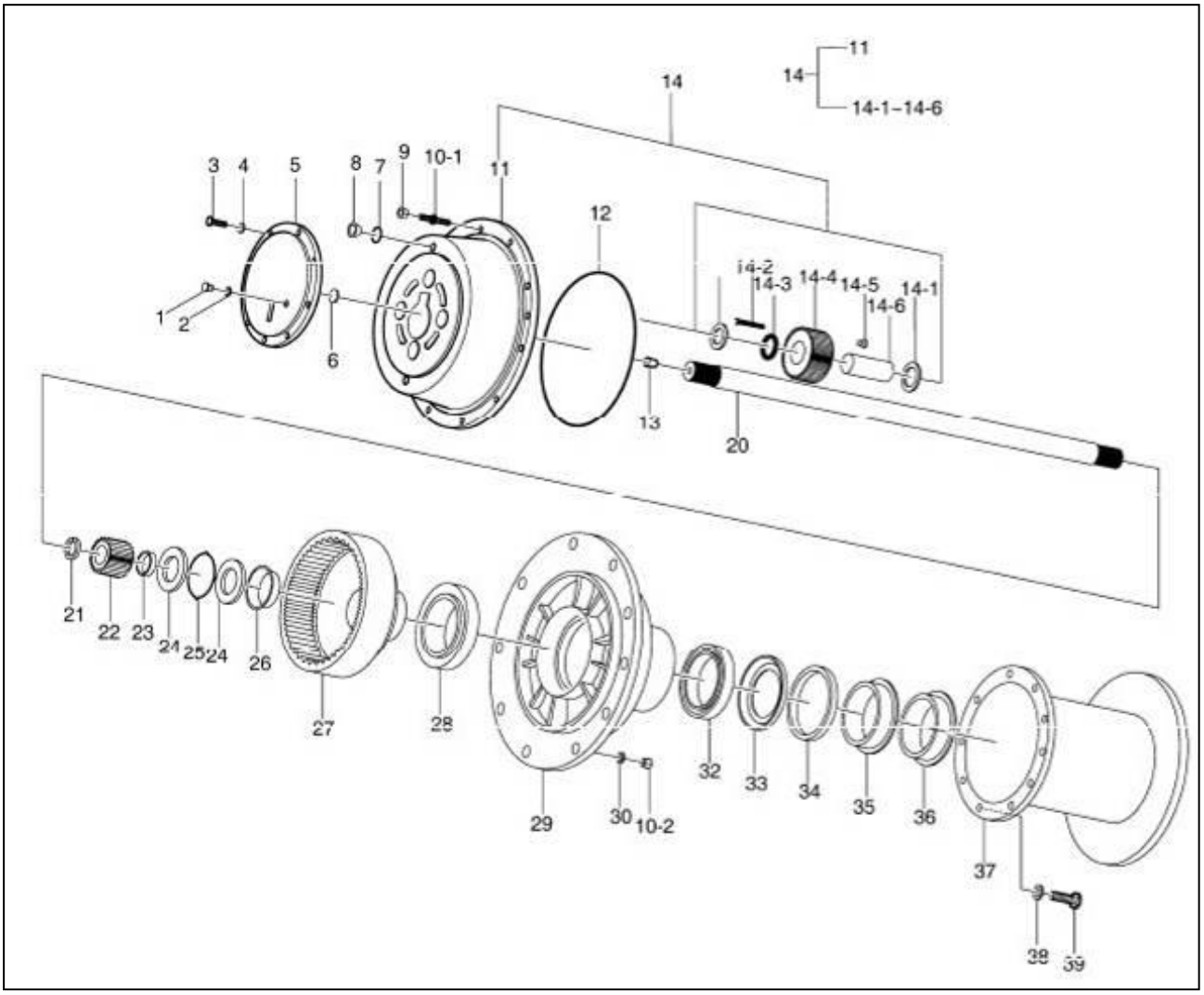


Figure 3

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	PLUG	14-5	STEEL BALL
2	WASHER	14-6	SHAFT OF PLANETARY GEAR
3	BOLT M12X1.25X30	20	SHAFT
4	WASHER	21	SNAP RING
5	COVER	22	SUN GEAR
6	SNAP RING	23	SPACER
7	O-RING25.8X2.65	24	NUT
8	PLUG	25	WASHER FOR NUT
9	NUT,HEX FLANGE	26	TAPER BUSHING
10	BOLT ASSY: WITH NUT	27	INTERNAL GEAR ASSY
10-1	STUD 7/16X4.21	28	32026 BEARING
10-2	NUT	29	RIM,WHEEL
11	CARRIER,PLANETARY GEAR	30	WASHER
12	SEAL RING	32	32024 BEARING
13	ADJUSTING PIN	33	WASHER
14	CARRIER,PLANET	34	RING,SNAP
14-1	WASHER FOR PLANETARY GEAR	36	OIL SEAL
14-2	BEARING,NEEDLE ROLLER	37	BRAKE DISK
14-3	SPACE BUSHING	38	WASHER
14-4	PLANETARY GEAR	39	BOLT
14-5	STEEL BALL		

Drive axle brake assembly

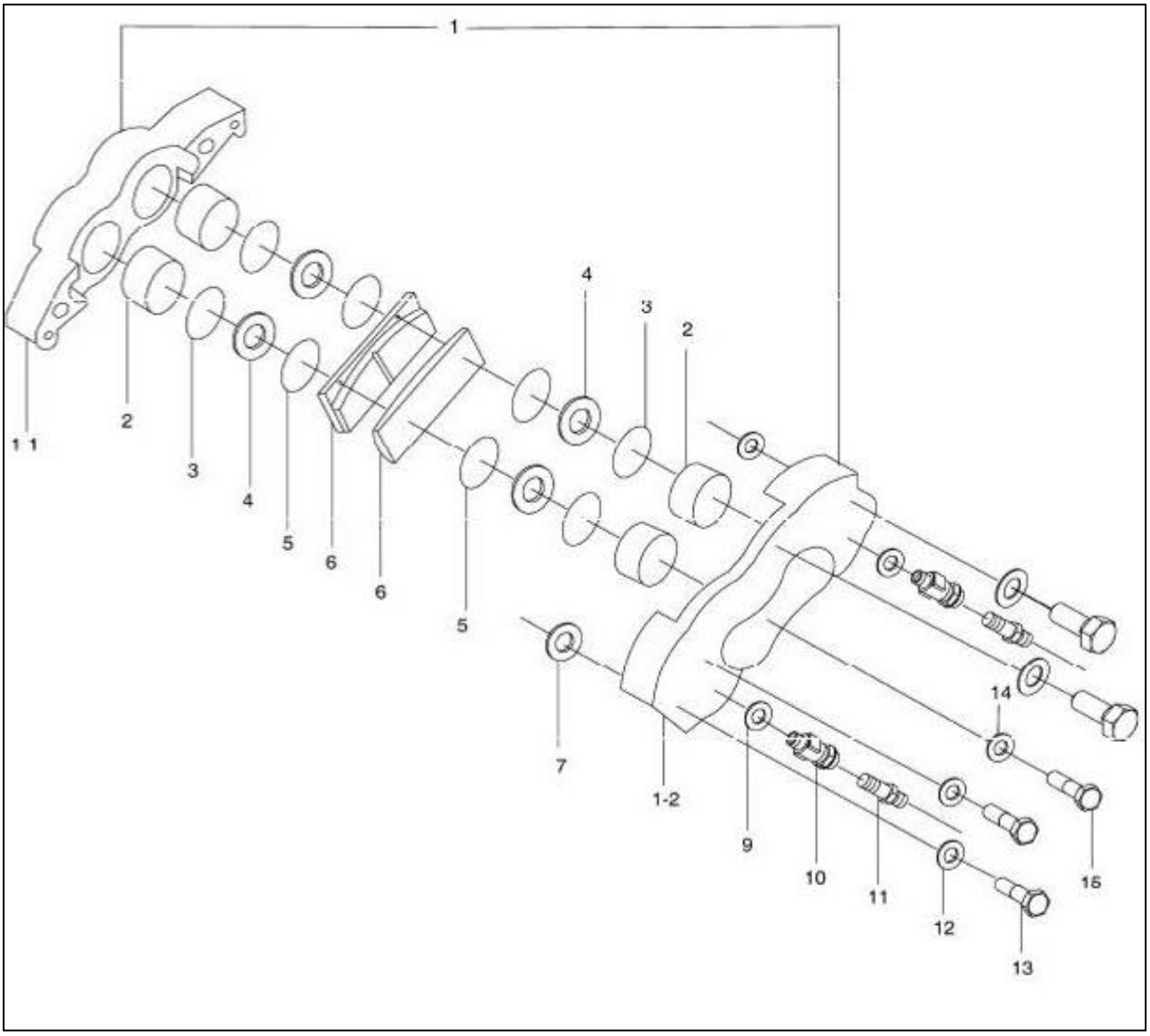


Figure 4

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	CALIPER ASSY	7	O-RING
1-1	EXTERIOR BRAKE	9	WASHER
1-2	INNER BRAKE	10	CONNECTING
2	PISTON	11	DEFLATING VALVE
3	RECTANGULAR SEAL	12	WASHER
4	DUST CASE	13	BOLT
5	BLOCK RING	14	WASHER
6	BRAKE DISK	15	BOLT PIN

Main drive assembly

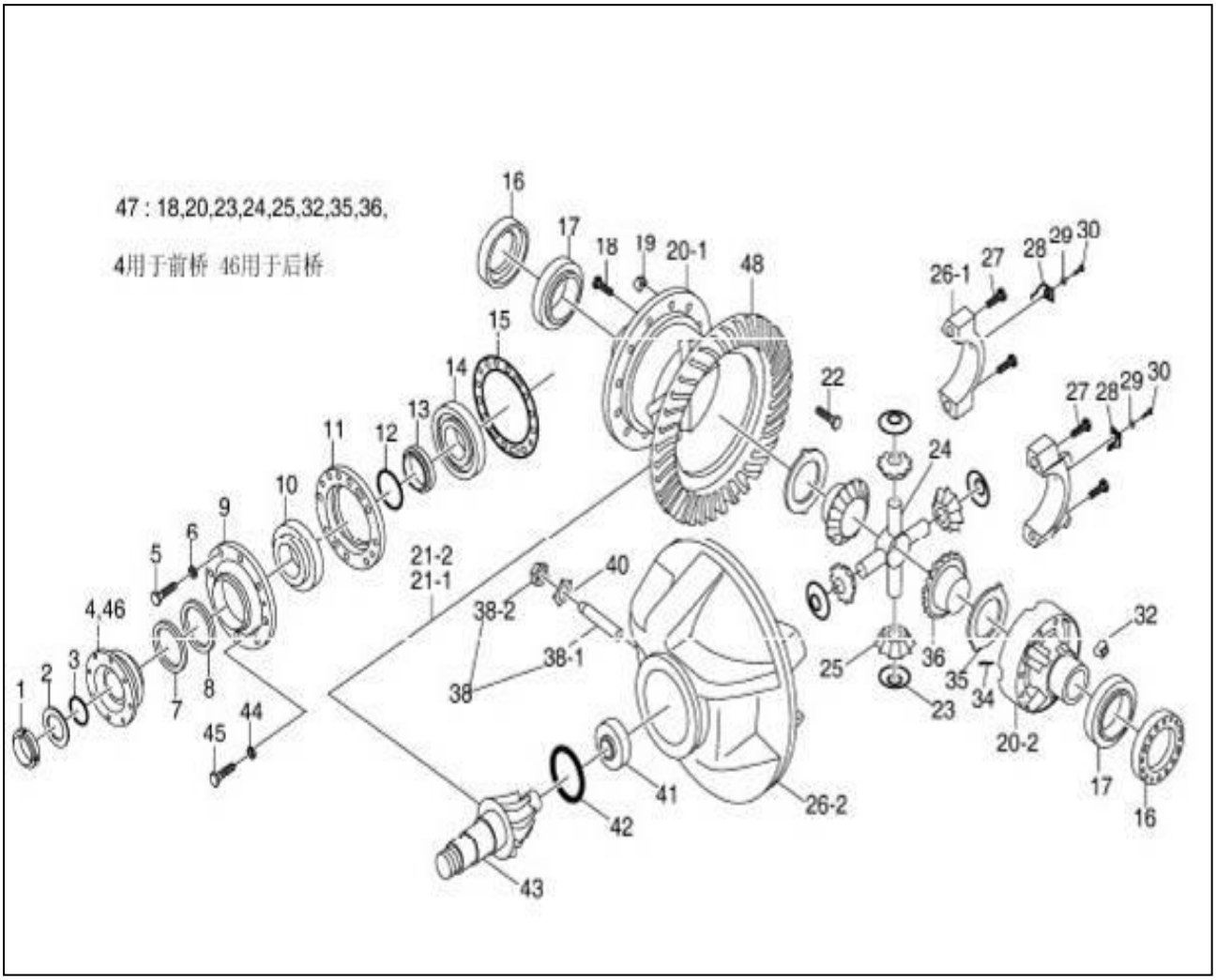


Figure 5

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	LOCK NUT	24	DIFFERENTIAL CROSSING
2	WASHER	25	BEVEL GEAR
3	O SEAL RING	26	CASE,BEARING
4	FLANGE	26-1	BEARING SEAT
5	BOLT	26-2	DIFFERENTIAL CAGE
6	WASHER	27	BOLT FOR MAIN REDUCTOR
7	OIL SEAL	28	LOCK PLATE
8	RING,SHIM	29	WASHER
9	SEALING GLAND	30	BOLT M10X1X20-8.8
10	BEARING	32	M16X1.5NUT
11	BEARING BUSHING	34	DIFFERENTIAL BOLT
12	ADJUSTING WASHER	35	WASHER
13	SHAFT BUSHING	36	AXLE SHAFT GEAR
14	BEARING	38	BOLT,UNION
15	ADJUSTING WASHER	38-1	BOLT
16	ADJUSTING NUT	38-2	NUT M27X2
17	BEARING	40	LOCK PLATE
18	DIFFERENTIAL BOLT	41	BEARING
19	M14X1.5 NUT	42	90/96.5 STOP RING
20	CAGE,DIFFERENTIAL	43	DRIVING BEVEL GEAR
20-1	DIFFERENTIAL CAGE	44	WASHER
20-2	DIFFERENTIAL CAGE	45	BOLT
21-1	DRIVEN BEVEL GEAR	46	FLANGE ASSY
21-2	GEAR ASSY,BEVEL	47	GEAR ASSY,DIFFERENTIAL
22	BOLT	48	DRIVING BEVEL GEAR
23	WASHER FOR BEVEL GEAR	48	DRIVING BEVEL GEAR

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Oil of new drive axle must be replaced after working for 15 days (about 100 working hours), oil shall be replaced once after working for every six months (about 1200 working hours) in following days.

Every month maintenance：

1. Check abrasion condition of brake disc, if there is disruptive abrasion; please handle in time if there is any.
2. Check abrasion condition of brake block to guarantee separation and reunion of brake caliper is flexible; it shall be replaced in time when brake block is wearing close to abrasion line (at the bottom of groove).
3. Check if oil level of shell complies with requirements, please add new oil if the oil level descends.
4. Keep axle clean, keep vent pipe smooth, and avoid silt going into axle. Check loosening condition of all fasteners, especially rim nuts, if it is loosed, please refasten again.

Every half year maintenance：

Lubrication oil in axle shall be replaced every half a year, different brands of lubrication oil shall be adopted for different areas and seasons. Please refer to 4.2 for oil replacing method.

Every year maintenance：

Overhaul checking every working year:

1. Check the gap, mesh and abrasion condition of spiral bevel gear of main reducer.
2. Check abrasion condition of differential mechanism gear.
3. Check abrasion condition of hub gear.
4. Check abrasion condition of needle bearing of hub planetary gear.
5. Requirements of installation and debugging items after overhaul checking:
   1) After assembling, axle shaft gear and bevel gear shall move flexibly with hand touching rather than locking. The Min. gear backlash of gear is 0.18-0.23mm. Tooth length and tooth height of contacting area of two gears cannot be less than 50%.
   2) In order to guarantee enough bearing rigidity of active spiral gear, before assembling oil seal and sealing cover, adopt gradually reducing spacer shim between two tapered roller bearing to give 1.0-1.5N.m preloaded torque to roller bearing.
   3) Gear backlash between the driving and driven spiral bevel gear is 0.25-0.45mm, the changing amount cannot be more than 0.15mm, gear backlash can be realized through adjusting nuts of both sides of differential mechanism and spacer shim of bearing sleeve. Tooth surface contacting area shall guarantee direction of tooth length and tooth height is not less than 50%, contacting position shall be at the middle side of tooth surface and closer to the smaller side.
   4) Adjusting of bearing clearance of shell at both sides of drive axle: Fasten adjusting nuts, give 28-38N.m preload to shell roller bearing, and then lock two round nuts with screw fastening

GENERAL DISASSEMBLY AND REASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS

⚠ WARNING!
Never use gasoline, solvents, or other flammable fluids to clean components. Only use approved commercial solvents that are nonflammable and nontoxic.

IMPORTANT
Use only GENUINE HCE SPARE PARTS to warrant proper operations and prevent interchangeability problems.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

1. Thoroughly clean and dry axle before disassembly.
2. All components should be thoroughly cleaned and dried before reassembly. Dirt, chips, and foreign material may cause failures.
3. All ducts and castings should be thoroughly cleaned and dried to remove dirt, chips, and foreign material to prevent damage after reassembly.
4. Reassembly should be done in a clean shop, and should be as dust free as possible.
5. Make sure tools and equipment are at hand.
6. When reassembling Daewoo strongly recommends to replace the following parts with new.
   - Seal Rings.
   - O-rings.
   - Gaskets.
   - Threaded rings with notched collar.
   - Any component damaged during disassembly.
7. When mounting heat fitted components, make sure of their proper position and direction of assembly, after they have cooled.
8. To heat bearings, use proper heating plates, piping, or suitable ovens.

   NOTE: *Never heat parts by using a torch. Oil bath, heated by a torch, maybe used to warm components.*
9. Lubricate all sections concerned when reassembling shafts, bearings, etc.
10. Lubricate O-rings before installing them in relevant seats to prevent kinking during assembly, such a position would impair proper sealing.
11. Replace gears only in matched sets to make sure of proper tooth mating.

AXLE DISASSEMBLY

Drive axle disassembly

1. Put drive axle on supporting and make sure main driver assembly is upward.

Figure 6

2. Dismantle brake caliper dust cover

   Loosen bolts of dust cover with tools of relative specifications (such as sleeve, open end wrench, etc, same as following situation, which will not state again).

Figure 7

3. Dismantle brake caliper assembly

   Loosen the connection bolts between brake caliper and brake caliper support, dismantle brake caliper assemble.

Figure 8

4. Release gear oil from

   Loosen hub oil releasing drain plug and shell oil releasing drain plug, turn on slowly with hands to avoid oil spilling.

   Note：*Store gear oil with clean container.*

Figure 9

5. Release gear oil from shell

Turn on oil releasing bolts axle end cap to release gear oil.

Note：*Store gear oil with clean container.*

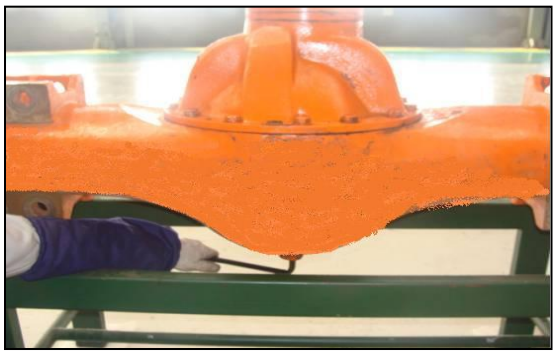


Figure 10

6. Dismantle end cap

Loosen connection bolts between planet carrier and end cap, then get end cap from hub reducer assembly with jackscrew, dismantle end cap.

Figure 11

7. Dismantle locating block

Take down locating block with hands.

Note：*If it is tight when taking down, please use assistant tools to pry out.*

Figure 12

8. Dismantle stop collar

Dismantle stop collar from semiaxis with stop collar pincers.

Note: *Before dismantling stop collar, pull out a section of semiaxis from shell.*

Note: *It must clamp firmly when using stop collar pincers to avoid safety hazard when it is popup.*

Figure 13

9. Dismantle sun gear

Dismantle semiaxis from sun gear.

Figure 14

10. Dismantle locating block

Dismantle locating block from semi axle with hands.

Figure 15

11. Dismantle semiaxis

Take semiaxis from shell slightly.

Figure 16

12. Hub reducer

First loosen rim bolts with relative tools, then loosen rim from planet carrier with jackscrew and dismantle planet carrier assembly.

Note: *Please slowly loosen planet carrier to avoid safety hazard resulted from dropping of planet carrier assembly.*

Figure 17

13. O Ring

Dismantle O ring from hub.

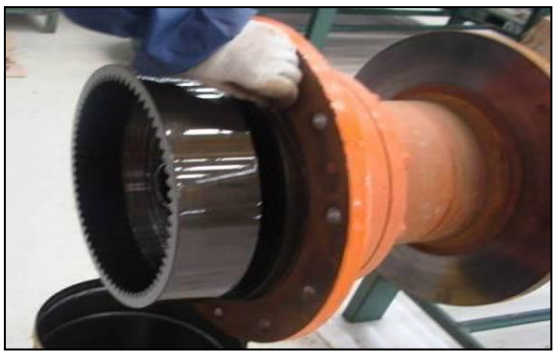


Figure 18

14. Dismantle round bolts

Pry up anti-loosing gasket of round nuts, then dismantle round nuts.

Figure 19

15. Dismantle internal gear

Take internal gear out by slightly rocking.

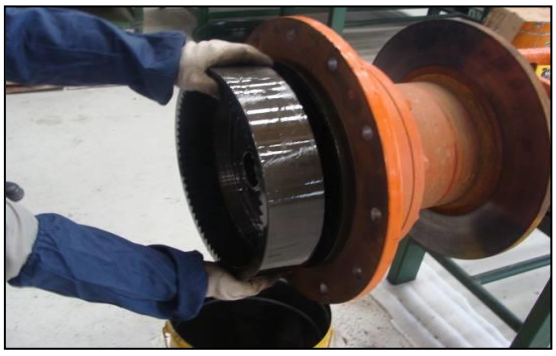


Figure 20

16. Dismantle rolling bearing

Take out rolling bearing with special dismantling tool.

Figure 21

17. Dismantle wheel hub assembly

Take wheel hub assembly from supporting axle.

Note: *During hanging and dismantling process, please keep axis of wheel hub assembly is in line with axis of hub reduction supporting axle to avoid scratching oil surface and internal spare parts during dismantling process.*

Figure 22

18. Dismantle spacer bush

Take out spacer bush.

Remark：Dismantle all parts at the other side with the same method.

Figure 23

19. Dismantle main drive assembly

Dismantle connection bolts between main drive and shell assembly, take out main drive with jackscrew, and suspend main drive assembly.

Note: *When suspending main drive assembly, guarantee suspending and dismantling tools are at the above of main drive assembly to avoid spare parts inside are knocked again during suspending and dismantling process.*

Figure 24

Assembly dismantling

Dismantle planet carrier assembly

1. Put planet carrier on working platform horizont ally.

Figure 25

2. Take out planet axle with tools.

Figure 26

3. Take out steel balls.

Figure 27

4. Take out planet wheel.

Figure 28

5. Take out baffle ring and quill roller from inside of planet wheel.

Figure 29

Dismantle hub assembly

1. Put hub assembly on working platform.

Figure 30

2. Loosen connection bolts between brake disc and hub.

Figure 31

3. Take out brake disc.

Figure 32

4. Take out oil seal.

Figure 33

5. Take out baffle ring.

Note: *It must be clamped firmly when using baffle ring pincer to avoid safety hazard when it is popping out during assembling process.*

Figure 34

6. Take out bearing.

Figure 35

Dismantle main drive assembly

1. Put main drive assembly (input flange upward) horizontally and fixed on supporting.

Figure 36

2. Dismantle thrust bolts.

Figure 37

3. Dismantle locknut gasket, O ring and baffle ring.

Figure 38

4. Take out input flange.

Figure 39

5. Dismantle connection bolts between sealing cover and bearing sleeve, take out sealing cover.

Figure 40

6. Turn main drive for 180°,

Dismantle locking wire.

Note: *Some of the machine structure may be different from this figure, please adjust working content according to actual structure.*

Figure 41

7. Dismantle bolts of

Fastening lock plate, take out lock plate.

Figure 42

8. Mark with signs so that they can be back to original position during assembling.

Figure 43

9. Dismantle connection bolts of bearing seat and take out bearing seat.

Figure 44

10. Dismantle adjusting nuts.

Figure 45

11. Dismantle bearing outer ring.

Figure 46

12. Hang out differential mechanism assembly.

Note: Keep balance when hanging out to avoid safety hazard.

Figure 47

13. Separate active spiral bevel gear assembly and bracket with jackscrew.

Figure 48

Dismantle differential assembly

1. Put differential assembly vertically on working platform, and guarantee it is stable.

Figure 49

2. Dismantle bearing on left and right shell of differential mechanism.

Figure 50

3. Loosen connection nuts between driven spiral bevel gear and right shell of differential mechanism, dismantle driven spiral bevel gear.

   Note: *Check or mark sign before dismantling driven spiral bevel gear so that it can be assembled to original position.*

Figure 51

4. Loosen connection screws of left and right shell, separate shell of differential mechanism.

   Note: *Before taking out driven spiral bevel gear, please check or mark assembling sign first so that it can be placed back to the original position.*

Figure 52

5. Take out semiaxis gear gasket and semiaxis gear.

Figure 53

6. Take out joint cross and differential gear together, take out differential gear gasket and gear from joint cross.

Figure 54

7. Take out semiaxis gear gasket and gear.

Figure 55

Dismantle active spiral bevel gear assembly

1. Put active spiral bevel gear assembly on working platform, support flange of bearing sleeve, clamp down on thread end of active spiral bevel gear assembly with down device.

   Note: *Do not clamp too much to avoid damaging flange, pull out bearing sleeve from active spiral bevel gear assembly.*

Figure 56

2. Reverse bevel gear assembly and take out bearing.

Figure 57

3. Take out bearing sleeve.

Figure 58

4. Take out adjusting gasket.

Figure 59

5. Take out spacer bush.

Figure 60

AXLE REASSEMBLY

Axle assembly

1. Shell

Clean shell and suspend with special supporting. Fasten gummed plug screw at oil inlet and oil filler.

Note: *Plug screw fastening torque：175 ~ 235 Nm*

Note: *Loctite 262 taper thread sealant.*

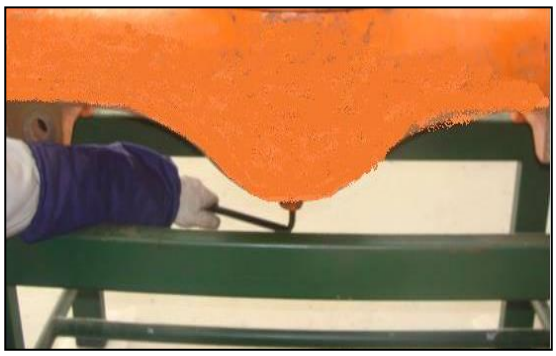


Figure 61

2. Spacer bush

Overturn shell and install bearing spacer bush.

Figure 62

3. Wheel hub assembly

Coat lubrication grease on hub supporting axle of shell assembly, assembly wheel hub assembly on both sides of supporting axle of shell assembly.

Note: *Grapple theΦ22.5 hole on wheel hub with push and pull ergometer, pull ergometer along with tangential direction, indication on ergometer is 160±10N, if the indication is not within the range of 160±10N, adjust tightness degree of round bolts according to the indication until it is within the range of 160±10N. In the end, coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant for 5~6 from the second thread hole of internal gear (form a liquid level at 1/3 circle of thread), then fasten bolts, and fix round nuts.*

Figure 63

Note: *Before dynamometry, rotate hub wheel for more than 5 times.*

Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant

Figure 64

4. Bearing

Heat the inner ring of rolling bearing to 50℃～80℃ and install on inner gear.

Figure 65

5. Internal gear

Assemble internal gear of drive axle at multiple spline at the end of supporting bearing.

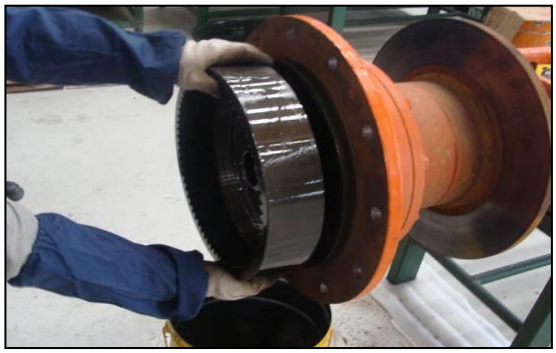


Figure 66

6. Round nuts

Assemble round nuts and fasten. Knock internal gear slightly with copper stick to make internal gear in place.

Figure 67

7. Assemble O sealing ring

Assemble O sealing ring on hub assemble.

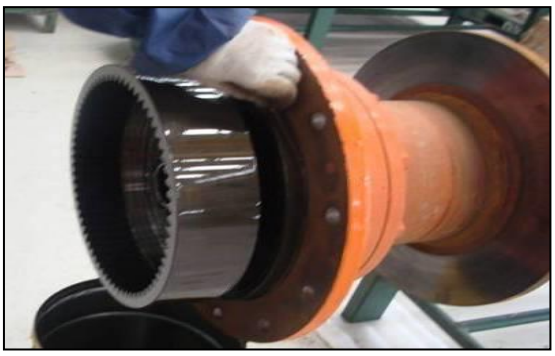


Figure 68

8. Install planet carrier assembly

Assemble planet carrier assembly and O sealing ring on wheel hub with rim bolts, gaskets and nuts.

Note: *fastening torque：500±10Nm*

Figure 69

9. Assemble semiaxis

Install semiaxis assembly with sun gear on hub (pay attention to semiaxis multiple spline and gear assembly).

Figure 70

10. Assemble sun gear

Assemble sun gear at one side of semiaxis with baffle ring groove

Figure 71

11. Assemble baffle ring

Assemble baffle ring with baffle ring used for axle.

Note: *It must be clamped firmly when using baffle ring pincer to avoid safety hazard when it is popping out during assembling process.*

Figure 72

12. Assemble locating block

Stake steel ball on locating block, it can rotate flexibly after staking steel ball.

Figure 73

13. Assemble end cap

Assemble end cap

Note: *Fasten all screws according to symmetrical and crossing principle. Fastening torque：110 ~ 130Nm, Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant*

Figure 74

14. Assemble brake caliper assembly

Assemble disc brake on brake caliper supporting, fix with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fastening torque：550±40Nm Coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant at 20mm length at thread end during assembling.*

Figure 75

15. Assemble main drive assembly

Coat Loctite 598 silicon rubber surface sealant at the joint surface between shell and bracket, coatφ3 ～ φ6 glue solution ring with sealing surrounding inside of thread hole at the large end of shell. The coated sealant cannot be in the air for more than ten minutes.

Note: *Loctite 598 silicon rubber surface sealant*

Figure 76

16. Assemble main drive

Hand up main drive assembly with overhead crane, put main drive at main drive shell of the axle, assemble locating pin.

Figure 77

17. Assemble bolts

Coat proper Loctite 262 threat fastening sealant on bolts, the coating position is 15mm length at thread end. Fasten main drive assembly and shell assembly with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fastening torque：180 ~ 210Nm*

Loctite 262 threat fastening sealant

Fasten all screws according to symmetrical and crossing principle.

Figure 78

18. Add oil

Add 10L 85W/90 GL-5 gear oil (GB13895-1992) in axle bag of shell and fasten plug screws.

Note: *use 85W/90 GL-5 gear oil*

Anaerobic type pipe threat sealant

Fastening torque：175 ~ 235 Nm

Figure 79

Inject 4.5L (subject to overflowing from planet carrier) 85W/90 GL-5 gear oil (GB13895-1992) into two hub reducers and fasten plug screws.

Note: *85W/90 GL-5 gear oil*

Anaerobic type pipe threat sealant

Fastening torque：175 ~ 235 Nm

Figure 80

Assembly parts assembling

Install hub assembly

1. Keep the large end of hub upward, assemble bearing outer ring and turn over to keep the small end of hub upward and assemble bearing inner ring.

Figure 81

2. Install baffle ring.

Figure 82

3. Coat lubrication oil at oil seal end, check completeness of oil seal, coat lubrication oil in groove of framework oil seal evenly, and assemble framework oil seal in side of oil seal end cap.

Figure 83

4. Assemble brake disc on hub and fasten with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fastening torque：360±20Nm*
Fasten all screws according to symmetrical and crossing principle.

Figure 84

Assemble planet carrier assembly

1. Stick lubrication grease quill roller (27 units each) on walls of inner holes of planet gears, assemble baffle ring in the middle of quill roller, assemble gaskets at both sides of planet gear, then assemble to the seat hole of planet carrier.

Figure 85

2. Assemble steel balls in holes of planet gear shaft, steel ball shall aim at semi circle of planet carrier, go through the inner hole of planet gear and gasket and assemble on planet carrier. After assembly, planet gear shall rotate flexibly there is no blocking.

Figure 86

Install of main drive assembly

1. Assemble rolling bearing on bear neck of the terminal with pressure machine, rotate to the left on active spiral bevel gear front axle, and rotate to the right side.

Figure 87

2. Press inner ring into rolling bearing with pressure machine at the other side

Figure 88

3. Turn over gear and assemble outer ring of gear

Figure 89

4. Install spacer bush

Figure 90

5. Install gaskets

Figure 91

6. Install bearing sleeve

Figure 92

7. Press inner ring of antifriction bearing in the end.

Note: *when assembling main reducer, taper rolling bearing shall have certain tightness that is on the basis of eliminating bearing clearance and give certain preload. The purpose is to reduce axial force caused during transmission process which will result in axial displacement, improve supporting rigidity, and guarantee normal mesh of bevel gear pair. But if it is too tight, it will accelerate abrasion of taper rolling bearing. Press with P= 5420 kg pressure at the top side of inner ring of rolling bearing, grapple Φ14.5 hole with pull and push ergometer, pull ergometer along with tangential direction, indication of ergometer when pushing shall be 17.34-30.06N, if the indication is not within the range of 17.34-30.06N, increase or reduce thickness of spacer shim, repeat the above process until the indication is within 17.34-30.06N.*

Figure 93

Figure 94

Assemble of differential assembly

1. Assemble rolling bearing at the bearing position of right shell terminal of differential mechanism.

Figure 95

2. Assemble rolling bearing at the bearing position of left shell terminal of differential mechanism.

Figure 96

3. Assemble semiaxis gear

   Assemble semi axis gear gasket in left shell of differential mechanism

   Note: *the side of gasket with groove shall toward to the direction of joint cross*

Figure 97

4. Install semiaxis gear

Figure 98

5. Assemble joint cross assembly

   Assemble bevel gear (internal of small terminal) and bevel gear gasket on four axles of joint cross.

   Note: *Lubricate with grease when assembling bevel gear and bevel gear gasket*

Figure 99

6. Differential mechanism shell

Assemble joint cross in right shell of differential mechanism to make bevel gear and semiaxis gear mesh, turn over left shell assembly of differential mechanism to assemble right shell assembly of differential mechanism, join right shell and left shells of differential mechanism with bolts and fasten with gaskets and nuts.

Note: *Nuts fastening torque: 180 ~ 210Nm*

Note: *Guarantee assembling mark of right shell and left shell of differential mechanism align.*

Note: *Coat proper Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant at the thread bottom within 12mm length.*

Note: *After assembling, semiaxis gear and taper gear can be rotated manually without blocking.*

Figure 100

7. Install driven spiral bevel gear

Aim at assembling mark, fasten driven spiral bevel gear (Rotate to the left for rear axle, rotate to the right for front axle) with bolts, gaskets and nuts, and fasten screws.

Note: *Nuts fastening torque 280±25Nm。*

Note: *Coat proper Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant at the thread bottom within 12mm length.* **Note:** *Judging method of left and right spiral: face to positive side of gear, right rotation refers to the spiral gear rotates to large terminal clockwise; on the contrary, left rotation refers to the spiral gear rotates to large terminal anticlockwise.*

Figure 101

Figure 102

Install main reducer

1. Install the assembled active spiral bevel gear assembly in bracket

Figure 103

2. Coat sealant line with diameter 2-4mm at the small end, refer to the picture for sealant line; sealant line and diameter of bearing sleeve (the other side of gasket) shall be done according to the above requirements.

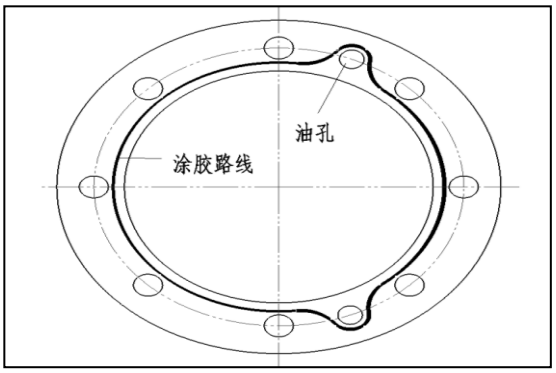


Figure 104

3. Assemble sealing cover
   Press oil seal in sealing cover.

   Note: *Coat a layer of proper lubrication oil when assembling oil seal.*

Figure 105

4. Install input flange
   Put gasket on the end face of bracket, install sealing cover assembly (coat lubrication grease on oil seal according to common requirements of drive axle), and connect with bracket with bolts and gaskets.

   Note: *Screw fastening torque 180 ~ 210 Nm*

Figure 106

5. Install input flange.

Figure 107

6. Install baffle ring, O ring, coat sealant on one end face of gasket, the surface with sealant is downward, install gasket.

   Note: *Loctite 598 sealant*

Figure 108

7. Install gasket

Figure 109

8. Install round screws and fasten.

   Note: *Screw fastening torque： 320 ~ 400 Nm*

   Note: *Before installing flange, install flange on multiple spline on main spiral bevel gear, measure radial play eccentricity of flange, guarantee it cannot be more than 0.08, and mark matching and assembling signs. If it is out of tolerance, rotate flange to certain angle and measure until it complies with requirements, otherwise, replace flange.*

   Note: *Gasket shall be close to φ2～φ3 glue line.*

Figure 110

9. Install differential assembly

   Turnover bracket, install differential assembly in bracket.

Figure 111

10. Install bearing seat with gaskets and bolts (bolts shall be a little bit tight). Install adjustable nuts.

    Note: *Two bearing seats cannot be exchanged.*

    Note: *Coat proper thread sealant on the length of 15～25mm on thread end surface of bolts.*

Figure 112

11. Adjust spiral bevel gear

    Adjustment of spiral bevel gear mesh condition refers to adjustment of mesh zone and back lash, when adjusting back lash of spiral bevel gear pair, dial gauge can be used to touch the gear surface of large side edge of driven spiral bevel gear, then rotate driven spiral bevel gear to measure back lash directly, the clearance shall be 0.2～0.35mm. Adjusting method of back mesh is

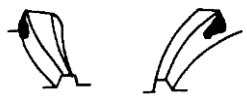
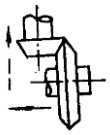
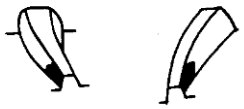
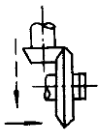
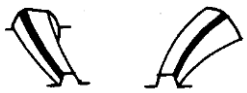
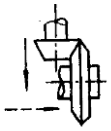
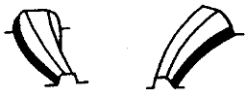
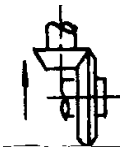
Figure 113

Figure 114

To twist adjusting nuts to change position of driven spiral bevel gear (when it is necessary, move active spiral bevel gear assembly to adjust). If the clearance is larger than the regulated value, approach active spiral bevel gear from driven spiral bevel gear; otherwise be away from it. In order to keep the adjusted preload of taper rolling bearing of differential mechanism, twisting numbers of adjusting nuts at one side shall be equal to twisting numbers of adjusting nuts at the other side.

When adjusting contact zone of spiral bevel gear pair, coat red color (red lead powder) on driven spiral bevel gear teeth (coat three teeth usually), rotate driven spiral bevel gear with hands repeatedly, check contacting moulage. Adjust the correct position of spiral bevel gear mesh moulage: it shall not be less than 50% along with teeth height direction and teeth length direction, mesh moulage of driven bevel gear shall be close to the center, and in the middle of teeth height, smaller than the small end on teeth length direction. Increasing preload of differential bearing: after adjusting back lash of spiral bevel gear well, it shall guarantee the clearance between taper rolling bearing at both sides of differential mechanism is 0. Following is the adjusting methods.

Adjustment of contact zone and back lash when installing spiral bevel gear

Contact zone of driven spiral bevel gear	Adjusting method	Gear moving direction
	Move driven gear to the direction of active gear, if the clearance is too small, move active gear outside	
	Move driven gear away from active gear, if the clearance is too large, move active gear inside	
	Move active gear to the direction of driven gear, if the clearance is too small, move driven gear inside and outside	
	Move active gear away from driven gear, if clearance is too large, move driven gear inside	

Method of adjusting mesh zone is usually increasing and decreasing adjusting gaskets and rotating adjusting nuts. Adjusting of contact zone will affect performance and service life greatly, it shall be carried out carefully.

Note: *After adjusting, clean off red lead powder.*

12. Install locking plate

Fasten the fixed bolts on bearing seat, fastening torque is 410 ~ 510Nm. Put locking plate at the right position, fix it on bearing seat with bolts and gaskets, and fasten fixing bolts of locking plate.

Note: *Fastening torque 40 ~ 50Nm*

Note: *Coat proper Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant on 5-10mm length at the end surface of fixing bolt.*

Note: *Coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant*

Figure 115

13. Install thrust bolts

Overturn carrier, press copper cover into the side with thrust bolts, twist into the center of carrier, make copper contact with the back of driven spiral bevel gear of differential assembly, reverse for 1/6-1/4 circles, fasten with nuts and lock plate.

Note: *Loctite 598 sealant*

Figure 116

14. Bend one of the teeth of lock pate to avoid loosening of nuts.

Figure 117

REAR AXLE

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Structure chart

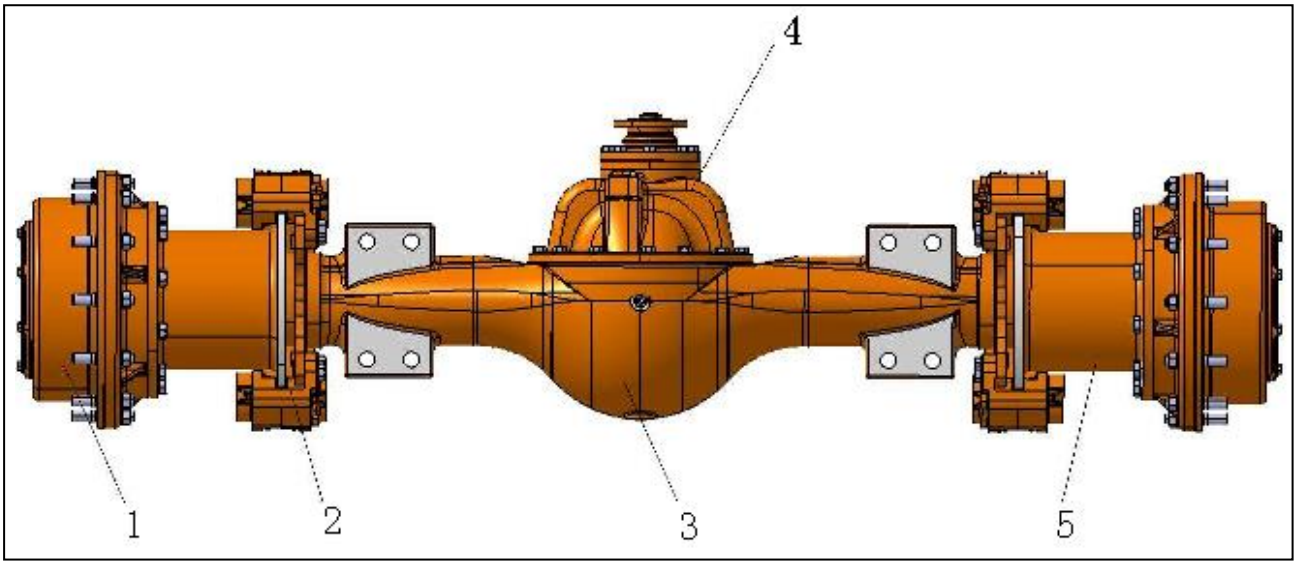


Figure 1

1. EDGE REDUCER ASS'Y 2. BRAKE CLAMP ASS'Y 3. SHELL 4. MAIN REDUCER ASS'Y 5. HUB ASS'Y

Basic parameters of drive axle:

Main drive	Type	Spiral bevel gear grade one reduction
	Reduction ratio	4.625
Hub reduction gear	Type	Grade one planet reduction
	Reduction ratio	4.94
Axle oil	GB13895-1992gear oil	16Kg

Drive axle assembly is one of the most important spare parts of transmission system, its main function is reduce rotation speed from gear box and increase torque, and make wheels at both sides having speed difference. Besides, it also plays the role of bearing and transmitting. Drive axle assembly of loader is mainly composed of shell, main drive (including differential mechanism), semiaxis, hub reduction gear, brake caliper assembly and other parts. Of which, the parts having reduction and differential function is main driver and hub reduction gear; power transmission between main drive and hub reduction gear is realized through semiaxis, multiple spline at both sides of semiaxis and axle shaft gear of differential mechanism and sun gear of hub reduction gear mesh with each other to realize power connection between main drive and hub reduction gear.

PARTS LIST

Assembly

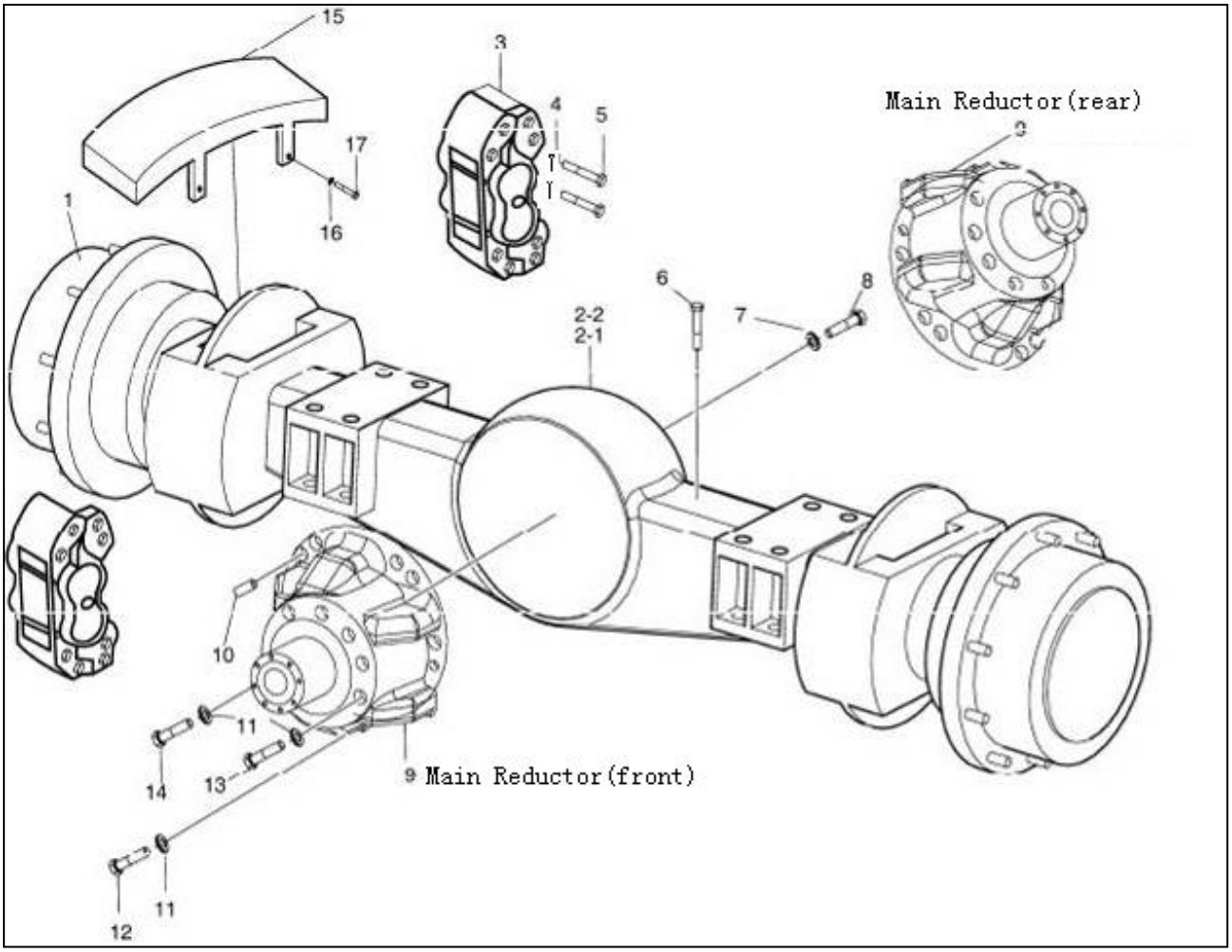


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	REDUCTOR ASS'Y	9	MAIN REDUCTOR（FRONT）
2-1	SUPPORT ASSY,AXLE		MAIN REDUCTOR（REAR）
2-2	Rear driving axle shell	10	D12X20 PIN
3	BRAKE ASSY	11	WASHER
4	PIN	12	BOLT M14X1.5X35-10.9
5	BOLT FOR BRAKE	13	BOLT M14X1.5X40-10.9
6	DEFLATION VALVE Z1/8	14	BOLT M14X1.5X60-10.9
7	O-RING25.8X2.65	15	PLATE,COVER
8	PLUG	16	WASHER
		17	BOLT

Hub drive axle assembly

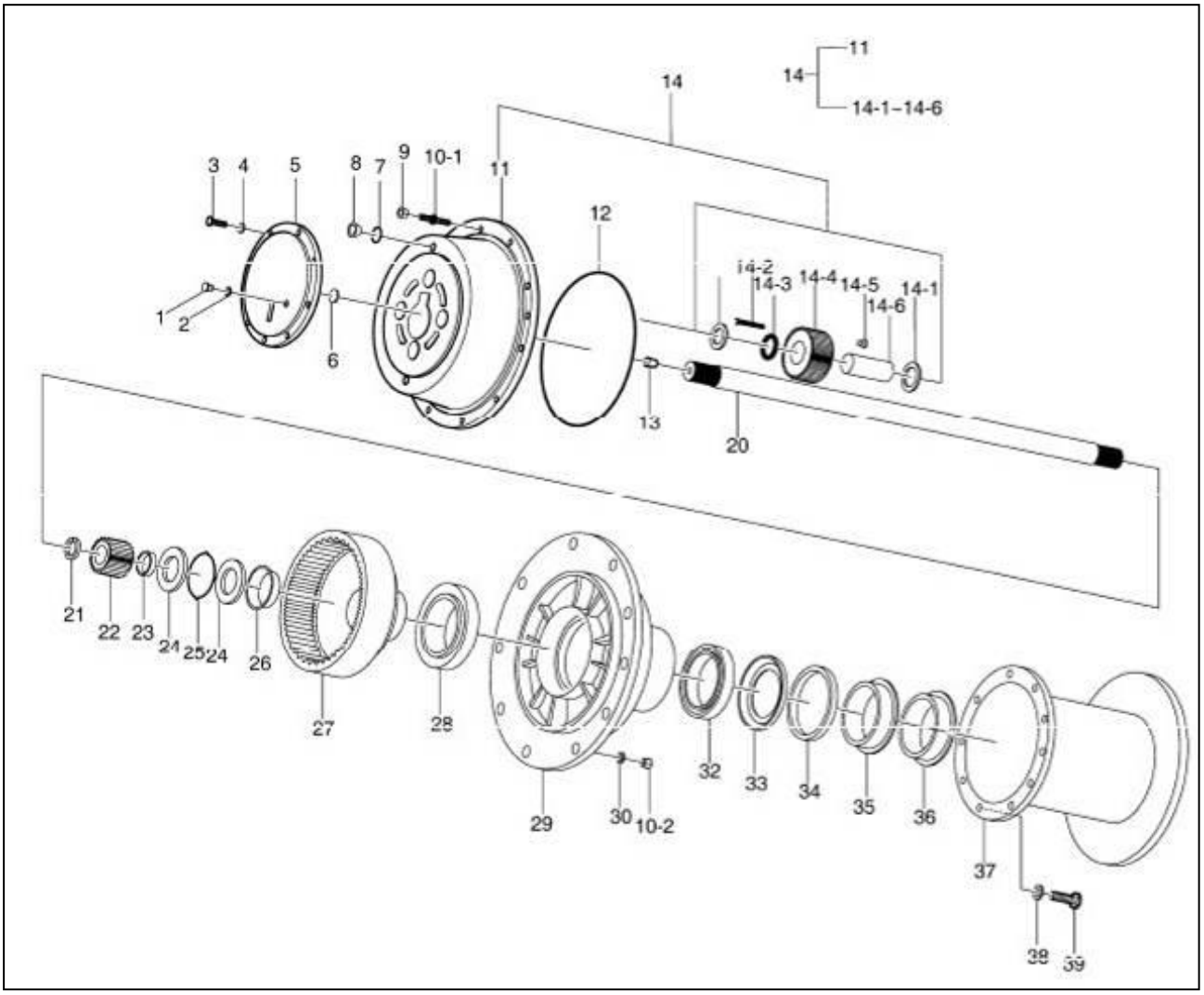


Figure 3

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	PLUG	14-5	STEEL BALL
2	WASHER	14-6	SHAFT OF PLANETARY GEAR
3	BOLT M12X1.25X30	20	SHAFT
4	WASHER	21	SNAP RING
5	COVER	22	SUN GEAR
6	SNAP RING	23	SPACER
7	O-RING25.8X2.65	24	NUT
8	PLUG	25	WASHER FOR NUT
9	NUT,HEX FLANGE	26	TAPER BUSHING
10	BOLT ASSY: WITH NUT	27	INTERNAL GEAR ASSY
10-1	STUD 7/16X4.21	28	32026 BEARING
10-2	NUT	29	RIM,WHEEL
11	CARRIER,PLANETARY GEAR	30	WASHER
12	SEAL RING	32	32024 BEARING
13	ADJUSTING PIN	33	WASHER
14	CARRIER,PLANET	34	RING,SNAP
14-1	WASHER FOR PLANETARY GEAR	36	OIL SEAL
14-2	BEARING,NEEDLE ROLLER	37	BRAKE DISK
14-3	SPACE BUSHING	38	WASHER
14-4	PLANETARY GEAR	39	BOLT
14-5	STEEL BALL		

Drive axle brake assembly

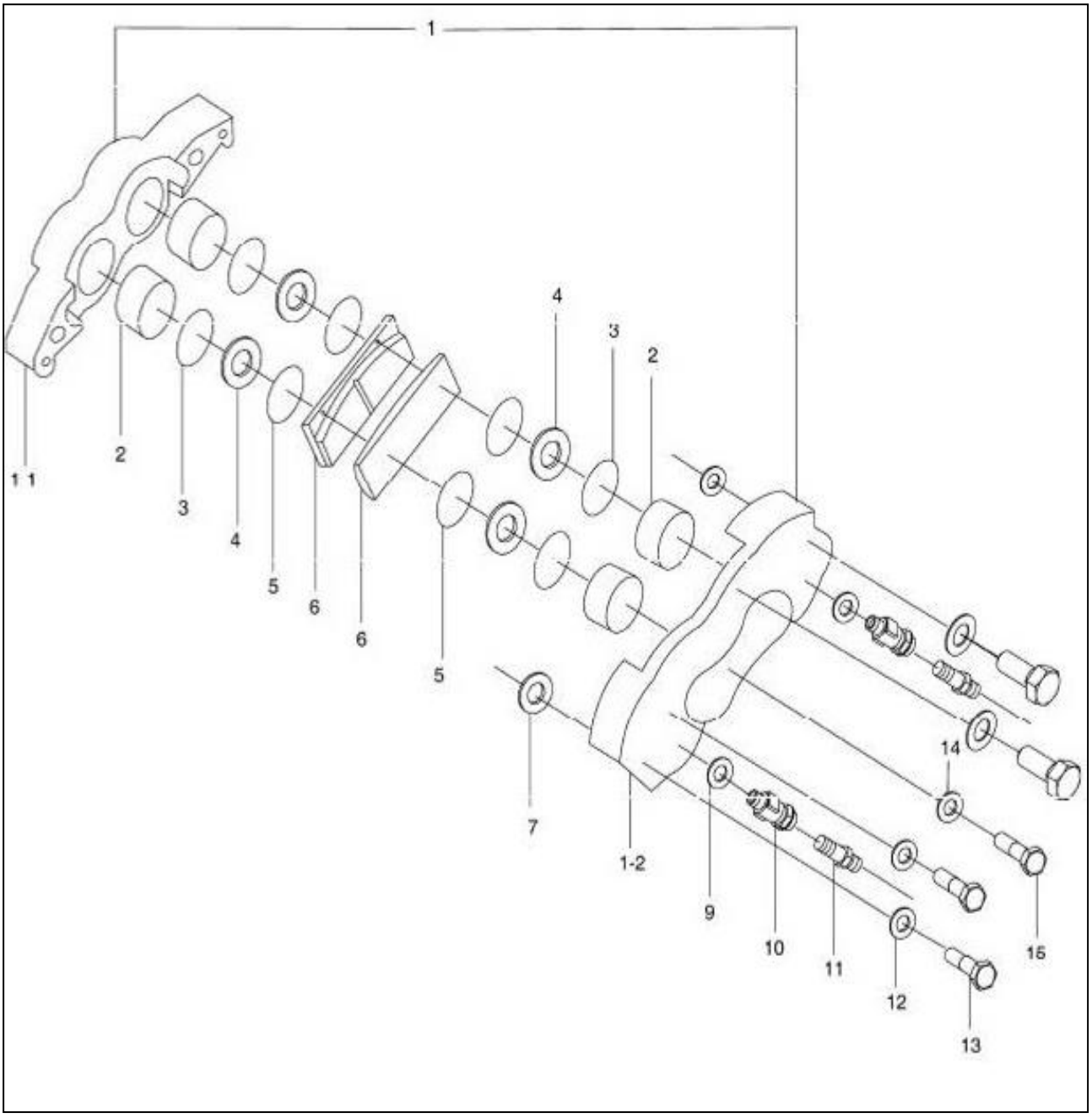


Figure 4

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	CALIPER ASSY	7	O-RING
1-1	EXTERIOR BRAKE	9	WASHER
1-2	INNER BRAKE	10	CONNECTING
2	PISTON	11	DEFLATING VALVE
3	RECTANGULAR SEAL	12	WASHER
4	DUST CASE	13	BOLT
5	BLOCK RING	14	WASHER
6	BRAKE DISK	15	BOLT PIN

Main drive assembly

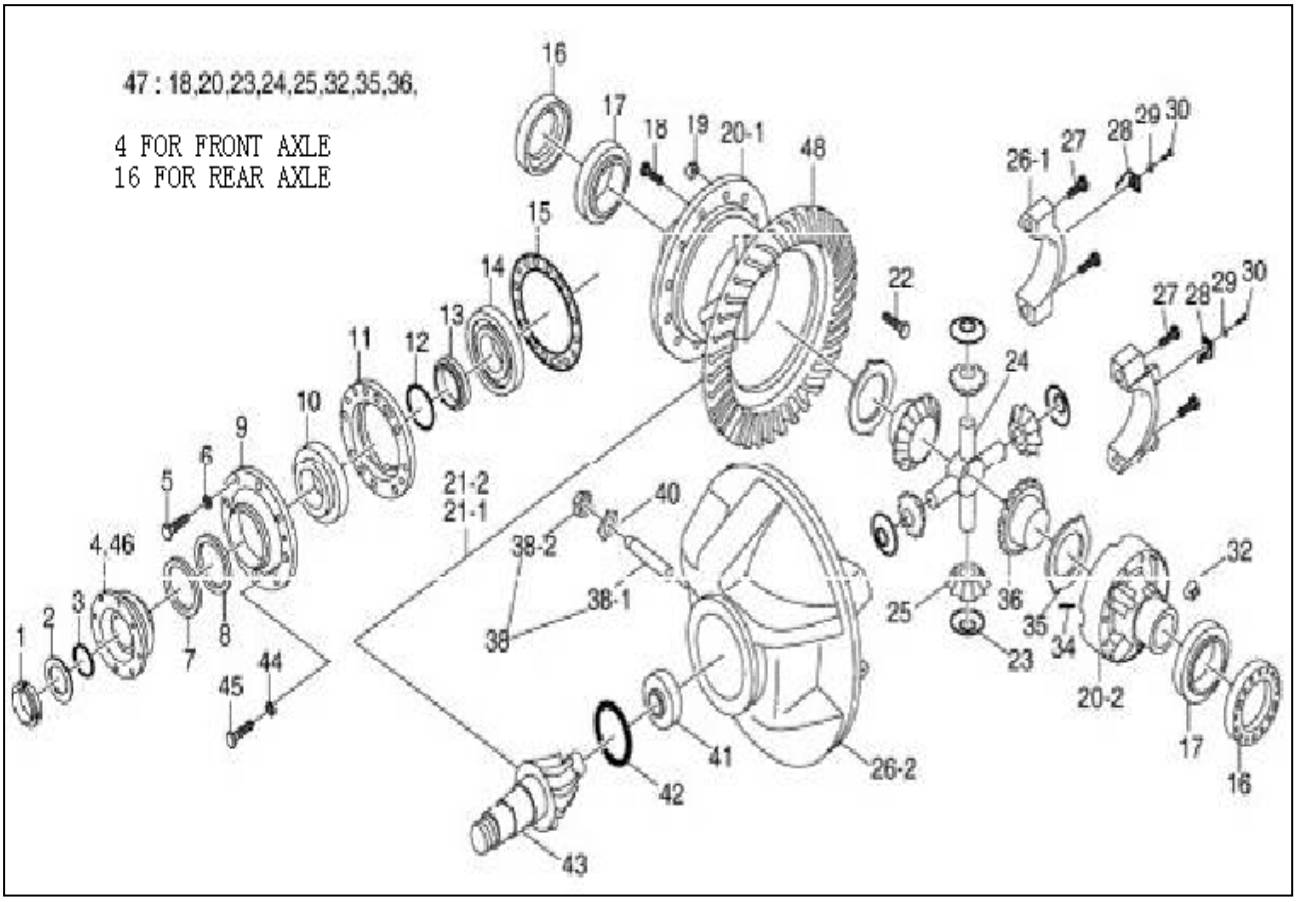


Figure 5

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	LOCK NUT	24	DIFFERENTIAL CROSSING
2	WASHER	25	BEVEL GEAR
3	O SEAL RING	26	CASE,BEARING
4	FLANGE	26-1	BEARING SEAT
5	BOLT	26-2	DIFFERENTIAL CAGE
6	WASHER	27	BOLT FOR MAIN REDUCTOR
7	OIL SEAL	28	LOCK PLATE
8	RING,SHIM	29	WASHER
9	SEALING GLAND	30	BOLT M10X1X20-8.8
10	BEARING	32	M16X1.5NUT
11	BEARING BUSHING	34	DIFFERENTIAL BOLT
12	ADJUSTING WASHER	35	WASHER
13	SHAFT BUSHING	36	AXLE SHAFT GEAR
14	BEARING	38	BOLT,UNION
15	ADJUSTING WASHER	38-1	BOLT
16	ADJUSTING NUT	38-2	NUT M27X2
17	BEARING	40	LOCK PLATE
18	DIFFERENTIAL BOLT	41	BEARING
19	M14X1.5 NUT	42	90/96.5 STOP RING
20	CAGE,DIFFERENTIAL	43	DRIVING BEVEL GEAR
20-1	DIFFERENTIAL CAGE	44	WASHER
20-2	DIFFERENTIAL CAGE	45	BOLT
21-1	DRIVEN BEVEL GEAR	46	FLANGE ASSY
21-2	GEAR ASSY,BEVEL	47	GEAR ASSY,DIFFERENTIAL
22	BOLT	48	DRIVING BEVEL GEAR
23	WASHER FOR BEVEL GEAR	48	DRIVING BEVEL GEAR

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Oil of new drive axle must be replaced after working for 15 days (about 100 working hours), oil shall be replaced once after working for every six months (about 1200 working hours) in following days.

Every month maintenance：

1. Check abrasion condition of brake disc, if there is disruptive abrasion; please handle in time if there is any.
2. Check abrasion condition of brake block to guarantee separation and reunion of brake caliper is flexible; it shall be replaced in time when brake block is wearing close to abrasion line (at the bottom of groove).
3. Check if oil level of shell complies with requirements, please add new oil if the oil level descends.
4. Keep axle clean, keep vent pipe smooth, avoid silt going into axle. Check loosening condition of all fasteners, especially rim nuts, if it is loosed, please refasten again.

Every half year maintenance：

Lubrication oil in axle shall be replaced every half a year, different brands of lubrication oil shall be adopted for different areas and seasons. Please refer to 4.2 for oil replacing method.

Every year maintenance:

Overhaul checking every working year:

1. Check the gap, mesh and abrasion condition of spiral bevel gear of main reducer.
2. Check abrasion condition of differential mechanism gear.
3. Check abrasion condition of hub gear.
4. Check abrasion condition of needle bearing of hub planetary gear.
5. Requirements of installation and debugging items after overhaul checking:
    1) After assembling, axle shaft gear and bevel gear shall move flexibly with hand touching rather than locking. The Min. gear backlash of gear is 0.18-0.23mm. Tooth length and tooth height of contacting area of two gears cannot be less than 50%.
    2) In order to guarantee enough bearing rigidity of active spiral gear, before assembling oil seal and sealing cover, adopt gradually reducing spacer shim between two tapered roller bearing to give 1.0-1.5N.m preloaded torque to roller bearing.
    3) Gear backlash between the driving and driven spiral bevel gear is 0.25-0.45mm, the changing amount cannot be more than 0.15mm, gear backlash can be realized through adjusting nuts of both sides of differential mechanism and spacer shim of bearing sleeve. Tooth surface contacting area shall guarantee direction of tooth length and tooth height is not less than 50%, contacting position shall be at the middle side of tooth surface and closer to the smaller side.
    4) Adjusting of bearing clearance of shell at both sides of drive axle: Fasten adjusting nuts, give 28-38N.m preload to shell roller bearing, then lock two round nuts with screw fastening

GENERAL DISASSEMBLY AND REASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS

⚠ WARNING!
Never use gasoline, solvents, or other flammable fluids to clean components. Only use approved commercial solvents that are nonflammable and nontoxic.

IMPORTANT
Use only GENUINE HCE SPARE PARTS to warrant proper operations and prevent interchangeability problems.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

1. Thoroughly clean and dry axle before disassembly.
2. All components should be thoroughly cleaned and dried before reassembly. Dirt, chips, and foreign material may cause failures.
3. All ducts and castings should be thoroughly cleaned and dried to remove dirt, chips, and foreign material to prevent damage after reassembly.
4. Reassembly should be done in a clean shop, and should be as dust free as possible.
5. Make sure tools and equipment are at hand.
6. When reassembling Daewoo strongly recommends to replace the following parts with new.
   - Seal Rings.
   - O-rings.
   - Gaskets.
   - Threaded rings with notched collar.
   - Any component damaged during disassembly.
7. When mounting heat fitted components, make sure of their proper position and direction of assembly, after they have cooled.
8. To heat bearings, use proper heating plates, piping, or suitable ovens.
   NOTE: *Never heat parts by using a torch. Oil bath, heated by a torch, maybe used to warm components.*
9. Lubricate all sections concerned when reassembling shafts, bearings, etc.
10. Lubricate O-rings before installing them in relevant seats to prevent kinking during assembly, such a position would impair proper sealing.
11. Replace gears only in matched sets to make sure of proper tooth mating.

AXLE DISASSEMBLY

Drive axle disassembly

1. Put drive axle on supporting and make sure main driver assembly is upward.

Figure 6

2. Dismantle brake caliper dust cover

   Loosen bolts of dust cover with tools of relative specifications (such as sleeve, open end wrench, etc, same as following situation, which will not state again).

Figure 7

3. Dismantle brake caliper assembly

   Loosen the connection bolts between brake caliper and brake caliper support, dismantle brake caliper assemble.

Figure 8

4. Release gear oil from planet carrier

   Loosen hub oil releasing drain plug and shell oil releasing drain plug, turn on slowly with hands to avoid oil spilling.

   Note： *Store gear oil with clean container.*

Figure 9

5. Release gear oil from shell

Turn on oil releasing bolts axle end cap to release gear oil.

Note：*Store gear oil with clean container.*

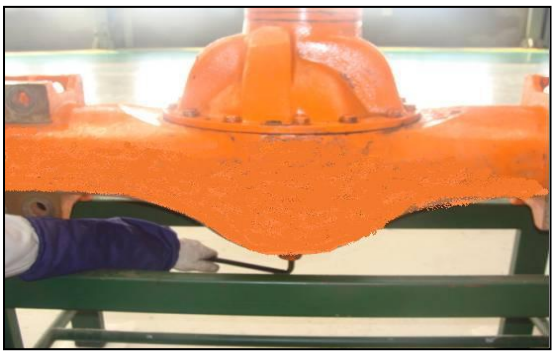


Figure 10

6. Dismantle end cap

Loosen connection bolts between planet carrier and end cap, then get end cap from hub reducer assembly with jackscrew, dismantle end cap.

Figure 11

7. Dismantle locating block

Take down locating block with hands.

Note: *If it is tight when taking down, please use assistant tools to pry out.*

Figure 12

8. Dismantle stop collar

Dismantle stop collar from semiaxis with stop collar pincers.

Note：*Before dismantling stop collar, pull out a section of semiaxis from shell.*

Note：*It must clamp firmly when using stop collar pincers to avoid safety hazard when it is popping up.*

Figure 13

9. Dismantle sun gear

Dismantle semiaxis from sun gear.

Figure 14

10. Dismantle locating block

Dismantle locating block from semi axle with hands.

Figure 15

11. Dismantle semiaxis

Take semiaxis from shell slightly.

Figure 16

12. Hub reducer

First loosen rim bolts with relative tools, then loosen rim from planet carrier with jackscrew and dismantle planet carrier assembly.

Note：*Please slowly loosen planet carrier to avoid safety hazard resulted from dropping of planet carrier assembly.*

Figure 17

13. O ring

Take out O ring from hub.

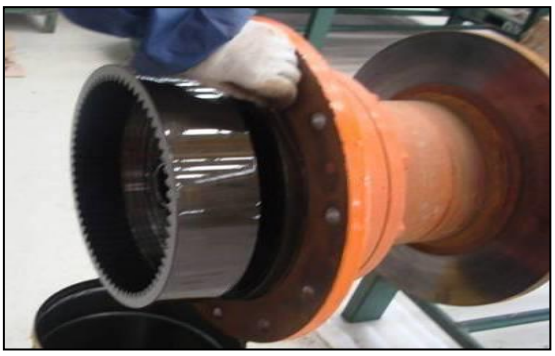


Figure 18

14. Dismantle round nuts

Pry up anti-loosing gasket of round nuts, then dismantle round nuts.

Figure 19

15. Dismantle internal gear

Take internal gear out by slightly rocking.

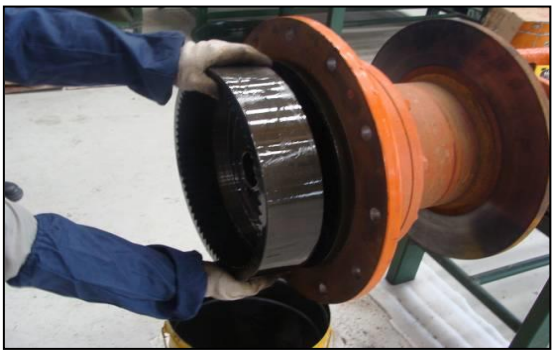


Figure 20

16. Dismantle rolling bearing

Take out rolling bearing with special dismantling tool.

Figure 21

17. Dismantle wheel hub assembly

Take wheel hub assembly from supporting axle.

Note：*During hanging and dismantling process, please keep axis of wheel hub assembly is in line with axis of hub reduction supporting axle to avoid scratching oil surface and internal spare parts during dismantling process.*

Figure 22

18. Dismantle spacer bush

Take out spacer bush.

Note：*Dismantle all parts at the other side with the same method.*

Figure 23

19. Dismantle of main drive assembly

Dismantle connection bolts between main drive and shell assembly, take out main drive with jackscrew, and suspend main drive assembly.

Note：*When suspending main drive assembly, guarantee suspending and dismantling tools are at the above of main drive assembly to avoid spare parts inside are knocked again during suspending and dismantling process.*

Figure 24

Assembly dismantling

Dismantle planet carrier assembly

1. Put planet carrier on working platform horizontally.

Figure 25

2. Take out planet axle with tools.

Figure 26

3. Take out steel balls.

Figure 27

4. Take out planet wheel.

Figure 28

5. Take out baffle ring and quill roller from inside of planet wheel.

Figure 29

Dismantle hub assembly

1. Put hub assembly on working platform.

Figure 30

2. Loosen connection bolts between brake disc and hub.

Figure 31

3. Take out brake disc.

Figure 32

4. Take out oil seal.

Figure 33

5. Take out baffle ring.

   Note: *It must be clamped firmly when using baffle ring pincer to avoid safety hazard when it is popping out during assembling process.*

Figure 34

6. Take out bearing.

Figure 35

Dismantle main drive assembly

1. Put main drive assembly (input flange upward) horizontally and fixed on supporting.

Figure 36

2. Dismantle thrust bolts.

Figure 37

3. Dismantle locknut gasket, O ring and baffle ring.

Figure 38

4. Take out input flange.

Figure 39

5. Dismantle connection bolts between sealing cover and bearing sleeve, take out sealing cover.

Figure 40

6. Turn main drive for 180°, dismantle bolts fastening locking plate, take out locking plate.

Note: *Some of the machine structure may be different from this figure, please adjust working content according to actual structure.*

Figure 41

7. Dismantle bolts of fastening lock plate, take out lock plate.

Figure 42

8. Mark with signs so that they can be back to original position during assembling.

Figure 43

9. Dismantle connection bolts of bearing seat and take out bearing seat.

Figure 44

10. Dismantle adjusting nuts.

Figure 45

11. Dismantle bearing outer ring.

Figure 46

12. Hang out differential mechanism assembly.

    Note: *Keep balance when hanging out to avoid safety hazard.*

Figure 47

13. Separate active spiral bevel gear assembly and bracket with jackscrew.

Figure 48

Dismantle differential assembly

1. Put differential assembly vertically on working platform, and guarantee it is stable.

Figure 49

2. Dismantle bearing on left and right shell of differential mechanism.

Figure 50

3. Loosen connection nuts between driven spiral bevel gear and right shell of differential mechanism, dismantle driven spiral bevel gear.

   Note: *Before taking out driven spiral bevel gear, please check or mark assembling sign first so that it can be placed back to the original position.*

Figure 51

4. Loosen connection nuts of left and right shell, separate left and right shell of differential mechanism.

   Note: *Before separating left and right shell of differential mechanism, please check or mark assembling sigh first so that it can be placed back to the original position.*

Figure 52

5. Take out semiaxis gear gasket and semiaxis gear.

Figure 53

6. Take out joint cross and differential gear together, take out differential gear gasket and gear from joint cross.

Figure 54

7. Take out semiaxis gear gasket and gear.

Figure 55

Dismantle active spiral bevel gear assembly

1. Put active spiral bevel gear assembly on working platform, support flange of bearing sleeve, clamp down on thread end of active spiral bevel gear assembly with down device.

   Note: *Do not clamp too much to avoid damaging flange, pull out bearing sleeve from active spiral bevel gear assembly.*

Figure 56

2. Reverse bevel gear assembly and take out bearing.

Figure 57

3. Take out bearing sleeve.

Figure 58

4. Take out adjusting gasket.

Figure 59

5. Take out spacer bush.

Figure 60

AXLE REASSEMBLY

Axle assembly

1. Shell

Clean shell and suspend with special supporting. Fasten gummed plug screw at oil inlet and oil filler.

Note: *Plug screw fastening torque：175 ~ 235 Nm*

Note: *Loctite 262 taper thread sealant.*

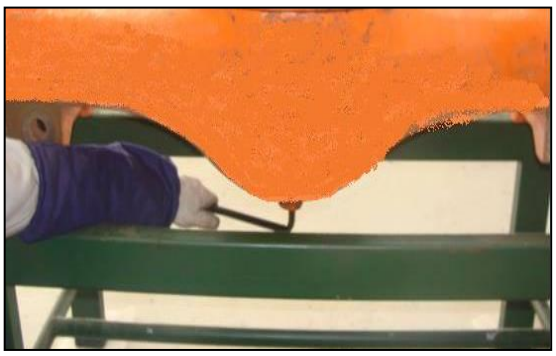


Figure 61

2. Spacer bush

Overturn shell and install bearing spacer bush.

Figure 62

3. Wheel hub assembly

Coat lubrication grease on hub supporting axle of shell assembly, assembly wheel hub assembly on both sides of supporting axle of shell assembly.

Note: *Grapple theΦ22.5 hole on wheel hub with push and pull ergometer, pull ergometer along with tangential direction, indication on ergometer is 160±10N, if the indication is not within the range of 160±10N, adjust tightness degree of round bolts according to the indication until it is within the range of 160±10N. In the end, coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant for 5~6 from the second thread hole of internal gear (form a liquid level at 1/3 circle of thread), then fasten bolts, and fix round nuts.*

Figure 63

Note: Before dynamometry, rotate hub wheel for more than 5 times.

Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant

Figure 64

4. Bearing

Heat the inner ring of rolling bearing to 50℃～80℃ and install on inner gear.

Figure 65

5. Internal gear

Assemble internal gear of drive axle at multiple spline at the end of supporting bearing.

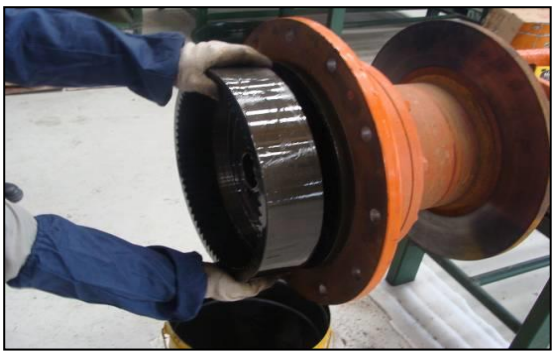


Figure 66

6. Round nuts

Assemble round nuts and fasten. Knock internal gear slightly with copper stick to make internal gear in place.

Figure 67

7. Assemble O sealing ring

Assemble O sealing ring on hub assemble.

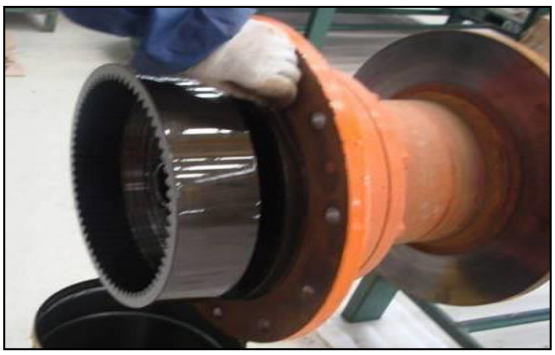


Figure 68

8. Install planet carrier assembly

Assemble planet carrier assembly and O sealing ring on wheel hub with rim bolts, gaskets and nuts.

Note: *fastening torque：500±10Nm*

Figure 69

9. Assemble semiaxis

Install semiaxis assembly with sun gear on hub (pay attention to semiaxis multiple spline and gear assembly).

Figure 70

10. Assemble sun gear

Assemble sun gear at one side of semiaxis with baffle ring groove

Figure 71

11. Assemble baffle ring

Assemble baffle ring with baffle ring used for axle.

Note: *It must be clamped firmly when using baffle ring pincer to avoid safety hazard when it is popping out during assembling process.*

Figure 72

12. Assemble locating block

Stake steel ball on locating block, it can rotate flexibly after staking steel ball.

Figure 73

13. Assemble end cap

Coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant on screws, location of sealant is 15mm on top of thread end. Fasten cap with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fasten all screws according to symmetrical and crossing principle. Fastening torque： 110 ~ 130Nm Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant*

Figure 74

14. Assemble brake caliper assembly

Assemble disc brake on brake caliper supporting, fix with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fastening torque：550±40Nm*

Coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant at 20mm length at thread end during assembling.

Figure 75

15. Assemble main drive assembly

Coat Loctite 598 silicon rubber surface sealant at the joint surface between shell and bracket, coatφ3 ～ φ6 glue solution ring with sealing surrounding inside of thread hole at the large end of shell. The coated sealant cannot be in the air for more than ten minutes.

Note: *Loctite 598 silicon rubber surface sealant*

Figure 76

16. Assemble main drive

Hand up main drive assembly with overhead crane, put main drive at main drive shell of the axle, assemble locating pin.

Figure 77

17. Assemble bolts

Coat proper Loctite 262 threat fastening sealant on bolts, the coating position is 15mm length at thread end. Fasten main drive assembly and shell assembly with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fastening torque：180 ~ 210Nm.*

Loctite 262 threat fastening sealant.

Fasten all screws according to symmetrical and crossing principle.

Figure 78

18. Add oil

Add 10L 85W/90 GL-5 gear oil (GB13895-1992) in axle bag of shell and fasten plug screws.

Note: *85W/90 GL-5 gear oil***.**

Anaerobic type pipe threat sealant.

Fastening torque：175 ~ 235 Nm.

Figure 79

Inject 4.5L (subject to overflowing from planet carrier) 85W/90 GL-5 gear oil (GB13895-1992) into two hub reducers and fasten plug screws.

Note: *85W/90 GL-5 gear oil*

Anaerobic type pipe threat sealant

Fastening torque：175 ~ 235 Nm

Figure 80

Assembly parts assembling

Install hub assembly

1. Keep the large end of hub upward, assemble bearing outer ring and turn over to keep the small end of hub upward and assemble bearing inner ring.

Figure 81

2. Install baffle ring

Figure 82

3. Coat lubrication oil at oil seal end, check completeness of oil seal, coat lubrication oil in groove of oil seal evenly, and assemble oil seal in side of oil seal end.

Figure 83

4. Assemble brake disc on hub and fasten with bolts and gaskets.

Note: *Fastening torque：360±20Nm*

Fasten all screws according to symmetrical and crossing principle.

Figure 84

Install planet carrier assembly

1. Stick lubrication grease quill roller (27 units each) on walls of inner holes of planet gears, assemble baffle ring in the middle of quill roller, assemble gaskets at both sides of planet gear, then assemble to the seat hole of planet carrier.

Figure 85

2. Assemble steel balls in holes of planet gear shaft, steel ball shall aim at semi circle of planet carrier, go through the inner hole of planet gear and gasket and assemble on planet carrier. After assembly, planet gear shall rotate flexibly there is no blocking.

Figure 86

Assemble of main drive assembly

1. Assemble rolling bearing on bear neck of the terminal with pressure machine, rotate to the left on active spiral bevel gear front axle, and rotate to the right side.

Figure 87

2. Press inner ring into rolling bearing with pressure machine at the other side.

Figure 88

3. Turn over gear and assemble outer ring of gear.

Figure 89

4. Install spacer bush.

Figure 90

5. Assemble gasket.

Figure 91

6. Assemble bearing sleeve.

Figure 92

7. Press inner ring of antifriction bearing in the end.

Note: *when assembling main reducer, taper rolling bearing shall have certain tightness, which is on the basis of eliminating bearing clearance, and give certain preload. The purpose is to reduce axial force caused during transmission process which will result in axial displacement, improve supporting rigidity, and guarantee normal mesh of bevel gear pair. But if it is too tight, it will accelerate abrasion of taper rolling bearing. Press with P= 5420 kg pressure at the top side of inner ring of rolling bearing, grapple Φ14.5 hole with pull and push ergometer, pull ergometer along with tangential direction, indication of ergometer when pushing shall be 17.34-30.06N, if the indication is not within the range of 17.34-30.06N, increase or reduce thickness of spacer shim, repeat the above process until the indication is within 17.34-30.06N.*

Figure 93

Figure 94

Assemble of differential assembly

1. Assemble rolling

Bearing at the bearing position of right shell terminal of differential mechanism.

Figure 95

2. Assemble rolling bearing at the bearing position of left shell terminal of differential mechanism.

Figure 96

3. Assemble semiaxis gear

Assemble semiaxis gear gasket in left shell of differential mechanism.

Note: *the side of gasket with groove shall toward to the direction of joint cross*

Figure 97

4. Assemble semiaxis gear

Figure 98

5. Assemble joint cross assembly

Assemble bevel gear (internal of small terminal) and bevel gear gasket on four axles of joint cross.

Note: *lubricate with grease when assembling bevel gear and bevel gear gasket*

Figure 99

6. Differential mechanism shell

Assemble joint cross in right shell of differential mechanism to make bevel gear and semiaxis gear mesh, turn over left shell assembly of differential mechanism to assemble right shell assembly of differential mechanism, join right shell and left shells of differential mechanism with bolts and fasten with gaskets and nuts.

Note: *nuts tightening torque 180 ~ 210Nm*

Note: *Guarantee assembling mark of right shell and left shell of differential mechanism align.*

Note: *Coat proper Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant at the thread bottom within 12mm length.*

Note: *After assembling, semiaxis gear and taper gear can be rotated manually without blocking.*

Figure 100

7. Assemble driven spiral bevel gear

Aim at assembling mark, fasten driven spiral bevel gear (rotate to the left for rear axle, rotate to the right for front axle) with bolts, gaskets and nuts, and fasten screws.

Note: *Nuts fastening torque 280±25Nm。*

Note: *Coat proper Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant at the thread bottom within 12mm length.*

Note: *Judging method of left and right spiral: face to positive side of gear, right rotation refers to the spiral gear rotates to large terminal clockwise; on the contrary, left rotation refers to the spiral gear rotates to large terminal anticlockwise.*

Figure 101

Figure 102

Assemble main reducer

1. Install the assembled active spiral bevel gear assembly in bracket

Figure 103

2. Coat sealant line with diameter 2-4mm at the small end, refer to the picture for sealant line; sealant line and diameter of bearing sleeve (the other side of gasket) shall be done according to the above requirements.

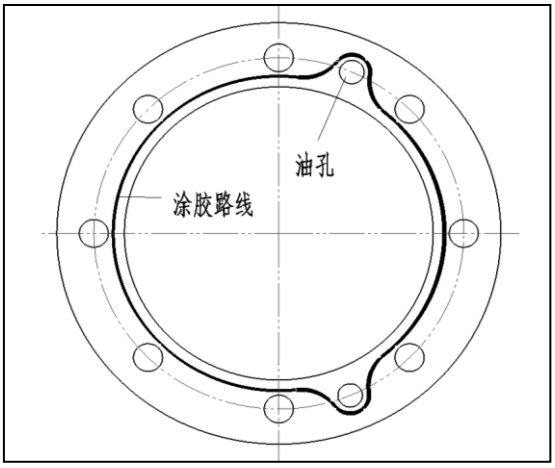


Figure 104

3. Assemble sealing cover

   Press oil seal in sealing cover.

   Note: *Coat a layer of proper lubrication oil when assembling oil seal.*

Figure 105

4. Install input flange

   Put gasket on the end face of bracket, install sealing cover assembly (coat lubrication grease on oil seal according to common requirements of drive axle), and connect with bracket with bolts and gaskets.

   Note: *Screw fastening torque 180 ~ 210 Nm*

Figure 106

5. Install input flange.

Figure 107

6. Install baffle ring, O ring, coat sealant on one end face of gasket, the surface with sealant is downward, install gasket.

Note: *Loctite 598 sealant*

Figure 108

7. Install gasket

Figure 109

8. Install round screws and fasten.

Note: *Screw fastening torque：320 ~ 400 Nm*

Note: *Before installing flange, install flange on multiple spline on main spiral bevel gear, measure radial play eccentricity of flange, guarantee it cannot be more than 0.08, and mark matching and assembling signs. If it is out of tolerance, rotate flange to certain angle and measure until it complies with requirements, otherwise, replace flange.*

Note: Gasket shall be close to φ2～φ3 glue line.

Figure 110

9. Install differential assembly

Turnover bracket, install differential assembly in bracket.

Figure 111

10. Install bearing seat with gaskets and bolts (bolts shall be a little bit tight). Install adjustable nuts.

Note: *Two bearing seats cannot be exchanged.*

Note: *Coat proper thread sealant on the length of 15～25mm on thread end surface of bolts.*

Figure 112

11. Adjust spiral bevel gear

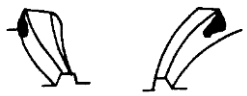
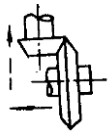
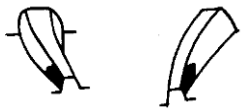
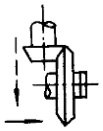
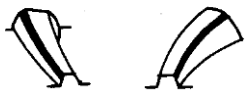
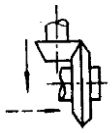
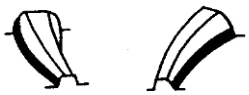
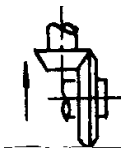
Adjustment of spiral bevel gear mesh condition refers to adjustment of mesh zone and back lash, when adjusting back lash of spiral bevel gear pair, dial gauge can be used to touch the gear surface of large side edge of driven spiral bevel gear, then rotate driven spiral bevel gear to measure back lash directly, the clearance shall be 0.2～0.35mm. Adjusting method of back mesh is to twist adjusting nuts to change position of driven spiral bevel gear (when it is necessary, move active spiral bevel gear assembly to adjust). If the clearance is larger than the regulated value, approach active spiral bevel gear from driven spiral bevel gear; otherwise be away from it. In order to keep the adjusted preload of taper rolling bearing of differential mechanism, twisting numbers of adjusting nuts at one side shall be equal to twisting numbers of adjusting nuts at the other side.

Figure 113

Figure 114

When adjusting contact zone of spiral bevel gear pair, coat red color (red lead powder) on driven spiral bevel gear teeth (coat three teeth usually), rotate driven spiral bevel gear with hands repeatedly, check contacting moulage. Adjust the correct position of spiral bevel gear mesh moulage: it shall not be less than 50% along with teeth height direction and teeth length direction, mesh moulage of driven bevel gear shall be close to the center, and in the middle of teeth height, smaller than the small end on teeth length direction. Increasing preload of differential bearing: after adjusting back lash of spiral bevel gear well, it shall guarantee the clearance between taper rolling bearing at both sides of differential mechanism is 0. Following is the adjusting methods.

Adjustment of contact zone and back lash when installing spiral bevel gear

Contact zone of driven spiral bevel gear	Adjusting method	Gear moving direction
	Move driven gear to the direction of active gear, if the clearance is too small, move active gear outside	
	Move driven gear away from active gear, if the clearance is too large, move active gear inside	
	Move active gear to the direction of driven gear, if the clearance is too small, move driven gear inside and outside	
	Move active gear away from driven gear, if clearance is too large, move driven gear inside	

Method of adjusting mesh zone is usually increasing and decreasing adjusting gaskets and rotating adjusting nuts. Adjusting of contact zone will affect performance and service life greatly, it shall be carried out carefully.

Note: *After adjusting, clean off red lead powder.*

12. Install locking plate

Fasten the fixed bolts on bearing seat, fastening torque is 410 ~ 510Nm. Put locking plate at the right position, fix it on bearing seat with bolts and gaskets, and fasten fixing bolts of locking plate.

Note: *fastening torque 40 ~ 50Nm*

Note: *Coat proper Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant on 5-10mm length at the end surface of fixing bolt.*

Note: *Coat Loctite 262 thread fastening sealant*

Figure 115

13. Install thrust bolts

Overturn carrier, press copper cover into the side with thrust bolts, twist into the center of carrier, make copper contact with the back of driven spiral bevel gear of differential assembly, reverse for 1/6-1/4 circles, fasten with nuts and lock plate.

Note: *Loctite 598 sealant*

Figure 116

14. Bend one of the teeth of lock pate to avoid loosening of nuts.

Figure 117

AIR CONDITIONER

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Heater and AC evaporator share one air blower, and it is located at the front side of driving cab. When it is necessary, the driver can install it in control panel room at the right of control platform to control indoor temperature.

AC of the machine has three functions of refrigeration, heating and natural wind.

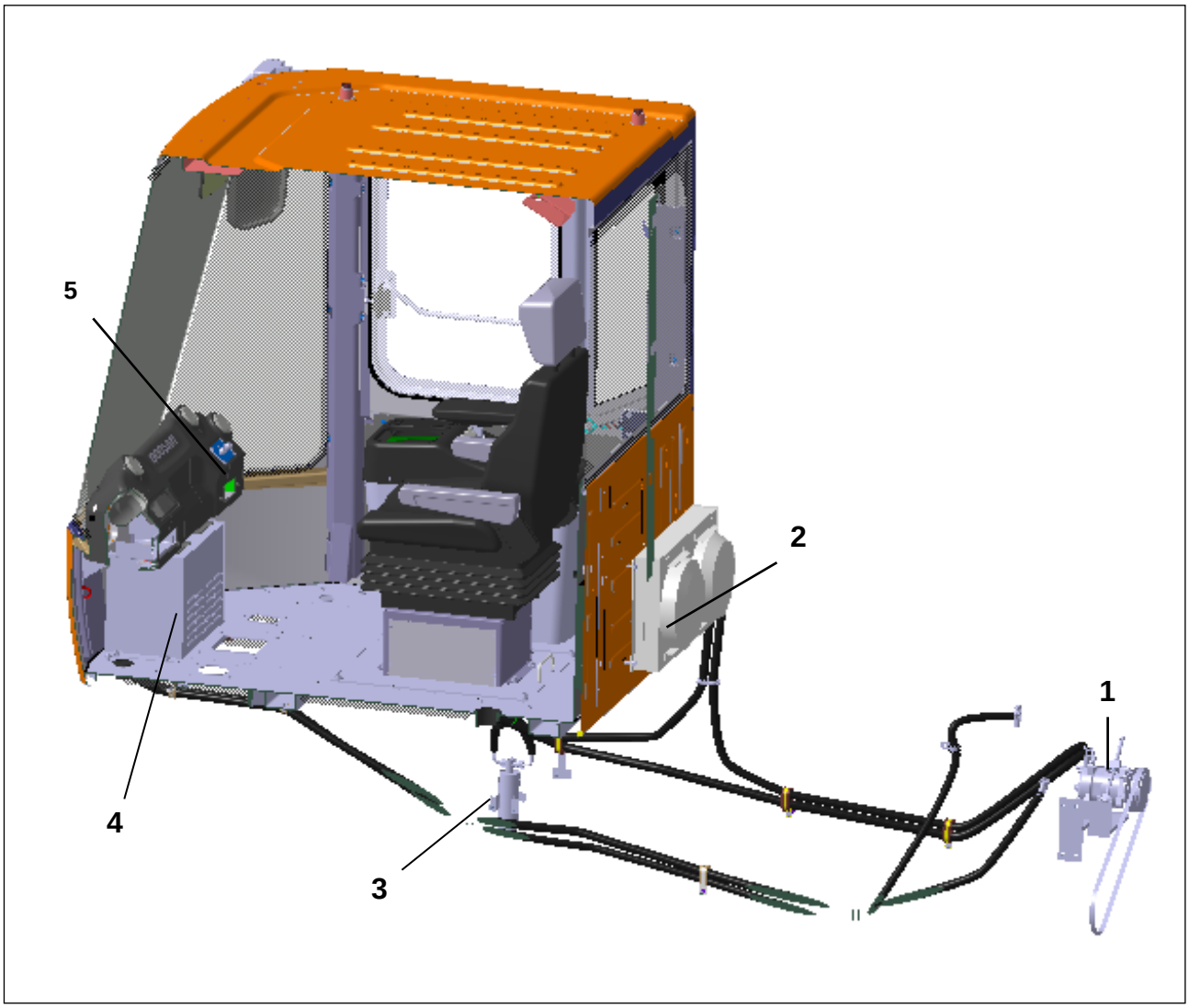


Figure 1 AC system schematic diagram

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Compressor	4	Evaporator
2	Condenser	5	Control Panel
3	Receiver/Drier		

Circulation of refrigeration agent

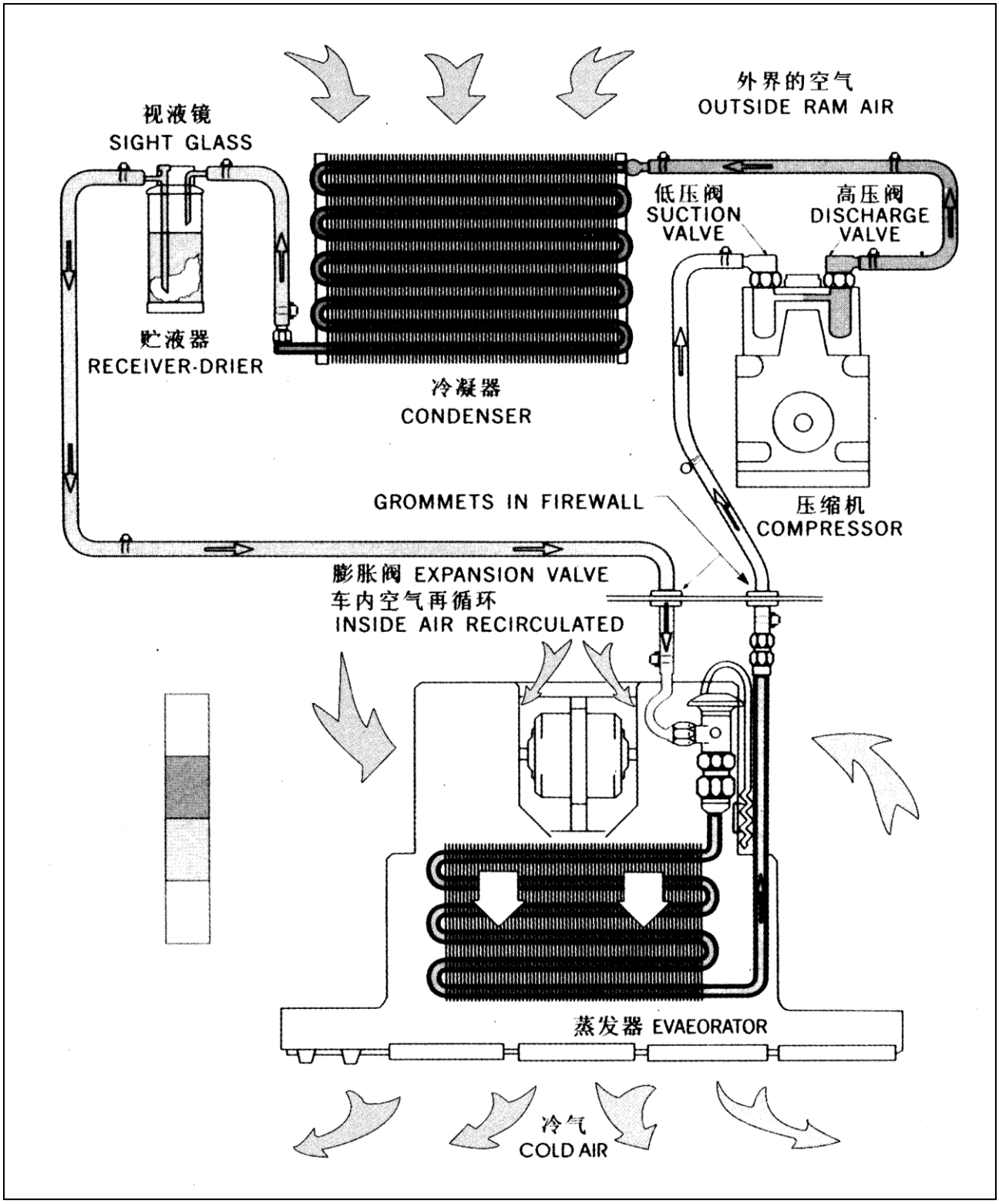


Figure 2 Refrigeration agent circulation schematic diagram

- Refrigeration agent (R134a) is compressed to 15kg/cm2（213psi）within sight view.
- Compressed refrigeration agent flows into condenser under high temperature (about 80℃（176°F）).
- Refrigeration agent of condenser is cooled down by condensation fan to about 60℃. At the same time, refrigeration agent is changed from gas state to liquid state, even if the temperature is reduced from 80°~ 60℃（176° ~ 140°F）to 20℃（68°F）.
- Refrigeration agent is sprayed to evaporator in gas state through expansion valve. And pressure is reduced for 2 kg/cm2（28psi）, and temperature is reduced, too. The result is refrigeration agent absorbs heat from surrounding air to create refrigeration effect, refrigeration agent is changed from gas state to liquid state.
- Refrigeration agent flows into compressor in gas state again and repeat the above process.

⚠ CAUTION!

Refrigeration agent is compressed and sealed in AC system. Special protective measures are needed when injecting or releasing refrigeration agent correctly. It is strictly controlled by laws to release refrigeration agent into air. Before maintaining or repair AC, please obey the orders of all federation, states and districts, refrigeration agent used in the system must reach or exceed R134a specifications or environmental standards issued later.

Control panel

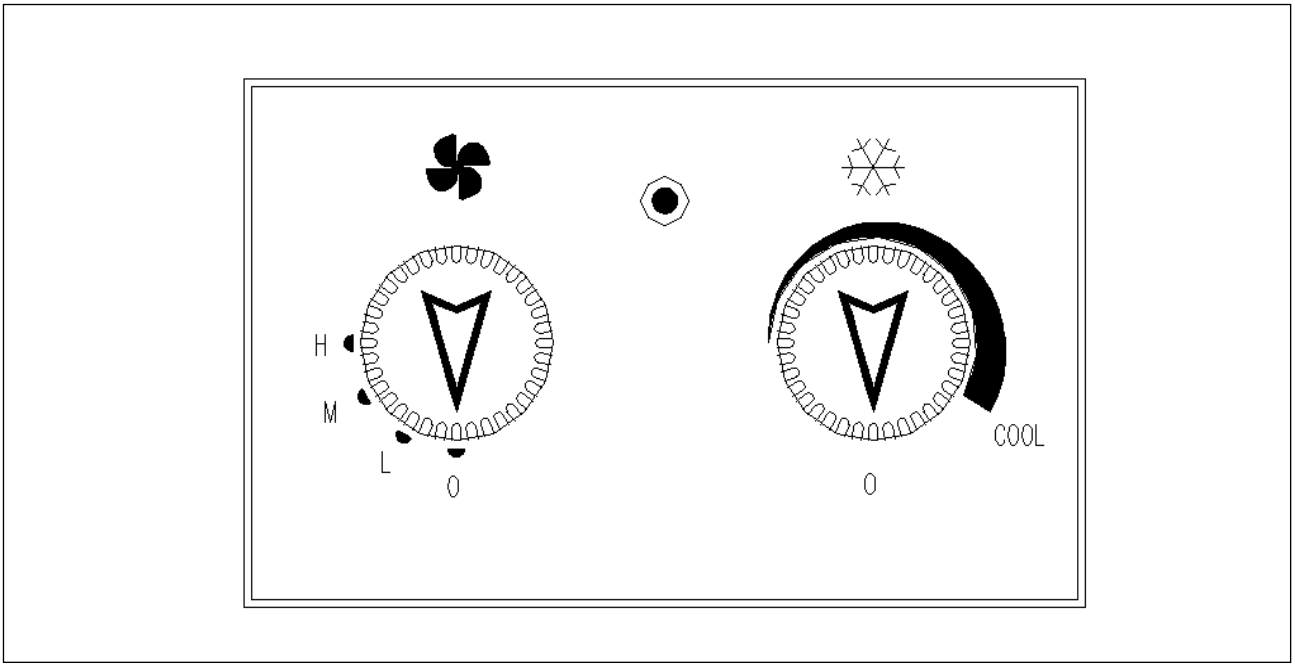
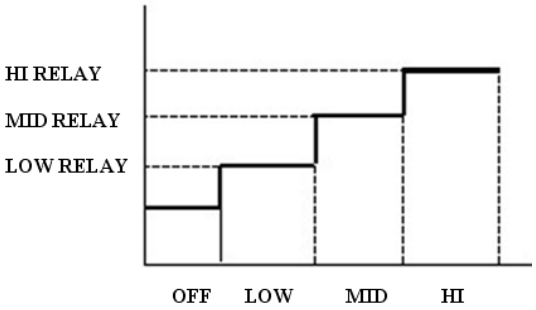
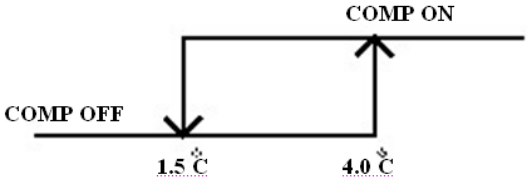


Figure 3 AC control panel diagram

Control specifications

Control item	Control switch	Control specifications
Rotation speed control of air blower	"CLOSE" switch "LOW SPEED" switch "INTERMEDIATE SPEED" switch "HIGH SPEED" switch	
Compressor control	Temperature sensor	

AC system circuit diagram

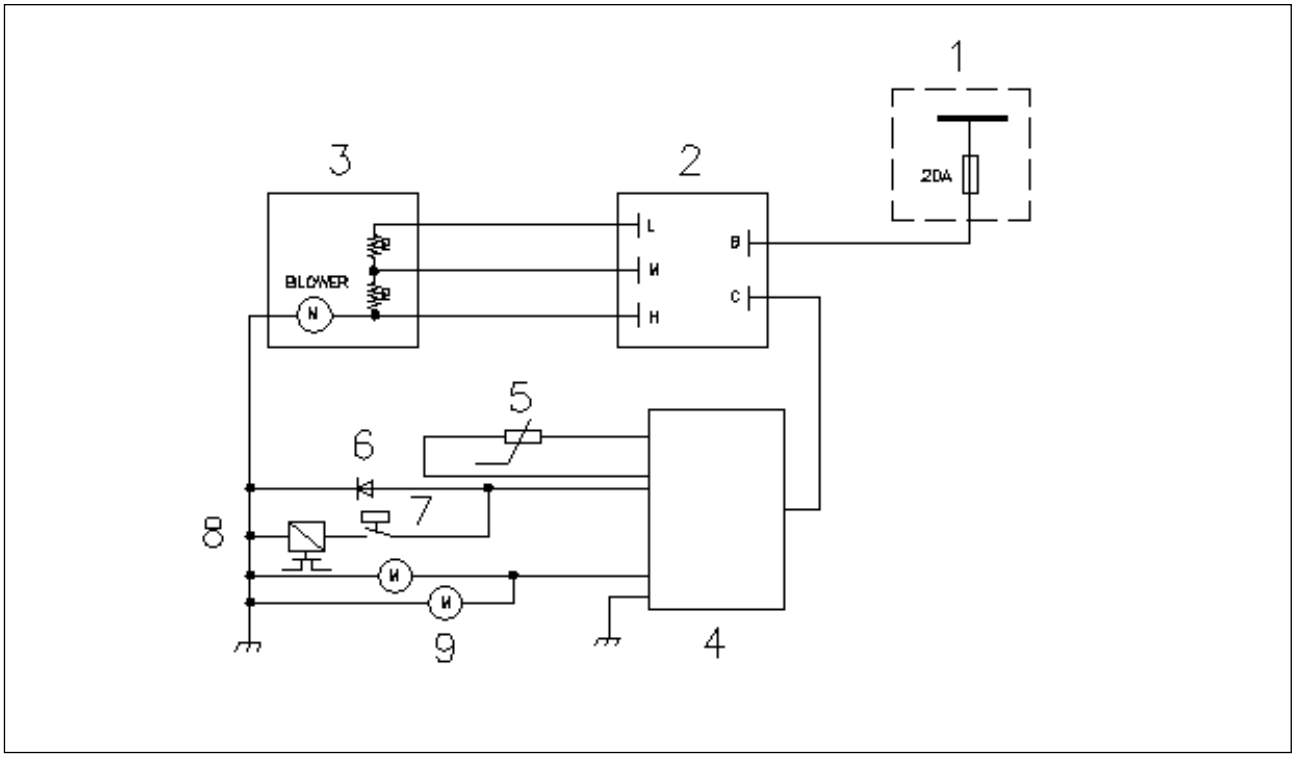


Figure 4 AC system circuit diagram

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Fuse Box	6	LED
2	Blower Switch	7	Press. Cut Off Switch
3	Blower	8	Compressor
4	Thermistor	9	Condenser
5	Temperature Sensor		

Maintenance

1. AC outdoors radiator-“condenser” must be cleaned regularly; refer to figure 5.
   Treatment method: dismantle condensing fan, condenser is completely exposes, wash with water, but do not use high water pressure to avoid lodging of condenser fan and affect radiation effect.
   Maintenance standard: wash once a month in summer, if working environment is too bad, increase washing times properly.

Figure 5

2. Check if fixed bolts of compressor are loosed regularly, if belt of compressor is loosed; refer to figure 6.
   Checking method: visually check if AC bolts are loosed, checking method of belt tightness degree: put about 10kg force on middle of belt, force is downward, descending amplitude of belt is about 10-15mm, it cannot be too high or too low; maintenance standard: check once a week in summer.

Figure 6

3. Check if there is refrigeration agent in the system
   Checking method: check Freon injection mouth of compressor head (refer to the picture), screw off plastic plug, poke with keys or other sharp things (its structure is like the air tap of tyre), check if there is large amount of air jets out, if there is no air or air current is very small, it proves that Freon is leaked (wear gloves and protect eyes during operation, do not burn skin and eyes with refrigeration agent).

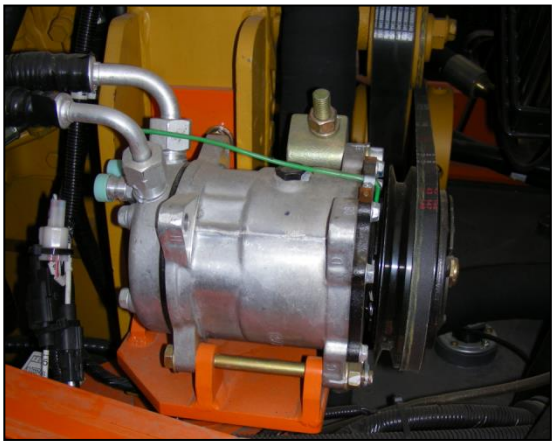


Figure 7

4. Power on checking of the entire machine. Open AC control panel, turn III gear switch to H gear and check if there is wind coming from evaporator and if wind is big enough. Turn on temperature control switch on AC control panel and turns to the maximum position, check if indication light is on, at the same time, listen if AC compressor is absorbing (turn on and turn off temperature control switch repeatedly, there should be clear and melodious absorbing “Pitter-patter” at compressor).

Figure 8

5. Confirmation of charging amount of refrigeration. Agent charging amount of refrigeration agent R134a of the AC system is 1000±50g, the process is vacuumizing, charging and retrieving.

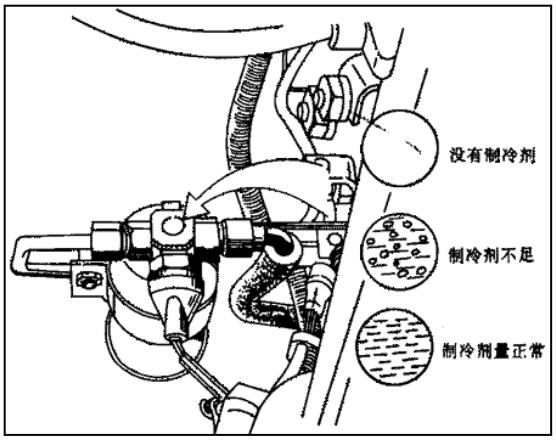


Figure 9

Comparison table between liquid sight glass state of reservoir and trouble analysis

Liquid sight glass state	Trouble analysis
Liquid sight glass is locate, bubbles can be seen at the moment of turning on and turning off AC, and bubbles become transparent suddenly.	Freon charging quantity is proper
Few bubbles flowing, compressor head is hot, refrigeration output is not enough, high and low pressure of the system are both very low.	Freon charging quantity is not enough or the system is leaking
Turn on and turn off AC, it is hard to see bubbles flowing, compressor head is cold, high and low pressure of the system are both high.	Freon is over charged
Freon charging is proper, AC does not refrigerate, it is hard to see bubbles flowing in reservoir, low pressure is negative.	Expansion valve is dirty and blocked or frozen and blocked, it shall be solved by professional personnel

Trouble shooting

Following is the common troubles and reasons

1. The entire AC system is power off
   - Reason analysis
     - Fuse of AC is burnout.
     - Wiring harness of AC power is not connected.
2. Evaporation fan is running, after turning on temperature control switch, indication light is not on, condensation fan and compressor do not work.
   - Reason analysis
     - Indoor temperature of driving cab is lower than 4º
     - Temperature sensing detector is open circuit or not connected.
     - AC temperature control switch relay is broken.

3. Evaporation fan rotates, condensation fan rotates, compressor does not absorb
     - Coil of compressor clutch is broken
     - High/low pressure switch is broken.
     - Freon is leaked
     - Circuit from high/low pressure switch to compressor is open.

4. Evaporation fan does not run, condensation fan runs, compressor absorbs
     - Earth wire of evaporation fan drops, or earth wire contact is not good.
     - III gear switch is broken
     - Evaporation fan is broken

SPC0000007

Transmission and Torque Converter

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE

This documentation has been developped for the skilled Serviceman, trained by the Zahnradfabrik Passau for the Repair and Maintenance operations on ZF-Units.

Treated is a ZF-Serial product according to the design stage of the date of Edition.

However, due to further technical developments of the product, the repair of the unit at your disposal could require differents steps as well as other adjustment and testing specifications.

Therefore, we recommend to commit your ZF-Product to Masters and to Service-men, whose practical and theoretical training is constantly completed to the actual situation in our Training School.

The Service Stations, established by the Zahnradfabrik Friedrichshafen all over the world, offer you:

1. Constantly trained personnel
2. Prescribed installations, e.g. Special Tools
3. Genuine ZF-Spare Parts according to the latest phase of development

Here, all operations are carried out for you with utmost care and realibity.

Repair operations carried out by ZF-Service Stations, arc covered additionally within the terms of the actual contractual conditions, by the ZF-Warranty.

Damages caused by inappropriate or inexpert work, carried out by personnel foreign to ZF, and after-expenditures eventually arising from it, are excluded from this contractual responsibility.

This applies also in case of a renouncement of Genuine ZF-Spare Parts.

Zahnradfabrik Passau GmbH

Service Department

GENERAL WORKING INSTRUCTIONS

During all operations, pay attention to cleanliness and skilled working.

Therefore, Transmissions, removed from the vehicle, must be cleaned prior to open them

We assume that the Special Tools, specified by ZF, will be used.

The Special Tools have a 10-digh Subject-No. and are available from ZF-Passau.

After the disassembly, all components must be cleaned, especially corners, cavities and recesses of housing and covers.

The old selling compound must be carefully removed.

Check lubricating holes, grooves and pipes for free passage. They must be free of residues, foreign material or protective compounds.

The latter refers expecially to new parts.

Parts which have been inevitably damaged in a disassembly operation, must be generally replaced by new ones, e.g.: rotary seal rings, O-Rings, U-Section rings, cap boots, protective caps etc..

Components such as roller bearings, thrust washers, synchronizing parts etc. which are subject to normal wear in automotive operation, must be checked by the skilled Serviceman.

He will decide if the parts can be reused.

For the heating of bearings etc., hot plates, rod healers or heating furnaces must be used.

Never heat parts directly with the flame. An auxiliary solution would be to immerse the bearing in a vessel filled with oil, which is then heated with the flame.

In this way, damage to the bearings could be avoided.

Ball bearings, covers, flanges and parts like that must be heated to about 90° to 100° C.

Hot-mounted parts must be reset after cooling in order to assure a proper contact.

Before pressing shafts, bearings etc. in position, both parts must be lubricated.

During the reassembly, all specified adjustment values, testing specifications and torque limits must be respected.

After the repair, ZF-Units are filled up with oil.

The procedure and the permitted oil qualities can be taken from the Operator's Manual, resp. from the Lubrication Instructions and the corresponding List of Lubricants.

The Lists of Lubricants are available at all ZF-Service Stations.

After the oil filling, the oil level plugs and oil drain plugs must be tightened to the specified torque limits.

IMPORTANT INSTRUCTIONS CONCERNING THE LABOUR SAFETY

In principle, Repairers of ZF-Units are themselves responsible for the labour safety.

The observance of all valid Safety Regulations and Legal Rules is a precondition to prevent damage to individuals and products during the Maintenance and Repair operations

Before starting the work, the Repairers have to make themselves familiar with these Regulations.

The proper Repair of these ZF-Products requires especially trained personnel.

The Repairer himself is obliged to provide for the training.

BEZEICHNG DER GESETZLICHEN EIHEITEN
PENOMINATION OF STANDARD DIMENSIONS
DENMINATION DES DIMENSIONSST AND ARDISEES

Hinwels : langenbezogene MaBe in kg/m. flacbenbezogene MaBe in t/m2

Note : linear density in kg/m. areal density in t/m2

Note ; Density lineaire en kg/m, Density superficiolle t/m2

Begriff **Unit** **Unitee**	**Formetrcichen**	**Neu** **alt** **New** **old** **Nouveau** **Vieu**	**Umrechnung** **Conversion** **Conversion**	**Bemerkungen** **Note** **Note**
Masse **Mass** **Mass**	**m**	**kg (Kilogramm)** **kg**		
Kraft **Force** **Force**	**F**	**N (Neweton)** **Kp**	**1 kp = 9.81 N**	
Arbeit **Work** **Travail**	**A**	**J(Joule)** **kpm**	**0.102 kpm=1J =Nm**	
Leistung **Power** **Puissance**	**P**	**KW (Kilowatt)** **PS(DIN)**	**1 PS=0.7355 KW** **1 KW =1.36 PS**	
Drehmoment **Torque** **Couple**	**T**	**Nm** **kpm** **(Newtonmeter)**	**1 pkm=9.81 Nm**	**T (Nm) =F(N)*r(m)**
Kraftmoment **Moment (Force)** **Moment (Fore)**	**M**	**Nm** **kpm** **(Newtonmeter)**	**1pkm=9.81Nm**	**M (Nm)=F (N)*l(m)**
Druck(Uber-) **Pressure(Overpress)** **Pression(Sur-)**	**po**	**Bar** **atm**	**1.02atm= 1,02 kp/cm2=** **1 bar =750 torr**	
Drehzahl **Speed** **Nombre de Tours**	**N**	**min-1**		

VERGLEICHSTABELLE FOR MASSEINHEITEN

CONVERSION TABLE

TABLEAU DE CONVERSION

25.4MM	**=**	**1 in (inch)**
1 kg (Kilogramm)	**=**	**2,205 lb(poubds)**
9,81 Nm(1 kpm)	**=**	**7,233 ibf x ft(pound force foot)**
1,356 Nm(0,138 kpm)	**=**	**1 lbf x ft (pound force foot)**
1 k g / cm	**=**	**5,560 lb / in (pound per inch)**
1 bar (1,02 kp/cm²)	**=**	**14,233 psi (pound force per squar inch lbfTin²)**
0,070 bar (0.071 kp/cm²)	**=**	**1 psi (lbf/in²)**
1 Liter	**=**	**0,264 Gallon (Imp.)**
4,456 Liter	**=**	**1 Gallon (Imp.)**
1 Liter	**=**	**0,220 Gallon (US)**
3,785 Liter	**=**	**1 Gallon (US)**
1609,344 m	**=**	**1 Mile (Landmeile)**
0° C (Celsius)	**=**	**+ 32° F(Fahrenheit)**
0 ° C (Celsius)	**=**	**273,15Kelvin**

TORQUE LIMITS FOR SCREWS (IN Nm) ACCORDING TO ZF-STANPARDS 148

Coefficient of friction: µ total = 0,12 for screws and nuts without after treatments as well as for phosphates nuts. Tighten by hand!

Torque limits, of not exspecially, can be taken from the following list:

Metric ISO-Standard Thread DIN 13, Page 13

Size	8.8		10.9		12.9
M4	2.8		4.1		4.8
M5	5.5		8.1		9.5
M6	9.5		14		16.5
M7	15.5		23		27
M8	23		34		40
M10	46		68		79
M12	79		117		135
M14	125		185		215
M16	195		280		330
M18	280		390		460
M20	390		560		650
M22	530		750		880
M24	670		960		1120
M27	1000		1400		1650
M30	1350		1900		2250
M33	1850		2600		3000
M36	2350		3300		3900
M39	3000		4300		5100

Metric ISO-Fine Tread DIN 13, Page 13

Abmessung	8.8		10.9		12.9
M8X1	24.6		36		43
M9X1	36		53		62
M10X1	52		76		89
M10X1.25	49		72		84
M12X1.25	87		125		150
M12X1.5	83		122		145
M14X1.5	135		200		235
M16X1.5	205		300		360
M18X1.5	310		440		520
M18X2	290		420		490
M20X1.5	430		620		720
M22X1.5	580		820		960
M24X1.5	760		1090		1270
M24X2	730		1040		1220
M27X1.5	1110		1580		1850
M27X2	1070		1500		1800
M30X1.5	1540		2190		2560
M30X2	1490		2120		2480
M33X1.5	2050		2920		3420
M33X2	2000		2800		3300
M36X1.5	2680		3820		4470
M36X3	32002500		3500		4100
M39X1.5	3430		4890		5720
M39X3	3200		4600		5300

INSCRIPTIONS ON A ZF-MODEL IDENTIFICATION PLATE FOR ZF-HYDROMEDIAREVERSING-TRANSMISSIONS:

1 =Gearbox type

2= Gearbox-No.

3 = ZF-Parts List-No.

4 =Total ratio of the Gearbox

5 =Value for the control pressure

6 =ZF-Parts List-No. of the Torque Converter

7 =Type of the ZF-Torque Converter

NOTES REGARDING THE SPARE PARTS ORDERS:

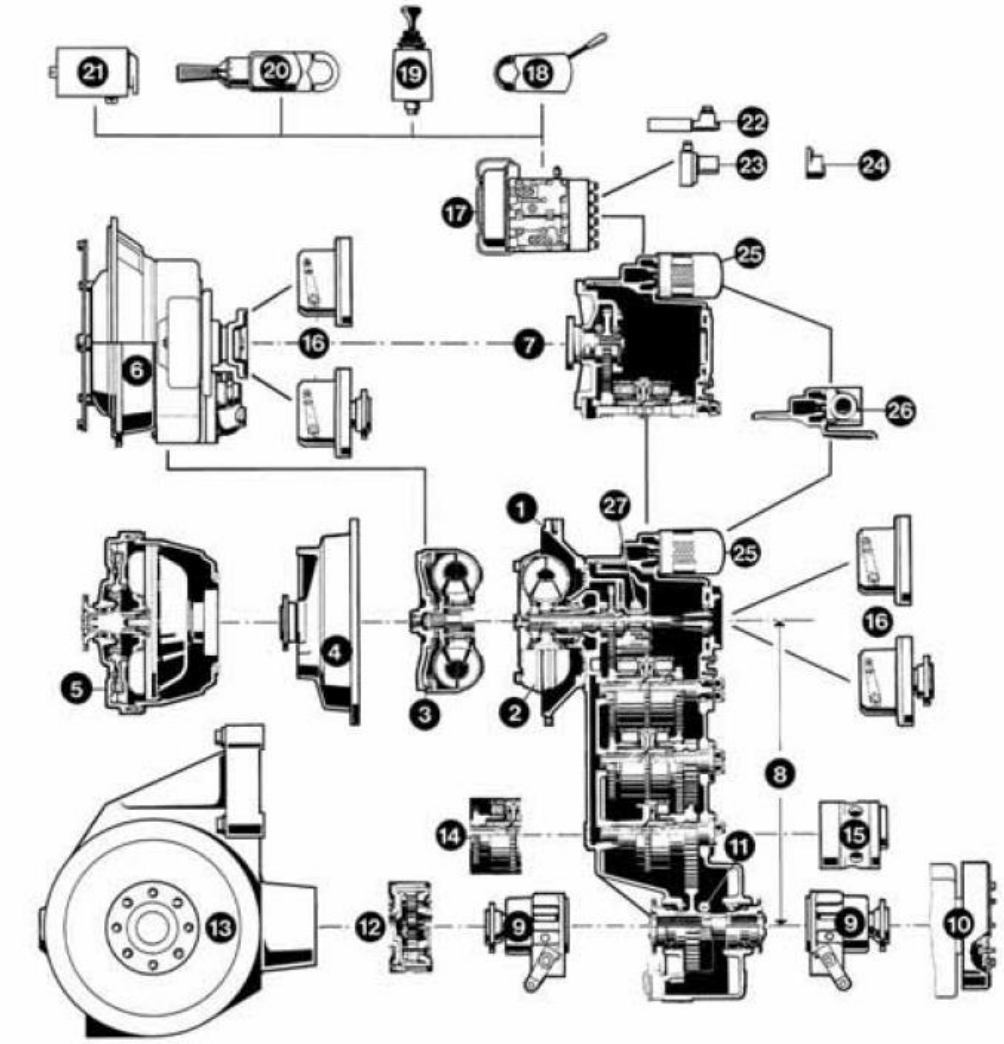
When ordering genuine ZF-Spare Parts, please indicate:

1. Gearbox type
2. Serial-No. See Model Identification Plate!
3. ZF-Parts List-No.
4. Mark and type of vehicle
5. Denomination of the spare part
6. Spare parts-No.
7. Way of transport

When all of the above required indications are considered, errors in the delivery of spare part order can be avoided!

Optional versions and additional equipment

for the transmissions of the WG range



1 Converter housing for direct installation
2 Torque converter
3 Lock-up clutch
4 Cover for separate installation
5 Retarder
6 HN 500 converter transmission
7 Input flange (for separate installation)
8 Centre distance input/ output shafts
9 Axle disconnect unit
10 Parking brake
11 Speedometer connection
12 Inter-axle differential
13 Axle drive, flange-mounted
14 Multi-disc clutch for 4.5 and 6-speed version
15 Emergency steering pump
16 PTO unit, engine driven
17 Transmission control
18 Steering column switch SG 4/S G 6
19 Console switch SG 4/SG 6
20 Rotary reversing switch DW 1
21 Automatic control unite EST 2
22 Inching valve
23 Dual pressure control valve
24 Pressure cut-out
25 Micro-filter
26 Transmission connection for separate filter installation
27 Converter charge and shift pump

Transmission	**Approved lubricants**
WG 80/81/53/85 WO 100 WG 120/121 WG 150/151 WG I80/ 181 WG 200/201 WG 250 WG 65 HN 500 PW 45 H (I) PW25H PW 18 H HSt 210	Engine oils API CD/ CE/CF/ SF/ SG MIL-L-2104 O -D/ -E MILL-46152C/-D/-E • SAEI0W • SAE 10 W-30 • SAE 10 W-40 • SAE 15 W-40 • SAE 20 W-20 For commercial products see overleaf Automatic Transmission Fluids (ATF) only at ambient temperatures below - 1 0 ℃

Oil grade	**Minimum oil temperature for starting engine**	**Minimum oil temperature for starting vehicle moving**
- Engine oils		
SAE 20 W-20	- 10 °C	• 5 *C
SAE 15 W-40	- 15 ℃	- 0 °C
SAE 10 W. 10 W-30.10 W-40	- 2 0°C	- 5 °C
- ATF	- 30 °C	- 10 °C

The minimum oil temperature for starting the vehicle moving can be achieved by:

- at least 20 minutes' warm-up m "Neutral" setting

- preheating

At greasing points, use a multi-purpose grease with the following properties

lithium soap, drop point above 170℃. NLGI Class 2.

The grease must be anti-corrosive. water-resistant and walk stable.

Note to lubricant suppliers: Please inform ZF immediately of any changes to the composition or trade names of approved products, and of differences in quality between German) and ocher countries.

This list can be obtained through any 2P After-Sales Service point	Zahnradfabrik Passau GmbH Postfach 26 40 D-8390 Passau	Telephone Telex Telefax	(0851)494-0 57849zp d (0851)45340

I. ELECTRO-HYDRAULIC GEARBOX CONTROL

ATTENTION :

In case of malfunctions of the Transmission because of a defective gearbox control, we recommend the replacement of the complete gearbox control.

The pressure-control curve of the replacement-gearbox control (see corresponding Spare Parts List) has been accordingly adapted to the Transmission Version, resp. to the Vehicle type.

Modifications concerning the pressure-control curve may not be carried out without agreement of ZF. Therefore, the repair of gearbox control units should be carried out by ZF Service stations only.

The relative shop equipment of our Service stations (gearbox control resp. transmission

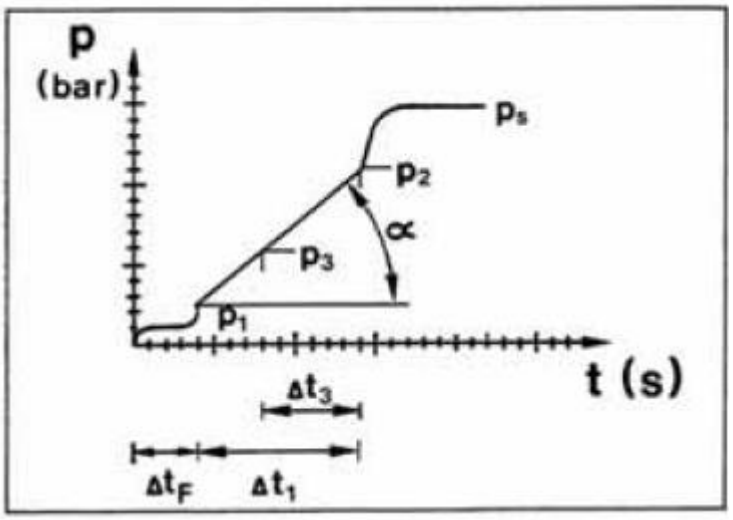
test benches) as well as constantly trained personnel ensure a professional repair.

The following Disassembly and Reassembly Instructions (Page 1.01 - 1.73) will therefore be useful only as an Information for ZF-Service stations as well as for the Manufacturer of the vehicle, which are disposing of the required workshop equipment and especially trained personnel.

Note regarding the pressure control:

Diagram 1 (Basic diagram)

Pressure-control curve gear case



p = Pressure in box

t - Time in seconds

p1 =Modulation start

p2 =Modulation end

p3= Modulation start only in dependence with 2-stage pressure control valve

ps =Control pressure

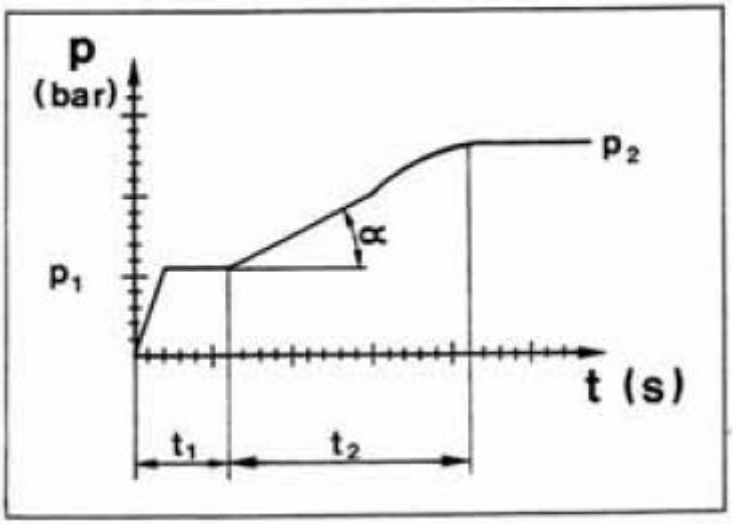
∆ tF =Filling time

∆ t1 = Modulation time

∆ t3 =Modulation time in dependence with 2-stage pressure control valve

Diagram 2 (Basic diagram)

Pressure-control curve WK



p' • Modulation start

p^2 - Modulation end

t1 - Filling time

t2 - Modulation time

ATTENTION:

The pressure-control curve is different according to the Transmission Version, resp. the vehicle type and will be adjusted by means of corresponding shims and diaphragms (optional)'

Note:

In the following Disassembly and Reassembly Instructions are three different gearbox control Variants treated.

1.1 Cast-iron gearbox control

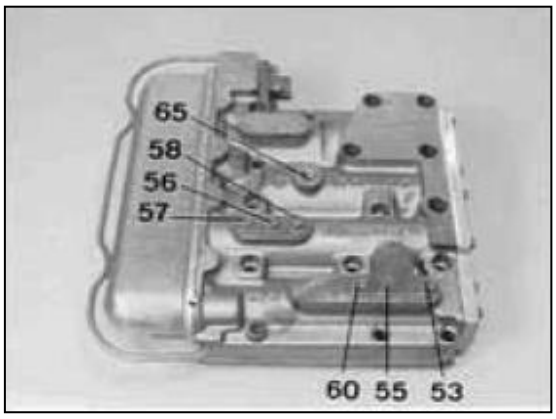
1.2 Aluminium sand-casting gearbox control

1.3 Aluminium die-cast gearbox control with WK-Valve

1.2 Aluminium sand-casting gearbox control

With the help of the following Figures, the coordination of the single gearbox control variants can be visually identified because of the different casting contours!

1.1 Cast-iron gearbox control

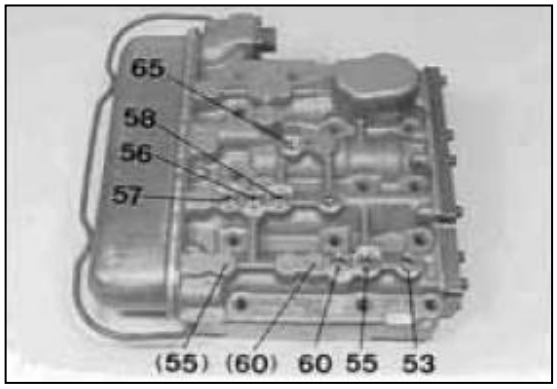


Measuring points for pressure oil:

65 = Central measuring point for system pressure (control pressure)
53 = Clutch KV
55 = Clutch KR
56 = Clutch K1
57 = Clutch K2
58 = Clutch K3
60 = Clutch K4

1.2 Aluminium sand-casting gearbox control

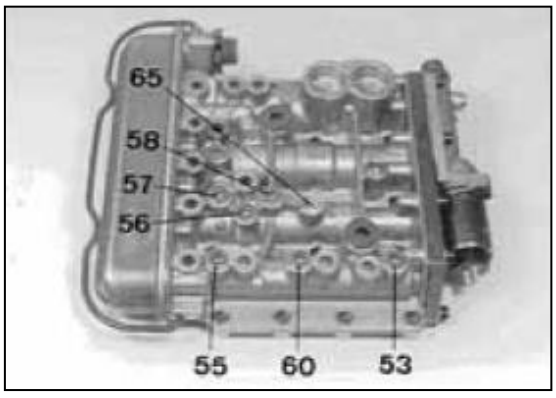
(e.g. 4 magnets)



Measuring points for pressure oil:

65 = Central measuring point for system pressure (control pressure)
53 = Clutch KV
55 = Clutch KR
(55) = Clutch KR (in case of 5-mangnet Version)
56 = Clutch K1
57 = Clutch K2
58 = Dutch K3
60 = Clutch K4
(60) = Clutch K4 (in case of 5-magnct Version)

L3 Aluminium die-cast gearbox control



Measuring points for pressure oil:

65 = Central measuring point for system pressure (control pressure)
53 = Catch KV
55 = Clutch KR
56 = Clutch K1
57 = Clutch K2
58 = Clutch K3
60 = Clutch K4

Furthermore, the single gearbox control units can include WK-Valve, 2-stage pressure control valve as well as 4, resp. 5 magnets (only f*or* gearbox control 1.2).

Different steps resulting from this, can be carried out without great difficulty by qualified personnel, consulting the Perspective illustrations in the corresponding Spare Parts List!

1.1 CAST-IRON GEARBOX CONTROL

1 . 1 . 1 Version 1: Standard Version (without WK and 2-stage pressure control valve)

1.1.1.1 DISASSEMBLY

Separate shift-control housing and channel plate from gear case (Figure 1 ...3).

Loosen socket head screws, install two adjusting screws (Arrows) and remove shift-control housing.

Now, remove gaskets and intermediate plate.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

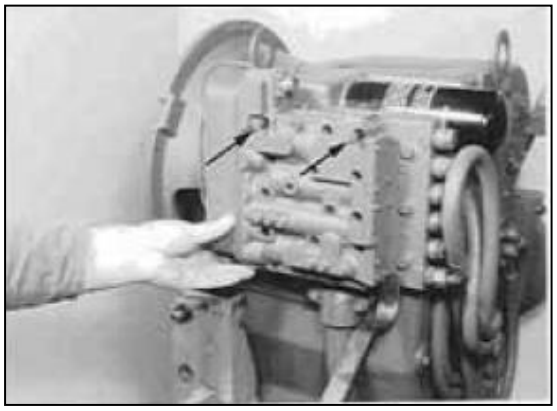


Figure 1

Now, remove gaskets and intermediate plate.

Remove delivery lines.

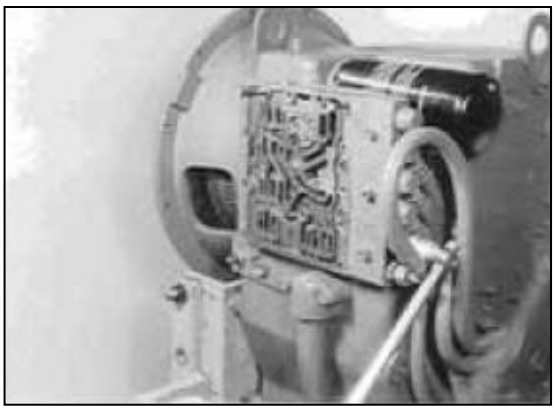


Figure 2

Loosen socket head screws and separate channel plate as well as gaskets and intermediate plate from the gear case.

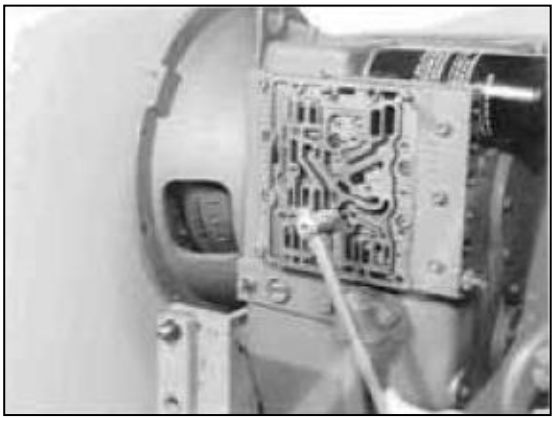


Figure 3

Relax spring clip and remove cover.

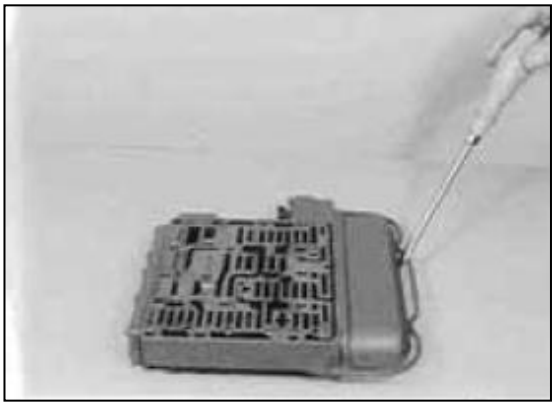


Figure 4

Pull off cable shoes, loosen the socket head screws and remove solenoid valves.

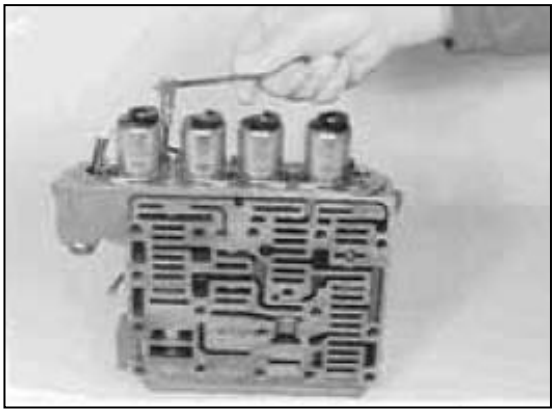


Figure 5

Remove components, see Figure on the right!

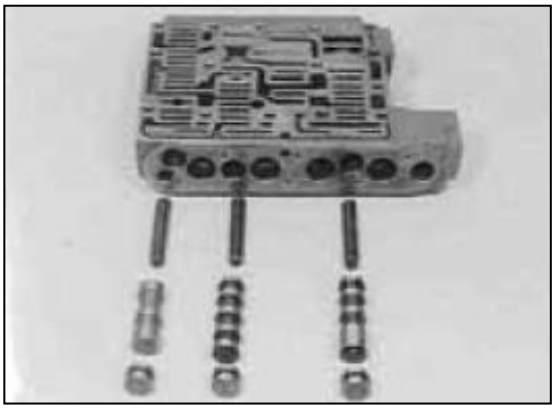


Figure 6

Loosen two hex. head screws and fix shift-control housing provisionally, using Special Tool (S).
Now, loosen the remaining hex. head screws and separate cover (is spring-loaded) from the valve body by uniform loosening of the nuts (S).

(S) Adjusting screws (M5) with nut 5870 204 036

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) with nut 5870 204 049

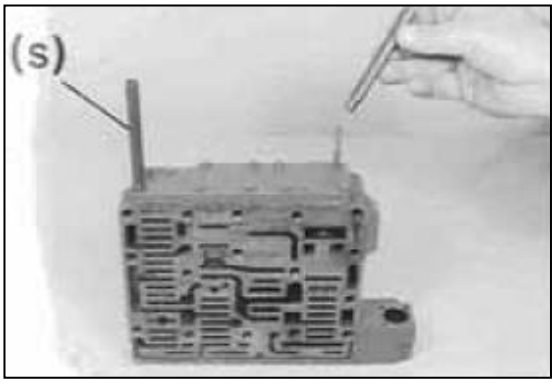


Figure 7

Remove components, see Figure on the right !

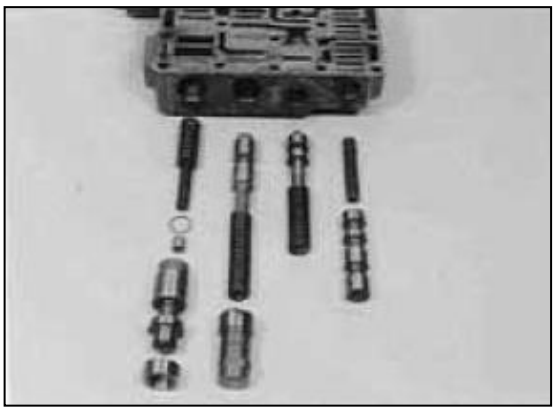


Figure 8

Remove stop plates (Arrows) and demount detent blocks.

NOTE ;

The use o f two spools in order to fix the detent block provisionally axially (Figure 10), avoids the tilting of the detent blocks, thus facilitating the disassembly !

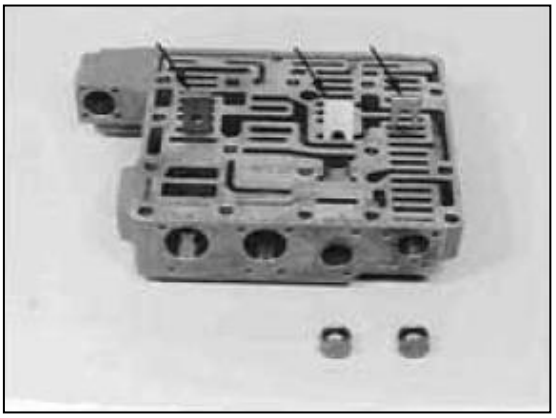


Figure 9

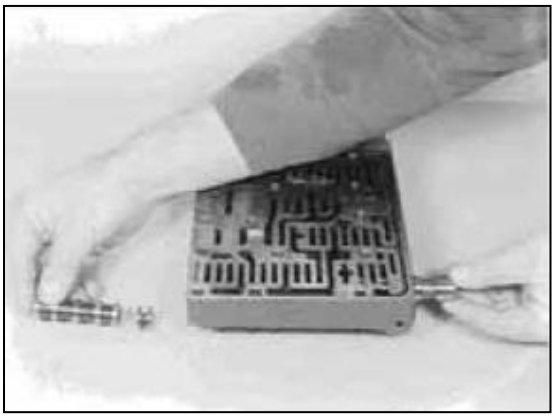


Figure 10

1.1.1.2 REASSEMBLY

See also illustrated Tables, Page 26 !

NOTE :

Check all components for damage and renew if necessary !

Check free travel of the moving parts in the housing prior to the installation !

Spools can be exchanged individually !

Oil components prior to the reassembly !

Introduce detent blocks (1 and 2) into the bores and fix them by means of stop plates (3 and 4).

Install stop plate (5).

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation position of the various stop plates, see Figure on the right !

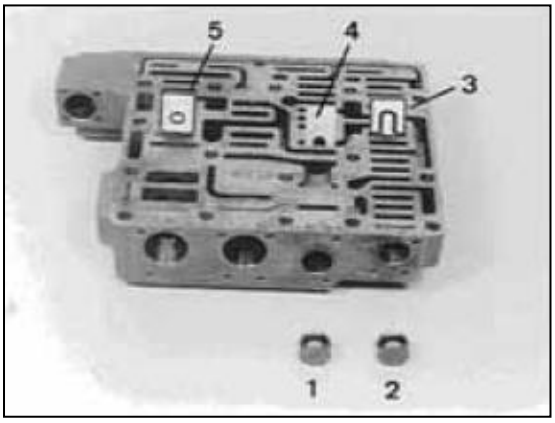


Figure 15

Install components :
1 = Valve body
2 = Spring (L = 88,6 mm)
3 = Spring (L = 52,0 mm)
1 = Disk (optional)
5 = Spacer
6 = Spool
7 = Sleeve
8 = Spool
9 = Spring (L =81,7 mm)
10 = Spool
11 = Spool
12 = Spring (L = 65,4 mm)
13 = Spring (L = 72,5 mm)
10 = Spool (total length 86,mm)

NOTE :

L= Length of the unloaded spring !
ps (control pressure) is determined by the disk (4)!
Pay attention to the General Instructions,
Page 12 ~ 14 !

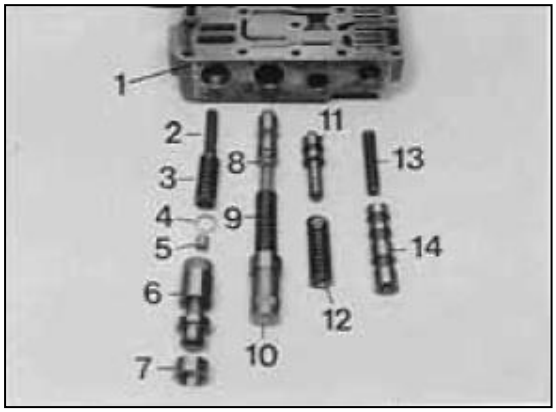


Figure 16

Install two adjusting screws (S) and mount flat gasket.
Place cover against shoulder, using nuts (S).
Now, fasten cover by means of screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8)	5,5 Nm
(S) Adjusting screws (M5) with nut	5870 204 036
(S) Adjusting screws (M6) with nut	5870 204 049

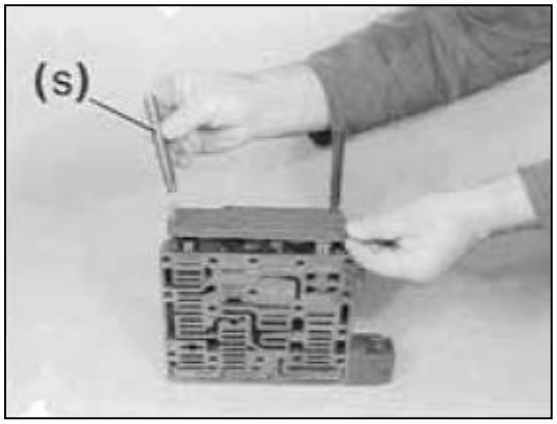


Figure 17

Install components :
1 = Valve body
2 = Spring (L = 72,5 mm)
3 = Spool (3 control surfaces)
4 = Spring (L = 72,5 mm)
5 = Spool (5 control surfaces)
6 = Spring (L = 72,5 mm)
7 = Spool (total length 72,0 mm)
8 = Detent block (3 pieces)

NOTE :

Install new O-Rings, see Arrows !

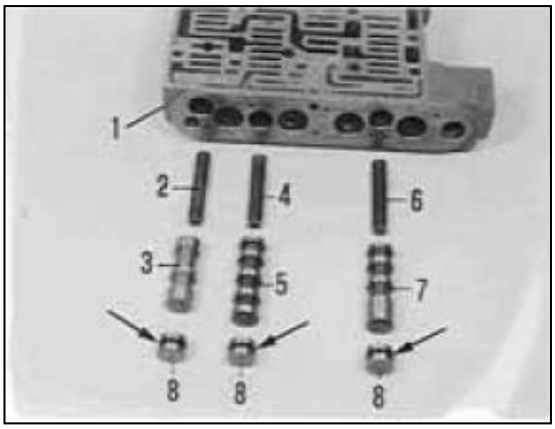


Figure 18

Preload detent block and install solenoid valve.

Install remaining solenoid valves accordingly.

NOTE ;

Employ new O-Rings for solenoid valves !

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the solenoid valves, see Figure 21 !

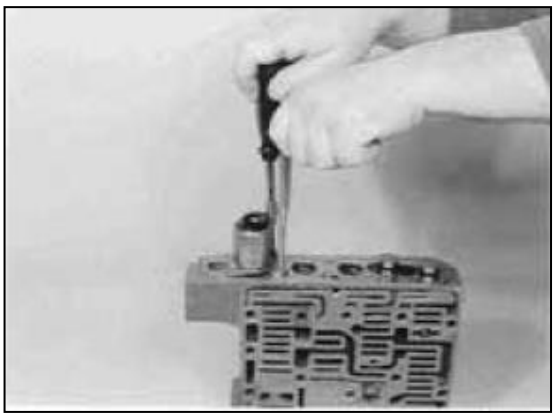


Figure 19

Install cable harness (mount new gaskets), fasten ground cable and connect solenoid valves (Figure 20).

NOTE :

Pay attention to the location of the plug nose, see Arrow/Figure 21 !

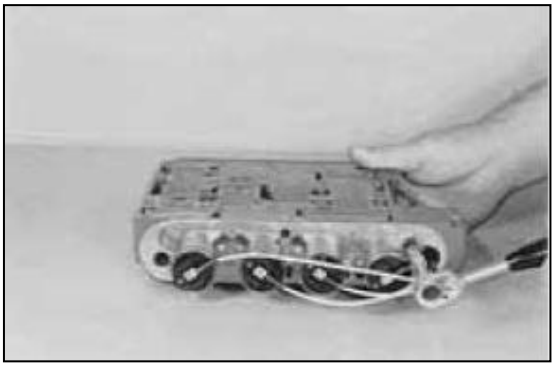


Figure 20

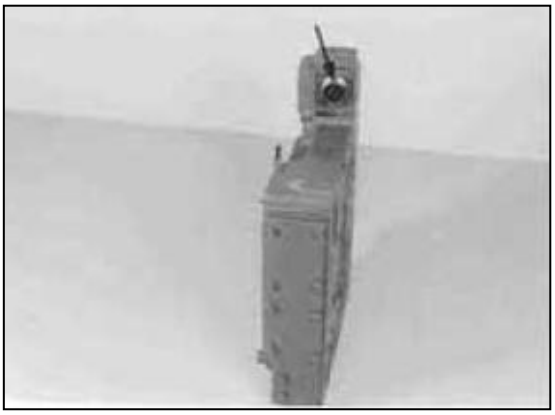


Figure 21

Mount new O-Ring (164.2 x 5.7) and fix cover by means of clamping collar.

Figure 22

Pre-assemble channel plate (Figure 23 and 24)

NOTE :

According to the gearshift Version, different channel plate variants are possible !

Pay attention to the Perspective Illustrations in the corresponding Spare Parts List !

The following Reassembly Instruction is treating the Standard Version (with control diaphragm and diaphragm for the backfeed) !

Wet thread of control diaphragm with Loctite (Type-No. 27C), install control diaphragm (Position, see Arrow 1), and secure it additionally by means of center punch.

Now, clean diaphragm from Loctite residues by means of compressed air.

Install diaphragm for the backfeed (Position, see Arrow 2) accordingly.

Insert thread plug (3) with Loctite (Type-No. 270).

Employ new sealing ring for connecting plug (4) and screw plug (Position, see Arrow 5), and install them.

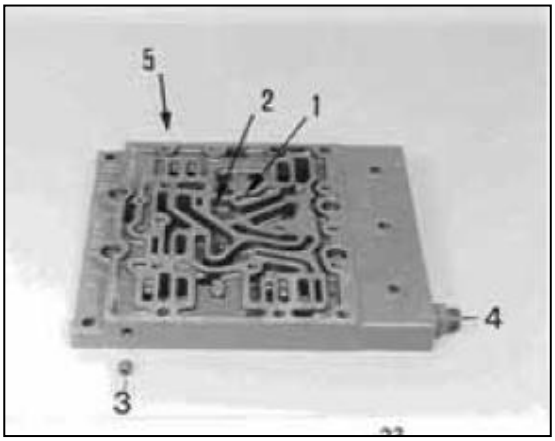


Figure 23

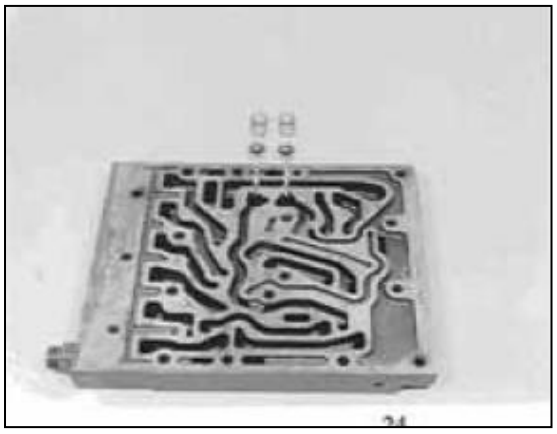


Figure 24

Insert the two check valves (composed of balls and springs) in the channel plate.

Attach channel plate and gearbox control (Figure 25 ... 30)

Install housing gasket.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the different gaskets, see Figure 25 and 26 !

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 200 011

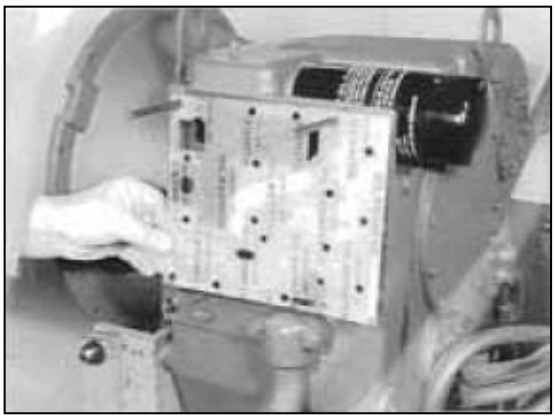


Figure25

Install intermediate plate and 2nd gasket.

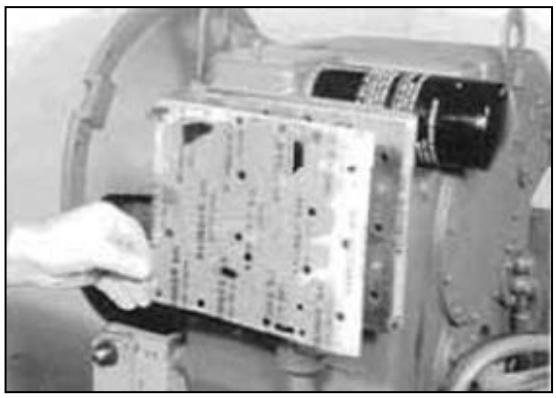


Figure 26

Assemble channel plate and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE ;

Pay attention to a correct position of the ball seat valves !

Pay attention to the position of the various screws, see corresponding Spare Parts List !

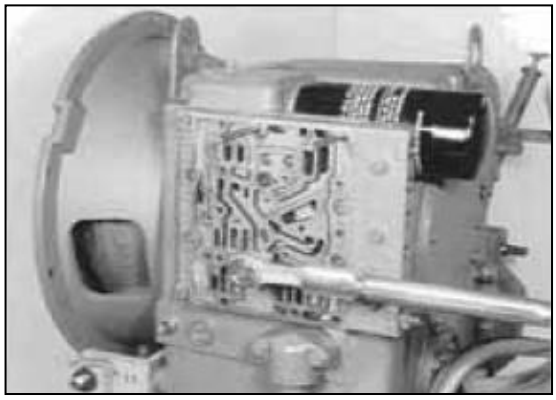


Figure 27

Assemble 1st gasket.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the different gaskets, see Figure 28 and 29 !

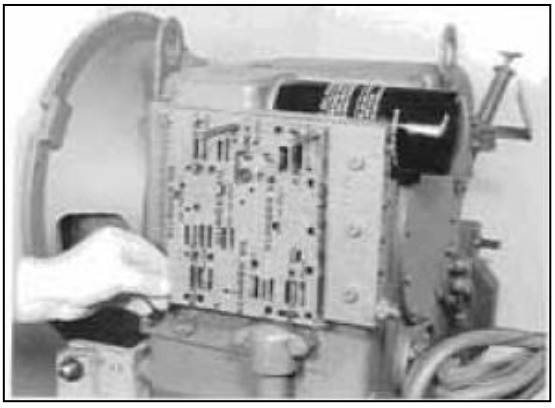


Figure 28

Install intermediate plate and 2nd gasket.

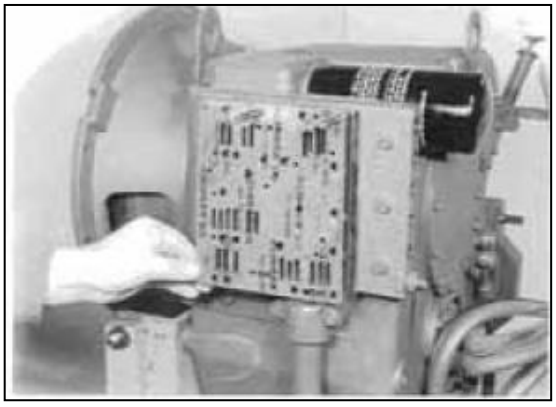


Figure 29

Place gearbox control assembly against shoulder and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE :

Pay attention to the position of the different screws (lengths) !

Employ new sealing rings for the screw plugs (see Arrows) and install them !

Now, install delivery lines, see Perspective Illustrations in the corresponding Spare Parts List !

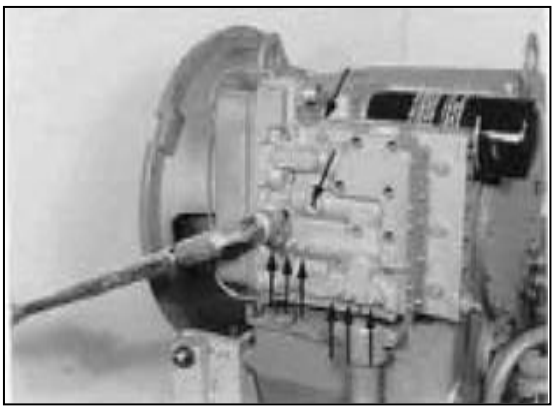
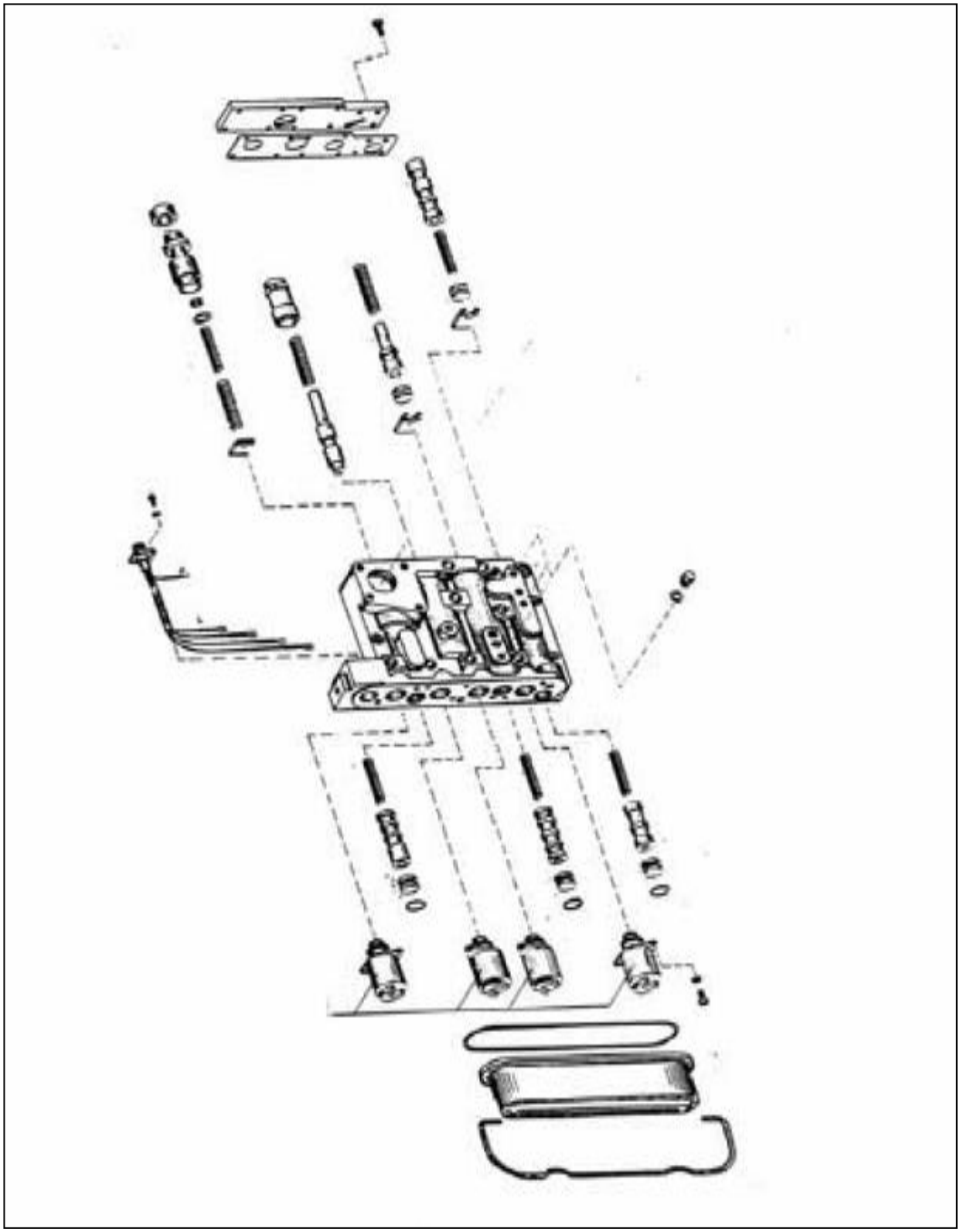
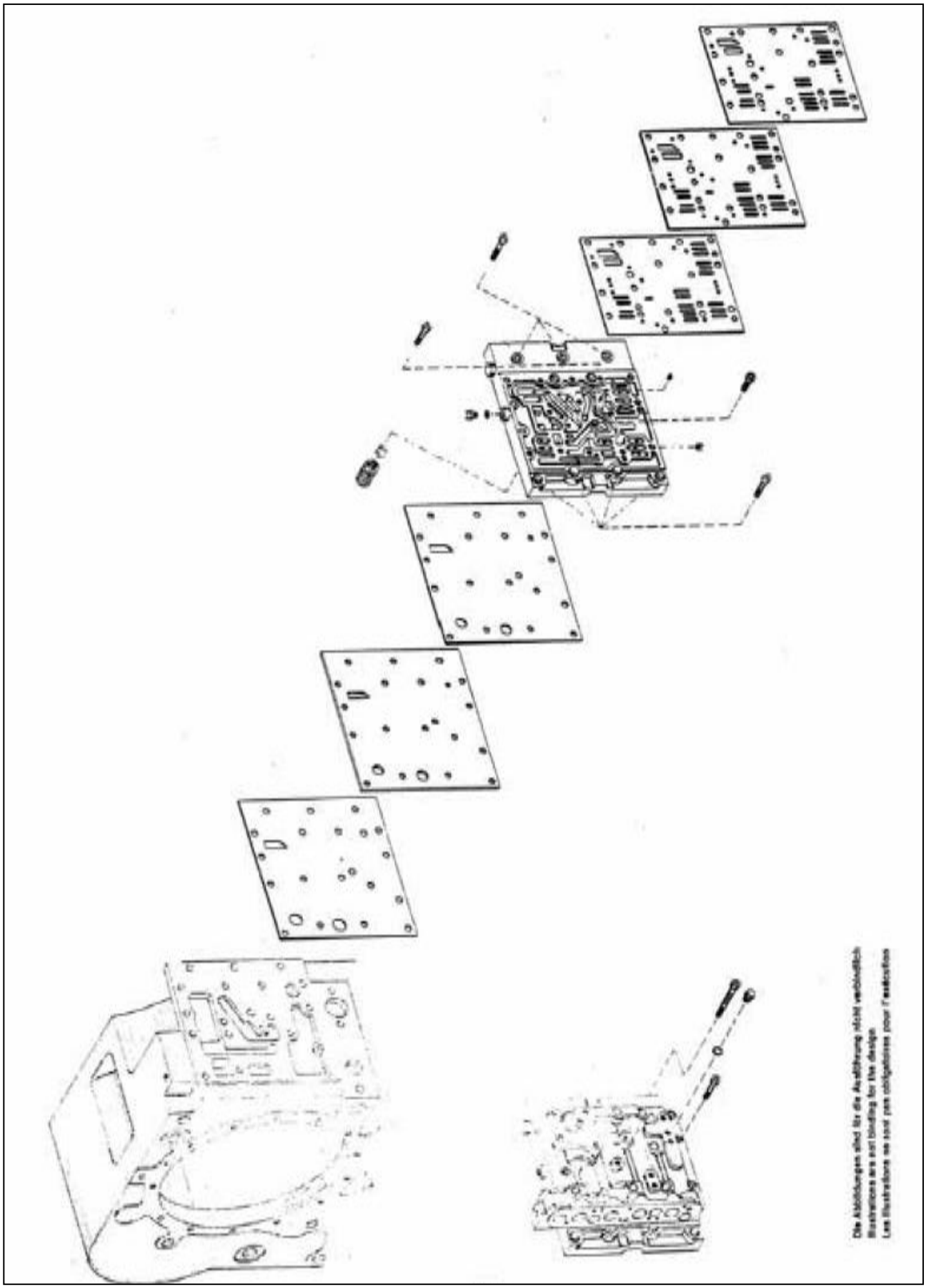


Figure 30





1.2 ALUMINIUM SAND-CASTING GEARBOX CONTROL

1.2.1 Version Ⅰ : With 4 Solenoid valves and attached 2-stage pressure control valve !

1.2.1.1 DISASSEMBLY

Remove delivery line.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

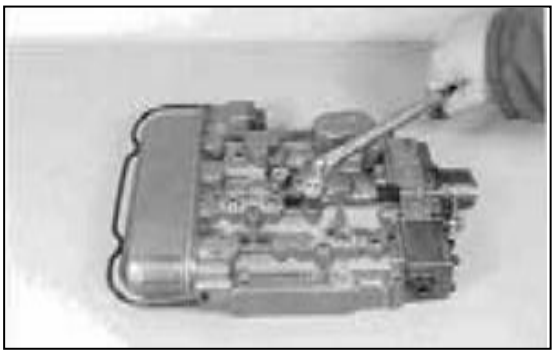


Figure 35

Relax spring clip and remove cover.

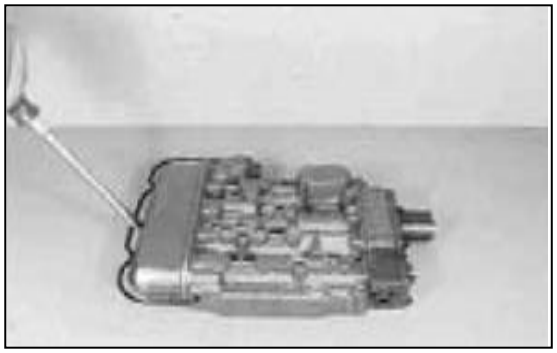


Figure 36

Pull oil cable shoes and remove cable harness.

Loosen socket head screws and remove solenoid valves.

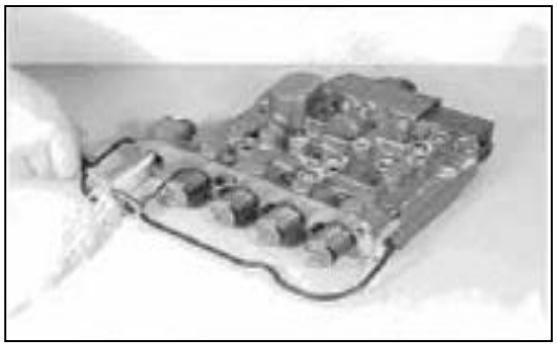


Figure 37

Remove components, see Figure on the right !

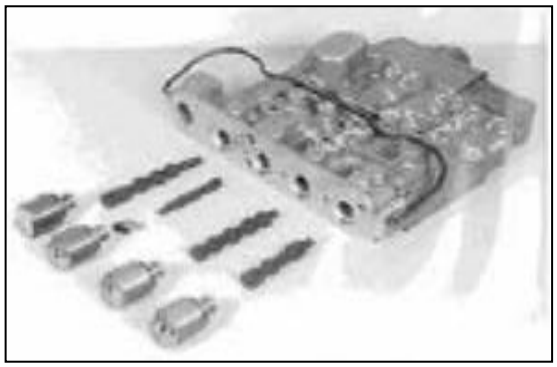


Figure 38

Loosen two socket head screws and fix shiftcontrol housing provisionally, using a Special Tool (S).
Now, loosen the remaining socket head screws and separate shift-control housing (is spring-loaded) from the valve body by uniform loosening of the nuts (S).

(S)	Adjusting screws with nut	(M5)	5870 204 036
(S)	Adjusting screws with nut	(M6)	5870 204 049

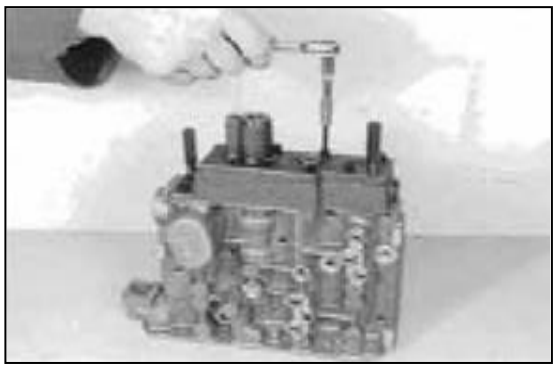


Figure 39

Dismantle pressure control valve.

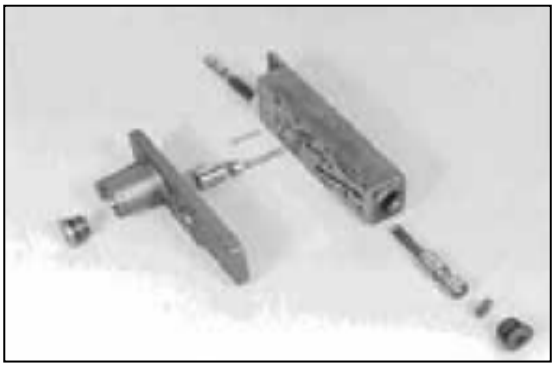


Figure 40

.

Remove components

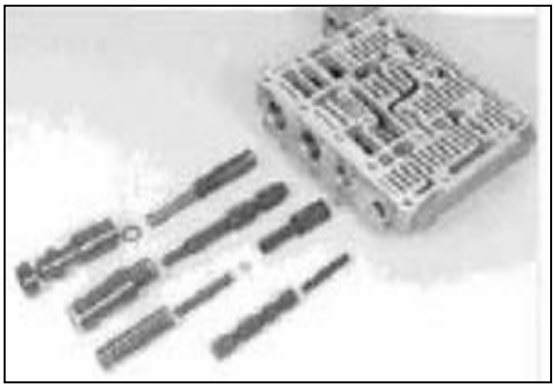


Figure 41

Remove stop plates (Arrows) and demount detent blocks (2x).

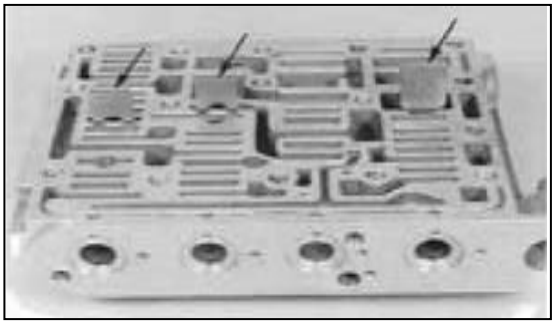


Figure 42

1.2.1.2 REASSEMBLY

See also Illustrated Tables, Page 1.26 and 1.27 !

NOTE :

Check all components for damage and renew if necessary !

Check free travel of the moving parts in the housing prior to the installation !

Spools can be exchanged individually !

Oil components prior to the reassembly !

Close the bores by means of balls (8 pieces Ø 4.50 mm).

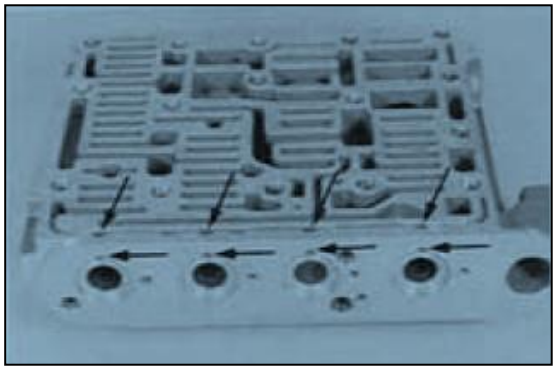


Figure 45

Introduce detent blocks (1 and 2) into the bores and fix them by means of stop plates (3 and 4).

Install detent block (5).

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation position !

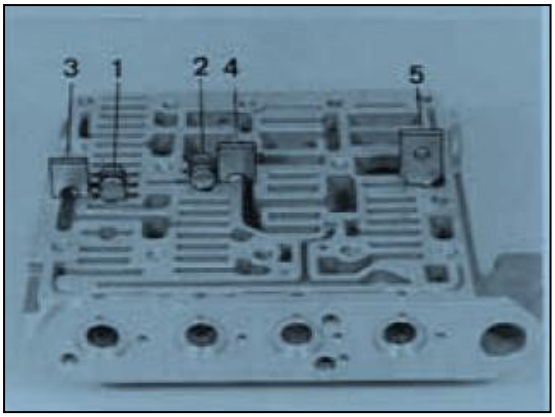


Figure 46

Install components :

1 = Spool (total length = 86,00 mm)

2 = Spring (L_o = 53,40 mm)

NOTE ;

L_o = Length of the unloaded spring !

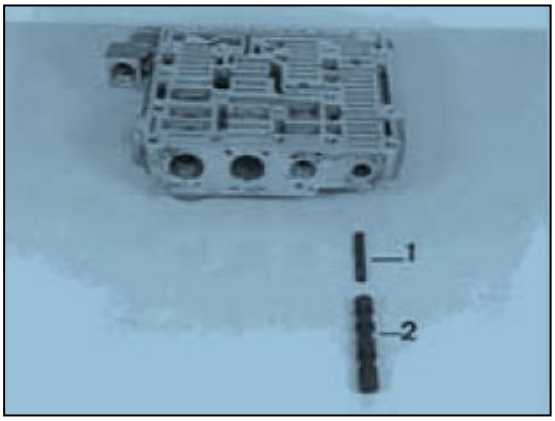


Figure 47

Reset valve：

Install components.

1 = Spool

2 = Disk(s) (optional)

3 = Spring (L_o = 58,00 mm)

4 = Spring (L_o = 65,40 mm)

NOTE:

p2 is determined by the disk 4

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

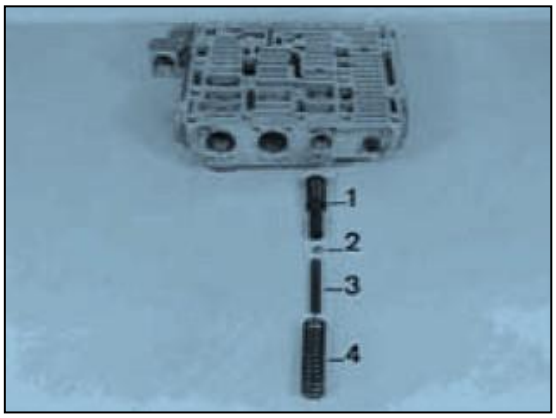


Figure 48

Pressure control valve :

Install components.

1 = Spool

2 = Spring (L_o = 132,40 mm)

3 = Spring (L_o = 76,70 mm)

4 = Spool

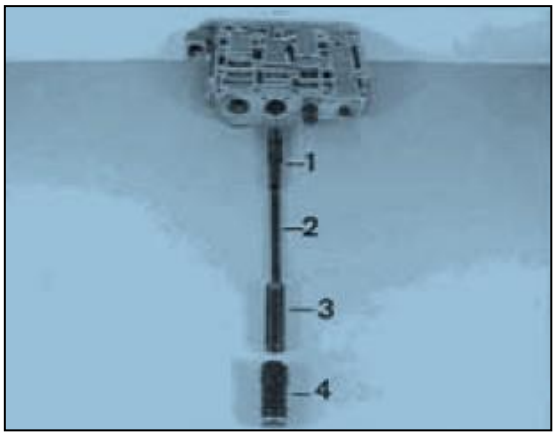


Figure 49

Control pressure valve :

Install components.

1 = Spring (L_o = 78,60 mm)

2 = Spring (L_o = 65,40 mm)

3 = Disk(s) (empirical value s = 3,00 mm)

4 = Disk(s) (empirical value s = 1,00 mn)

NOTE:

ps is deter mind by the disks 3 and 4

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

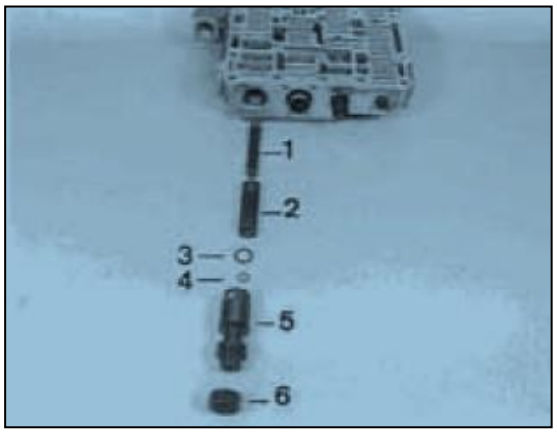


Figure 50

Pre-assemble 2-stage pressure control valve

(Figure 51… 53) :

Install diaphragm (optional).

NOTE ：

Wet thread of diaphragm with Loctite (Type No.270)!

△ t1 is determined by the diaphragm

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14)!

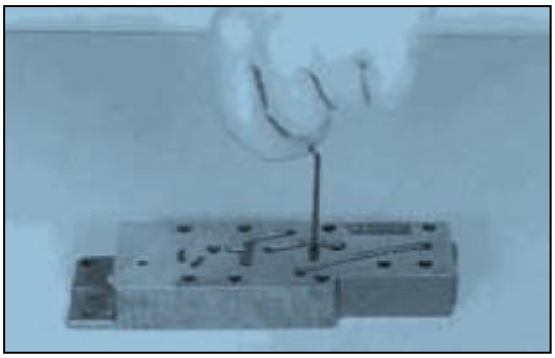


Figure 51

Install components ：

1 = Intermediate plate

2 = Valve

3 = Compression spring (L_o = 29,90 mm)

4 = Straight pin

5 = Roller

6 = Spool

6a = Disk (s = 2,5 mm/empirical value)

7 = Spring (L_o = 70,90 mm)

8 = Disk(s)

9 = Screw plug (mount new O-Ring)

NOTE ：

Insert compression spring (3) and valve (2) in the bore, preload and fix by means of straight pin (4) !

p3 is determined by the disk(s) 6a

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

Close the bore by means of ball (Ø 5 mm), s e e Arrow !

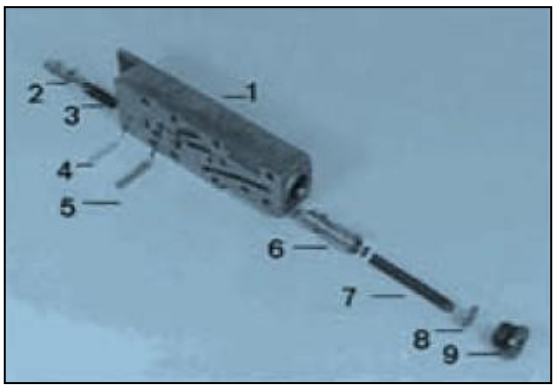


Figure 52

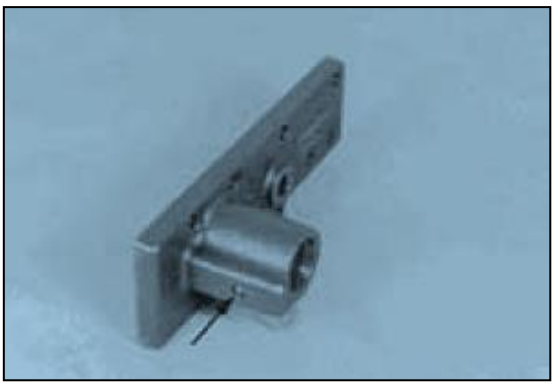


Figure 53

Install components and fix them by means of socket head screws and flat washers (Figure 54 and 55).

1 = Gasket

2 = Housing assembly

3 = Ring (optional)

4 = Spool

5 = Gasket

6 = Cover

7 = O-Ring

8 = Screw plug

NOTE ;

∆ t3 is determined by the ring (3)

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

(S) Adjusting screws (M5) with nut 5870 204 036

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) with nut 5870 204 049

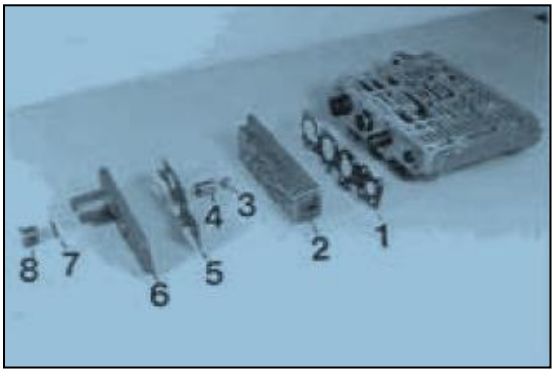


Figure 54

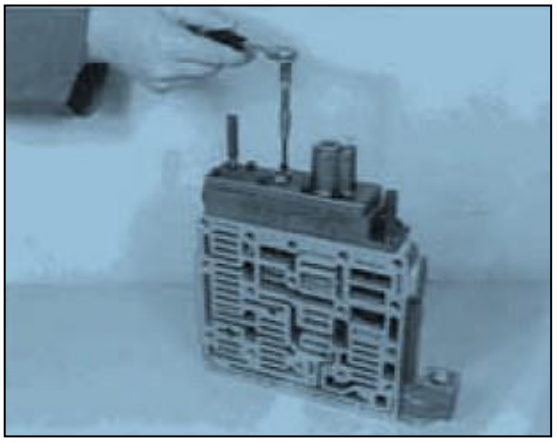


Figure 55

Install components ：

1 = Spring (L_o = 33,40 mm)
2 = Spool
3 = Spring (L_o = 53,40 mm)
4 = Spool
5 = Spool (reducing valve)
6 = Spring (L_o = 37,10 mm)
7 = Retaining plate
8 = Socket head screw
9 = Spring (L_o = 53,40 mm)
10 = Spool

NOTE:

Pay attention to the installation position of the components, see Figure 56 !

Torque limit (M5/S.8) 5,5 Nm

Insert the solenoid valves and fix them by means of retaining plate and socket head screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

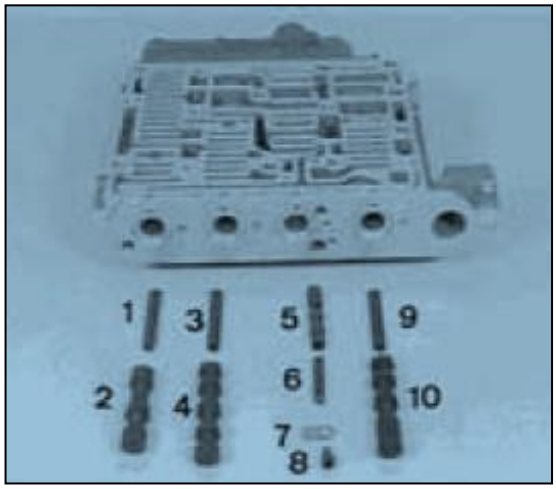


Figure 56

Insert the solenoid valves and fix them by means of retaining plate and socket head screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the solenoid valves, see Figure 59 !

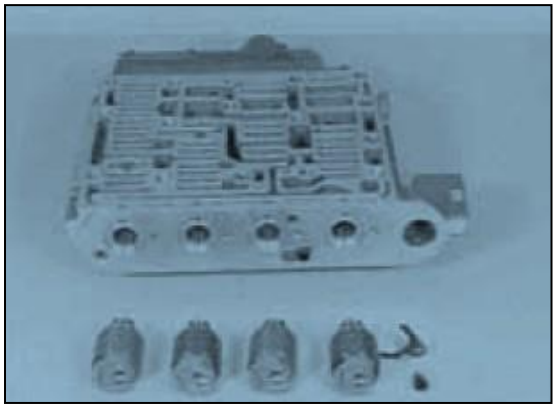


Figure 57

Install cable harness.

NOTE ;

Mount new gaskets !

Pay attention to the location of the plug nose, see Arrow !

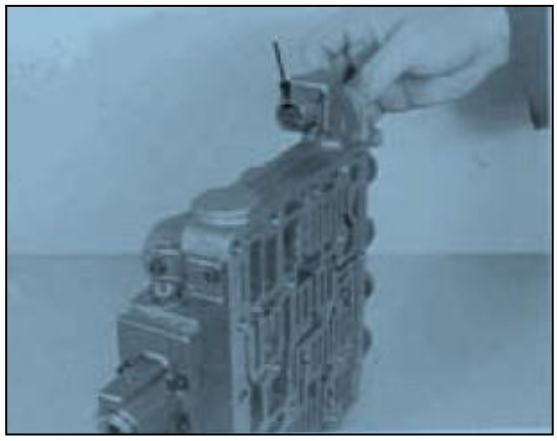


Figure 58

Connect solenoid valves according to the Illustration on the right.

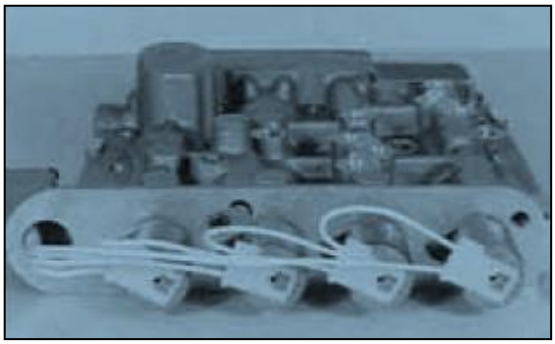


Figure 59

Mount new O-Ring (164,2 x 5,7 mm), see Arrow and fix cover by means of clamping collar.

Figure 60

Intall delivery line 1, control pressure sender 2 (according to the Version) as well as screw plug.

NOTE :

Mount new sealing rings and O-Rings !

Pay attention to the Perspective Illustration of the corresponding Spare Parts List !

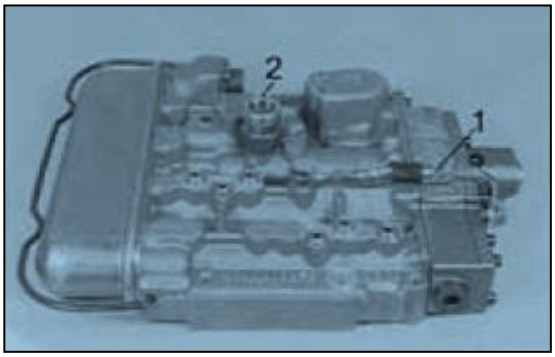


Figure 61

Pre-assemble channel plate (Figure 62… 64) :

NOTE ;

According to the gearshift Version, different channel plate variants are possible ! Pay attention to the Perspective Illustration of the corresponding Spare Parts List !

The following Reassembly Instruction is treating the Version with diaphragm for the backfeed (without control diaphragm) !

Wet thread of diaphragm with Loctite (Type No. 270), install diaphragm (Position, see Arrow 1) and secure it additionally by means of center punch.

Now, clean diaphragm from Loctite residues by meow of compressed air.

Install thread plug (Position, see Arrow 2) accordingly.

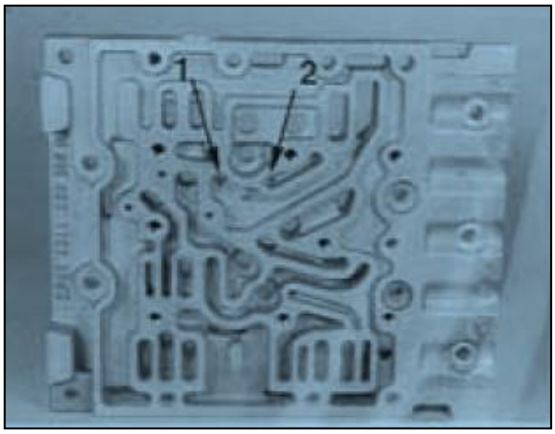


Figure 62

Install connecting pipe (1) and screw pljg (Arrow).

NOTE :

Mount new O-Rings !

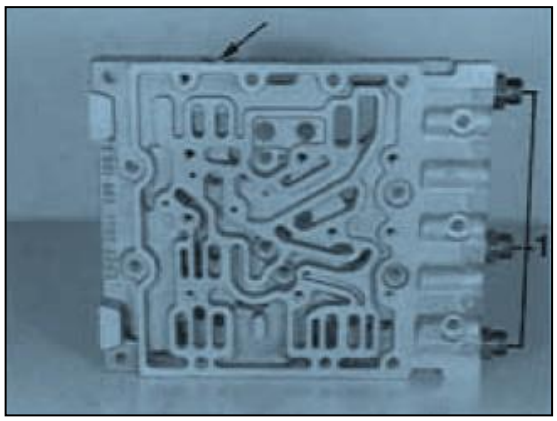


Figure 63

Insert the two check valves (composed of balls and springs) with grease in the countersinking of the channel plate (see Arrows).

NOTE :

Use only oil soluble grease !

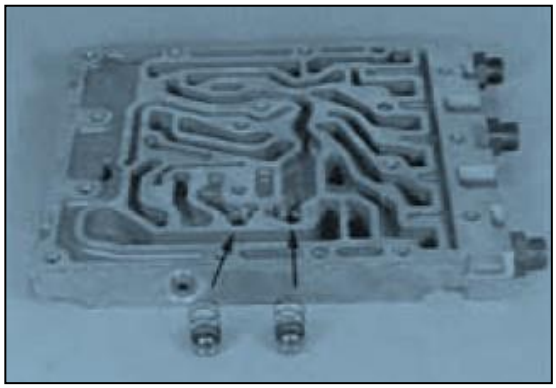


Figure 64

Attach channel plate and gearbox control (Figure 65 ... 68) :

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the components, see corresponding Spare Parts List !

Install two adjusting screws.

Assemble housing gasket, intermediate plate and gasket.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

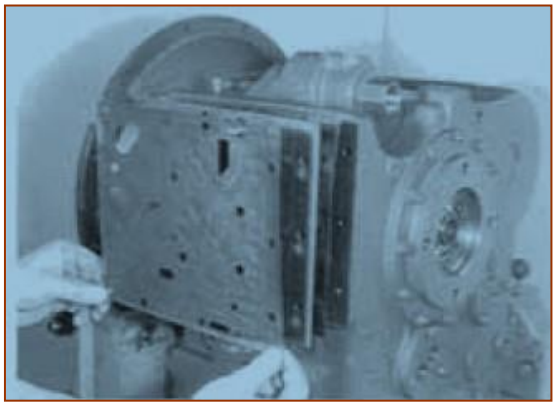


Figure 65

Assemble channel plate and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit 20 Nm

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation position of the different socket head screws, see corresponding Spare Parts List !.

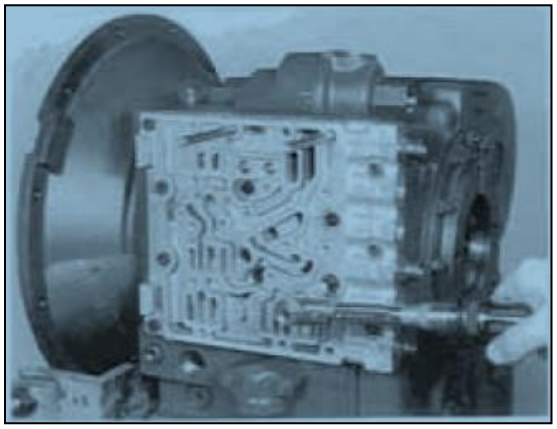


Figure 66

Assemble 1st gasket, intermediate plate and 2nd gasket.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the various gaskets, see corresponding Spare Parts List !

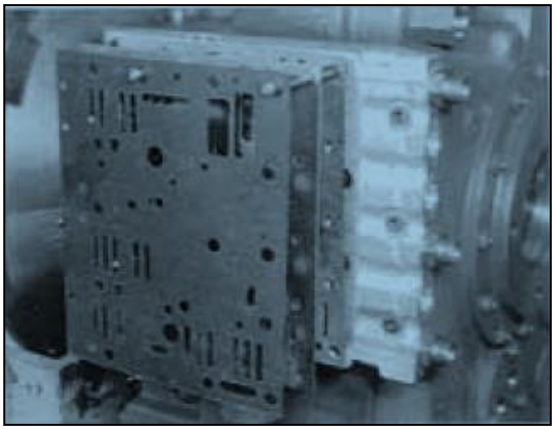


Figure 67

Place control unit against shoulder until contact is obtained and fasten it by means of hex. head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit 20 Nm

Install deliver/ lines according to the Illustration in the Spare Parts List !

NOTE ;

Mount new sealing rings !

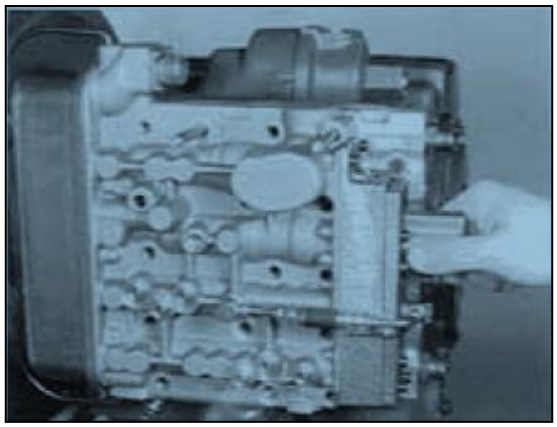
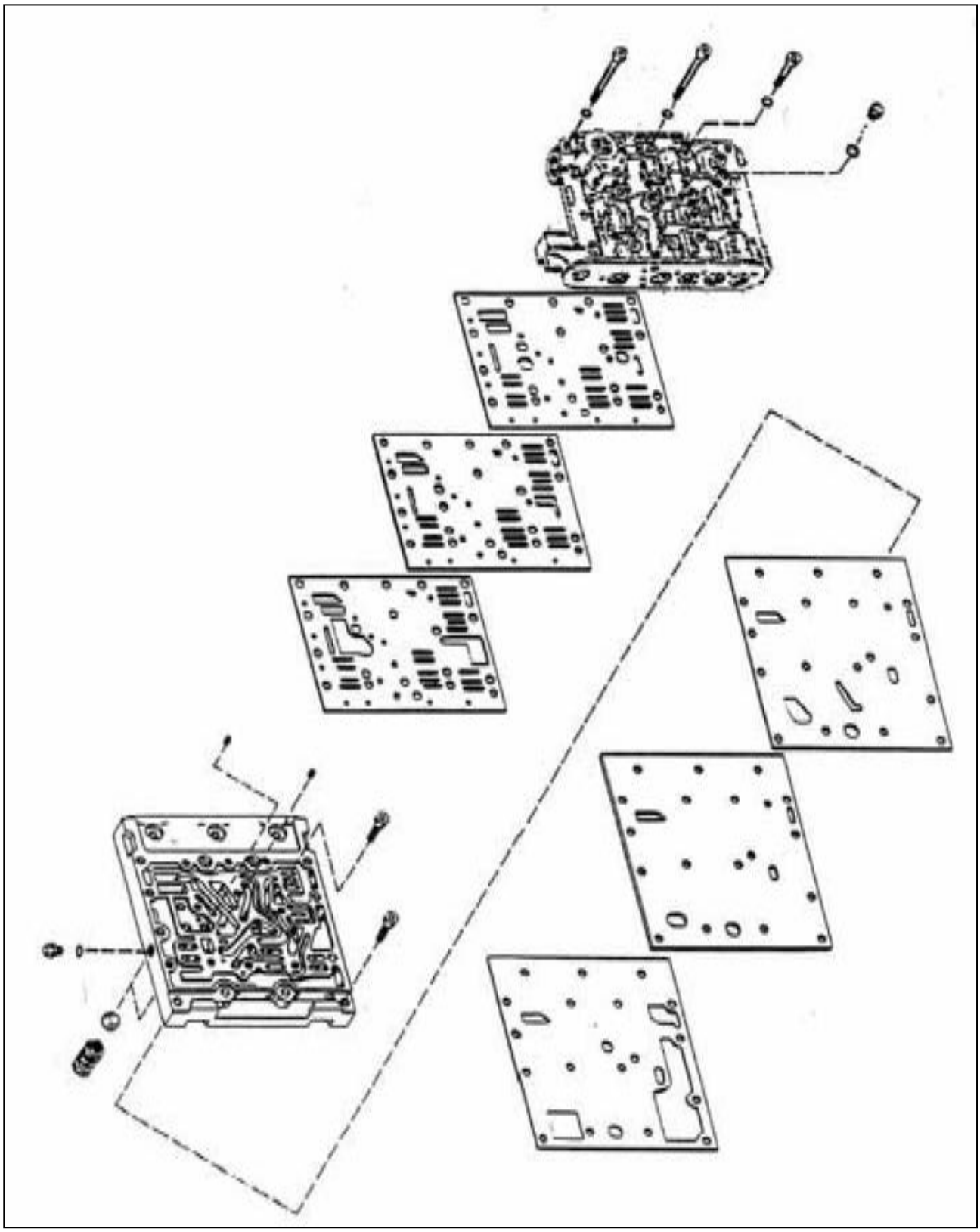
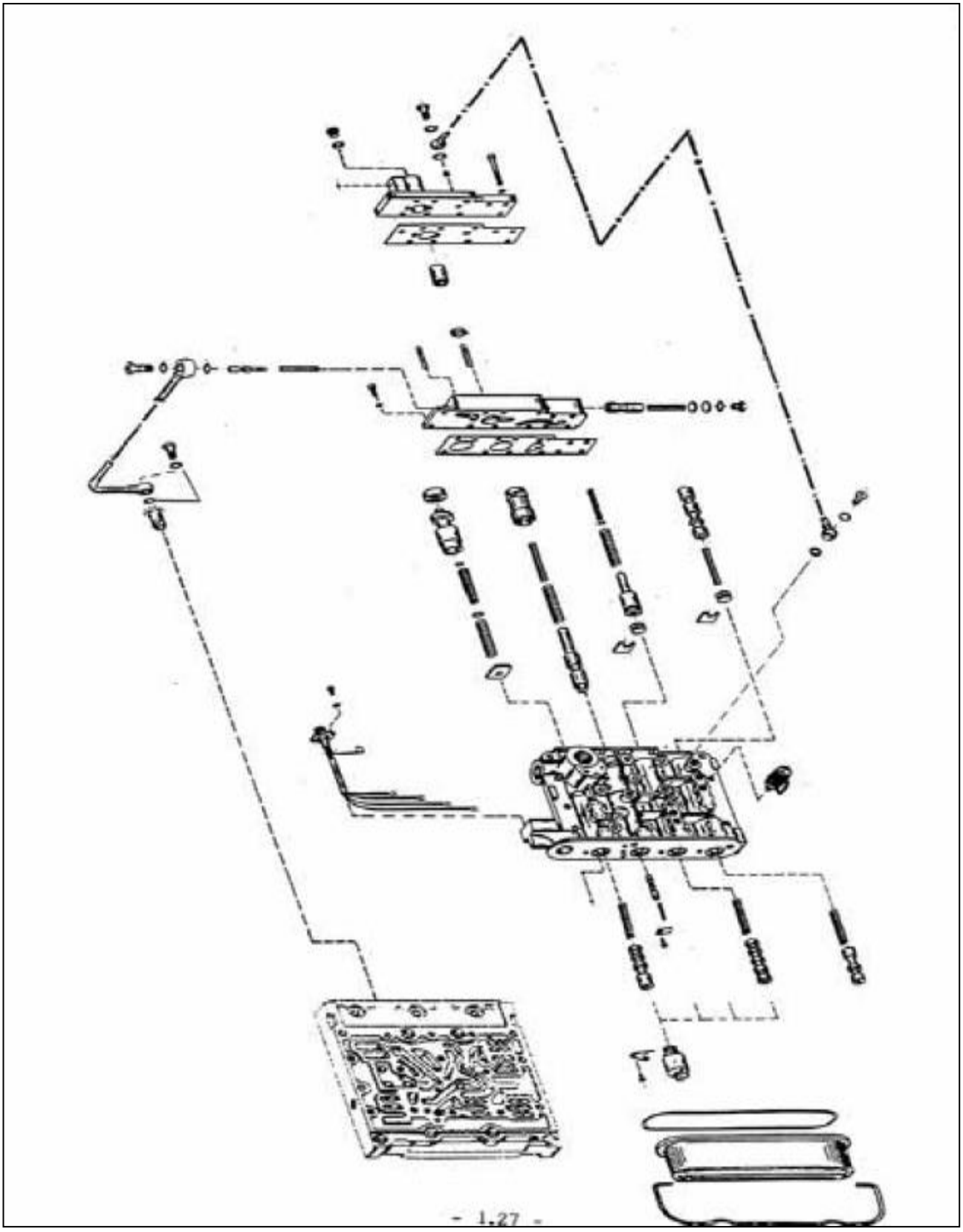


Figure 68




- 1.27 -

1.2.2 Version II: With 5 Solenoid valves and attached WK-Valve

1.2.2.1 DISASSEMBLY

Relax spring clip and remove cover.

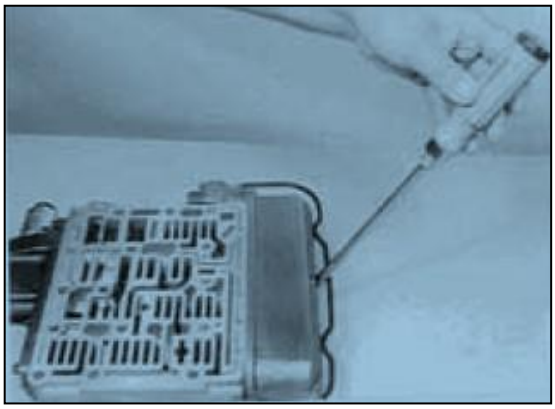


Figure 75

Pull off cable shoes.

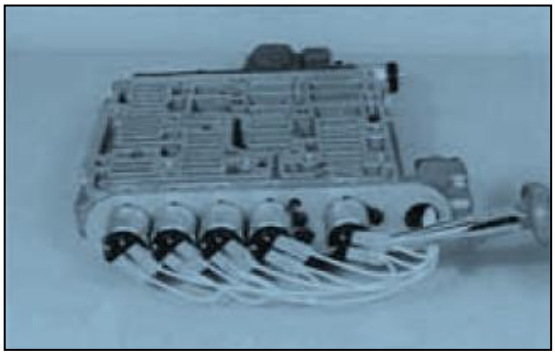


Figure 76

Loosen socket head screws and remove solenoid valves.

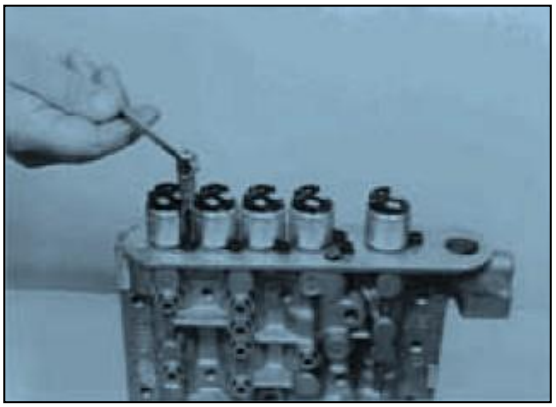


Figure 77

Remove components.

Figure 78

WK-Valve :

Remove components.

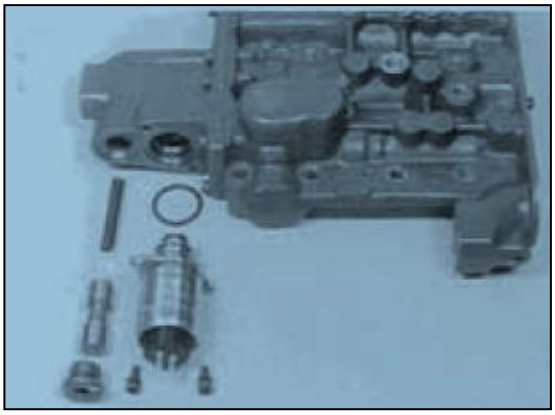


Figure 79

Loosen two socket head screws and fix shiftcontrol housing provisionally, using a Special Tool (S).

Now, loosen the remaining socket head screws and separate shift-control housing (is spring-loaded) from the valve body by uniform loosening of the nuts (S).

(S) Adjusting screws (M5) 870 204 036
with nut

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

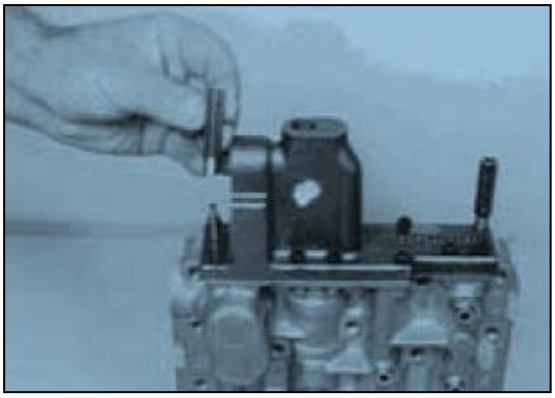


Figure 80

Remove components.

Figure 81

Remove stop plates (see Arrows) and demount the remaining components.

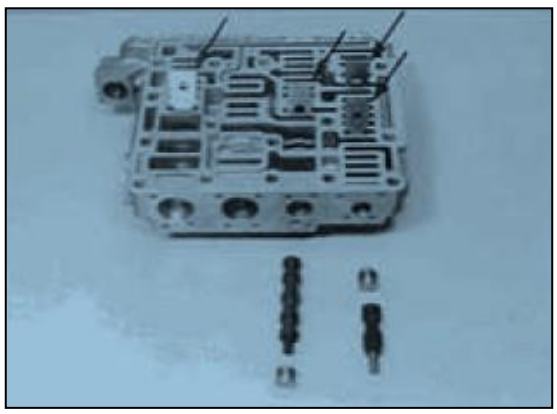


Figure 82

1.2.2.2 REASSEMBLY

See also Illustrated Tables, Page 1.35 and 1.37 !

NOTE:
Check all components for damage and renew if necessary !
Check free travel of the moving parts in the housing prior to the installation !
Spools can be exchanged individually !
Oil components prior to the reassembly !

Close the bores by means of balls (10 pieces Φ4,50 mm) !
Introduce detent block 1 and fix it by means of the stop plate 4.
Install subsequently spool 2 and spring 3 (Lo = 51,3 mm), and fix them by means of the stop plate 5.
Install spool 6, spring 7 (Lo = 53,4 mm) and detent block 8, and fix them by means of the stop plate 9.
Insert detent block 10.

NOTE :
Pay attention to the installation position of the different stop plates, see Figure on the right !
Gearshift valve :
Install components.
1 = Spring (Lo = 53,40mm)
2 = Spool

Reset spool :
Install components.
1 = Spool
2 = Disk(s) (optional)
3 = Spring(Lo = 53,40 mm)
4 = Spring(Lo = 65,40 mm)
NOTE :
p2 is determined by the disk 4
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 … 14) !

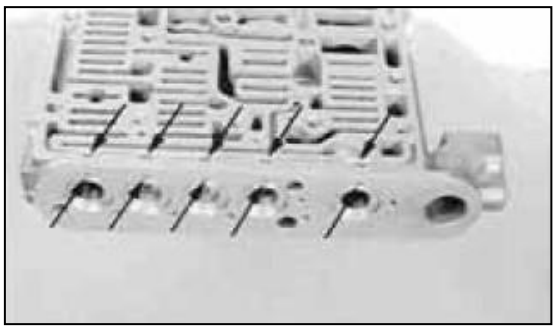


Figure 83

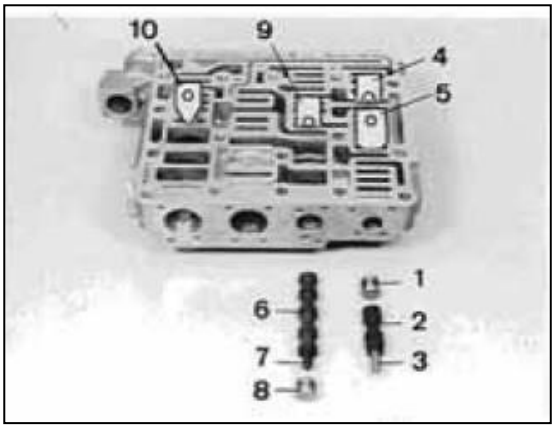


Figure 84

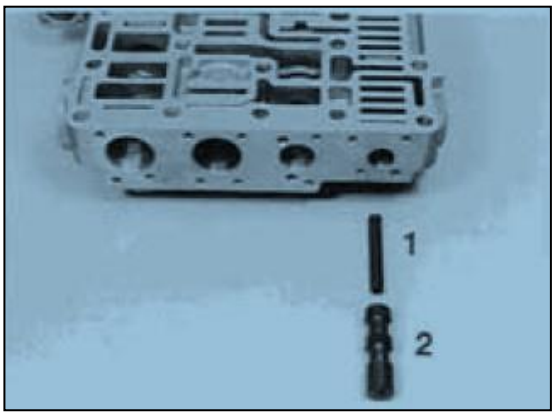


Figure 85

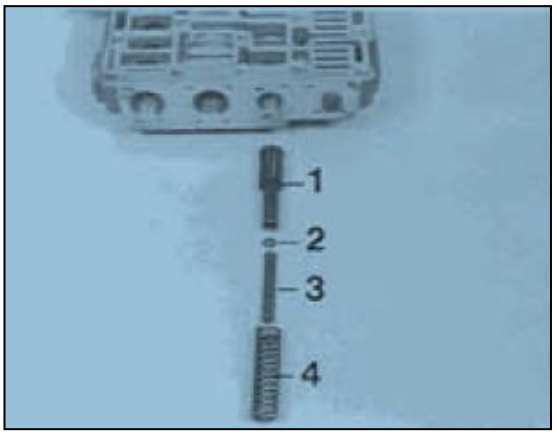


Figure 86

Pressure control valve :
Install components,
1 = Spool
2 = Disk (optional)
3 = Spring (L_0 = 76,70 mm)
4 = Spring (L_0 = 132,40 mm)
5 = Spool
NOTE ;
P1 is determined by the disk 2
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

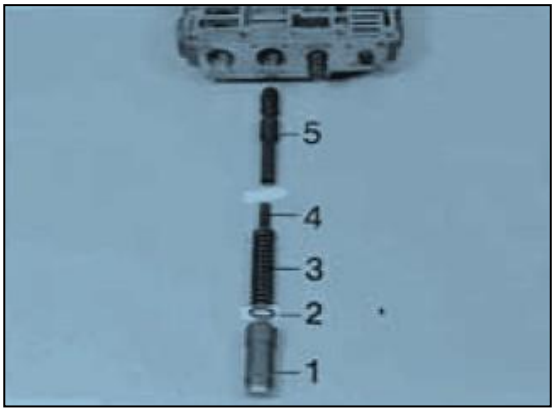


Figure 87

Control pressure valve :
Install components.
1 = Spring (L_0 = 65,40 mm)
2 = Spring (L_0= 78,60 mm)
3 = Disk(s) (optional)
4 = Disk(s) (optional)
5 = Spool
6 = Sleeve
NOTE :
P5 is determined by the disks 3 and 4
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

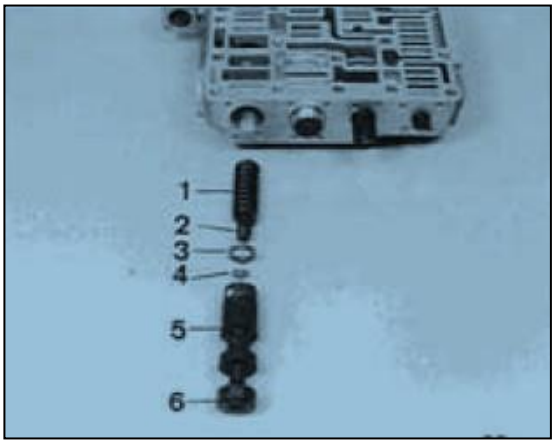


Figure 88

Pre-assemble and attach shift-control housing (WK) (Figure 89 ... 92)
Close the two bores by means of balls and install diaphragm.
1 = Bail (Ø 4.50 mm)
2 = Diaphragm (Optional)
3 = Ball (Ø 7.00 mm)
NOTE :
Secure diaphragm by means of Loctite (Type No. 270) !
Now, clean diaphragm from Loctite residues by means of compressed air I
t2 (Modulation time-WK) is determined by the diaphragm 2
(pay attention to Notes Page 12 ... 14) !

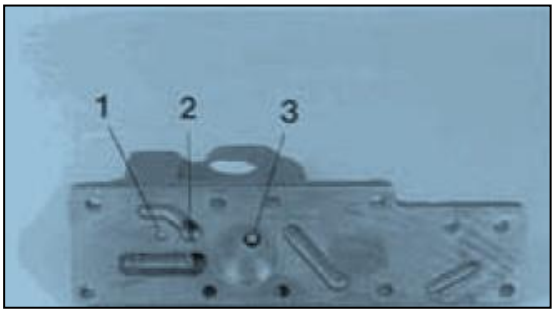


Figure 89

Install two adjusting screws (S) and mount gasket (Arrow).
(S) Adjusting screws (M5) 5870 204 036
with nut
(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

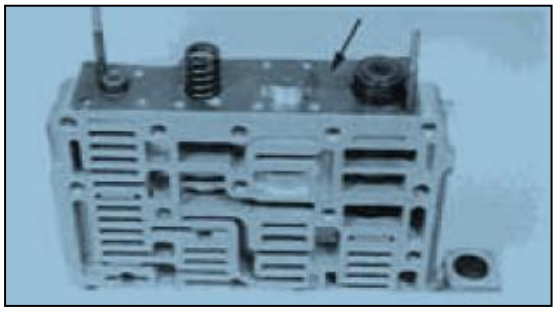


Figure 90

Pull shift-control housing by means of threaded bushings (S) against shoulder.
Now, fasten lousing by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

(S) Adjusting screws (M5) 5870 204 036
with nut

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

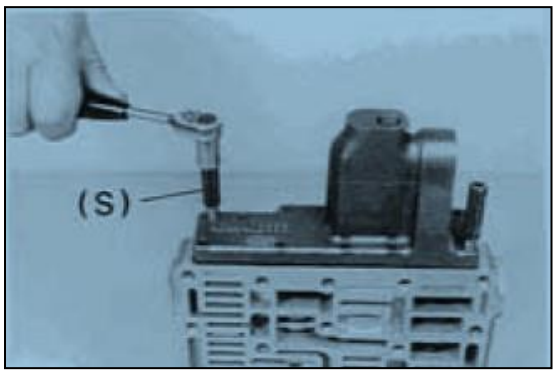


Figure 91

Install components :
1 = Shift-control housing
2 = O-Ring
3 = Solenoid valve
4 = Socket head screws (with spring washer)
5= Spring(L_0 = 53,40 mm)
6 = Disk(s) (optional)
7 = Spool
8 = Screw plug (with O-Ring)

NOTE:
p2 is determired by the disk 6
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) I

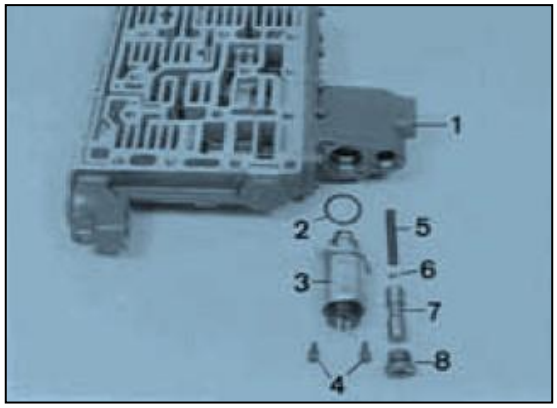


Figure 92

Install components :
1 = Shift-control housing
2 = Spring (Lo =51,30 mm)
3 = Spool
4 = Spool
5 = Spring (Lo =37,10 mm)
6 = Spool fixing (retaining plate and socket head screw)
7 = Spring (Lo = 53,40 mm)
8 = Spool
9 = Retaining plate and socket head screw
10 = Solenoid valves (5x)

NOTE :
Pay attention to the installation position of the solenoid valves, see Figure 95 !

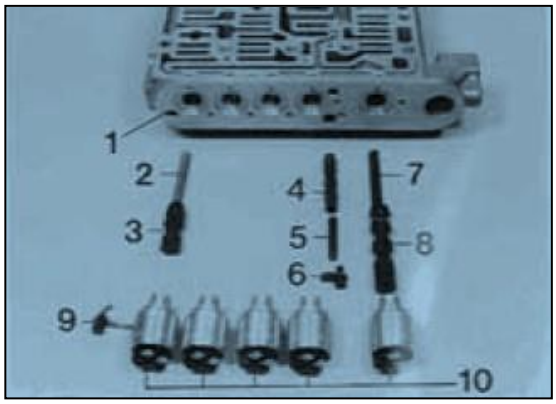


Figure 93

Install cable harness.

NOTE :
Mount new gaskets 1
Pay attention to the location of the plug nose see Arrow !

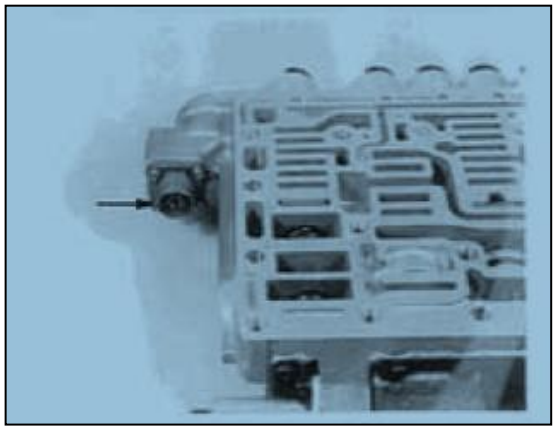


Figure 94

Connect solenoid valves according to the Illustration on the right..

Figure 95

Mount new O-Ring (164.2 x 5.7) and fix cover by means of clamping collar.

Figure 96

Install screw plugs as well as control pressure sender (according to the Version).

NOTE :

The Reassembly of the channel plate as well as the attachment of the gearbox control is treated on Page 32 ... 34 !

Pay attention to the Perspective Illustration of the corresponding Sparc Parts List !

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

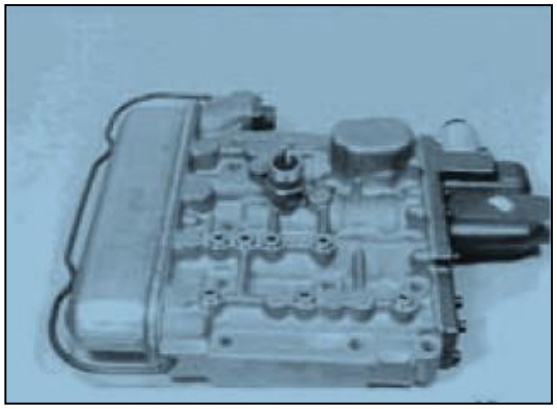
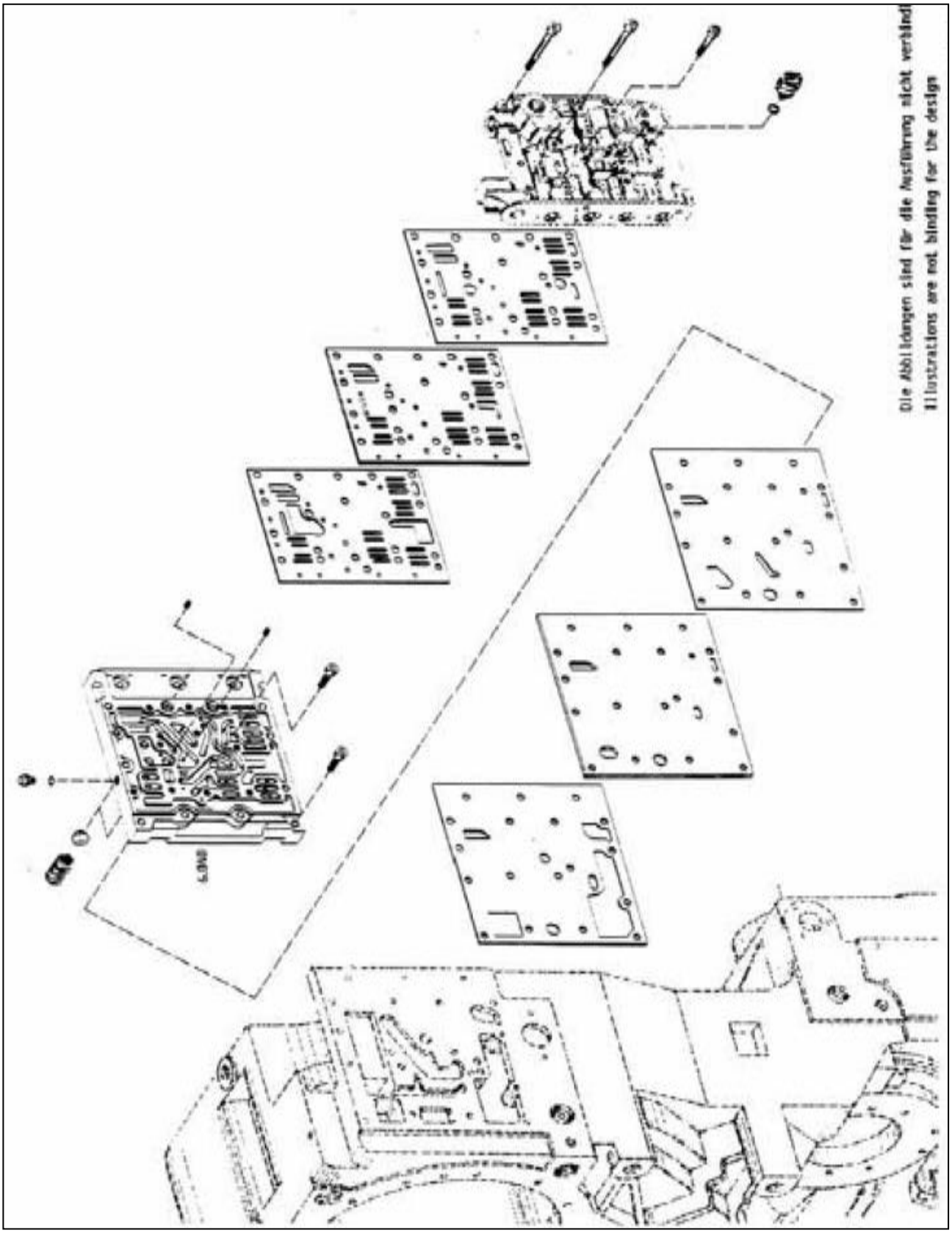
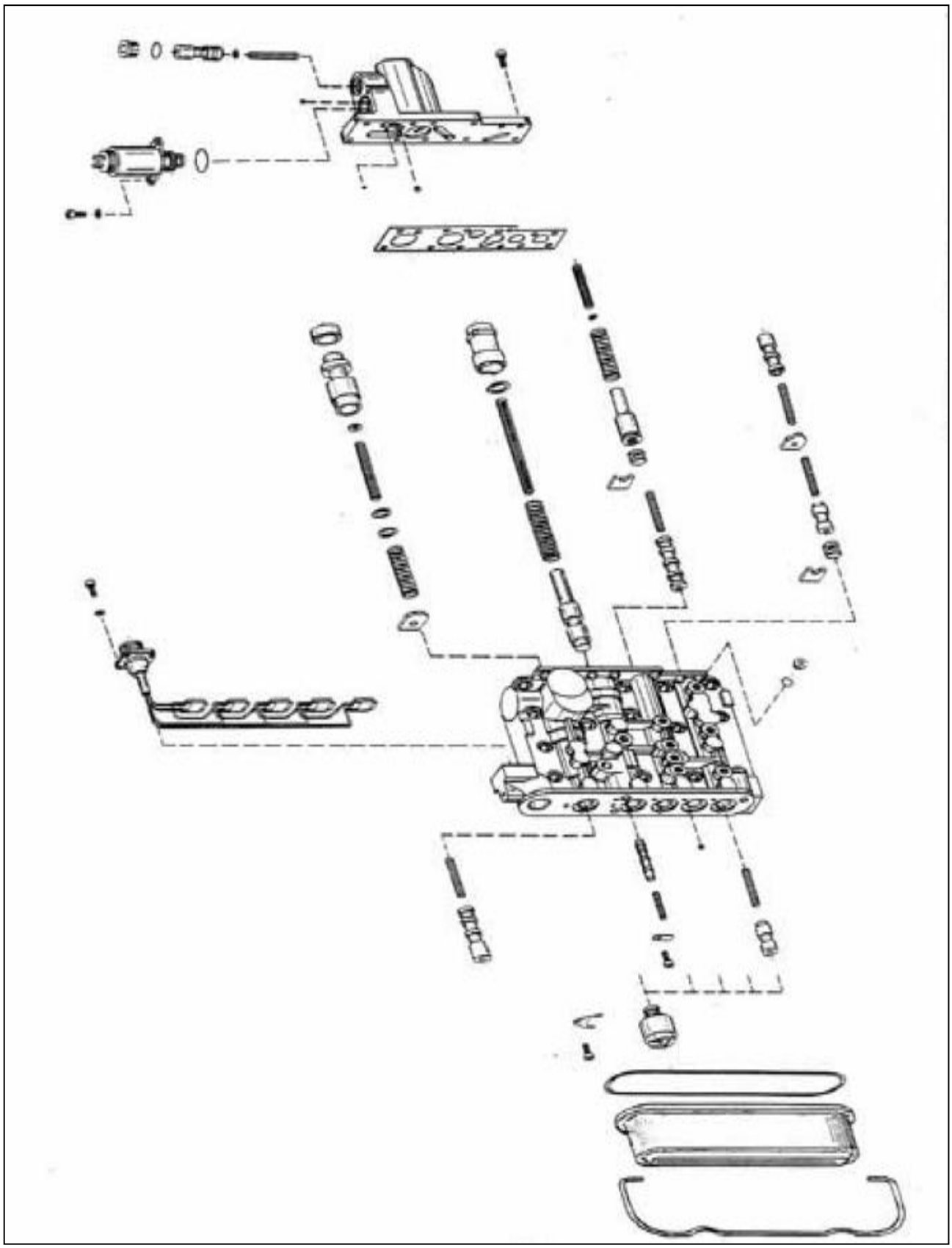


Figure 97


Die Abbildungen sind für die Ausführung nicht verbindl
Illustrations are not binding for the design



1.3 ALUMINIUM DIE-CAST GEARBOX CONTROL

1.3.1 Version 1 : With WK-Valve

1.3.1.1 DISASSEMBLY

(S) Adjusting screws 5870 204 011

Relax spring clip and remove cover.

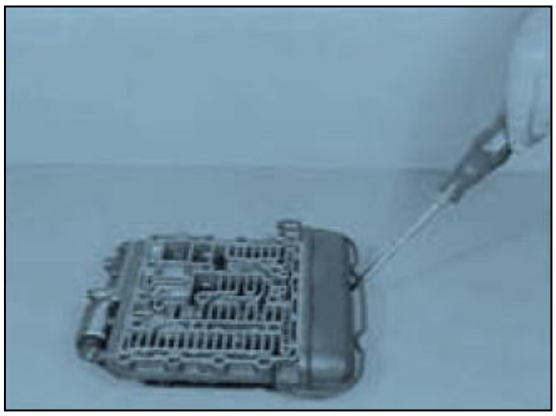


Figure 100

Pull off the cable shoes, loosen socket head screws and remove cable harness.

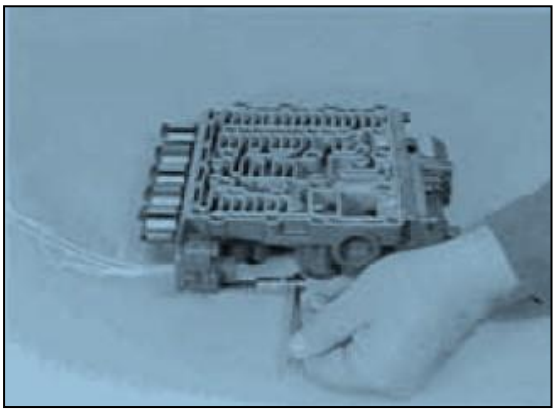


Figure 101

Loosen socket head screws and demount solenoid valves.

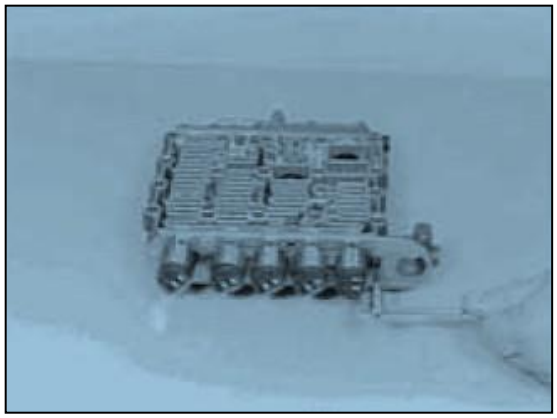


Figure 102

Remove components, see Figure on the right!

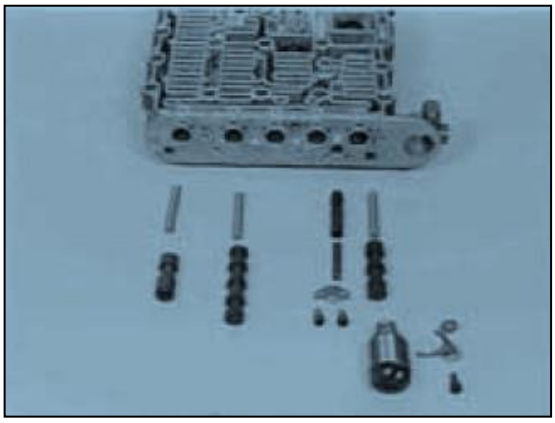


Figure 103

Remove and dismantle WK-Valve :

Loosen socket head screws and disassemble solenoid valve.

Figure 104

Separate WK-Shift-control housing from the valve body and dismantle it, see Figure on the right !

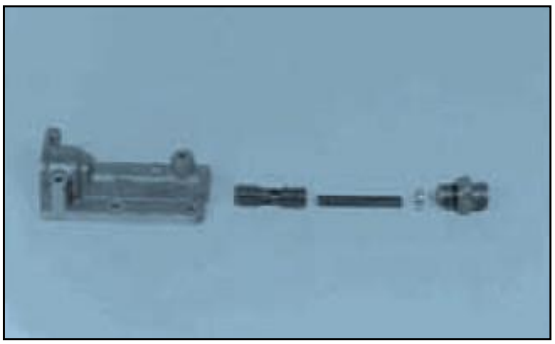


Figure 105

Loosen two socket head screws and fix the shift-control housing provisionally, using a Special Tool (S).

Now, loosen the remaining socket head screws and separate cover (is spring-loaded) from the valve body by uniform loosening of the nuts (S).

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

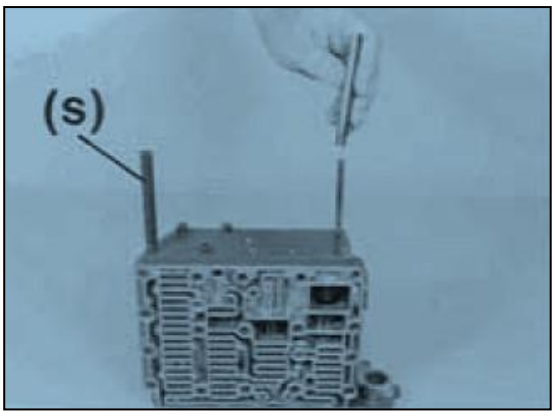


Figure 106

Remove components, see Figure on the right !

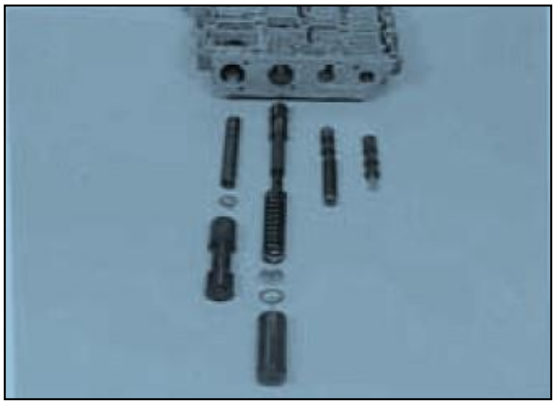


Figure 107

Remove stop plate and demount spring as well as spool.

NOTE :

Installation position of the stop plate, see Arrow!

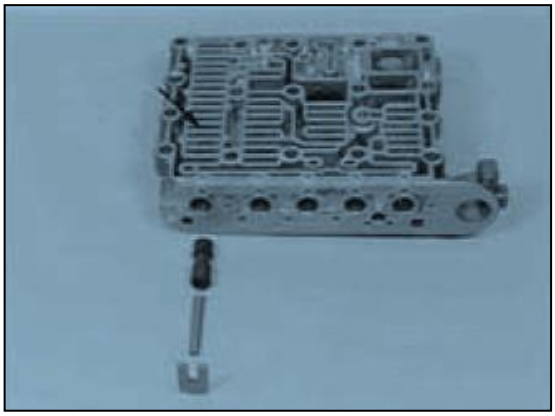


Figure 108

Remove diaphragm and check valves.

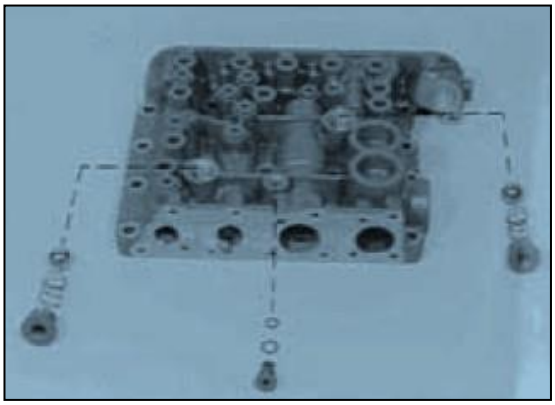


Figure 109

1.3.1.2 REASSEMBLY

See also Illustrated Tables, Page 55and 56 !

NOTE :

Check all components for damage and renew if necessary !

Check free travel of the moving parts in the housing prior to the installation !

Spools can be exchanged individually !

Oil components prior to the reassembly !

Employ new O-Rings for all screw plugs (8 pieces) and install them.

Install check valves and diaphragm (optional).

NOTE :

Mount new O-Rings !

Fasten O-Ring 6 x 1.5 mm (Arrow) with grease on the end face of the diaphragm - makes the reassembly easier !

Use only oil soluble grease for the reassembly !

∆ t1 is determined by the diaphragm

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 … 14)!

Torque limit :

Screw plug M10x 1	20 Nm
Screw plug M8x1.5	35 Nm
Diaphragm	20 Nm

Close the bores by means of balls (10 pieces, Ø 4,50 mm).

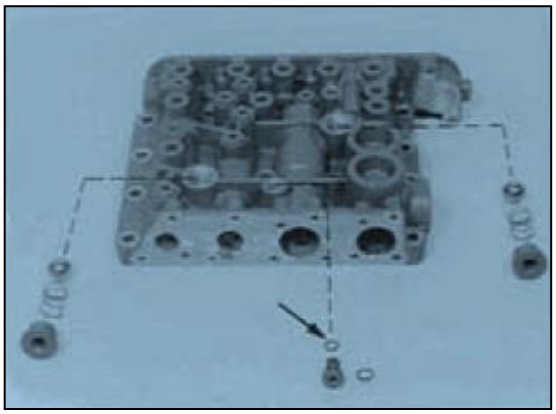


Figure 110

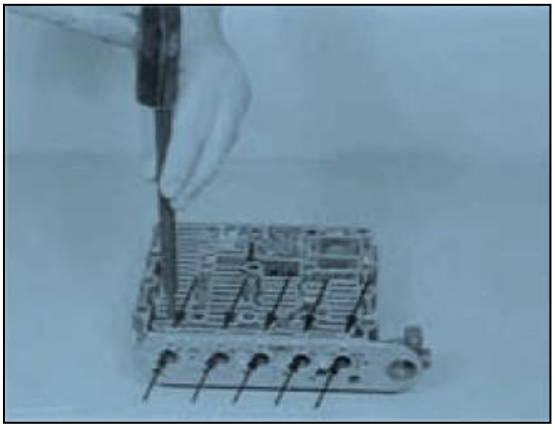


Figure 111

Control pressure valve :

Install components.

1 = Spring (L_0 = 96,20 mm)

2 = Disk(s) (optional)

3 = Spool

NOTE :

ps is determined by the disk

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

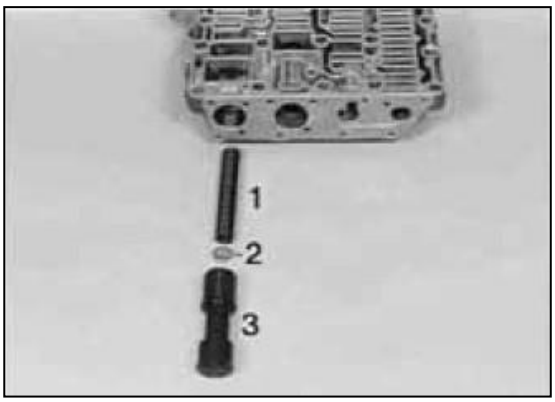


Figure 112

Pressure control valve :

Install components.

1 = Control spool

2 = Spring (L_0 = 124,10 mm)

3 = Spring (L_0= 77,10 mm)

4 = Disk

5 = Disk(s) (optional)

6 = Displacement spool

NOTE ;

Install disk with the countersinking facing the compressison spring !

P1 is determined by the disk 5

(pay attention to Notes Pages 12 ... 14) !

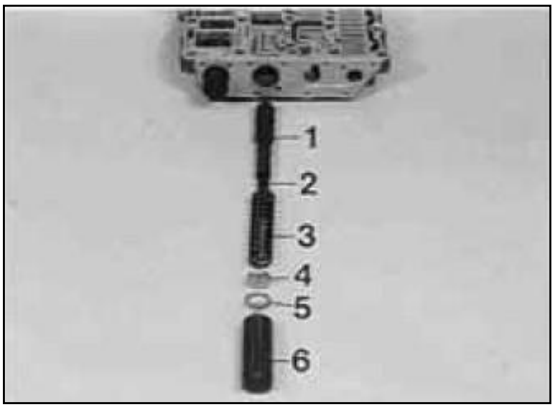


Figure 113

Reversing valve ;

Install components.

1 = Reversing spool

2 = Spring (L_0= 5 6 , 3 0 mm)

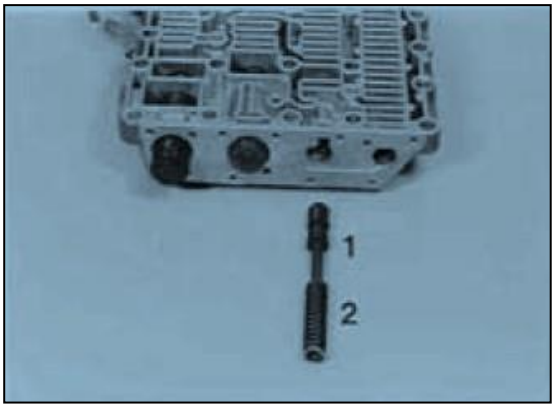


Figure 114

Control spool KV :

Install components.

1 = Spool (total length = 55,50 mm)

2 = Spring (L_0 = 51,30 mm)

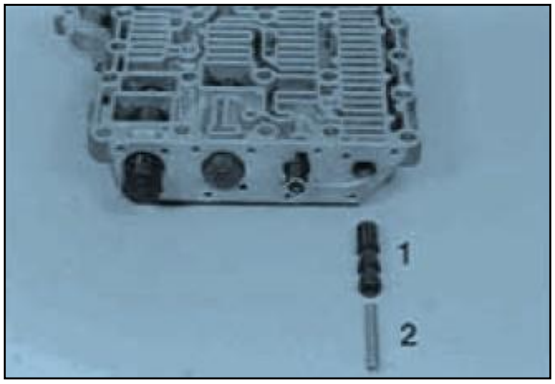


Figure 115

Install two adjusting screws (S) and assemble fat gasket (Arrow).

Now, pull cover against shoulder, using nuts (S) and fix it provisionally by means of socket head screws (4 pieces, see Figure 118).

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

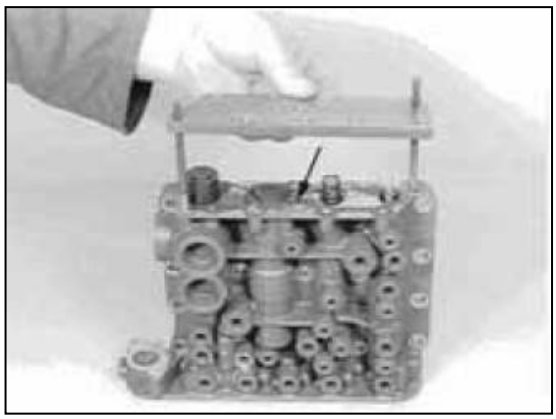


Figure 116

WK-Valve :
Install components.
1 = Shift-control housing
2 = O-Ring
3 = Screw plug
4 = Spool
5 = Disks (optional)
6 = Spring (Lo = 53,40 mm)
7 = Detent block (spring guide)
8 = O-Ring
9 = Connecting piece

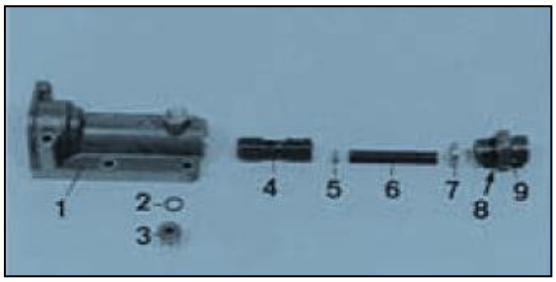


Figure 117

NOTE :
Install detent block 7 with the countersinking facing the spring !
p2 is determined by the disk 5
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14 !

Install two adjusting screws and assemble flat gasket (Arrow).

Fasten shift-control housing and cover by means of socket head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9,5 Nm

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

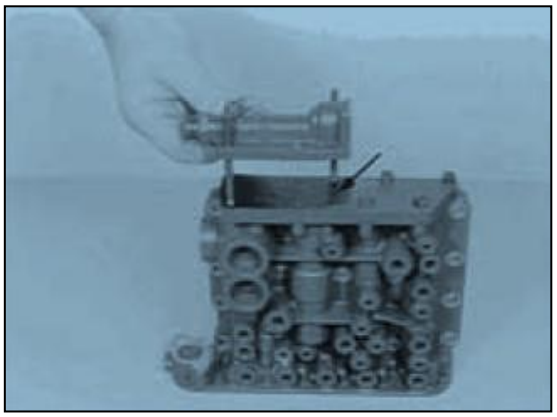


Figure 118

Mount new O-Rings (Arrows) and fasten solenoid valve by means of socket head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

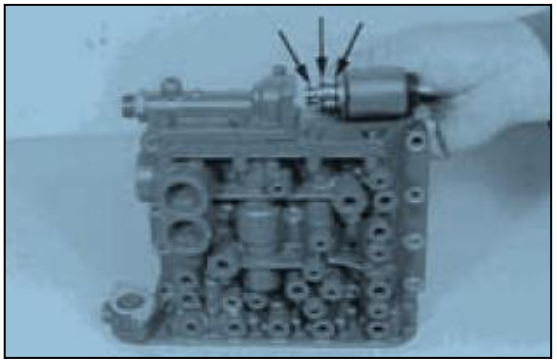


Figure 119

Introduce control spool (K4/KR) and compression spring (Lo = 51.30 mm), and fix them by means of stop plate.

NOTE :

Position of the stop plate, see Arrow !

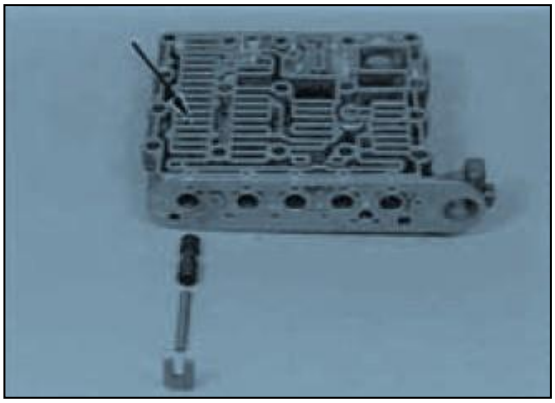


Figure 120

Install components (1 ... 10) :

1 = Spring (L_o = 51.30 mm)

2 = Control spool K4/KR

3 = Spring (L_o = 51.30 mm)

4 = Control spool K 1 / K 2 / K 3

5 = Spool

6 = Spring (L_o = 37.10 mm)

7 = Retaining plate

8 = Socket bead screws

9 = Spring (L_o = 51.30 mm)

10 = Pilot spool (total length = 52.50 mm)

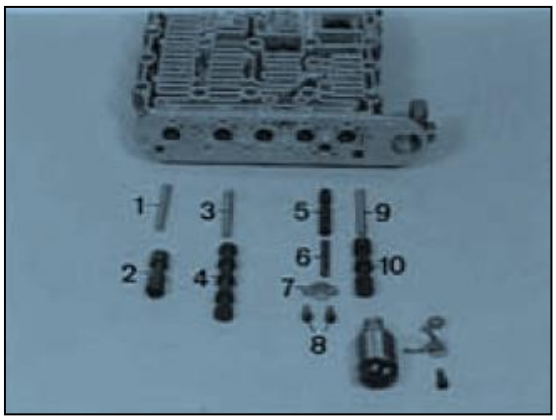


Figure 121

Insert solenoid valves and fix them by means of disks, retaining plates and socket head screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5.5 Nm

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the disks (mount between valve body and retaining plate), see Arrow !

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the solenoid valves, see also Figure 124 !

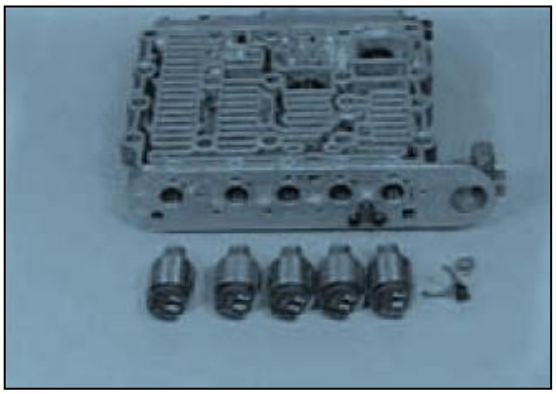


Figure 122

Install cable harness.

Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9.5 Nm

NOTE ;

Mount new gaskets !

Pay attention to the location of the plug nose see Arrow !

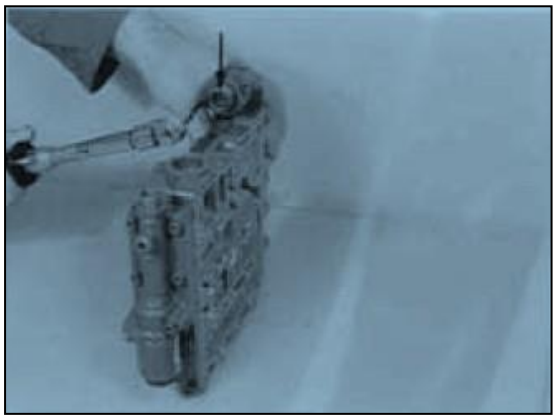


Figure 123

Connect solenoid valves according to the Figure on the right.

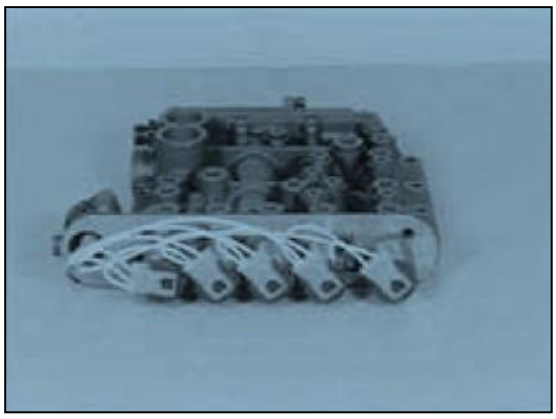


Figure 124

Mount new O-Ring (Arrow) and fix cover by means of clamping collar.

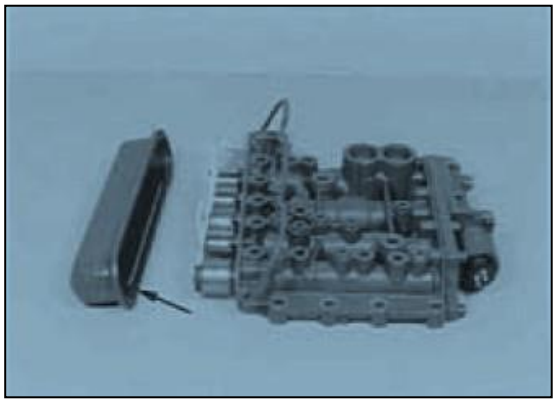


Figure 125

Pre-assemble and attach channel plate (Figure 126 ... 129) ;
Mount connecting pipe (1) and screw plug (2).

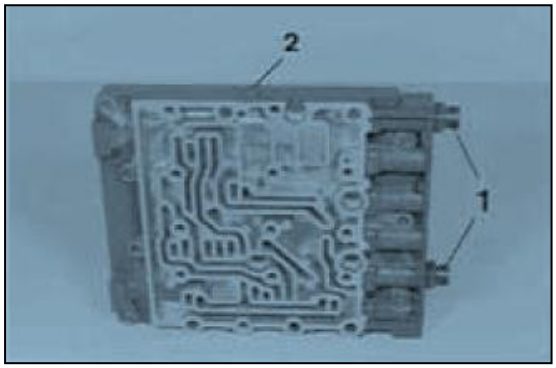


Figure 126

Install two adjusting screws and assemble housing gasket.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the different gaskets, see Figure 127 and 128 !

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

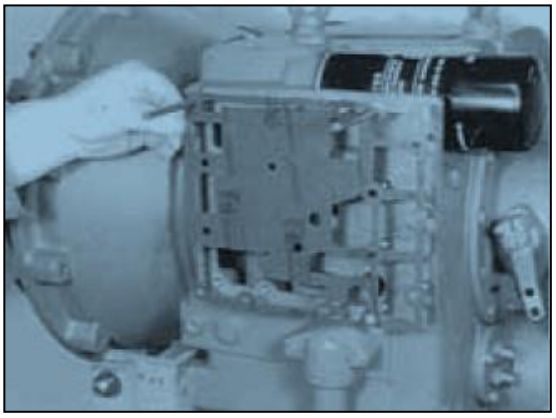


Figure 127

Install intermediate plate and 2nd gasket.

Figure 128

Assemble channel plate and fasten by means of socket head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit 20 Nm

NOTE :

Use only socket head screws, M8 x 35, DIN 6912 (with low head) !

Position of screws, see Arrows !

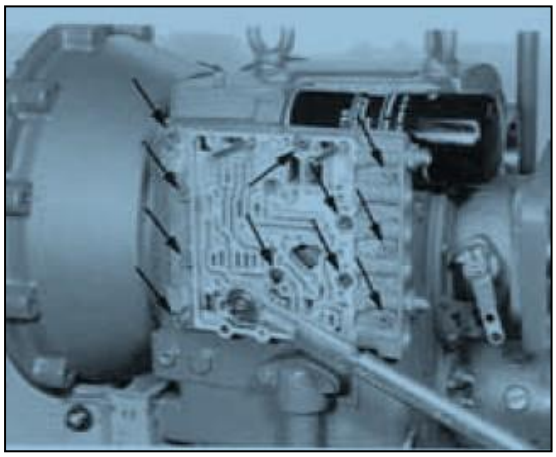


Figure 129

Attach gearbox control (Figure 130 ... 132) :

Assemble 1st gasket.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the different gaskets, see Figure 130 and 131 !

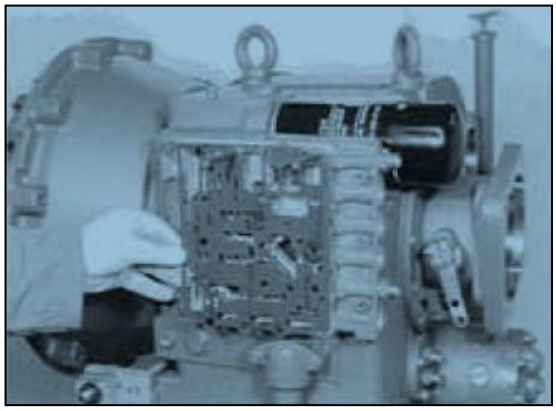


Figure 130

Assemble intermediate plate and 2nd gasket.

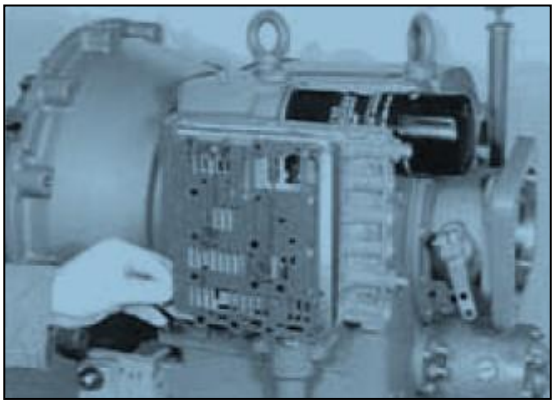


Figure 131

Assemble gearbox control and fasten it by means of socket head screws (8 pieces M8 x 65, 11 pieces M8 x 35 and I piece M8 x 63mm).

Torque limit 20 Nm

NOTE :

Mount flat washers !

Position of the socket head screw M8 x 63 mm, see Arrow !

Install delivery lines, see Perspective illustration in the corresponding Spare Parts List !

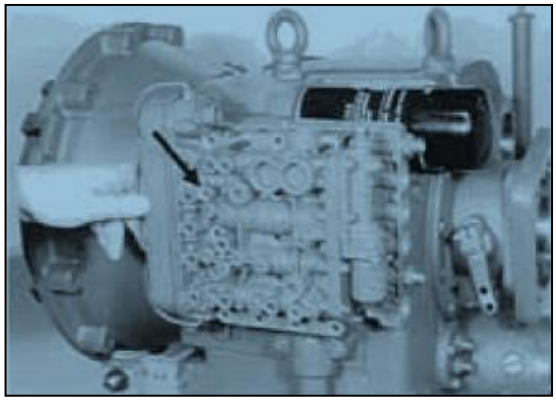
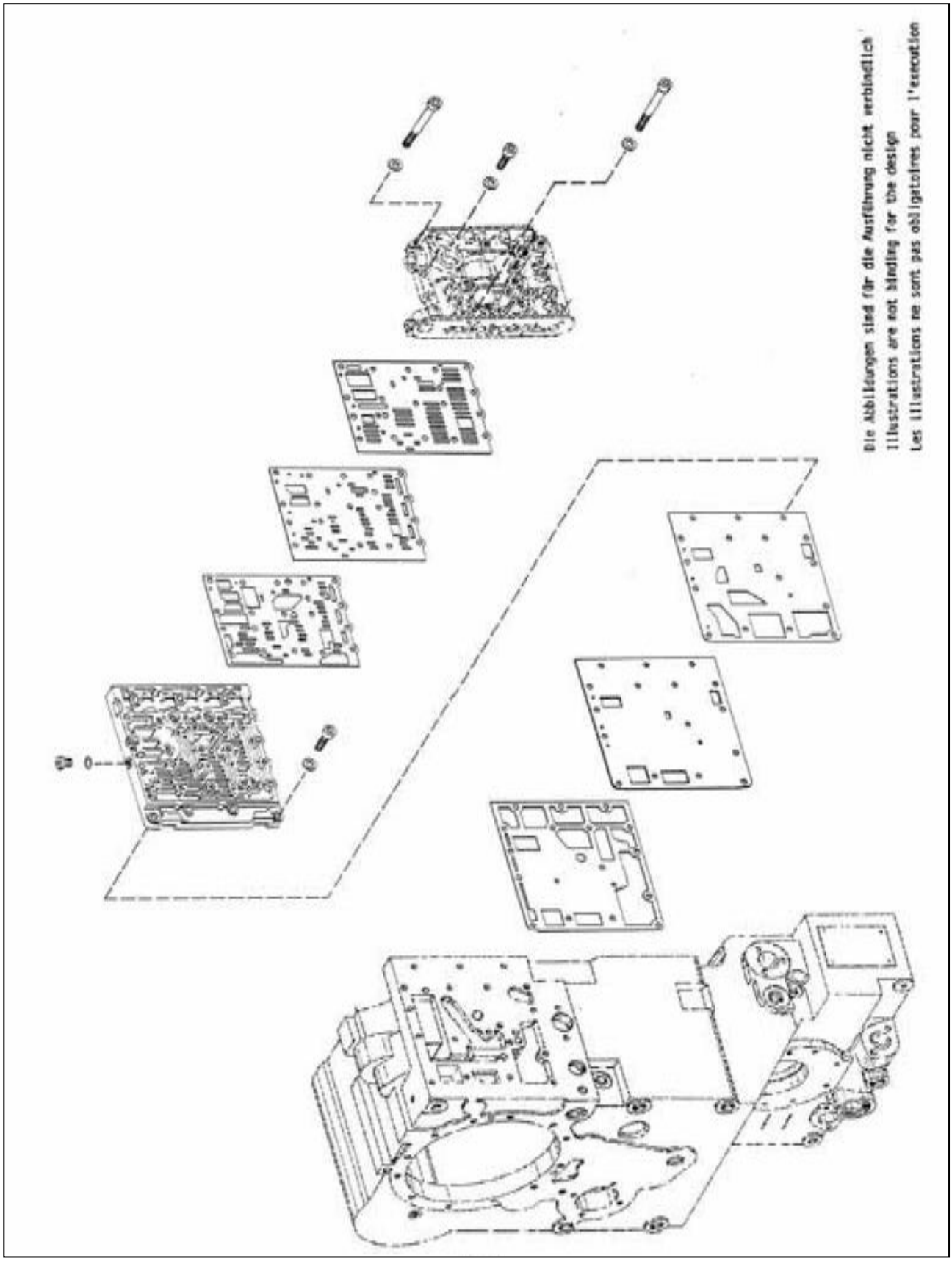
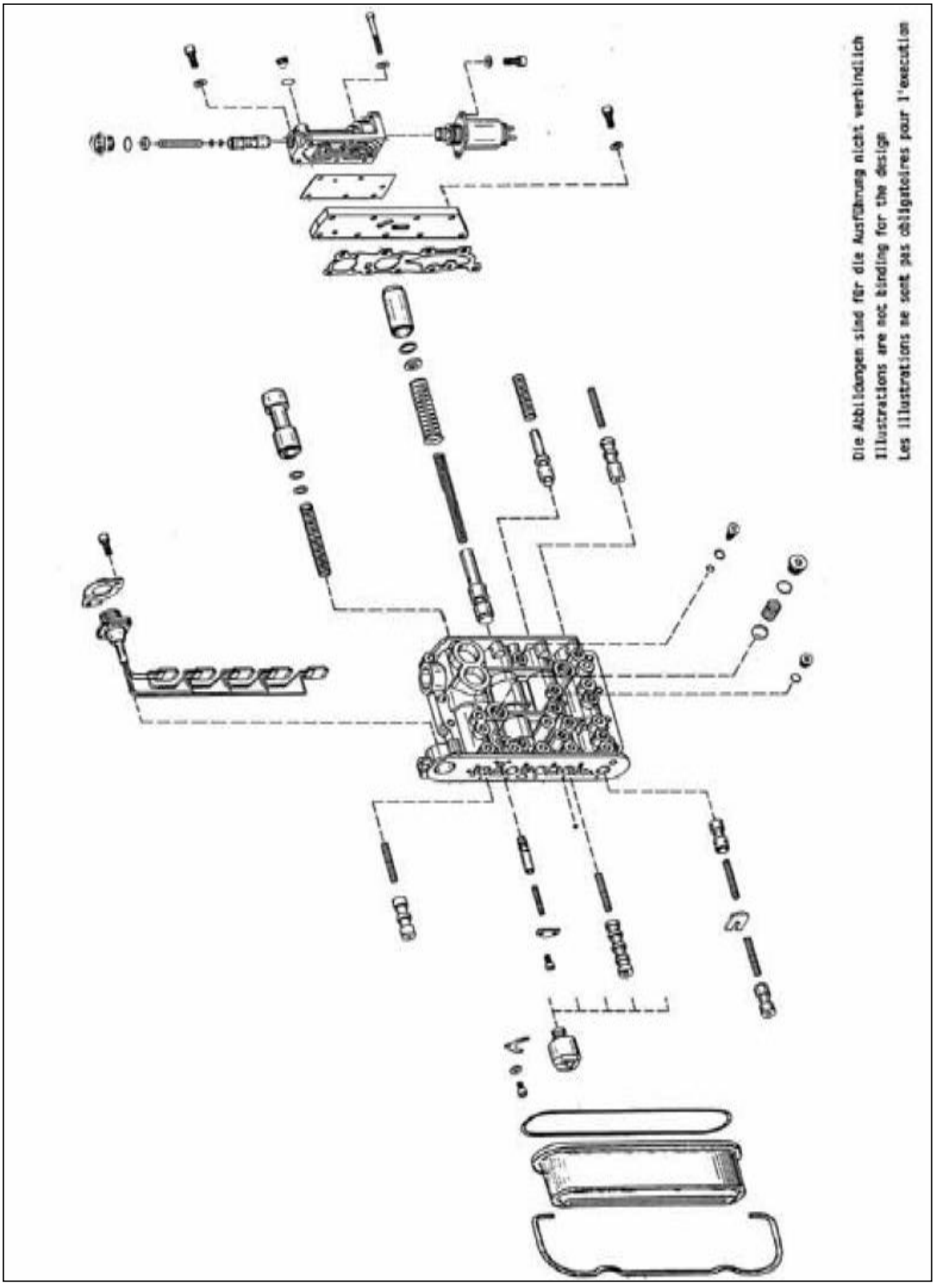


Figure 132


Die Abbildungen sind für die Ausführung nicht verbindlich
Illustrations are not binding for the design
Les illustrations ne sont pas obligatoires pour l'execution


Die Abbildungen sind für die Ausführung nicht verbindlich
Illustrations are not binding for the design
Les illustrations ne sont pas obligatoires pour l'execution

1.3.2 Version 11 : With 2-stage pressure control valve

1.3.2.1 DISASSEMBLY

Relax spring clip and remove cover.

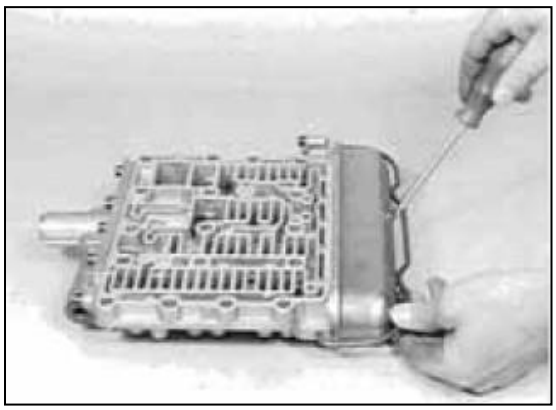


Figure 135

Pull off cable shoes, loosen the socket head screws and demount solenoid valves.

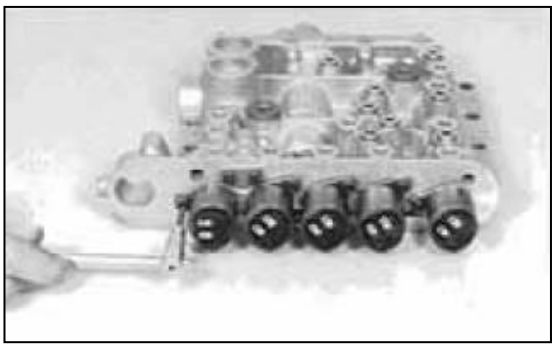


Figure 136

Remove components, see Figure on the right.

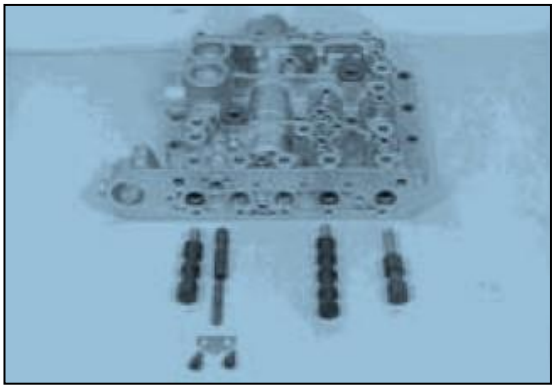


Figure 137

Loosen two socket head screws and fix shiftcontrol housing provisionally, using a Special Tool (S).
Now, loosen the remaining socket head screws and separate shift-control housing (is spring loaded) from the valve body by uniform loosening of the nuts (S).

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

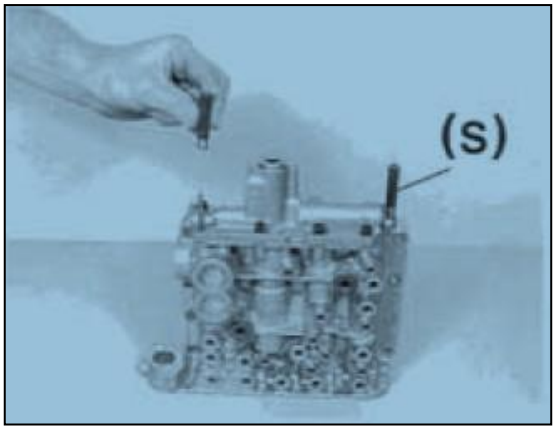


Figure 138

Remove components.

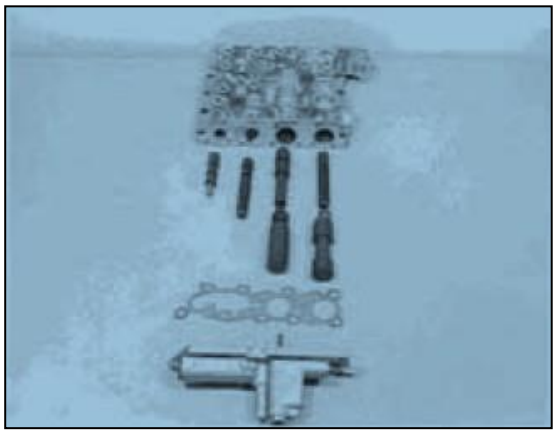


Figure 139

Remove stop plate and demount spool as well as spring.

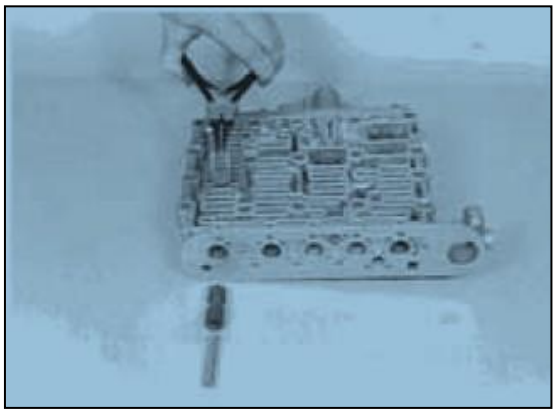


Figure 140

Dismantle pressure control valve, see Figure on the right.

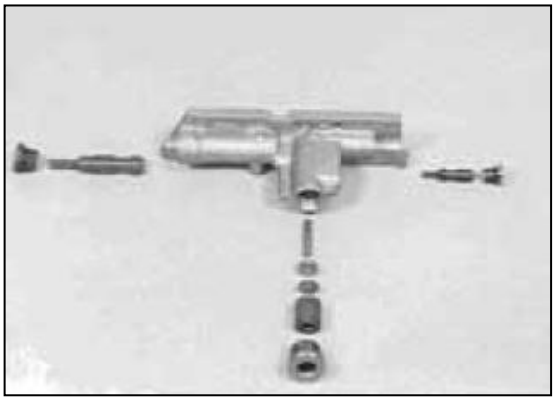


Figure 141

Remove diphragm and check valves.

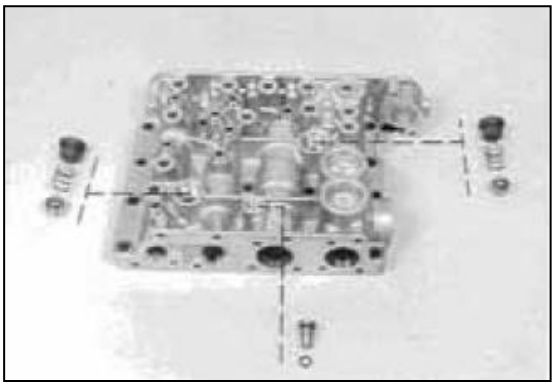


Figure 142

1.3.2.2 REASSEMBLY

See also Illustrated Tables, Page 63 !

NOTE :

Check all components for damage and renew if necessary !

Check free travel of the moving parts in the housing prior to the installation !

Spools can be exchanged individually !

Oil components prior to the reassembly !

Employ new O-Rings for all screw plugs and install them.

Install check valves and diaphragm (optional).

NOTE ;

Mount new O-Rings !

Fasten O-Ring 6x1.5 mm (Arrow) with grease on the end face of the diaphragm - makes the reassembly easier !

∆t 1 is determined by the diaphragm

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12

Torque limit :

Screw plugs Ml0x1	20 Nm
Screw plugs Ml8x1.5	35 Nm
Diaphragm	20 Nm

Close the bores by means of ball (10 pieces, Ø 4,50 mm).

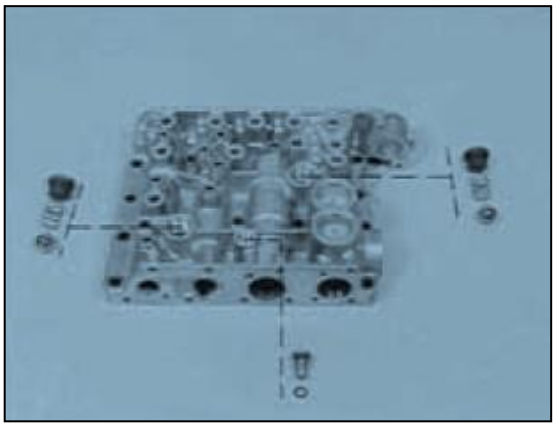


Figure 143

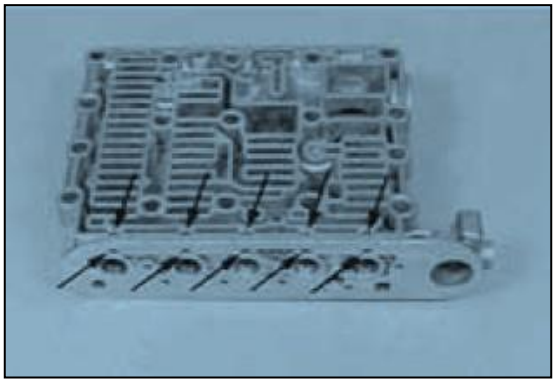


Figure 144

Control pressure valve :

Install components.

1 = Spring (Lo = 96,20 mm)

2 = Disk(s) (optional)

3 = Spool .

ps is deter mired by the disk 2

(pay attention to Notes Page 12… 14) !

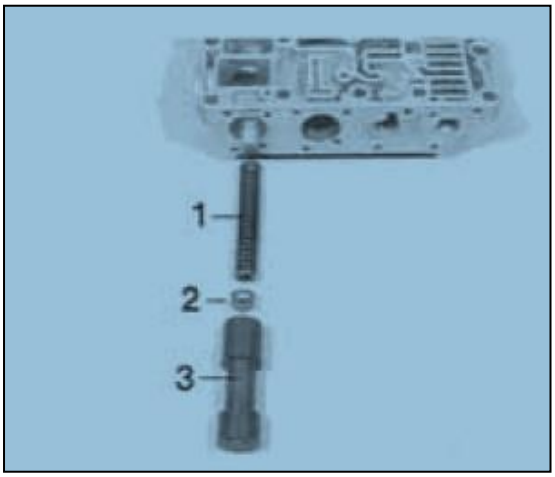


Figure 145

Install components :

1 = Control spool

2 = Spring (Lo =124.10 mm)

3 = Spring (Lo = 77.10 mm)

4 = Displacement spool

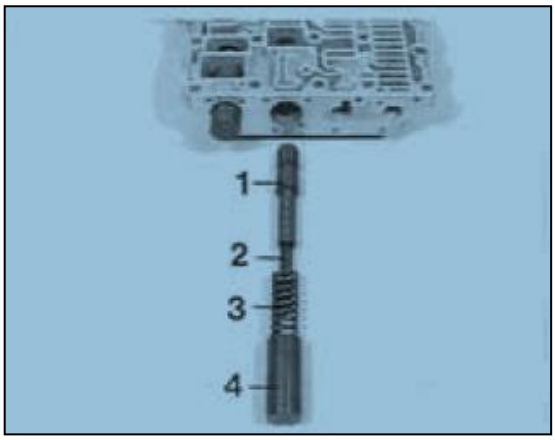


Figure 146

Install components :

1 = Reversing spool

2 = Disk(s) (optional)

3 = Spring (Lo = 56,30 mm)

NOTE ;

p2 is determined by the disk 2

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

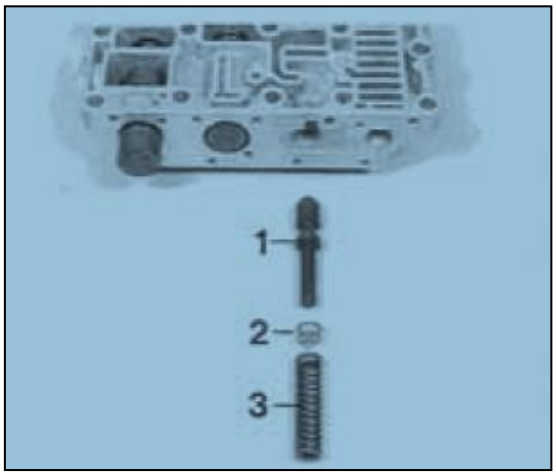


Figure 147

Install components :

1 = Control spool (total length = 55.50 mm)

2 = Spring (Lo = 51.30 mm)

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the spool, see Figure !

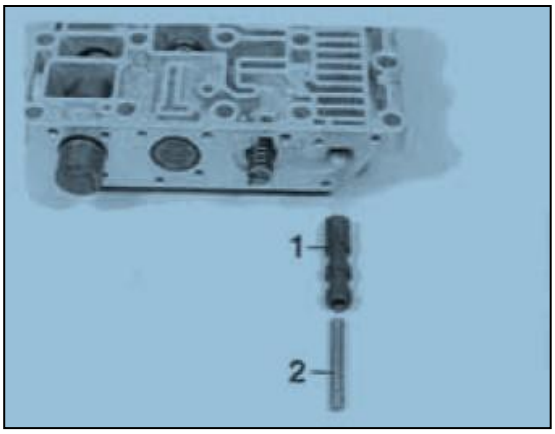


Figure 148

Pre-assemble and attach 2-stage pressure control valve (Figure 149 ~ 157) ;

Close the bores by means of balls (4 pieces, Ø 4.50 mm).

Figure 149

Install components ;
1 = Shift-control housing
2 = Spool
3 = Spring (L_0= 70,90 mm)
4 = Screw plug
5 = Cylindrical roller (6 x 32 mm)
6 = Ring(s) (optional)
7 = Spool
8 = Screw plug
9 = Spring (L_0 = 70,90 mm)
10 = Spool
11 = Screw plug

NOTE ;
p3 is determined by the ring 6
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !
Pay attention to the installation position of the spool (7), bore is facing the screw plug !
Employ new O-Rings for screw plugs !

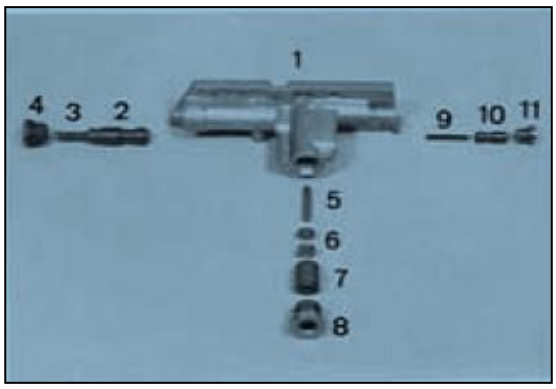


Figure 150

Install two adjusting screws (S) and assemble flat gasket.
Pull pre-assembled pressure control valve by means of nuts (S) against shoulder and fasten it subsequently by means of socket head screws (mount flat washers).
Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9.5 Nm
(S) Adjusting screw (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

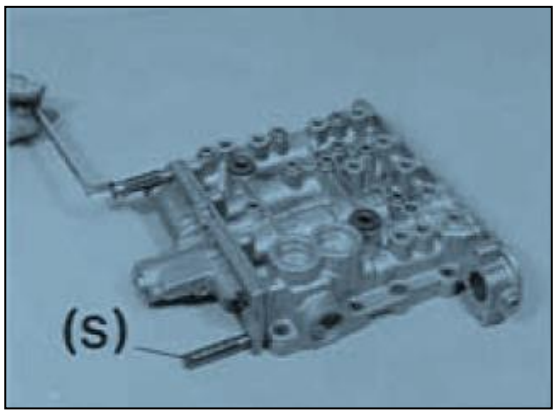


Figure 151

Introduce spool (2) and spring (1), preload and fix them by means of stop plate (3).
1 = Spring (L_0= 51,30 mm)
2 = Control spool (total length = 3 9 .5 0 mm)
3 = Stop plate

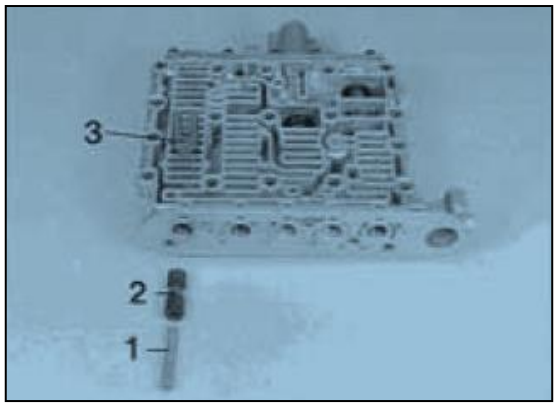


Figure 152

Install components ;
1 = Spring (Lo =51.30 mm)
2 = Control spool (total length 39.50 mm)
3 = Spring (Lo =51.30 mm)
4 = Control spool
5 = Spool (reducing valve)
6 = Spring (Lo = 37,10 mm)
7 = Retaining plate
8 = Socket head screws (2 pieces)
9 = Spring (Lo = 51,30 mm)
10 = Pilot spool (total length = 52,50 mm)

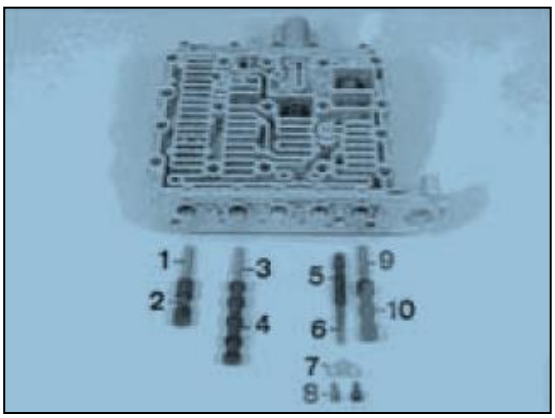


Figure 153

Insert the solenoid valves and fix them by means of disks, retaining plates and socket head screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the disk (mount between valve body and retaining plate), see Arrow !

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the solenoid valves, see Figure 156 !

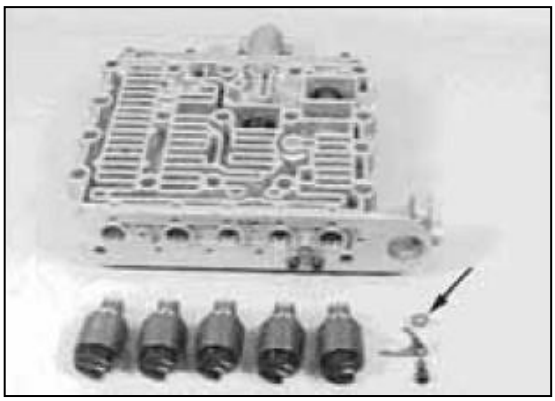


Figure 154

Install cable harness.

NOTE ;

Mount new gaskets !

Pay attention to the location of the plug nose, see Arrow !

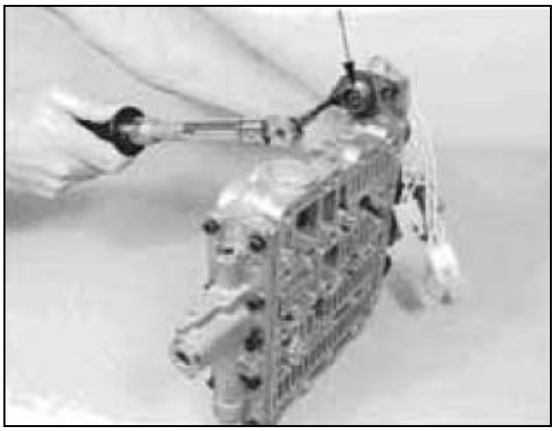


Figure 155

Connect the solenoid valves according to the Illustration on the right.

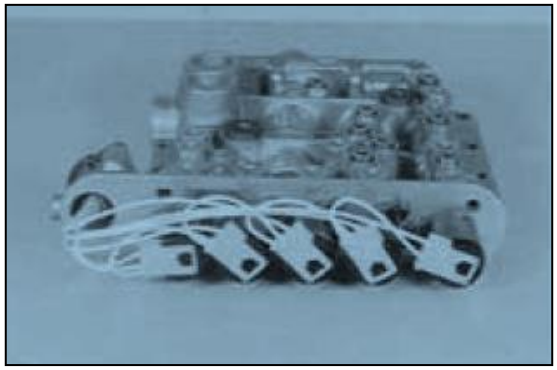


Figure 156

Mount new O-Ring, see Arrow, and fix the cover by means of clamping collar.

NOTE ;

The Reassembly of the channel plate as well as the attachment of the gearbox control arc treated on Page 52 ... 54 !

Pay attention to the Perspective Illustrations of the corresponding Spare Parts List !

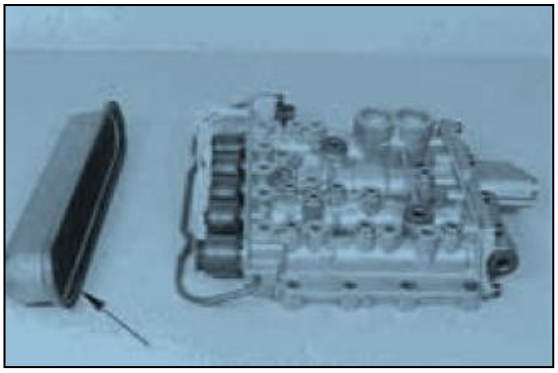
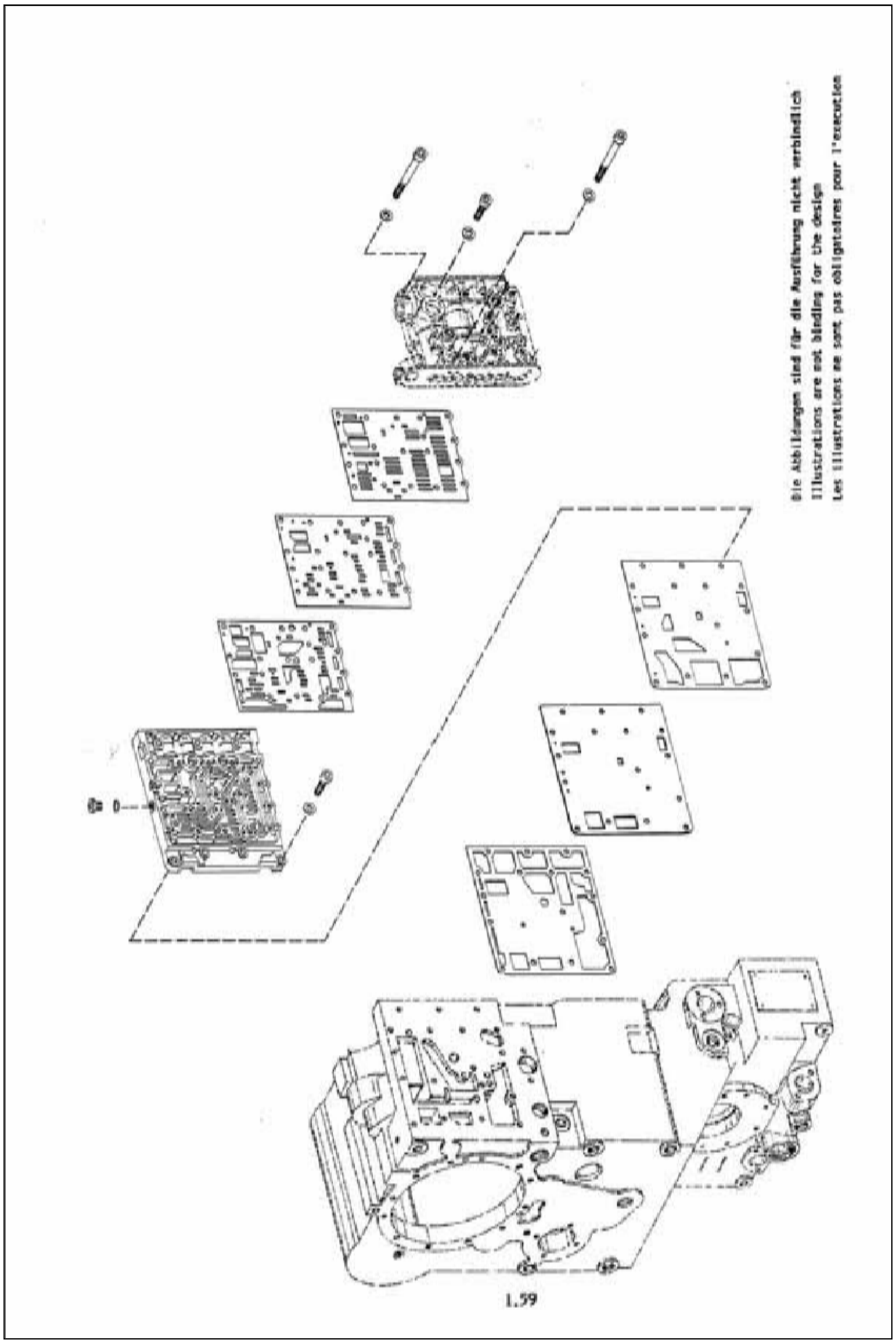


Figure 157


Die Abbildungen sind für die Ausführung nicht verbindlich
Illustrations are not binding for the design
Les illustrations ne sont pas obligatoires pour l'execution
1.59

1.3.3 Version Ⅲ : With WK-Valve and variable 2-stage pressure control valve.

1.3.3.1 DISASSEMBLY

Relax spring dip and remove cover.

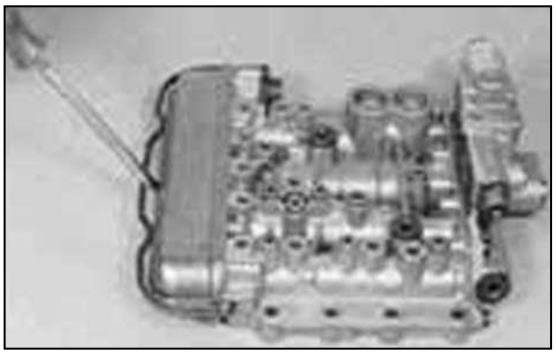


Figure 160

Pull off the cable shoes and remove cable harness.

Figure 161

Loosen socket head screws and remove solenoid valves

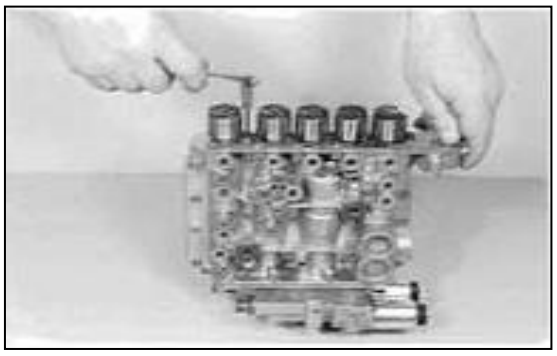


Figure 162

Remove components, see Figure on the right.

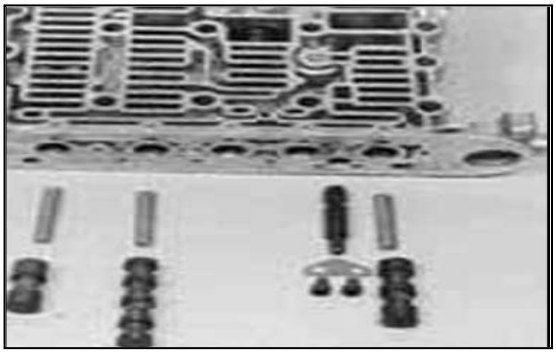


Figure 163

Loosen socket head screws and remove solenoid valve (2-stage pressure control valve).

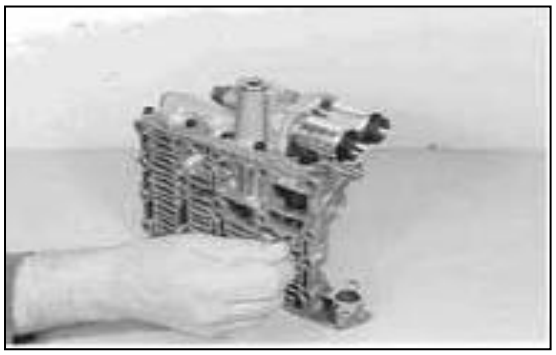


Figure 164

Loosen two socket head screws and fix shift control housing provisionally, using a Special Tool (S).
Now, loosen the remaining socket head screws and separate shift-control housing (is spring-loaded) from the valve body by uniform loosening of the nuts (S).

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) with nut 5870 204 049

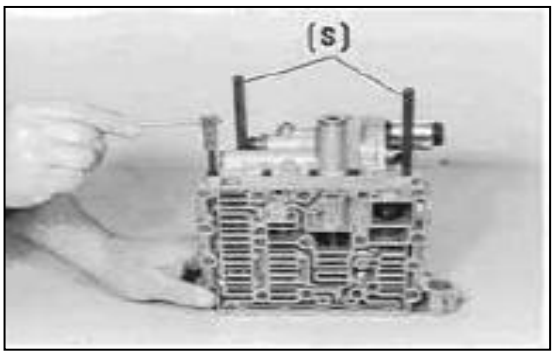


Figure 165

Remove components of the WK-Valve as well as of the 2-stage pressure control valve.

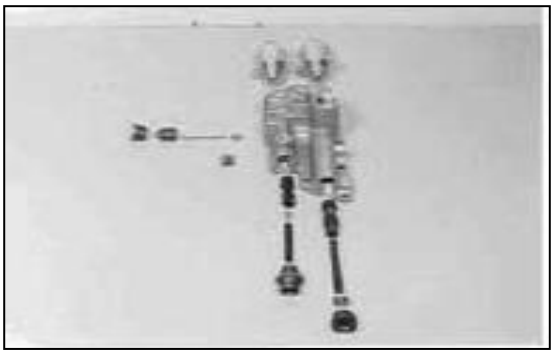


Figure 166

Remove components, see Figure on the right!

Figure 167

Remove stop plate (Arrow) and spool as well as spring.

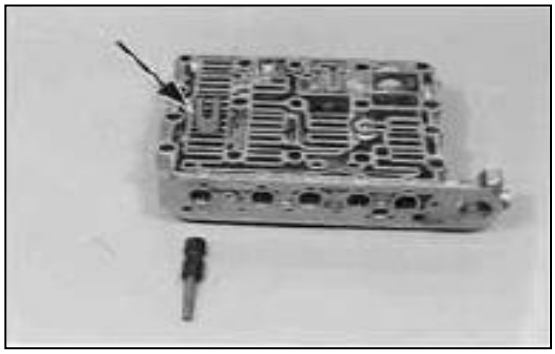


Figure 168

Remove diaphragm and check valves.

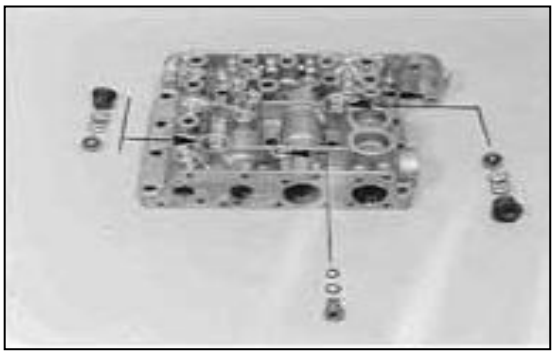


Figure 169

1.3.3.2 REASSEMBLY

See also illustrated Table, Page 73 and 74 !

NOTE :

Check all components for damage and renew if necessary !

Check free travel of the moving parts in the housing prior to the installation !

Spools can be exchanged individually !

Oil components prior to the reassembly !

Ref. Figure 170 : 1 = Check valve (2x)

2 = Diaphragm

3 = Screw plugs

Install components according to the Illustration on the right.

NOTE ;

Employ new O-Rings for all screw plugs.

Figure 171 shows the positions of the O-Rings on the diaphragm 2.

(Fasten O-Ring 6 x 1,5 mm/Arrow 2 with grease) !

∆ t l is determined by the diaphragm 2

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

Torque limit :

Screw plug M10x 1	20 Nm
Screw plug Ml8x1,5	35 Nm
Diaphragm	20 Nm

Close the bores by means of balls (10 pieces Ø 4,50 mm).

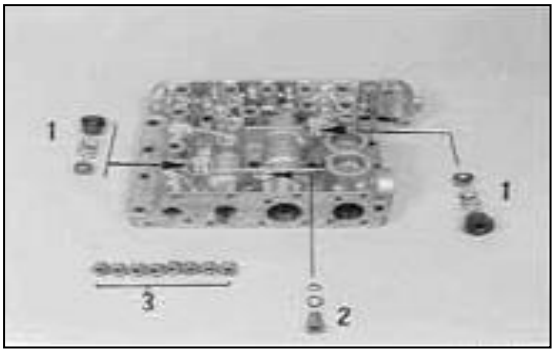


Figure 170

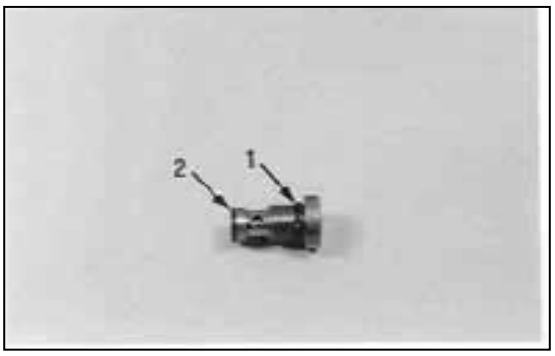


Figure 171

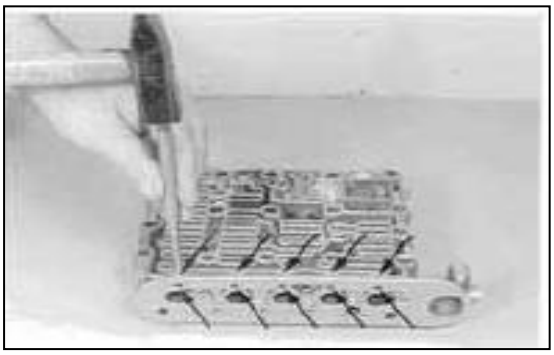


Figure 172

Control pressure valve

Install components

1 = Spring (Lo = 96,20 mm)

2 = Disk(s) (optional)

3 = Spool

NOTE :

ps is determined by the disk 2

(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

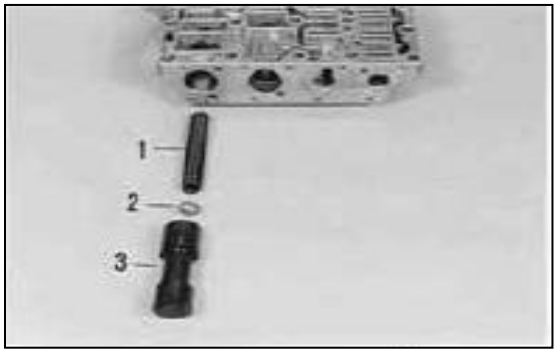


Figure 173

Pressure control valve

Install components

1 = Control spool

2 = Spring (Lo= 124,10 mm)

3 = Spring (Lo= 77,10 mm)

4 = Displacement spool

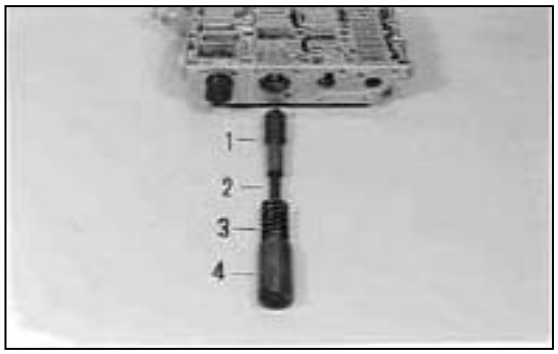


Figure 174

Reversing valve

Install components

1 = Spool

2 = Spring (Lo = 56,30 mm)

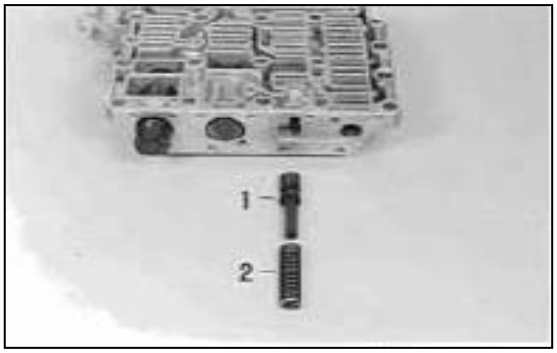


Figure 175

Control spool KV

Install components

1 = Spool (total length = 55,50 mm)

2 = Spring (Lo = 51,30 mm)

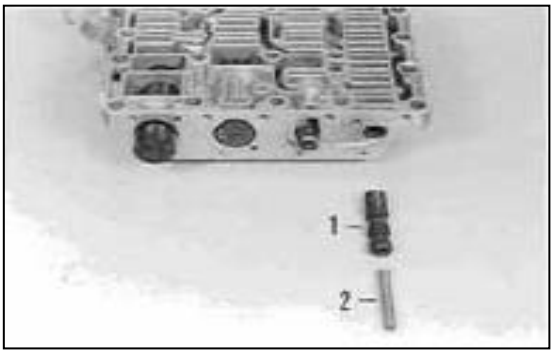


Figure 176

Pre-assemble shift-control housing (WK and pressure control valve) (Figure 177 ... 184);

Close the bores according to Figures 177 ... 179 by means of balls, sec Arrows !

6 pieces = Ball diameter 4,50 mm
2 pieces = Ball diameter 7,50 mm
1 piece = Ball diameter 6,00 mm

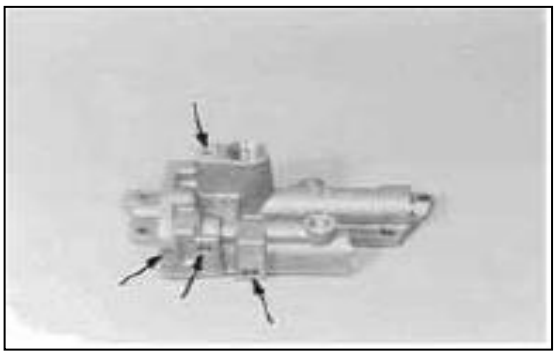


Figure 177

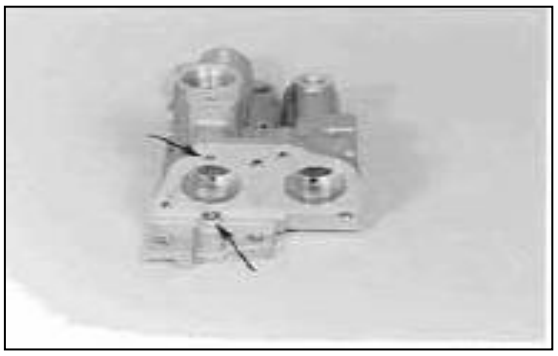


Figure 178

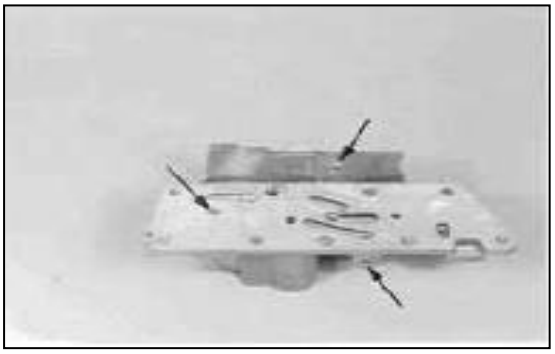


Figure 179

Screw diaphragm (wet thread with Loctite Type-No. 270) into the bore (Arrow) and fix it additionally by means of center punch.
Now, clean the diaphragm from Loctite residues by means of compressed air.

NOTE :

t2 is determined by the diaphragm.
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

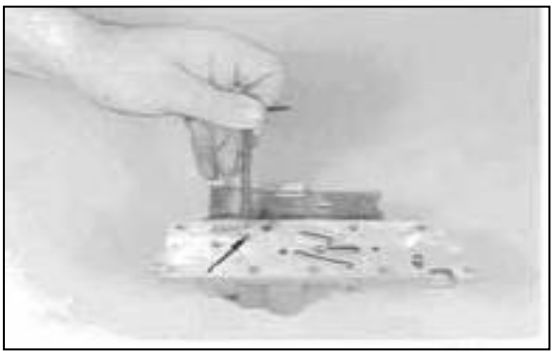


Figure 180

WK-Valve

Install components

1 = Spool
2 = Disk(s) (optional)
3 = Spring (L o = 53,40 mm)
4 = Detent block
5 = O-Ring
6 = Connecting piece

NOTE ;

Install detent Mock with the countersinking facing the spring !
p2 (WK) is determined by the disk 2
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

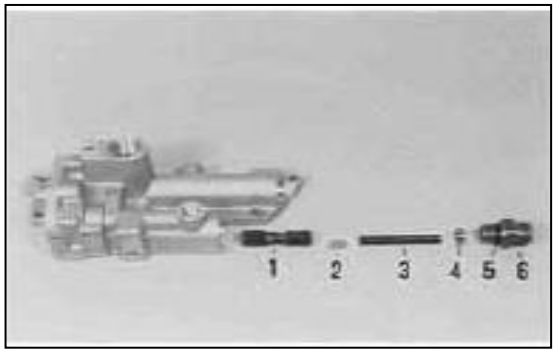


Figure 181

Install screw plug (Arrow).

NOTE :

Assemble new O-Ring !

Torque limit (M10x 1) 20 Nm

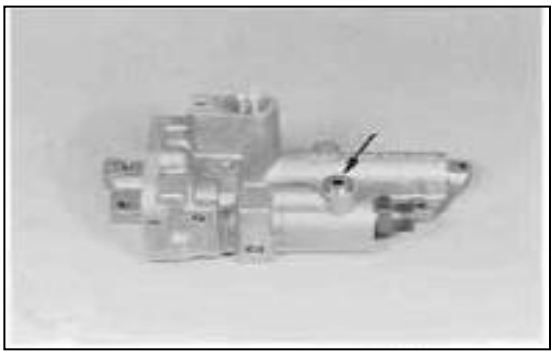


Figure 182

2-stage Pressure control valve (Figure 183 and 184)

Install components

1 = Spool
2 = Disk(s) (optional)
3 = Spring (Lo = 70,90 mm)
4 = Screw plug
5 = Needle roller
6 = Ring(s) (total thickness s=5,00mm/ empirical value)
7 = Spool
8 = Screw plug

NOTE:

Mount new O-Rings, see Arrows !
Δt3 is determined by the disk 2
p3 is determined by the ring 6
(pay attention to Notes, Page 12 ... 14) !

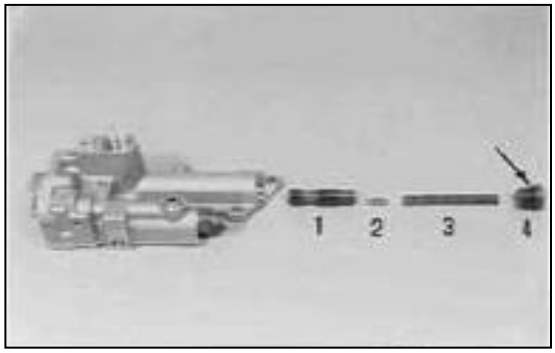


Figure 183

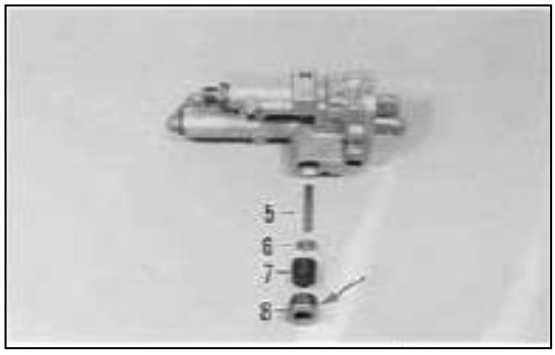


Figure 184

Install two adjusting screws (S) and assemble flat gasket (Arrow).

Pull shift-control housing against shoulder, using nuts (S).

Now, fasten shift-control housing by means of socket head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9,5 Nm

(S) Adjusting screws (M6) 5870 204 049
with nut

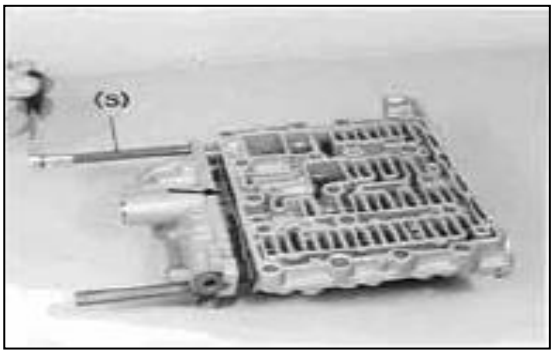


Figure 185

Fasten the two solenoid valves by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

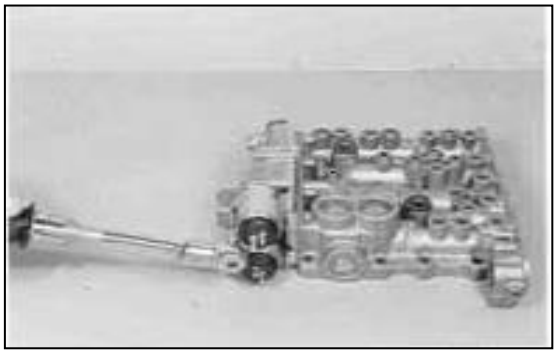


Figure 186

Assemble control spool (K4/KR) and compression spring (Lo = 51,30 mm) and fix them by means of stop plate.

NOTE ;

Position of stop plate, see Arrow !

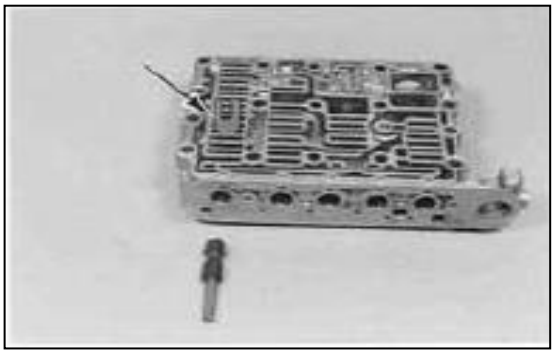


Figure 187

Install components :

1 = Spring (Lo = 51,30 mm)
2 = Control spool (K4/KR)
3 = Spring (Lo = 51,30 mm)
4 = Control spool (K1/K2/K3)
5 = Spool
6 = Spring (Lo = 3 7,1 0 mm)
7 = Retaining plate
8 = Socket head screws
9 = Spring (Lo = 51,30 mm)
10 = Pilot spool (total length = 52,50 mm)

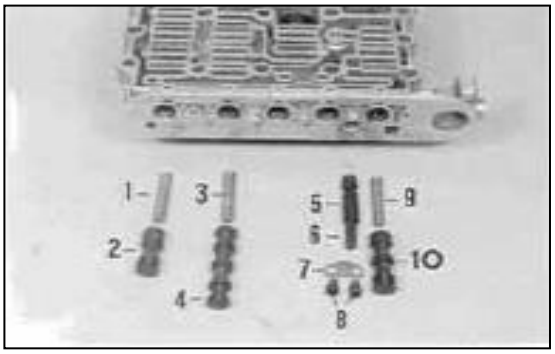


Figure 188

Insert solenoid valves and fix them by means of disks, retaining plates and socket head screws.

Torque limit (M 5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the disks (mount between valve body and retaining plate), see Arrow !

Pay attention to the installation position of the solenoid valves, see also Figure 191 !

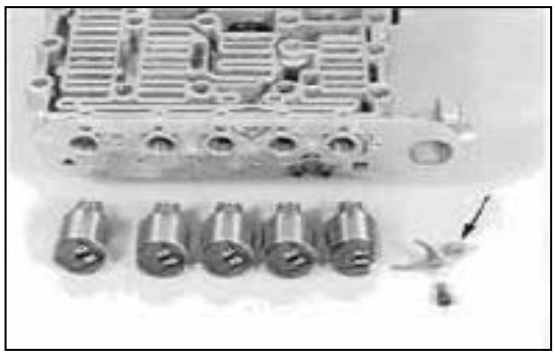


Figure 189

Install cable harness.

Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9,5 Nm

NOTE :

Mount new gaskets !

Pay attention to the location of the plug nose see Arrow !

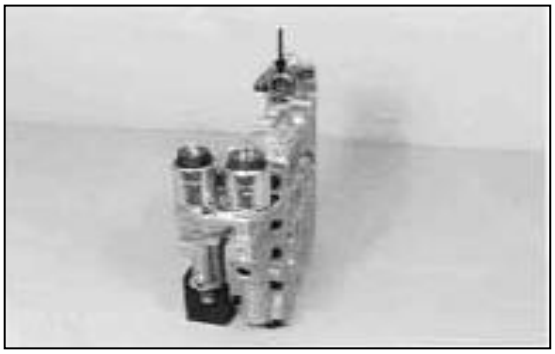


Figure 190

Connect solenoid valves according to the illustration on the right.

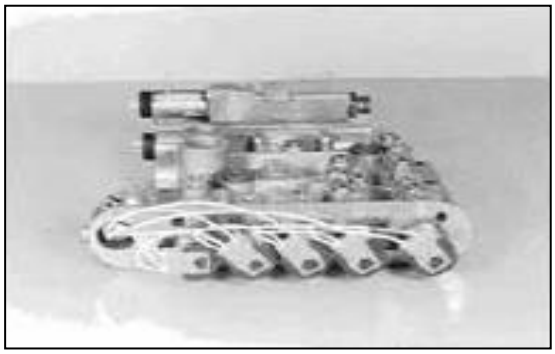


Figure 191

Mount new O-Ring (Arrow) and fix cover by means of clamping collar.

NOTE :

The reassembly of the channel plate as well as the attachment of the gearbox control, are treated on Page 52 ... 54 !

Pay attention to the Perspective Illustration of the corresponding Spare Parts List !

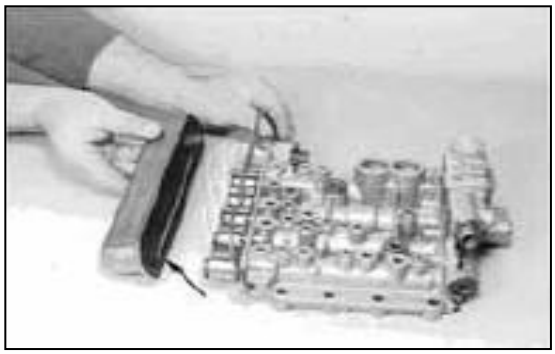
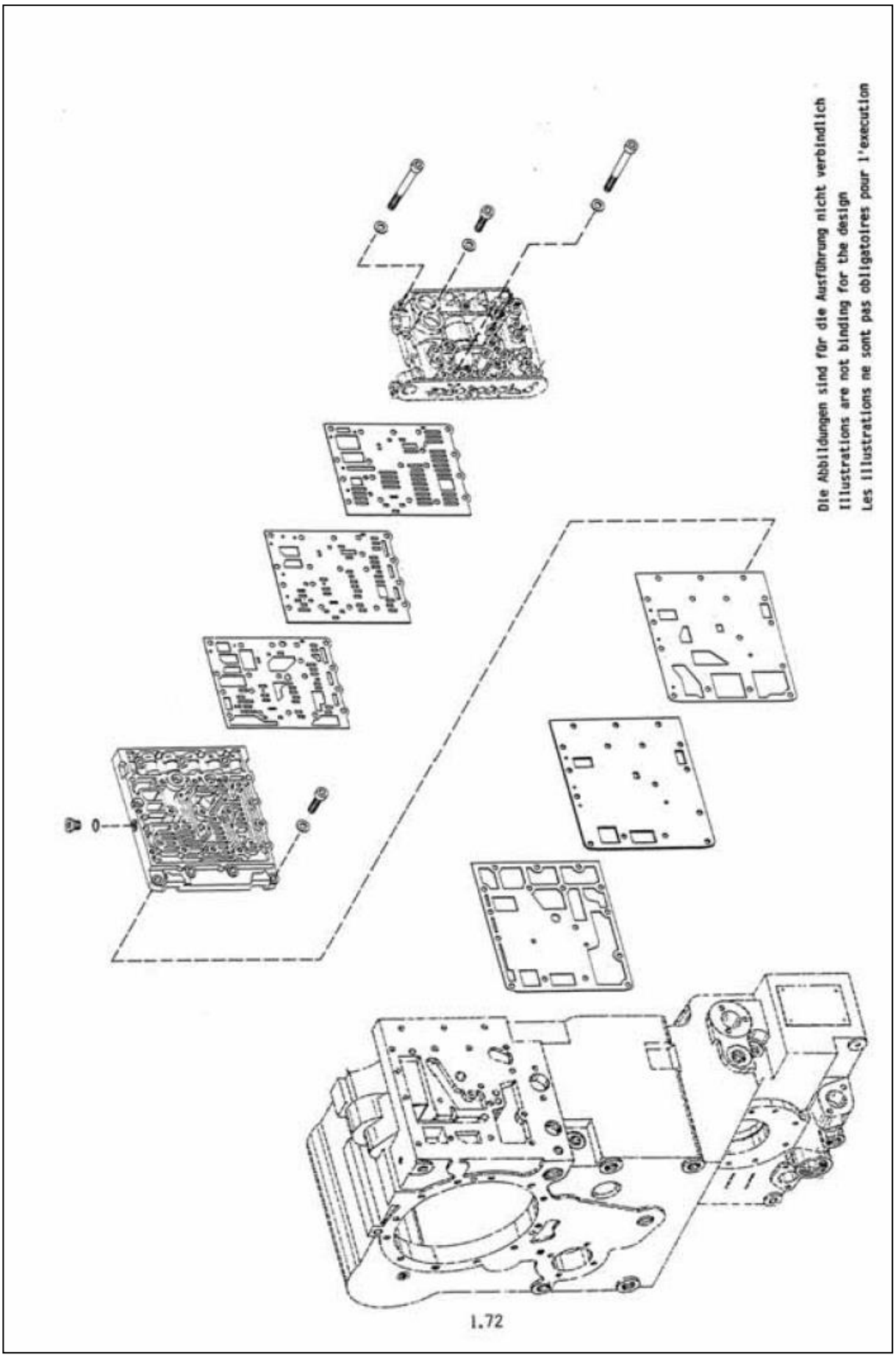
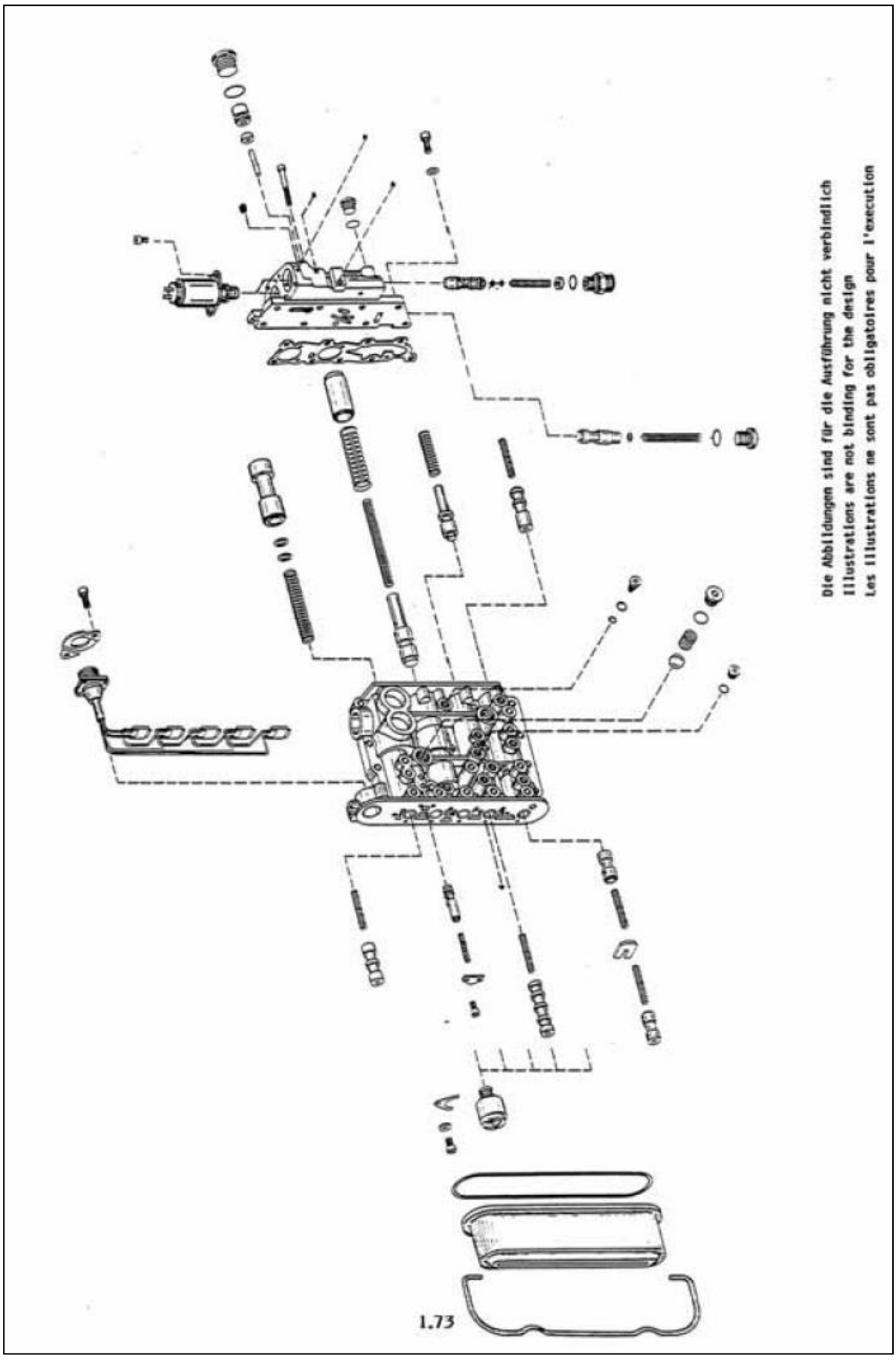


Figure 192


Die Abbildungen sind für die Ausführung nicht verbindlich
Illustrations are not binding for the design
Les illustrations ne sont pas obligatoires pour l'execution
1.72


Die Abbildungen sind für die Ausführung nicht verbindlich
Illustrations are not binding for the design
Les illustrations ne sont pas obligatoires pour l'execution
1.73

2. TORQUE CONVERTER

Version： With converter connecting clutch (WK)

2.1 DISASSEMBLY

Separate the complete converter from the transmission by means of lifting device.

(S) Assembly car compl. with tilting device 5870 350 000
(S) Basic support 5870 350 014
(S) Support 5870 350 036
(S) Set of eye bolts 5870 204 002

Figure 1

Loosen screwed connection.

Figure 2

Install hex. head screw, tap impeller wheel loose and separate it from converter impeller cover, see Figure !

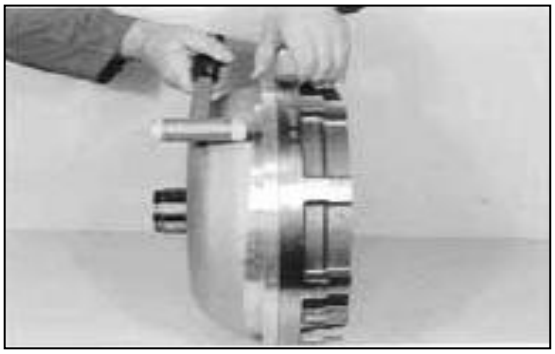


Figure 3

Loosen hex. head screws and remove impeller wheel flange.

Figure 4

Press free wheel inner ring out of the stator and remove released components.

Figure 5

Squeeze out snap ring.

Figure 6

Press free wheel outer ring out of the stator.

Figure 7

Separate turbine wheel from converter impeller cover.

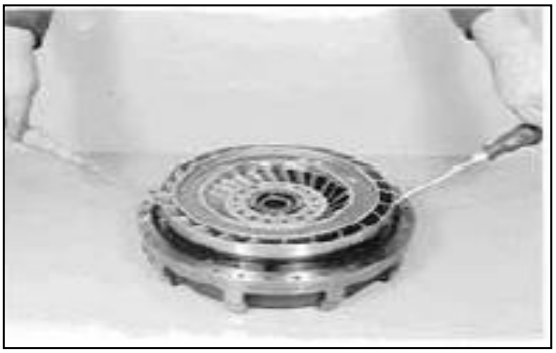


Figure 8

Loosen hex. head screws, remove backing plate and plate pack.

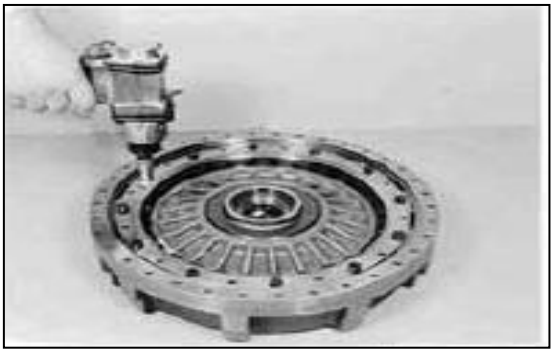


Figure 9

Remove cup spring and demount all driving pins (Arrow).

Figure 10

Separate piston from converter impeller cover by means of compressed air.

(S) Rubber cap 5870 509 009

Figure 11

Press profiled bush out of the converter impeller cover.

NOTE ;

The profiled bush is axially fixed by means of a snap ring which will be destroyed at the pressing out. !

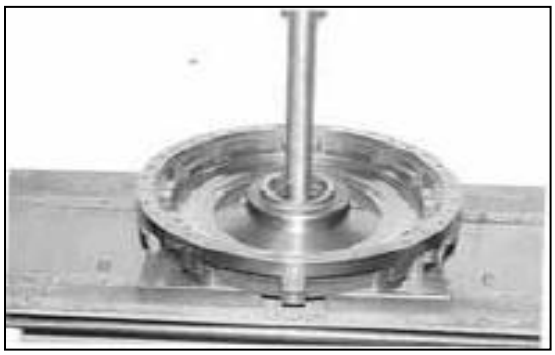


Figure 12

2.2 REASSEMBLY

Squeeze snap ring into the annular groove (Arrow) of the converter impeller cover.

NOTE :

Grease and align snap ring radially prior to reassemble the profiled bush (Figure 14) !

Figure 13

Install O-Ring (Arrow) and grease it.

Thread up profiled bush (S) and press the drive dog in until the snap ring engages in the annular groove.

NOTE :

The snap ring is expanded by means of the profiled bush (S)f thus allowing the reassembly of the drive dog !

(S) Profiled bush 5870 345 073

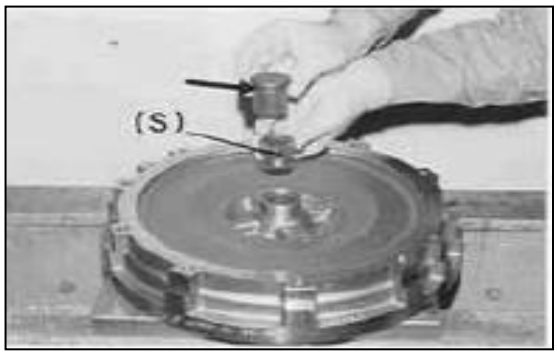


Figure 14

Install the two rectangular rings, see Arrows!

Oil piston bearing surfaces as well as rectangular rings and insert piston in the converter impeller cover until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Expand the inner rectangular ring (140 x 149 x 2 mm) slightly, to ensure a correct contact in the piston recess !

Figure 15

Install all driving pins (12 pieces) into the bores.

Figure 16

Insert cup spring , with the concave side showing upwards (see draft , Figure 17).

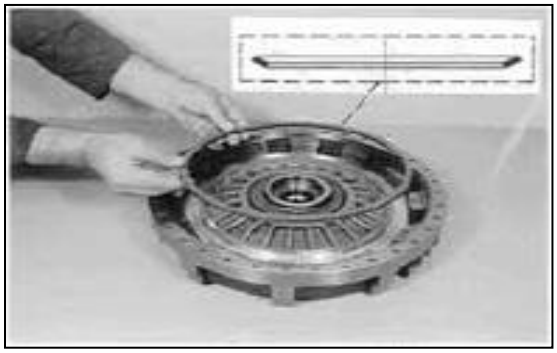


Figure 17

Install alternating outer and inner plates (2 pieces each), starting with one outer plate.

NOTE ;

In case of Versions with three outer and one inner plate, two outer plates have to be installed at first, followed by one inner plate and one outer plate as last plate !

Figure 18

Check Clearance WK 0,4… 0,6 mm

(Figure 19 ... Example"A")

Determine Dimension I from the straightedge to the outer plate.

Dimension Ⅰ e.g.	44,0 mm
(S) Straightedge	5870 200 022
(S) Digital depth gauge	5870 200 072

Figure 19

Determine Dimension II from the straightedge to the contact surface of the backing plate.

Dimension Ⅱ e.g. 43,5 mm

Figure 20

Example "A" :

Dimension Ⅰ 44,0 mm

Dimension Ⅱ - 43,5 mm

Difference = Clearance = 0.5 mm

NOTE :

Carry out any corrections by means of corresponding pistons (s = 9,2 mm, 9,8 mm and 10,5 mm) !

Assemble backing plate with the chamfering (Arrow) showing upwards and fasten it by means of hex, head screws.

Torque limit (M8x25/10.9) 34 Nm

(S) Adjusting screw (M8) 5870 204 011

Figure 21

Fasten turbine wheel hub by means of hex. head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit (M8xl8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE:

Secure hex. head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Figure 22

Heat the ball bearing and mount it against shoulder until contact is obtained.

Figure 23

Squeeze in rectangular ring (Arrow 1) and engage it.

Insert O-Ring (Arrow 2) in the recess of the turbine wheel hub and grease it.

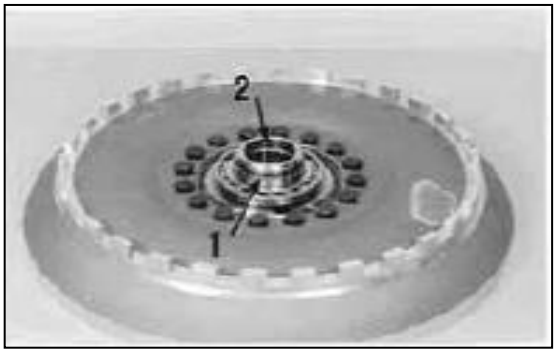


Figure 24

Thread up pro-assembled turbine wheel until the inner plates have been received.

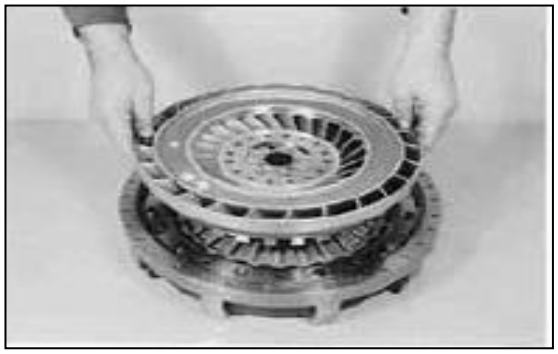


Figure 25

Heat stator and insert free wheel outer ring until contact s obtained.

Figure 26

Fix free wheel outer ring by means of snap ring.

Figure 27

The Illustration on the left shows the components of the stator.
1 = Shim (constant, s = 1,0 mm)
2 = Ball bearing
3 = Thrust washer (s = 1,5 mm)
4 = Free wheel inner ring
5 = Cylindrical rollers (28 pieces)
6 = Spring cap (28 pieces)
7 = Compression spring (28 pieces)
8 = Bearing roller (28 pieces)
9 = Stator
10 = Shim (optional, e.g. s = 0,2 mm)

NOTE ;

The stator end play is determined by means of shim 10, see Example "B" !

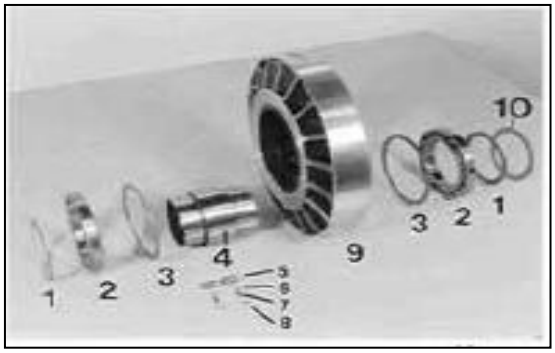


Figure 28

Insert bearing rollers, springs and spring caps (8, 7, and 6) according to the Illustration on the left with grease into the bores of the free wheel hub.

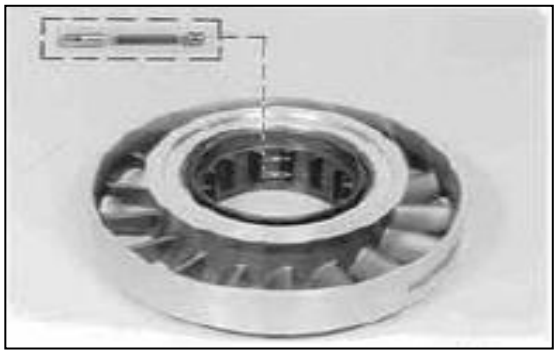


Figure 29

Place ball bearing (2) on the long hub side (24 mm) against shoulder, install thrust washer (3) s = 1,5 mm and press free wheel inner ring against shoulder.

Figure 30

Press spring caps by means of guide plate (S) into the free wheel ring until the cylindrical roller pairs (5) can be installed.

NOTE :

The second roller pair has to be installed opposite to the first roller pair - makes the installation of the remaining roller pairs easier!

(S) Guide plate 5870 345 020

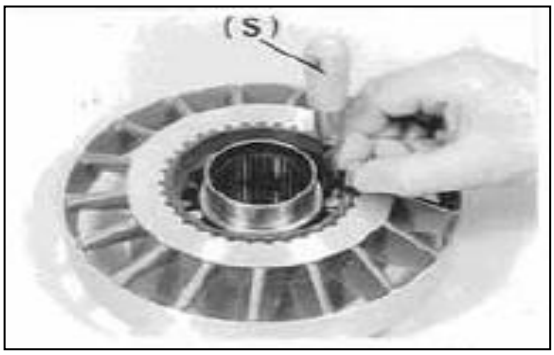


Figure 31

Mount thrust washer (3) s = 1,5 mm and press bearing against shoulder.

Figure 32

Install shim (1) s = 1,0 mm and shaft washer (60x85x4,75).

Figure 33

Opposite side :

Install shim (I) s = 1,0 mm, shim (10) (optional e.g. s = 0,5 mm) and shaft washer (60x85x4,75).

NOTE :

The end play of the stator is determined by means of shim (10) (e.g. s = 0,5 mm/empirical value) ! However, a later check (Figure 39 ... Example "B") is absolutely essential !

Figure 34

Mount housing washer (62x85x4,75 mm) and axial needle bearing (60x85x3 mm).

Figure 35

Insert stator with the reduced plane surface (Arrow) showing upwards until contact is obtained.

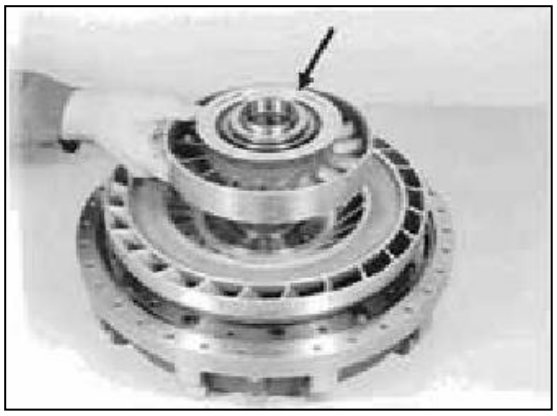


Figure 36

Install axial roller bearing and housing washer (62x85x4,75 mm).

Figure 37

Mount new flat gasket and fasten flange by means of hex. head screws (mount flat washers) on the impeller wheel.
Torque limit (M8x18/8.8) 23 Nm
NOTE:
Pay attention to the radial installation position !
Secure hex. Head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Figure 38

Check end play - Stator max. 0,2 mm (Figure 39 ... Example “B”)
Mount flat gasket (Arrow).
Determine Dimension Ⅰ from the flange mounted surface (gasket) to the plane surface/impeller wheel flange.

Dimension Ⅰ e.g.	88,05 mm
(S) Straightedge	5870 200 022
(S) Gauge blocks	5870 200 066
(S) Digital depth Gauge	5870 200 072

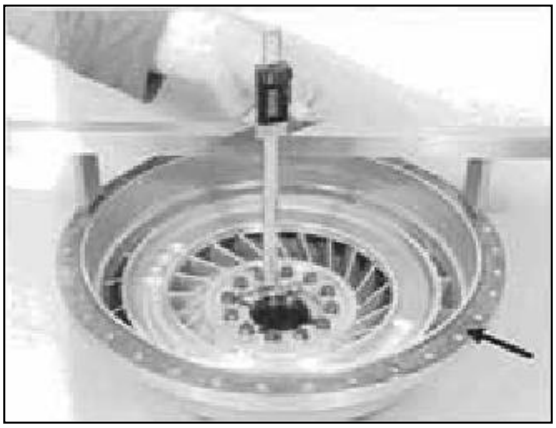


Figure 39

Measure Dimension II from the flange-mounted surface (converter impeller cover) to the housing washer.

Dimension II e.g. 87,95 mm

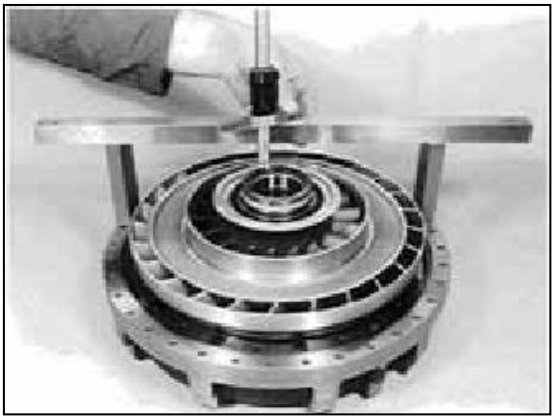


Figure 40

Example "B"

Dimension I 88,05 mm

Dimension II - 87,95 mm

Difference s End play 0,10 mm

NOTE:

In case of deviations from the permitted end play (max. 0,2 mm) correct by means of corresponding shin !

The shim is illustrated on Figure 34 !

Screw two adjusting screws into the converter impeller cover and mount flat gasket.

Place impeller wheel against shoulder and fasten it by means of hex. head screws.

Torque limit (M8x32/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE:

Install flat washers !

Pay attention to the radial position, see markings !

(S) Adjusting screw (M8) 5870 204 011

Figure 41

Squeeze the rectangular ring into the annular groove (Arrow) and engage it.

NOTE:

Install converter, see Page 163 !

Figure 42

3. GEARBOX

3.1 DISASSEMBLY

3.1.1 CONVERTER CHARGE PUMP and CONTROL PRESSURE PUMP

Loosen hollow screw and remove delivery line.

Figure 1

Loosen screwed connection (Figure 2) and separate engine connecting case from gear case by means of pry bars (Figure 3).

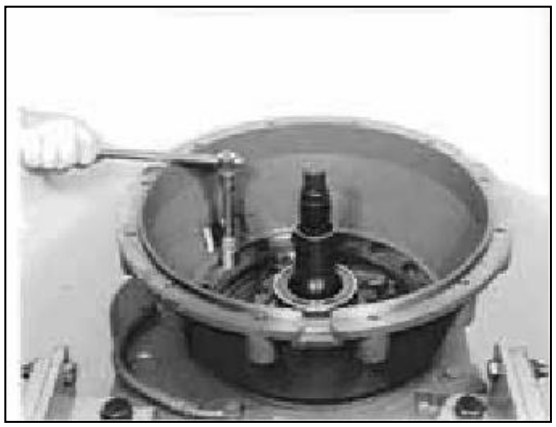


Figure 2

Figure 3

Loosen hollow screw and remove delivery line.

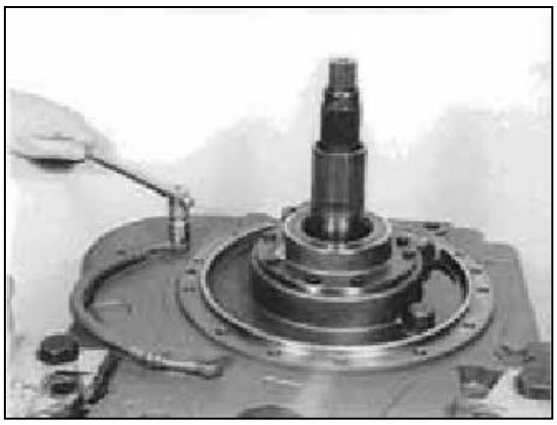


Figure 4

Loosen hex. head screws.

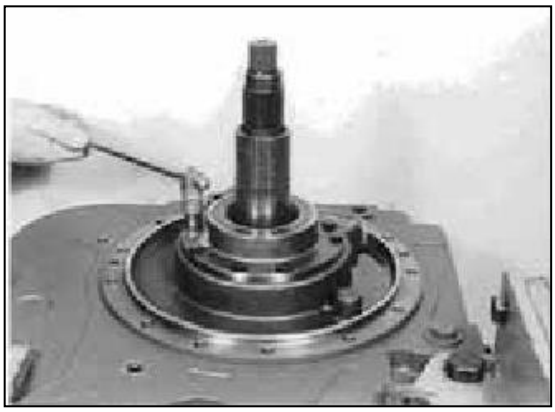


Figure 5

Tap loose and remove bearing cap.

Figure 6

Fasten puller device at the oil supply flange by means of hex. head screws.

Pull converter charge pump and control pressure pump (complete) out of the housing bore.

(S) Back-off device 5870 000 062

Figure 7

Loosen hex. head screws and separate pump from oil supply flange.

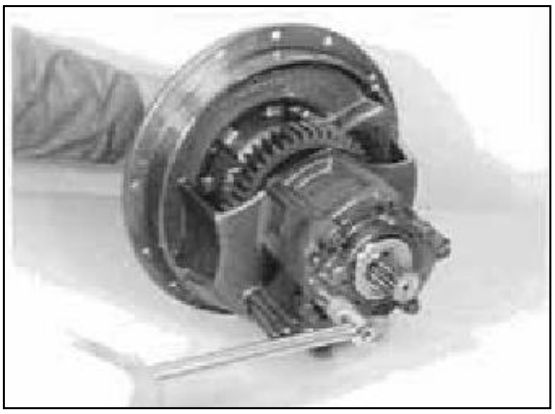


Figure 8

Remove rectangular ring (I) and circlip (2).

(S) Set of external snap ring pliers 5870 900 016

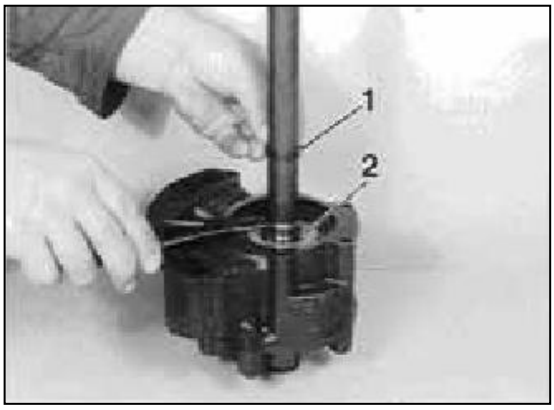


Figure 9

Press shaft out of the pump case.

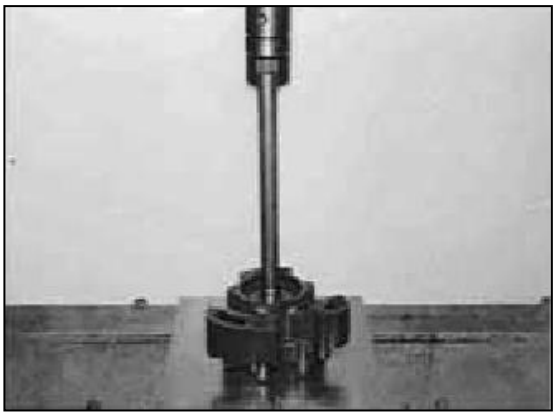


Figure 10

Check converter charge pump and control pressure pump (Figure 11 ... 14):

Remove the two straight pins by means of striker (Figure 11), loosen hex. head screws and remove cover (Figure 12) !

(S) Striker 5870 650 001

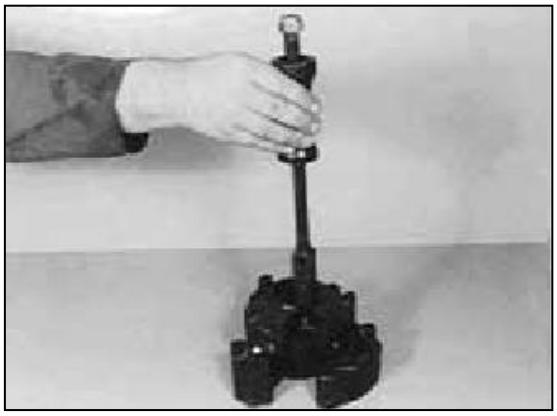


Figure 11

NOTE :

If traces of wear should be encountered in the pump case or on the housing cover, the complete pump has to be renewed !

Figure 12

Install rotor set, fix cover provisionally by means of hex. head screws and insert the straight pins (with the tapped hole showing upwards) until contact is obtained.

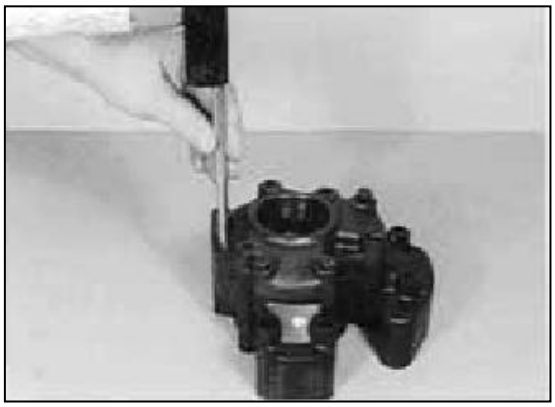


Figure 13

Fix the straight pins axially by means of caulkings (2x) and tighten hex. head screws finally.

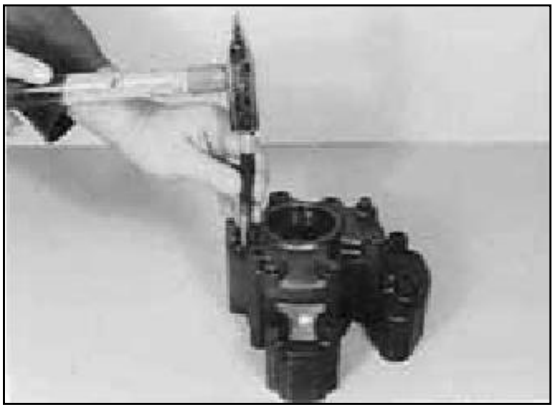


Figure 14

Remove converter relief valve (ball and spring).

Squeeze out circlip.

(S) Set of external snap ring pliers 5870 900 016

Figure 15

Press drive shaft in direction of Arrow until the spur gear is released.

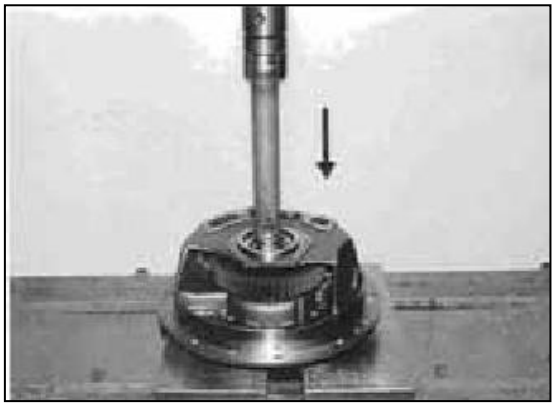


Figure 16

Remove disk and spur gear.

NOTE :

According to the Version, with or without disk see corresponding Spare Parts List!

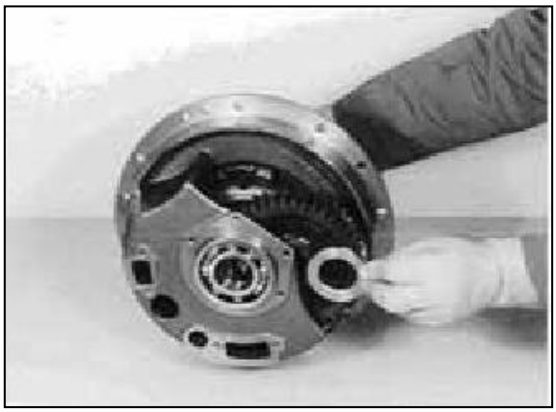


Figure 17

Remove ball bearing and drive shaft.

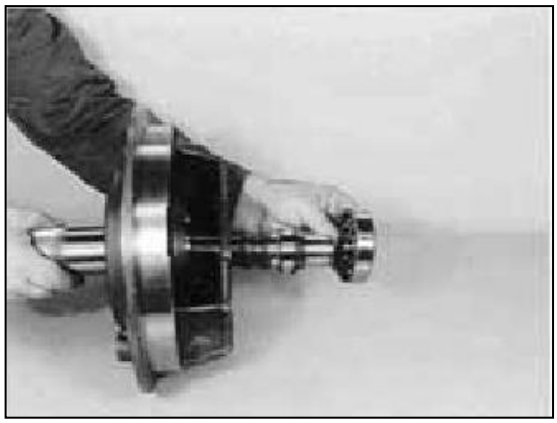


Figure 18

Pull roller bearing out of the bore.

(S) Internal puller	5870 300 014
(S) Back-up tool	5870 300 003

Figure 19

Remove temperature connection.

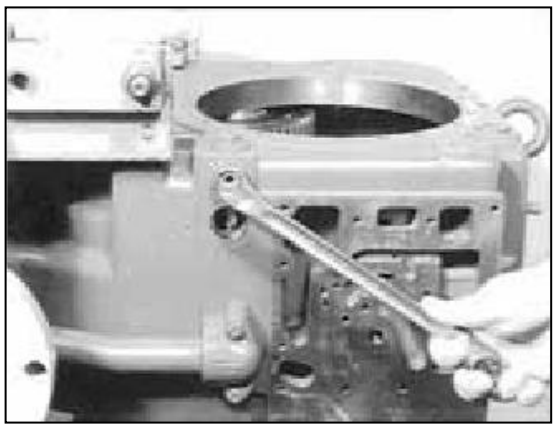


Figure 20

Loosen screw plug and remove converter control valve, composed of disk, compression spring, spool and valve sleeve.

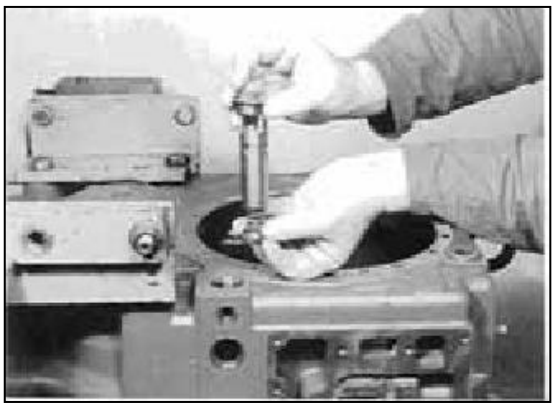


Figure 21

Remove drive side inductive transmitter.

Figure 22

3.1.2 COAXIAL POWER TAKE-OFF (mechanical control)

Loosen clamping screw and remove lever (Arrow).

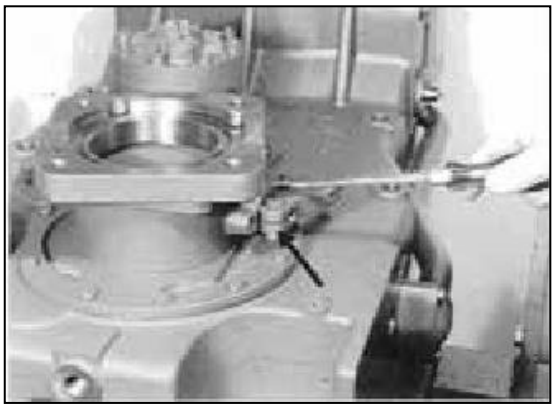


Figure 23

Remove Woodruff key and shift lever.

Figure 24

Remove locking device.

Figure 25

Loosen socket head screws and remove housing.

Figure 26

Loosen hex. head screws and lift complete power take-off housing out of the bore.

(S) Set of eye bolts 5870 204 002

Figure 27

Fasten power take-off in a vise.

Expand the two snap rings, align them centrically and drive the drive dog provisionally about 5 ... 10 mm ahead (direction of Arrow).

NOTE:

For this step, an assistant is absolutely necessary!

(S) Circlip pliers 5870 900 026

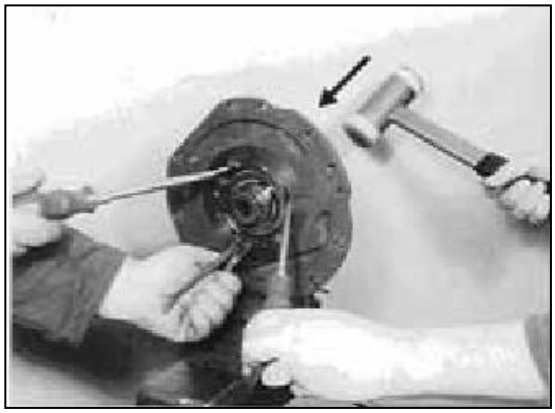


Figure 28

Squeeze out snap ring (Figure 29), tap the drive dog loose and drive it out of the spur gear, resp. housing bore (Figure 30).

NOTE:

Pay attention to the released components!

Figure 29

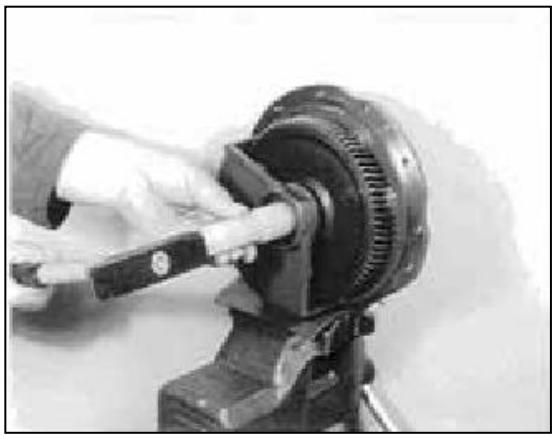


Figure 30

3.1.3 LATERAL POWER TAKE-OFF

Loosen socket head screws and remove pump flange.

Figure 31

Squeeze out circlip (housing interior).

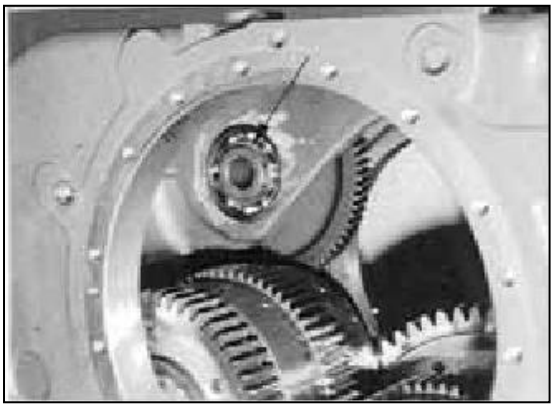


Figure 32

Pull drive dog, by means of internal puller out of the ball bearing, resp. spur gear and remove released spur gear.

(S) Internal puller 5870 300 006

(S) Back-up tool 5870 300 003

Figure 33

Expand snap rings, align them centrically, tap the ball bearing loose and drive it out of the housing bore.

NOTE:

Assistant necessary!

Figure 34

3.1.4 REMOVE EMERGENCY STEERING PUMP

Loosen hex. nuts and separate emergency steering pomp from gear case.

Figure 35

3.1.5 REMOVE MULTI-DISK CLUTCHES

NOTE;

In case of Versions with Spur Rear fixing K1, the two set screws (Arrows) have to be removed prior to the disassembly of the axle, see Figure on the right!

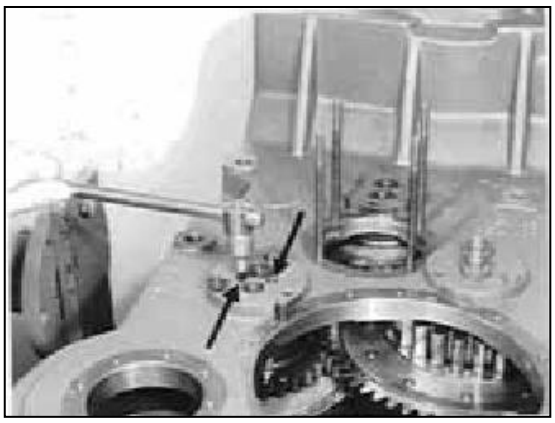


Figure 40

Loosen hex. nuts and pull axle by means of Special device out of the clutch, resp. gear case.

(S) Puller 5870 000 069

Figure 41

Lift clutch out of the gear case and deposit it.

NOTE:

Use lifting device!

Remove clutch KR/K2 accordingly.

In the case of clutch K4/K3, push the lower spacing washer to the rear. Only then, the clutch can be removed.

(S) Lifting device 5870 350 041

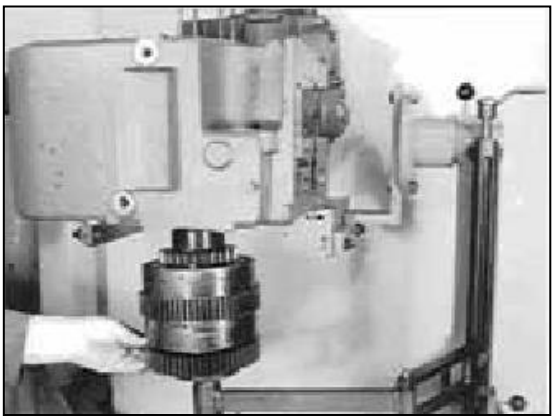


Figure 42

3.1.6 REMOVE COUNTERSHAFT ASSEMBLY

Remove closing cover.

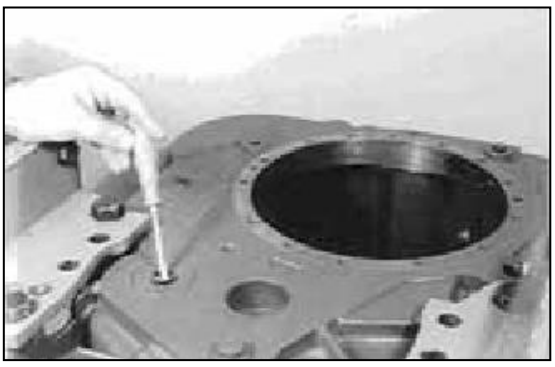


Figure 43

Loosen socket head screw.

Figure 44

Pull axle by means of Special device out of the housing bore, resp. spur gear bearing.

(S) Puller 5870 000 0S3

Figure 45

Remove spur gear and disk.

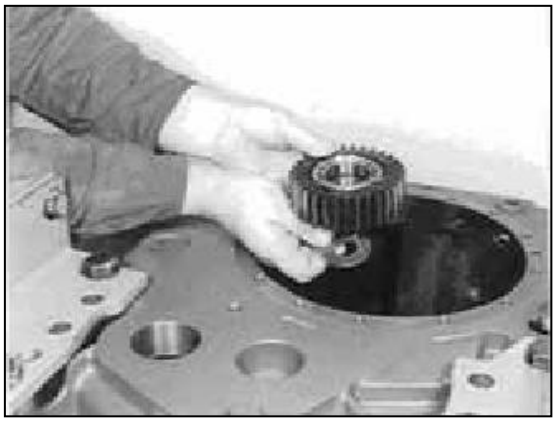


Figure 46

3.1.7 DISMANTLE MULTI-DISK CLUTCH

Remove spur gear K1 and demount components.

Figure 50

Squeeze out snap ring.

Figure 51

Remove plate pack.

Figure 52

Preload compression spring, squeeze out circlip and remove components.

(S) Assembly jig 5870 345 028

Figure 53

Remove piston by means of clamping pliers.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 007

Figure 54

Pull needle bush out of the bore, using internal puller.

NOTE:

The disassembly of the clutch KV, KR/K2 and K4/K3 has to be carried out accordingly.

(S) Internal puller 5870 300 014

(S) Back-up tool 5870 300 003

Figure 55

3.1.8 FINAL DRIVE - VERSION WITH DRUM BRAKE

Remove lock plate and loosen hex. head screws.

Figure 60

Pry output flange off the shaft.

(S) Pry bar 5870 345 065

Figure 61

Tilt gear case 180°.

Loosen hex. head screws.

Figure 62

Separate brake drum from output flange.

(S) Crow bar 5870 345 071

Figure 63

Remove lock plate and loosen hex. head screws.

Figure 64

Pull output flange from the shaft.

(S) Two-leg puller 5370 970 004

Figure 65

Unhook return springs and remove brake shoes.

(S) Brake spring pliers 5870 900 006

Figure 66

Pry shaft seed out of the housing bore.

(S) Crow bar 5870 345 071

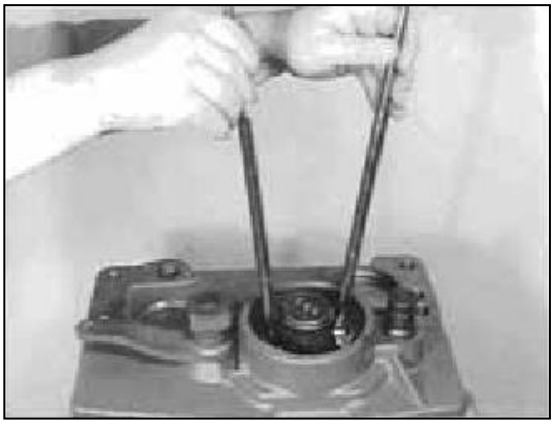


Figure 67

Squeeze out circlip and remove shim.

(S) Circlip pliers 5870 900 021

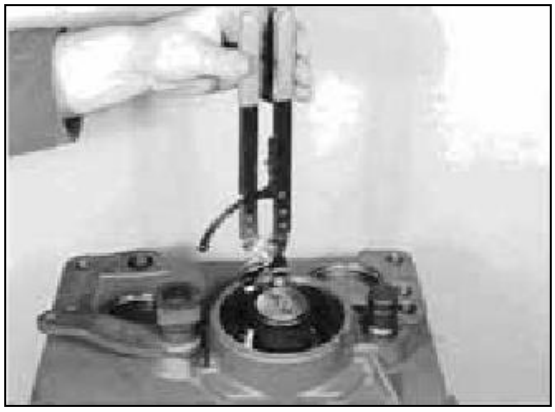


Figure 68

Loosen the two closing covers by central tapping and remove them.

Figure 69

Loosen the two hex. head screws and remove them along with flat washers.

Figure 70

Remove upper oil retainer.

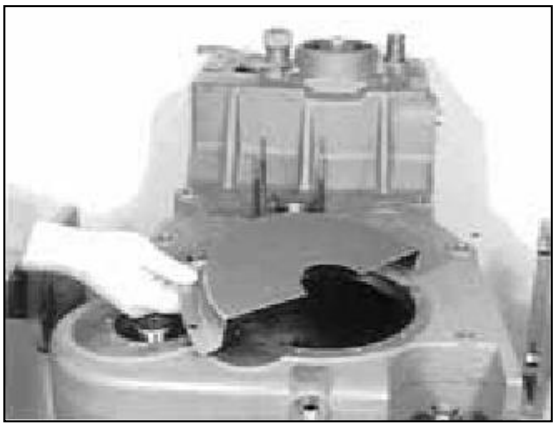


Figure 71

Drive output shaft by means of striker out of the output gear and remove it.

ATTENTION :

In case of the Version with a mechanical speedometer, the speedometer-drive shaft (complete) has to be removed prior to the disassembly of the output shaft !

(S) Puller	5870 023 017
(S) Puller	5870 023 026
(S) Striker	5870 650 001

Figure 72

Remove output gear and plate.

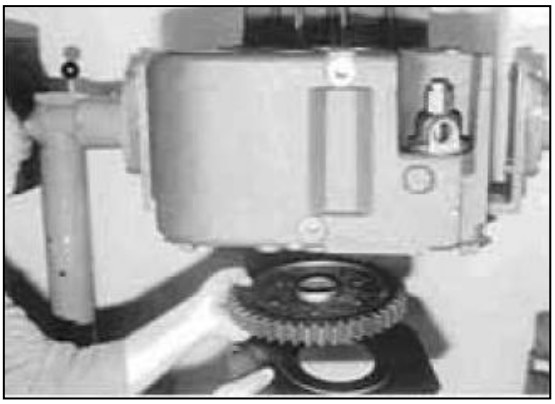


Figure 73

Squeeze out circlip and remove brake cam.

(S) Set of external snap ring pliers	5870 900 013

Figure 74

Drive the pin out of the housing bore and remove it.

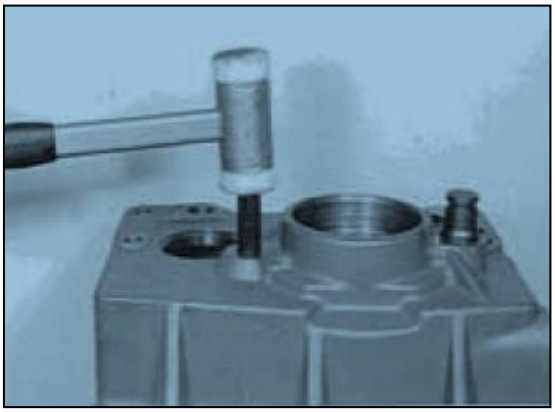


Figure 75

Loosen hex. lead screws (Figure 76) and pull pin by means of Special device out of the housing bore (Figure 77).

(S) Puller device 5870 000 066

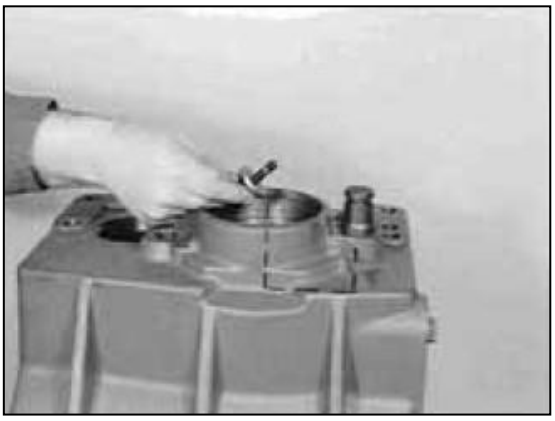


Figure 76

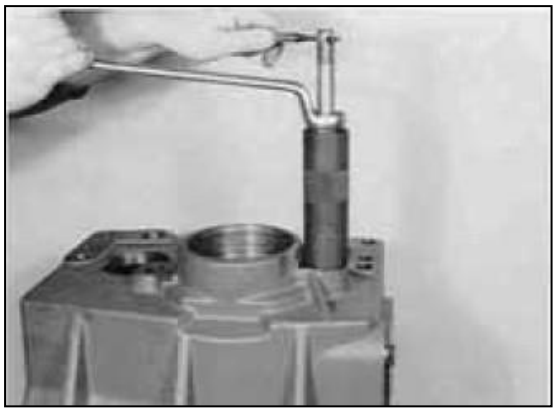


Figure 77

Tilt gear case 180°.

Pry shaft seal out of the housing bore.

Figure 78

Squeeze out circlip and remove spacing washer.

(S) Circlip pliers 5870 900 021

Figure 79

3.2 REASSEMBLY

3.2.1 Final drive - Version with Drum brake

Install O-Ring (Arrow), insert pin until contact is obtained and fasten by means of housing washer, flat washer and hex. head screw.

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screw with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Figure 90

Illustration on the right shows the components of the brake cam.

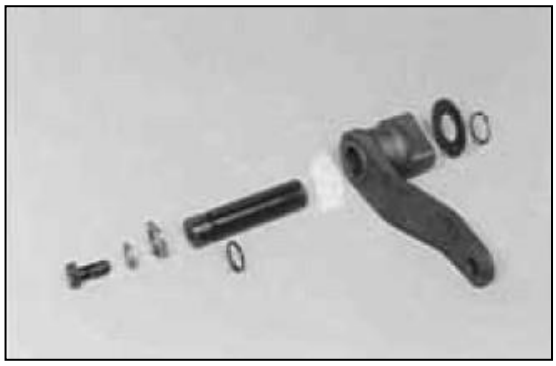


Figure 91

Pre-assemble brake cam according to Figure 91 and insert it in the housing bore until contact is obtained.

Now, tighten hex. head screw until the brake cam has got contact on the housing without play and pressure.

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screw with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Grease O-Ring (Arrow/Figure 92) !

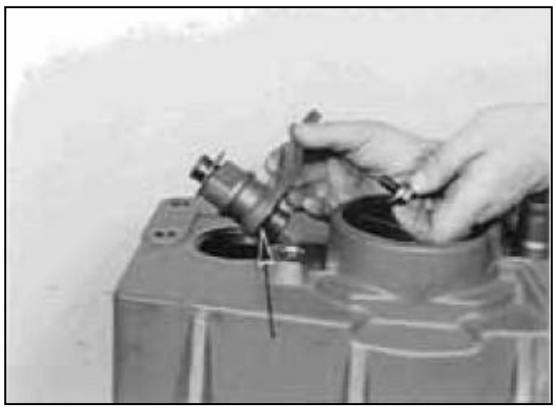


Figure 92

NOTE:

For the following steps pay attention to the Draft (Figure 93) !

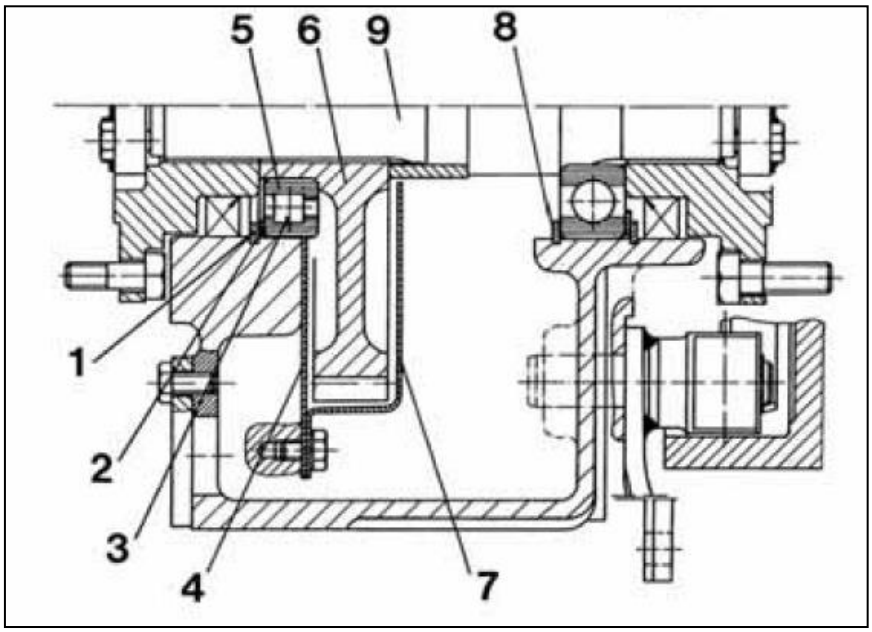


Figure 93

Squeeze in circlip 1.

Tilt gear case 180° .

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

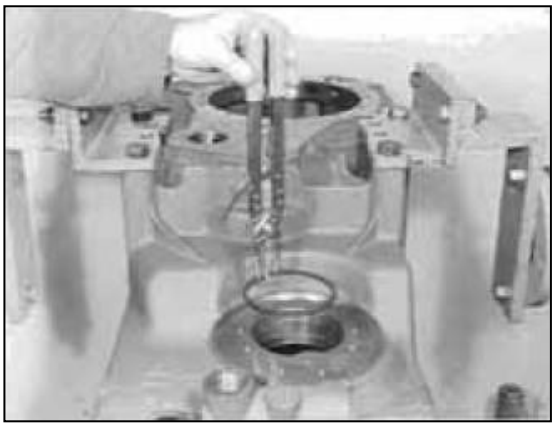


Figure 94

Lay shim 2 (e.g. s = 0,7 mm/empirical value) and roller bearing 3 upon circlip 1.

NOTE :

The end play of the output shaft bearing is determined by means of shim 2.

However, a later check of the end play (Figure 104 to Example "A") is absolutely essential !

Figure 95

Introduce plate 4 through the large housing bore and lay it over the roller bearing 3.

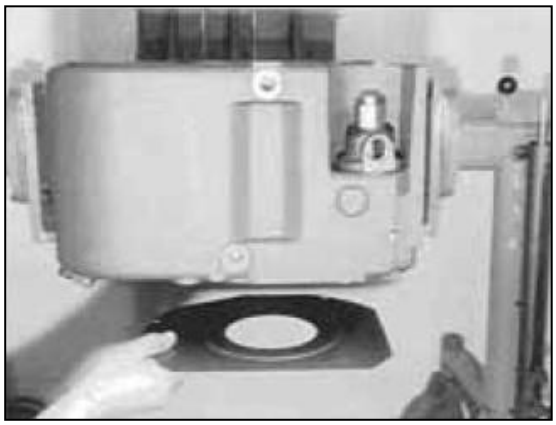


Figure 96

Heat bearing inner race 5 and assemble it until contact is obtained.

Figure 97

Position spur gear 6, see Draft !

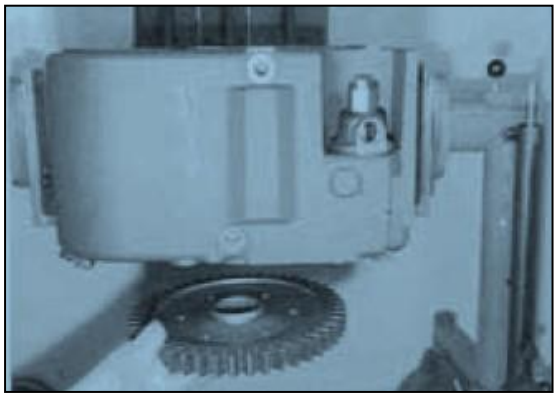


Figure 98

Position oil retainer 7, see Draft !

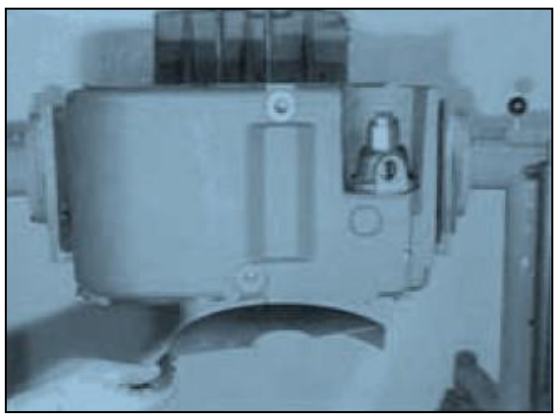


Figure 99

Fasten both plates by means of hex, head screws (install flat washers).

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 270).

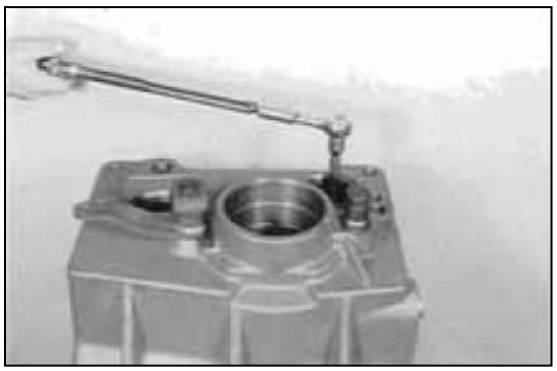


Figure 100

Squeeze in circlip 8.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

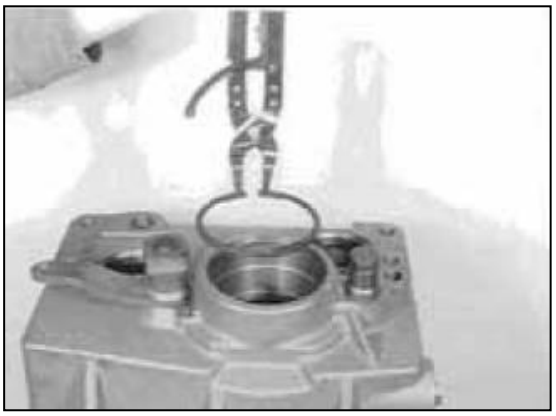


Figure 101

Press the speedometer-drive worm against shoulder.

NOTE :

In case of a Version without mechanical speedometer, a spacer has to be installed instead of the speedometer-drive worm !

Figure 102

Thread up output shaft 9 until contact is obtained.

Figure 103

Cheek end play of the output shaft bearing = 0,3 ... 0,5 mm (Figure 104 ... Example "A"):

Measure Dimension I from the end face/output shaft to the contact face (ball bearing).

Dimension I e.g. 79,60 mm

(S) Digital depth gauge 5870 200 072

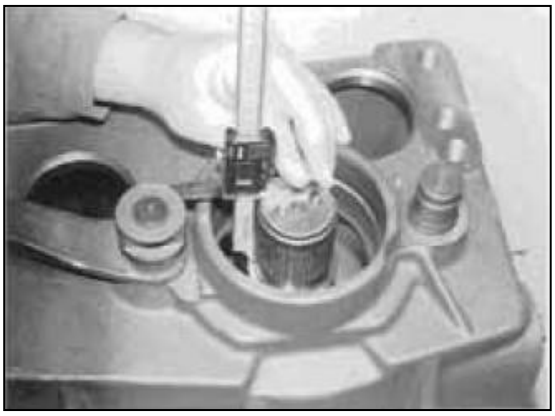


Figure 104

Determine Dimension II from the end face/output shaft to the upper plane surface of the circlip.

Dimension II e.g. 79,10 mm

Figure 105

Example *A* :

Dimension I 79,60 mm

Dimension II - 79,10 mm

Difference = End play = 0,50 mm

NOTE :

In case of deviations from the required end play, correct by means of a corresponding shim (2), see Figure 95 !

Press ball bearing against shoulder.

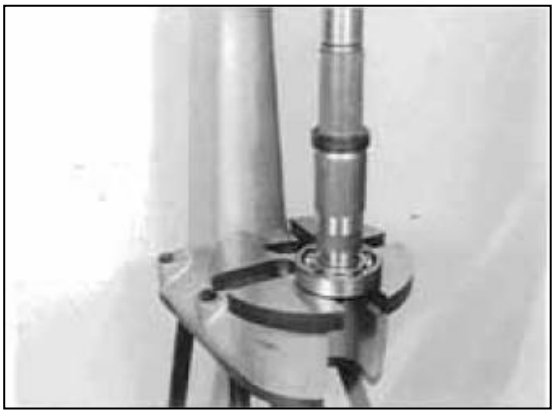


Figure 106

Heat housing bore and thread up output shaft until contact is obtained.

Figure 107

Fix ball bearing free of play by means of shim and circlip.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

Figure 108

Install shaft seal with the sealing lip facing the oil chamber.

NOTE :

The exact installation position is obtained by application of the prescribed driver !

If the outer diameter of the shaft seal is rubberized, wet the sealing surface with spirit !

If not, use sealing compound (Curil T) !

Grease sealing lip !

(S) Driver 5870 048 067

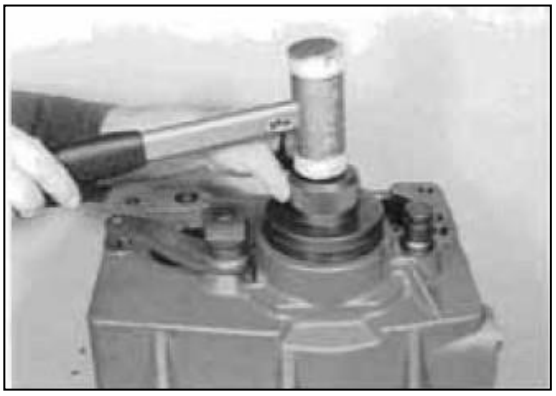


Figure 109

The Figure on the right shows a Version with two shaft seals (Version with fording ability) Installation position : Sealing lip of inner

shaft seal is facing the oil chamber. Sealing lip of outer shaft seal is showing outwards.

The installation depth is given by application of the prescribed driver 1

NOTE :

Fill space between upper and lower sealing lip with grease !

(S) Driver 5870 048 067

Figure 110

Install the two closing covers.

NOTE ;

Wet sealing surfaces with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

(S) Driver	5870 057 015
(S) Handle	5870 260 002

Figure 111

Install brake shoes and engage return springs

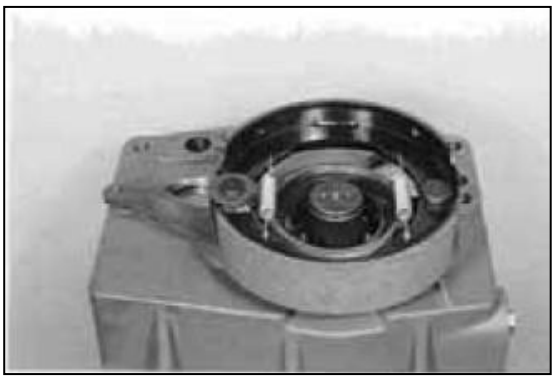


Figure 112

Insert hex. head screws in the bores of the output flange and press retaining plate (Arrow) against shoulder.

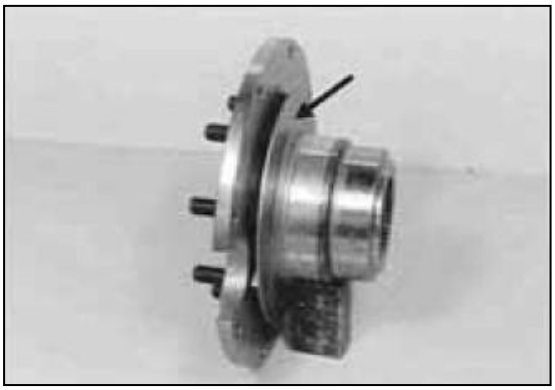


Figure 113

Heat output flange and assemble it until contact is obtained.

Figure 114

Fasten output flange by means of disk and hex. head screws.

NOTE :

Wet the contact surface of disk and screw heads with sealing compound !

Torque limit (Ml0/8.8) 46 Nm

Figure 115

Fix hex. head screws means of lock plate.

(S) Driver 5870 057 009

(S) Handle 5870 260 002

Figure 116

Assemble brake drum and fasten it by means of hex. head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit (Ml0/10.9) 68 Nm

(S) Adjusting screws (MI0) 5870 204 007

Figure 117

Tilt gear case 180° .

Install shaft seal (Arrow) with the sealing lip facing the oil chamber.

NOTE :

The exact installation position is obtained by application of the prescribed driver !

If the outer diameter of the shaft seal is rubberized, wet the sealing surface with spirit !

If not, use sealing compound (Curil T) !

Grease sealing lip !

(S) Driver 5870 048 067

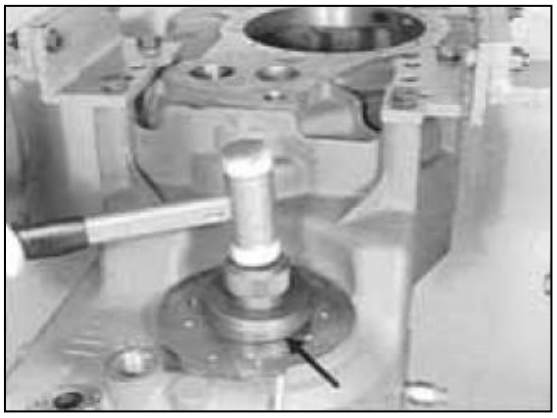


Figure 118

Figure 119 shows a Version with 2 shaft seals (Version with fording ability).
Installation position : Sealing lip of inner shaft seal is facing the oil chamber !
Sealing lip of outer shaft seal is showing outwards.
The installation depth is obtained by application of the prescribed driver !

NOTE :

Fill space of upper and lower sealing lip with grease !

(S) Driver	5870 048 067

Figure 119

Insert hex. head screws in the bores, heat the output flange and assemble it until contact is obtained.

Figure 120

Fasten output flange by means of disk and hex. head screws.

NOTE :

Wet contact areas of disk and screw heads with sealing compound !

Torque limit	(M10/8.8)	46 Nm

Figure 121

Fix hex. head screws means of lock plate.

(S) Driver	5870 057 009
(S) Handle	5870 260 002

Figure 122

3.2.2 Speedometer

The Illustration on the left shows the components.

1 = Speedometer-drive gear

2 = Speedometer-drive shaft

3 = Straight pin

4 = Speedometer connecting piece

5 = Shaft seal

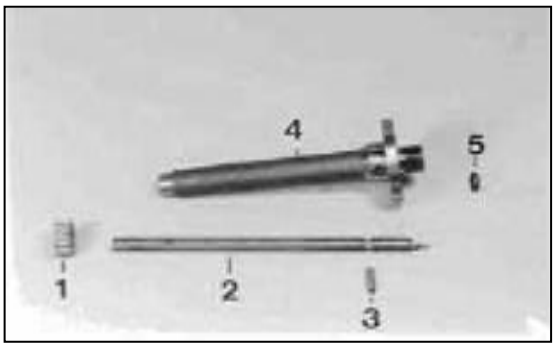


Figure 123

Press drive gear flat against the end face/ speedometer-drive shaft.

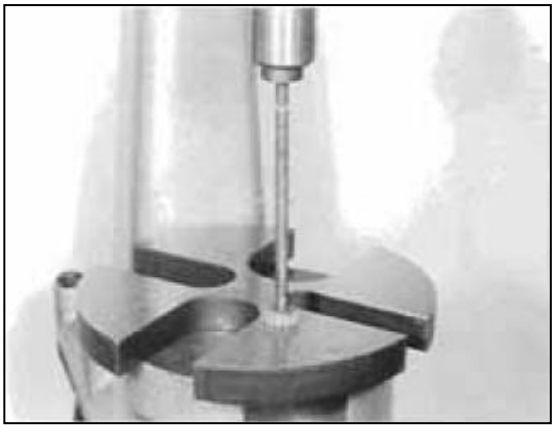


Figure 124

Introduce speedometer-drive shaft and fix it by means of straight pin.

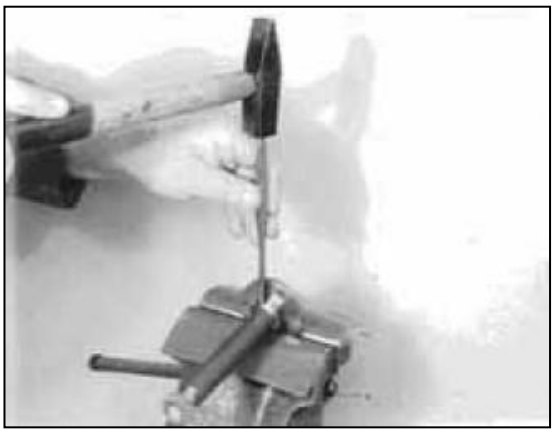


Figure 125

Guide installer (S) over the speedometer-drive shaft and install shaft seal (Arrow) with the sealing lip facing the oil chamber.

(S) Driver 5870 048 072

Figure 126

Assemble flat gasket and fasten pre-assembled speedometer by means of hex. Head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

Figure 126

In case of the Version without speedometer. close the bore by means of cover (Arrow).

NOTE :

Wet sealing surfaces with Loctite (Type-No.270) !

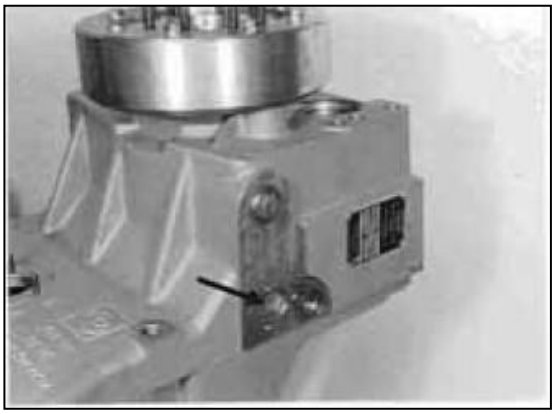


Figure 127

3.2.3 CLUTCH K4/K3

3.2.3.1 Pre-assemble plate carrier K4/K3

NOTE :

The following steps (Figure 132 ... 138) have to be carried out on both sides of the plate carrier !

The needle bush is marked on one end face.

Press needle bush carefully against shoulder, using drift (S).

NOTE :

At the pressing in, the marking must be showing upwards (to the drift) !

(S) Drift 5870 506 055

Check operation of the bleeder valves.

NOTE :

Ball may not stick, if necessary, clean it by means of compressed air or renew it !

Figure 132

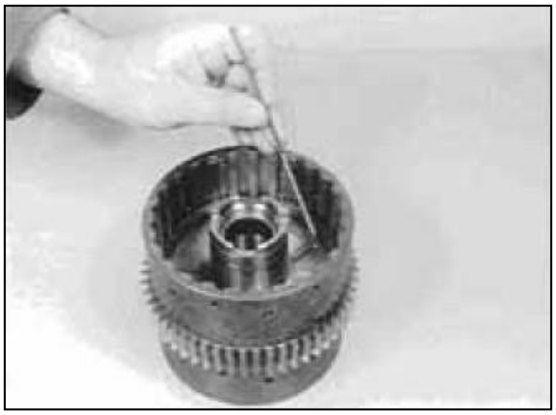


Figure 133

Insert the profiled sealing rings (Arrows) in the recesses of the piston with the sealing lip facing the pressure chamber.

NOTE ;

*— - — - — - = Pressure side !

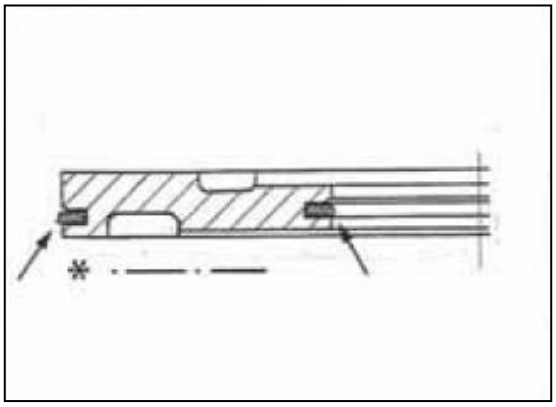


Figure 134

Oil profiled sealing rings and insert piston until contact is obtained.

NOTE ;

Use installer (s)!

(S) Installer 5870 651 023

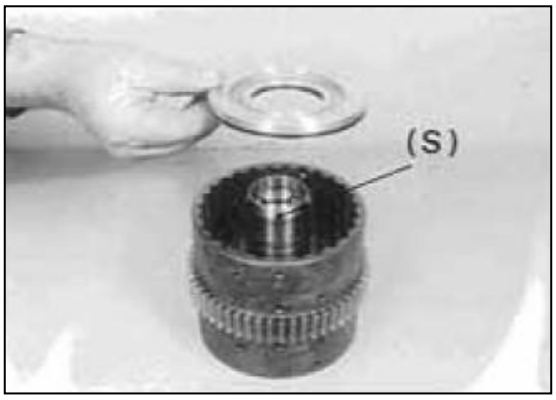


Figure 135

Assemble lower spring guide (1), compression spring (2) and upper spring guide (3).

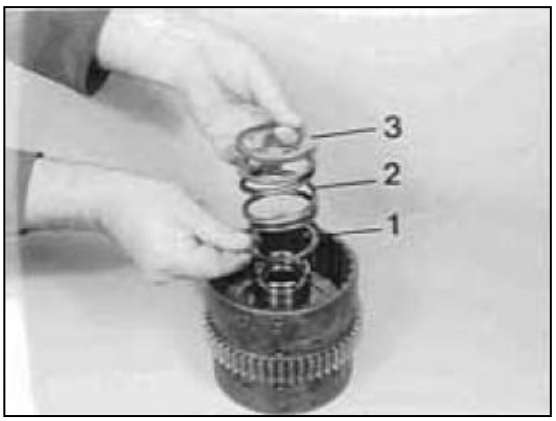


Figure 136

Mount guide ring (4) and circlip (5) (Figure 137), preload compression spring and fix the components by means of circlip (Figure 138).

Assembly jig 5870 345 028

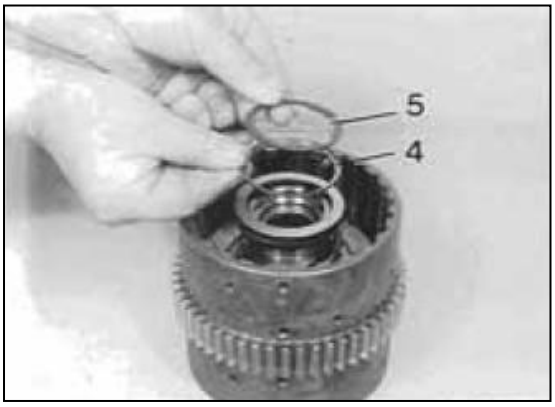


Figure 137

Figure 138

PLATE INSTALLA TION

I Determine Plate installation-No. (Page 118)

II Table for plate installation (Page 119 ... 121)

III. Example with Draft (Page122)

Ref.I; Determine Plate installations-No. with the aid of the corresponding Spare Parts List.

The following List shows the abstract from a Spare Parts List.

A = Transmission Parts List

B = Group 151, Clutch KV/K1

C = Assembly Note - Plate installation

D = Plate installation-No.

4644 151 Group (B) coupling			Quantity per model 4644 024 (A)
Position No.	Part number	Description	077
		Assembling of the plate installation	
360	0750 116 100	Ball Bearing	1
390	4644 251 037	Disc carrier	1
		Coupling KV	
420	0501 309 014	O.Clutch Disc	8
434	4644 308 115	I.Clutch Disc	7
436		O.Clutch Disc	
	4644 308 014	S=2.0	1
	4644 308 115	S=1.5	1
		Coupling K1	
440	0501 309 541	O.Clutch Disc	7
442	0501 312 283	O.Clutch Disc	1
450	4644 308 329	I.Clutch Disc	3
452	4644 308 330	I.Clutch Disc	3
456		I.Clutch Disc	
	4644 308 329	S=2.0	1
	4644 308 330	S=2.5	1
	(C)	Assembly Note Assembling of the plate installation O.Clutch Disc	
	(D)	KV.NO.12 K1.NO.22	

Attention:

The Transmission Parts List (see Model Identification Plate) must be identical with the corresponding Parts list of the Spare Parts List!

The Plate installations-No. can be found on the left Table margin of the following Pages (119... 121)!

Ⅱ Table for Plate installation

Clutch KV to KR

		Type of plate	Quantity(n)	S(mm)	n s (mm)	ZF-No.
Plate installation-No. 10	**WG-180/181 Loader version**	Outer plate	9	2,0	18	0501 309 330
		Inner plate	4	2,0	8	4644 308 329
		Inner plate	3	2,5	7,5	4644 308 330*）
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5	2,0 or 2,5	4644 308 329 4644 308 330
		No. of friction surfaces	16			
		Plate clearance	2,2 …2,4			
Plate installation-No. 11	**WG-200/201 Loader version**	Outer plate	12	2,0	24	0501 309 330
		Inner plate	9	2,0	18	4644 308 329
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	4644 308 330*）
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5	2,0 or 2,5	4644 308 329 4644 308 330
		No. of friction surfaces	22			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 12	**WG-180 bis 201 Truck crane**	Outer plate	8	2,0	16	0501 309 541
		Inner plate	7	2,5	17.5	4644 308 330
		Inner plate				
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0	1,5 or 2,0	4644 308 115***) 4644 308 014***)
		No. of friction surfaces	14			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 13	**WG-180 bis 201 Truck crane without WK**	Outer plate	8	2,0	16	0501 309 330
		Inner plate	7	2,5	17.5	4644 308 330
		Inner plate				
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0	1,5 or 2,0	4644 308 115***) 4644 308 014***)
		No. of friction surfaces	14			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 14	**WG-200/201 Loader version**	Outer plate	10	2,0	20	0501 309 330
		Inner plate	8	3,0	24	4644 308 365
		Inner plate				
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5 or 3,0	2,0 or 2,5 or 3,0	4644 308 329) 4644 308 330 4644 308 365
		No. of friction surfaces	18			
		Plate clearance	2,6 … 2,8			
Plate installation-No. 15	**WG-200 Graphite plate Loader version**	Outer plate	10	2,0	20	0501 314 311
		Inner plate	8	3,0	24	0501 314 391
		Inner plate				
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5 or 3,0	2,0 or 2,5 or 3,0	0501 314 389 0501 314 388 0501 314 391
		No. of friction surfaces	18			
		Plate clearance	2,6 … 2,8			

Clutch K1 to K2

		Type of plate	Quantity(n)	S(mm)	n s (mm)	ZF-No.
Plate installation-No. 20	**Standard WG-180 to 201**	Outer plate	8	2,0	16	0501 309 330
		Inner plate	4	2,0	8	4642 308 329
		Inner plate	2	2,5	5	4642 308 330*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5	2,0 or 2,5	4642 308 329 4642 308 330
		No. of friction surfaces	14			
		Plate clearance	2,2 …2,4			
Plate installation-No. 21	**WK-Version WG-180 to 201**	Outer plate	8	2,0	16	0501 309 541
		Inner plate	4	2,0	8	4644 308 329
		Inner plate	2	2,5	5	4644 308 330*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5	2,0 or 2,5	4644 308 329 4644 308 330
		No. of friction surfaces	14			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 22	**WK-Vers WG-180 to 200 GD-shift control**	Outer plate	7	2,0	14	0501 309 541
		Inner plate	1	2,0	2,0	0501 312 283**)
		Inner plate	3	2,0	6	4644 308 329
		Inner plate	3	2,5	7,5	4644 308 330*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5	2,0 or 2,5	4644 308 329 4644 308 330
		No. of friction surfaces	14			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 23	**Graphite WG-200 plate Loader version**	Outer plate	8	2,0	16	0501 314 311
		Inner plate	4	2,0	8	0501 314 389
		Inner plate	2	2,5	5	0501 314 388
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	2,0 or 2,5	2,0 or 2,5	0501 314 389 0501 314 388
		No. of friction surfaces	14			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			

Clutch K3

		Type of plate	Quantity(n)	S(mm)	n s (mm)	ZF-No.
Plate installation-No. 30	**Standard WG-180 to 201**	Outer plate	10	2,0	20	05051 309 329
		Inner plate	1	1,5	1,5	4642 308 330
		Inner plate	6	2,0	12	4642 308 332
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	4642 308 331*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	4642 308 330 4642 308 332 4642 308 331
		No. of friction surfaces	18			
		Plate clearance	2,2 …2,4			
Plate installation-No. 31	**WG-180 to 201 GD-Shift control**	Outer plate	10	2,0	20	0501 309 329
		Outer plate	1	2,0	2,0	0501 312 280**)
		Inner plate	8	1,5	12	4642 308 330
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	4642 308 331
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	4642 308 330 4642 308 332 4642 308 331
		No. of friction surfaces	20			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 32	**WG-200 Graphite plate loader version**	Outer plate	10	2,0	20	0501 314 310
		Inner plate	1	1,5	1,5	0501 314 387
		Inner plate	6	2,0	12	0501 314 385
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	0501 314 386*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	0501 314 387 0501 314 385 0501 314 386
		No. of friction surfaces	18			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			

Clutch K4

		Type of plate	Quantity(n)	S(mm)	n s (mm)	ZF-No.
Plate installation-No. 40	**Standard WG-180 to 201**	Outer plate	9	2,0	18	0501 309 329
		Inner plate	4	1,5	6	4642 308 330
		Inner plate	2	2,0	4	4642 308 332
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	4642 308 331*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	4642 308 330 4642 308 332 4642 308 331
		No. of friction surfaces	16			
		Plate clearance	2,2 …2,4			
Plate installation-No. 41	**WG-200/201 Grader (Gear step)**	Outer plate	9	2,0	18	0501 309 329
		Outer plate	1	2,0	2,0	0501 312 280**)
		Inner plate	7	2,0	14	4642 308 332
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	4642 308 331*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	4642 308 330 4642 308 332 4642 308 331
		No. of friction surfaces	18			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			
Plate installation-No. 41	**WG-200 Graphite plate loader version**	Outer plate	9	2,0	18	0501 314 310
		Inner plate	4	1,5	6	0501 314 387
		Inner plate	2	2,0	4	0501 314 385
		Inner plate	1	2,5	2,5	0501 314 386*)
		Compensating plate (Inner plate)	1	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	1,5 or 2,0 or 2,5	0501 314 387 0501 314 385 0501 314 386
		No. of friction surfaces	16			
		Plate clearance	2,2 … 2,4			

Note ref. *) **Install inner plate close to the piston.**

Note ref. **) **Outer plate one-sided coated -**
Install plate with the uncoated side facing the piston.

Note ref. *)** **Outer plate uncoated - install plate facing the piston.**
As second plate, a lining outer plate has to be installed.

Attention! **In case of plates with different thicknesses,**
the thinner plates must be always installed on the backing plate side!

III. EXAMPLE FOR PLATE INSTALLATION

The following Draft shows the plate installation of the Clutch KV and K1 !

Ref. Draft :

A = Clutch KV

(Plate installation-No. e.g. 12)

B = Clutch KI

(Plate installation-No. e.g. 22)

1 = Plate carrier

2 = Backing plate

3 = Piston

4 = Outer plates

5 = Outer plates

(one-sided coated)

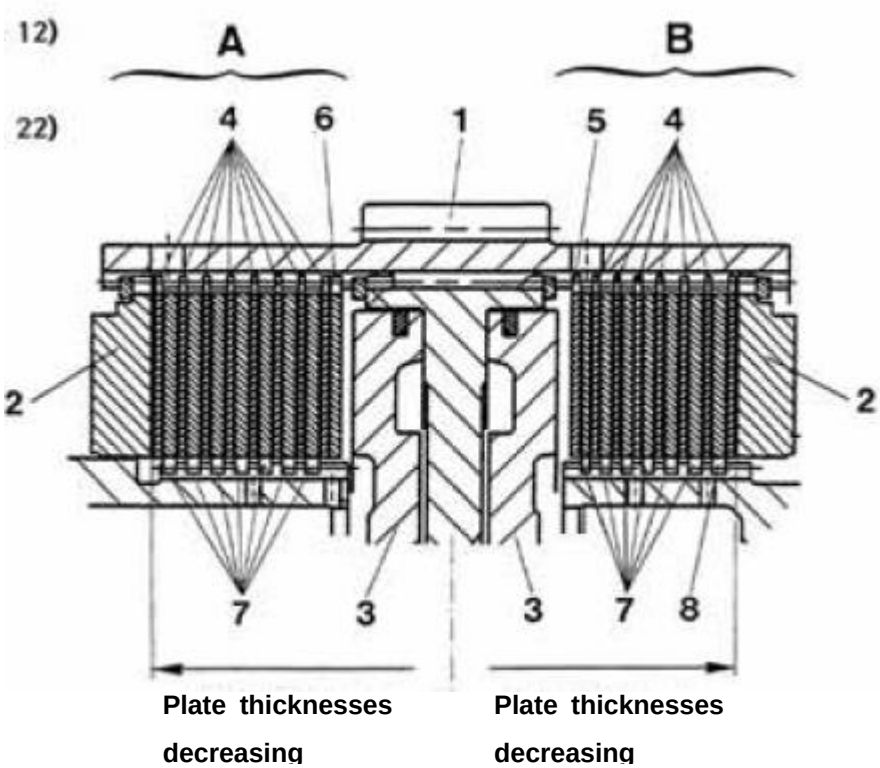
6 = Compensating plate

(Outer plate uncoated)

7 = Inner plates

8 = Compensating plate

(Inner plate)



Attention :

In principle, the arrangement of the outer and inner plates has to be carried out alternately.

Starting with the piston side, the first plate must be one double-sided coated outer plate (Standard Version).

Exception "A" :

In case of Plate installation-No. 22,31 and 41, the first plate must be one one-sided coated outer plate, and in this case, the plate must be always installed with the uncoated side facing the piston !

Exception "B" :

In case of Plate installation-No. 12 and 13, the first plate must be one double-sided uncoated outer plate (compensating plate).

As second plate, one coated outer plate has to be installed.

Now, pile up the inner and outer plates alternately again !

3.2.3.2 Install plate pack

Install plate pack and replace backing plate.

NOTE :

Plate arrangement, see

Plate installation, Page 118 ... 122!

Figure 139

Fix plate pack by means of snap ring.

Figure 140

Check plate clearance (Figure 141 to Example “B”)

NOTE :

The plate clearance of the different clutches can be taken from the Table, Page 119 ... 122 !

In case of Plate installation-No.40, e.g. = 2,0 ... 2,4 mm !

Measure Dimension Ⅰ from the end face of the plate carrier to the backing plate.

Dimension Ⅰ e.g. 5,3 mm

Figure 141

Place backing plate against snap ring until contact is obtained (upwards), and determine Dimension Ⅱ.

Dimension Ⅱ e.g. 3,2 mm

Figure 142

Example "B" :

Dimension Ⅰ	5,3 mm
Dimension Ⅱ	- 3,2 mm
Difference = Plate clearance	2,1 mm

NOTE :

In case of deviations from the required plate clearance, correct by means of corresponding compensating plates.

The pre-assembly of the remaining clutches (K3, KV/K1 and KR/K2) has to be carried out accordingly.

3.2.3.3 Pre-assemble and install spur gear K4

ATTENTION :

According to the Transmission Version, resp. operating conditions, different spur gear bearings are possible, see corresponding Spare Parts List as well as Figures 143 and 144 !

Spur Rear K4, Version "A" (Figure 143)

1 = Thrust plate 5 = Spur gear
2 = Thrust washer 6 = Bearing inner race
3 = Collar shim 7 = Shim
4 = Roller cage (2x)

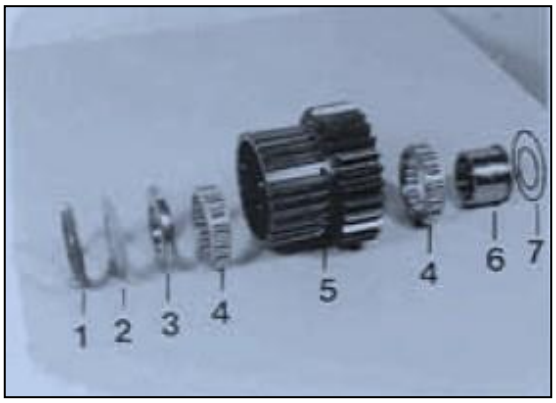


Figure 143

Spur gear K4, Version (Figure 144)

1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Spur gear
U = Needle cage
5 = Thrust washer
6 = Thrust washer
7 = Compensating plate (optional)

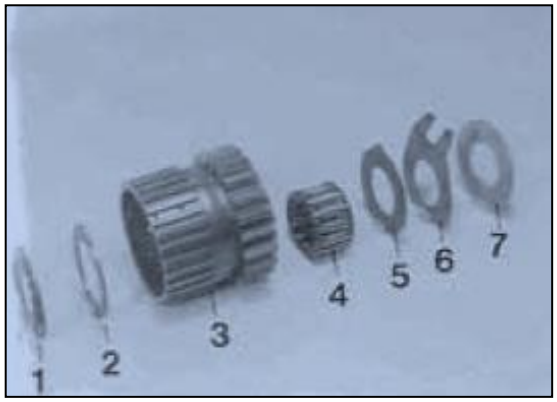


Figure 144

Install components 2 ... 6 (Figure 143), resp. 2 ... 4 (Figure 144), replace thrust plate (1) and introduce spur gear until all inner plates are received.

NOTE :

Make thrust plate (2) adhere with grease !

Figure 145

3.2.3.4 Install plate pack K3

Install plate pack and check clearance.

NOTE ;

Plate arrangement, see plate installation,

Page 119 ... 122 !

Figure 146

3.2.3.5 Pre-assemble and install spur gear K3

1 = Thrust plate

2 = Thrust washer

3 = Needle cage

4 = Spur gear

5 = Cylindrical rollers

NOTE :

Exchange cylindrical rollers 5 in sets only !

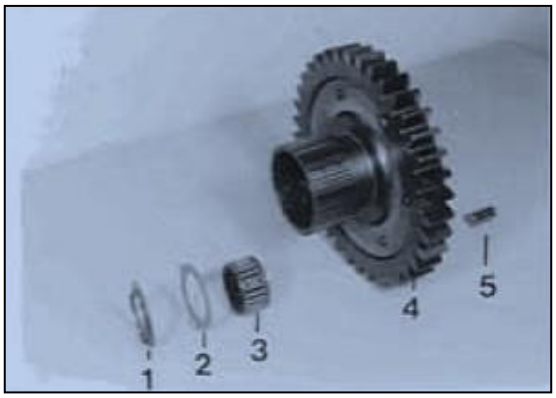


Figure 147a

Install components 2 ... 5, replace thrust plate 1 (Arrow) and introduce spur gear until all inner plates arc received.

NOTE ;

Make thrust washer 2 and cylindrical rollers 5 adhere with grease.

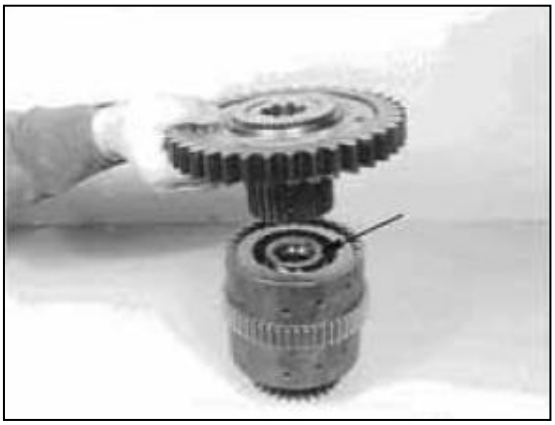


Figure 147b

3.2.3.6 Install clutch K4/K3

Adjust end play of clutch 0,1 ... 0,3 mm (Figure148 to Example “E”)

Determine Dimension I from the flange-mounted surface/axle to the plane surface/housing (Arrow).

Dimension I e.g. 251,15 mm

NOTE :

In case of spur gear bearing K4, Version "B" (Figure 144), lay forked washer and thrust washer upon the plane surface of the housing and measure up to the thrust washer.

Figure 148

Measure Dimension II from the butting face/bearing rollers to the flange-mounted surface.

Dimension II e.g. 21,00 mm

Example "C", for the determination of the housing dimension

Dimension I e.g. 251,15 mm

Dimension II e.g. - 21,00 mm

Difference = Housing dimension e.g. 230,15 mm

Place clutch on a suitable surface plate and determine Dimension 111 from the end face/cylindrical rollers to the surface plate.

Dimension III e.g. 227,20 mm

Example "D", for the determination of the installation dimension

Dimension III e.g. 227,20 mm

End play e.g. + 0,20 mm

gives installation dimension

- Clutch 227,40 mm

Example "E", for the determination of the shim

Housing dimension e.g. 230,15 mm

Installation dimension - Clutch - 227,40 mm

Difference = Shim e.g. 2,75 mm

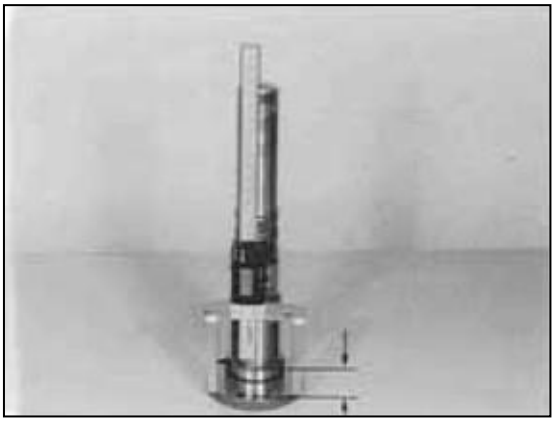


Figure 149

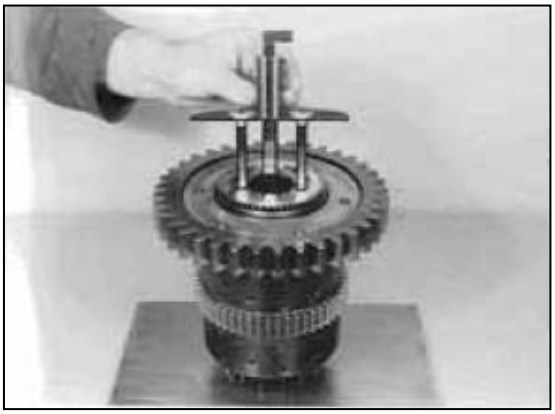


Figure 150

Insert clutch K4/KR by means of lifting device into the housing and position it.

(S) Lifting device 5870 350 041

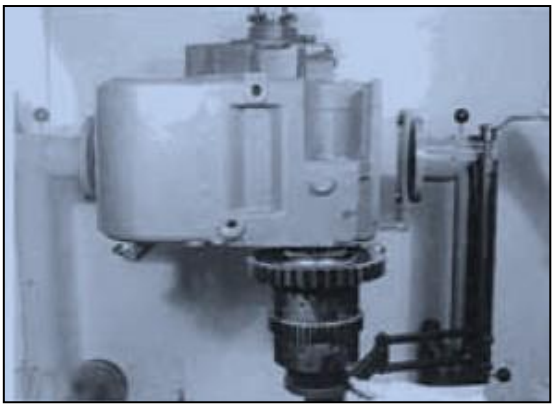


Figure 151

Align clutch by means of drift and fix it provisionally.

(S) Drift 5870 345 025

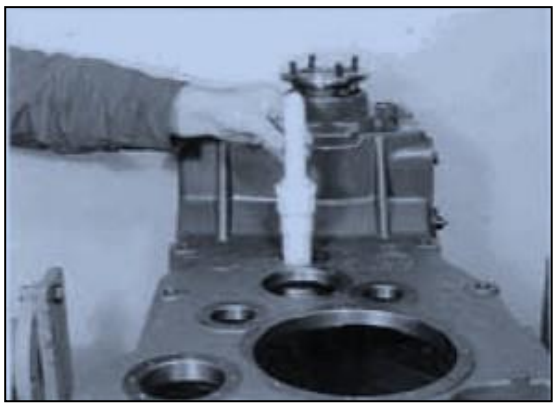


Figure 152

For the moment, tilt gear case 90° and push the compl. clutch opposite to the drive side against shoulder until contact is obtained.

Now, tilt gear case forward in the horizontal position.

Pull drift downwards until the shim (e.g. s = 2,75 mm, see Example "E") can be installed.

Now, align the complete clutch as well as the shim by means of drift again and fix it.

NOTE :

In case of spur gear bearing K4, Version "A", without forked washer and thrust washer (Figure 153) !

In case of spur gear bearing K4, Version MB", another forked washer as well as one thrust washer have to be installed in addition to the shim.

ATTENTION :

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the forked washer !

Now, tilt gear case back in the original position (180°).

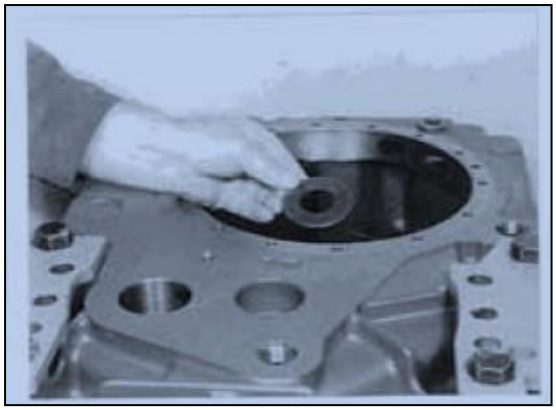


Figure 153

Squeeze in and engage rectangular rings (1).

Install O-Ring (2).

NOTE ;

Crease and align rectangular rings centrically.

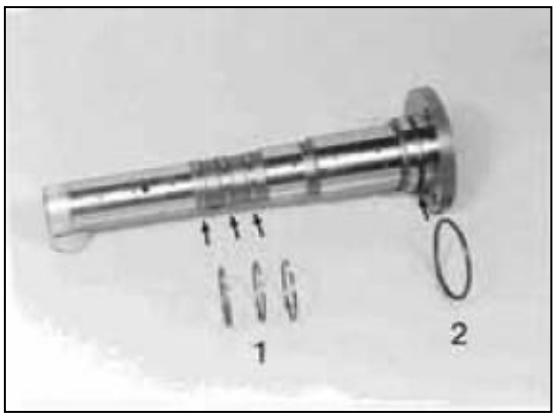


Figure 155

Install stud bolts, see Arrows !

NOTE :

Secure the stud bolts with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

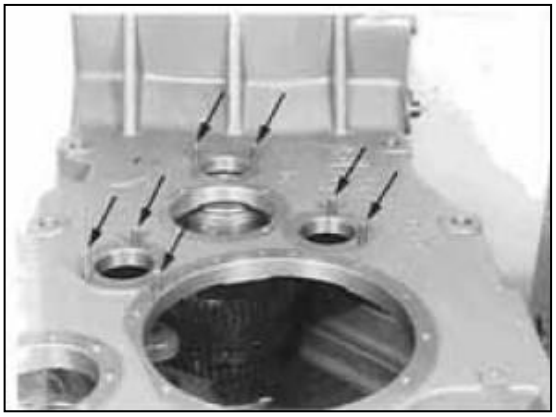


Figure 156

Heat housing bores (about 90° C).

(S) Hot-air blower	220 V	5870 221 503
(S) Hot-air blower	110 V	5870 221 501

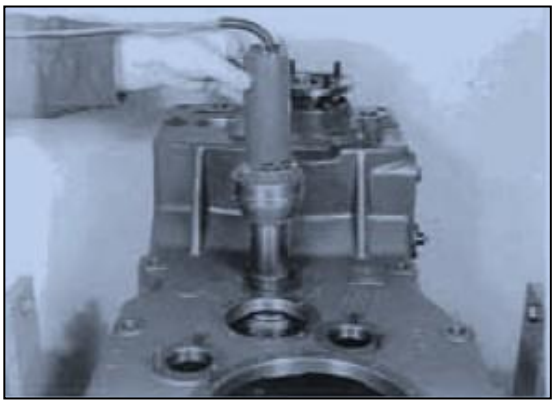


Figure 157

Thread up axle (compl.) until contact is obtained.

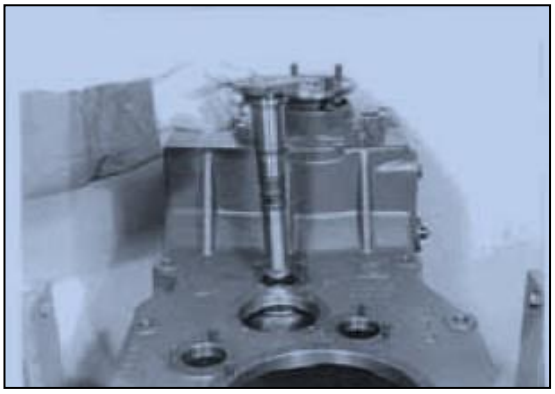


Figure 158

Fasten axle by means of hex. nuts.

Torque limit (M8/ 8.8) 23 Nm

Figure 159

Check end play of the clutch 0,1 ... 0,3 mm again and correct if necessary.

(S) Magnetic base 5870 200 055

(S) Dial indicator 5870 200 057

(S) Crow bar 5870 345 071

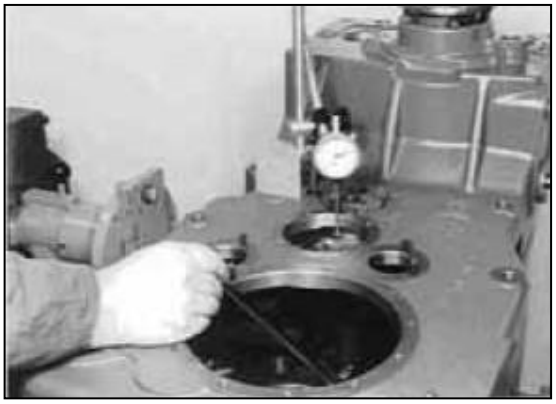


Figure 160

Check operation of the clutches KH and K3 by means of compressed air.

NOTE ;

If the components are correctly installed, the closing, resp. opening of the clutches is clearly audible !

Figure 161

3.2.4 Pre-assemble and install countershaft assembly

The illustration on the left shows the components.
1 = Closing cover
2 = Socket head screw
3 = O-Ring (installation position, see Arrow)
4 = Axle
5 = Shim
6 = Roller bearing
7 = Spur gear

NOTE :
The countershaft gear is marked on the end face. In the installed condition, the marking must be facing the drive side (upwards).

Insert shim and pre-assembled spur gear (Figure 163).

NOTE :
Pay attention to the installation position of the collar shim (Arrow) - radius on the inner diameter must show upwards !

Heat bearing bores and bearing inner race (about 90° C).

(S) Hot-air blower	220 V	5870 221 500
(S) Hot-air blower	110 V	5870 221 501

Insert axle until contact is obtained.

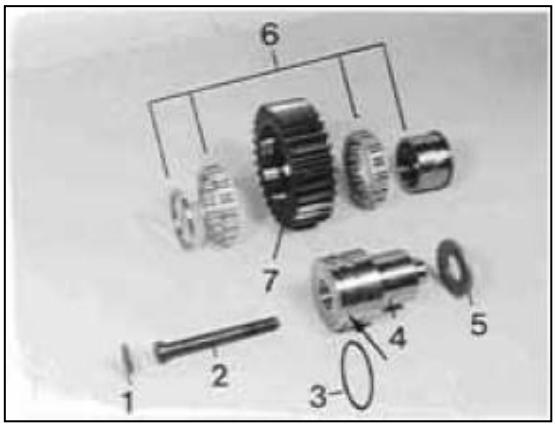


Figure 162

Figure 163

Figure 164

Figure 165

Fix the axle by means of socket head screw.

Torque limit (Ml2/10.9, DIN 7984) 80 Nm

NOTE :

Secure socket head screw with Loctite (Type-No. 242).

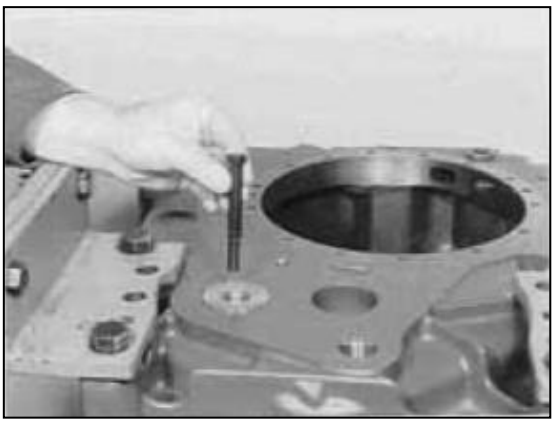


Figure 166

Install closing cover.

NOTE ;

Wet contact areas with Loctite (Type-No.270).

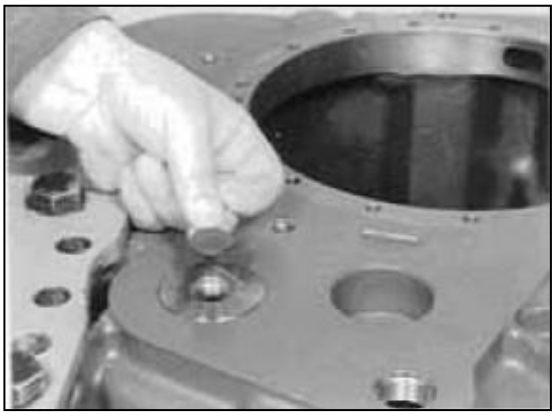


Figure 167

3.2.5 Clutch KR/K2

NOTE :

The pre-assembly of the plate carrier KR/K2 has to be carried out accordingly like that of the plate carrier K4/K3, see Page 116 and 117 .

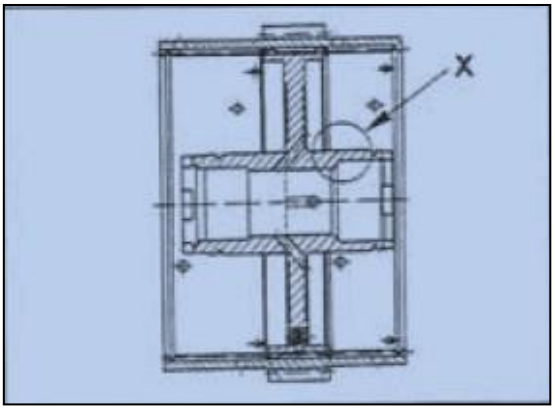


Figure 168

ATTENTION :

Pay attention to the different plate carriers !

Plate carrier KR/K2 in the zone X without oil hole (Figure 168).

Plate carrier KV/K1 in the zone X, with oil hole (Figure 169).

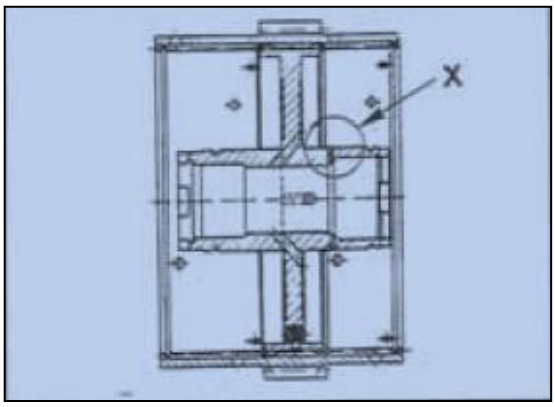


Figure 169

3.2.5.1 Plate pack KR

Install plate pack and check clearance.

NOTE :

Plate arrangement, see

Plate installation, Page 118 ... 122 !

Figure 170

3.2.5.2 Pre-assemble and install spur gear KR

NOTE :

According to the Transmission Version, resp. operating conditions, different spur gear bearings arc possible, see corresponding

Spare Parts List, as well as Fig.171, 172a and 172b !

Spur gear bearing KR, Version "A" Fig. 171

1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Needle cage
4 = Spur gear
5 = Plate
6 = Hex. head screws
7 = Thrust washer
8 = Forked washer
9 = Shim (optional)

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws (M6/8.8 = 9,5 Nm)
with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

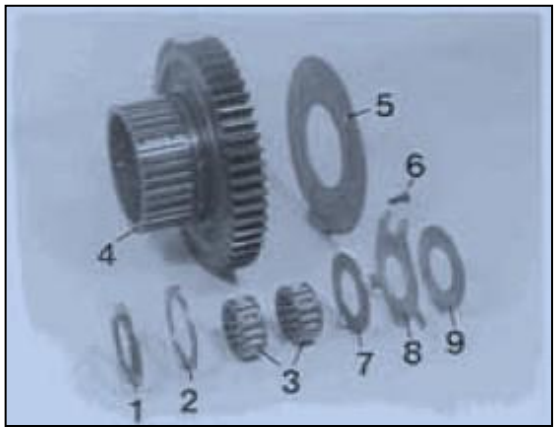


Figure 171

Spur gear bearing KR, Version “B" Fig. 172a

1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Roller bearing (compl.)
4 = Spur gear
5 = Plate
6 = Hex. head screw
7 = Shim (optional)

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws (M6/8.8 = 9,5 Nm)
with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Pay attention to the installation position of the bearing inner races (oil grooves), see Arrows !

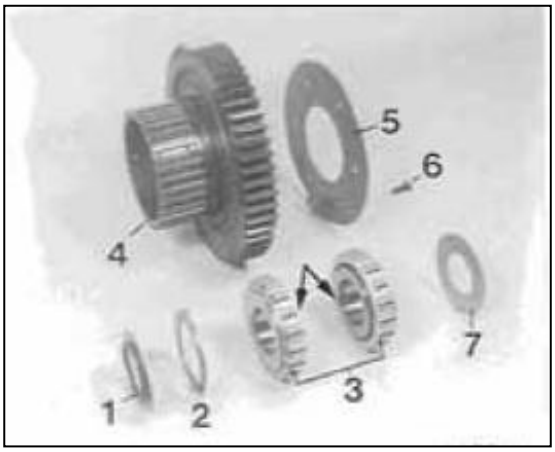


Figure 172a

Spur gear bearing KR, Version “C" Fig. 172 b)

1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Thrust washer
4 = Cylindrical rollers(short)
5 = Disk
6 = Cylindrical rollers(long)
7 = Thrust washer
8 = Spur gear
9 = Plate
10 = Hex. head scrcws
11 = Thrust washer
12 = Forked washer
13 = Shim (optional)

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws (M6/8.8 = 9,5 Nm) with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

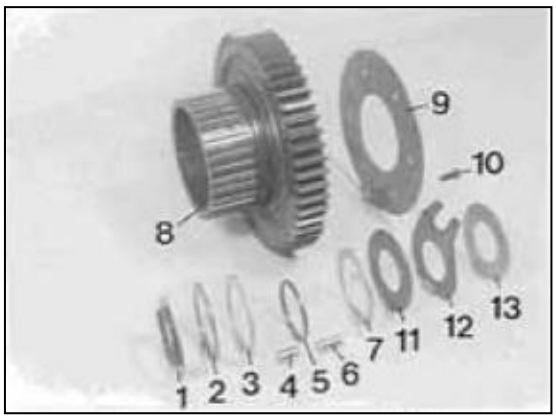


Figure 172b

Install components 2 ... 6 (Fig. 171 and 172 a) resp. 2 ... 10 (Fig. 172 b).

Replace thrust plate 1 (Arrow) and thread up spur gear until all inner plates are received.

NOTE ;

Make thrust washers and cylindrical rollers adhere with grease !

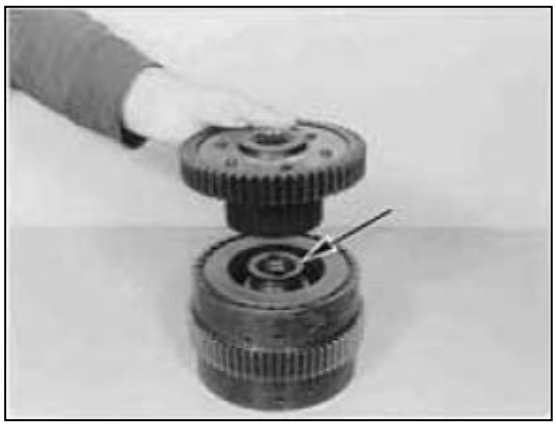


Figure 173

3.2.5.3 Plate pack K2

Install plate pack and check clearance.

NOTE ;

Plate arrangement, see
Plate installation, Page 118 ... 122 !

Figure 174

3.2.5.4 Pre-assemble and install spur gear K2

NOTE :

According to the Transmission Version, resp. operating conditions, different spur gear bearings are possible, see corresponding Spare Parts List as well as the following Figures (175 and 176) !

Spur gear bearing K2, Version "A" Fig. 175

1 = Thrust plate

2 = Thrust washer

3 = Angle ring

4 = Spur gear

5 = Roller cage (long)

6 = Angle ring

7 = Angle ring

8 = Roller cage (short)

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the roller cage (8), the larger inner diameter of the brass cage is showing outwards (Arrow) !

The broad butting faces of the angle rings are always facing the bearing rollers !

Make thrust washer (2) adhere with grease !

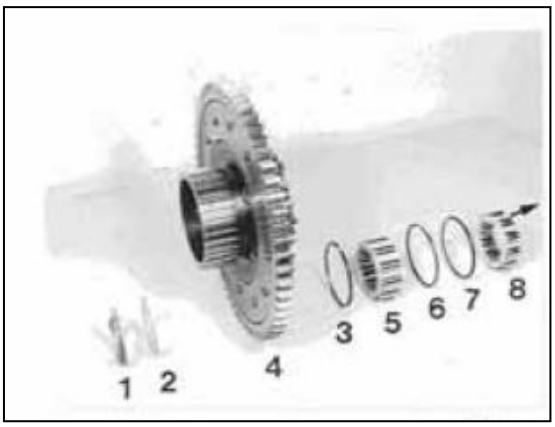


Figure 175

Spur gear bearing K2, Version "B" Fig. 176

1 = Thrust plate

2 = Thrust washer

3 = Spur gear

4 = Needle cage

5 = Ring

6 = Roller cage

NOTE :

pay attention to the installation position of the roller cage (5), the larger inner diameter of the brass cage is showing outwards (Arrow) !

In case of an equal inner diameter, the installation position is optional.

Make thrust washer adhere with grease !

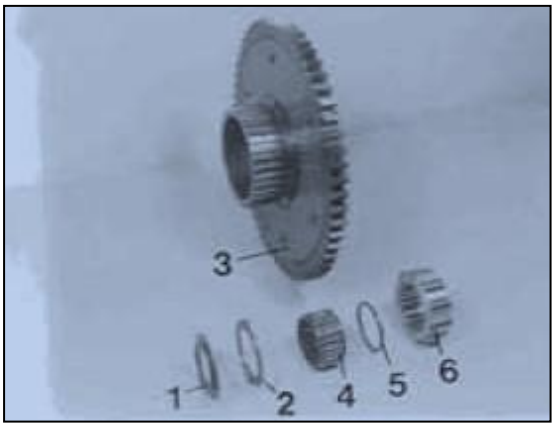


Figure 176

Install components 2 ... 8 (Figure 175), resp. 2 ... 6 (Figure 176).

Replace thrust plate 1 (Arrow) and thread up spur gear until all inner plates arc received.

NOTE :

Make thrust washer adhere with grease !

Figure 177

3.2.5.5 Install clutch KR/K2

Adjust end play of the clutch 0,1 ... 0,3 mm

(Figure 178 ... Example “H")

Insert forked washer and thrust washer (Arrow) and measure Dimension Ⅰ from the flange mounted surface to the thrust washer.

Dimension Ⅰ e.g. 252,20 mm

Now, remove forked washer and thrust washer again.

NOTE :

In case of spur gear bearing KR, Version "B" (Figure 172 a), measure up to the plane surface/housing (without forked washer and thrust washer) !

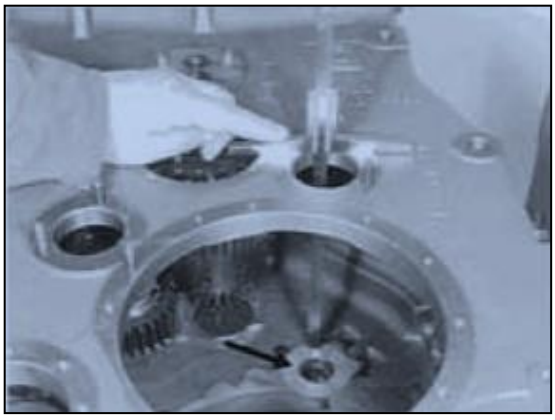


Figure 178

Measure Dimension II from the butting face/bearing rollers to the flange-mounted surface.

Dimension Ⅱ e.g. 22,55 mm

Example “F" for the determination of the housing dimension

Dimension Ⅰ e.g. 252,20 mm

Dimension Ⅱ e.g. - 22,55 mm

Difference = Housing dimension e.g. 229,65 mm

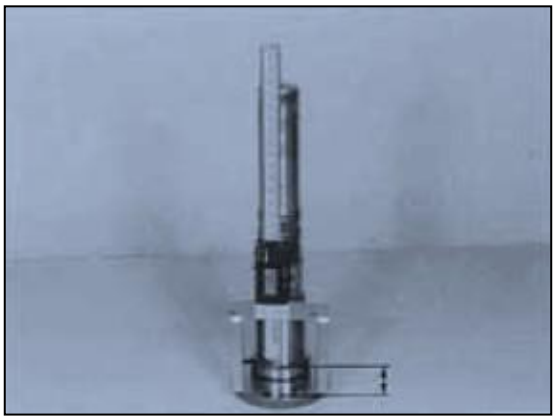


Figure 179

Put the clutch on a suitable surface plate and determine Dimension III from the end face/cylindrical rollers to the surface plate, see Figures 180 and 181 !

DimensionIII e.g. 227,65 mm

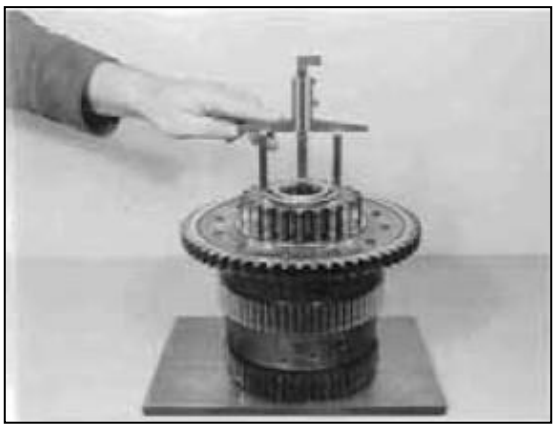


Figure 180

Example "G" for the determination of the installation dimension

DimensionIII e.g. 227,65 mm

End play e.g. + 0,20 mm

gives Installation Dimension

- Clutch e.g. 227,85 mm

Example "H" for the determination of the shim

Housing dimension e.g. 229,65 mm

Installation dimension

- Clutch e.g. – 227,85 mm

Difference = Shim e.g. s = 1,80 mm

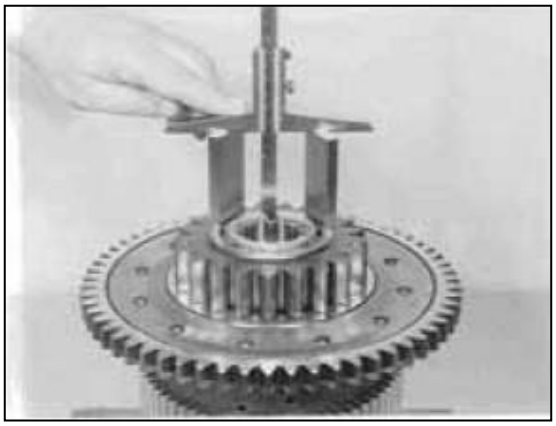


Figure 181

Insert clutch KR/K2 in the housing, using lifting device.

NOTE :

The installation of the shims and the fixing of the clutch has to be done along with the clutch KV/K1 !

(S) Lifting device 5870 350 041

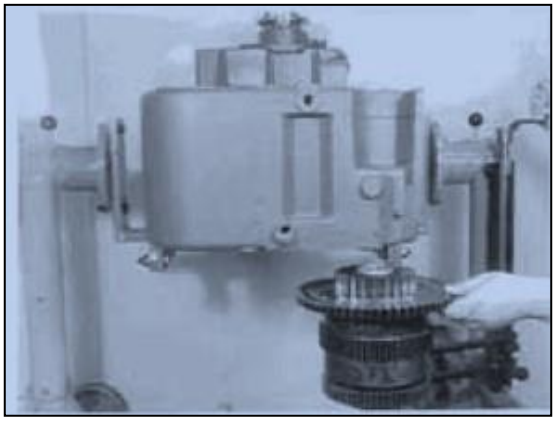


Figure 182

3.2.6 Clutch KV/K1

NOTE :

The pre-assembly of the plate carrier KV/K1 has to be carried out accordingly like that of the plate carrier K4/K3, see Page 116 and 117.

ATTENTION ;

Pay attention to the different plate carriers, see Figure 148 and 169 !

Figure 183

3.2.6.1 Plate pack KV

Install plate pack and check clearance.

NOTE :

Plate arrangement, see

Plate installation. Page 118 ... 122 !

3.2.6.2 Pre-assemble and install spur gear KV

NOTE ;

According to the Transmission Version, resp. operating conditions, different spur gear bearings are possible, see corresponding Spare Parts List as well as Figures 184 and 185 !

Spur gear bearing KV, Version "A" (Fig. 184)
1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Roller bearing
4 = Spur gear
5 = Plate
6 = Hex. head screws (M6/8.8 = 9,5 Nm)
7 = Shim (optional)

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws (5) with Loctite (Type-No. 270) ! Pay attention to the installation position of the bearing inner races (oil grooves), see Arrows !

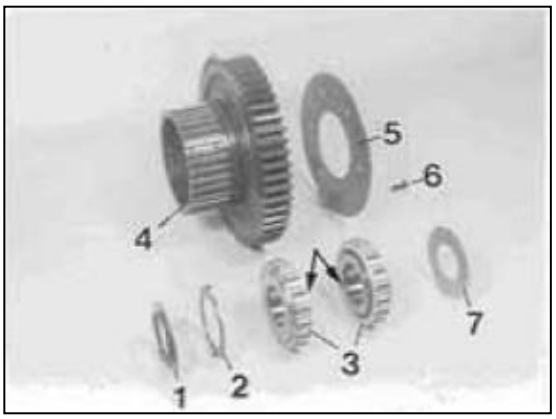


Figure 184

Spur gear bearing KV, Version "B" (Fig. 185)

1 = Thrust plate	8 = Spur gear
2 = Disk	9 = Plate
3 = Thrust washer	10 = Hex.head screws
4 = Cylindrical rollers(short)	(M6/8.8= 9,5 Nm)
5 = Disk	11 = Thrust washer
6 = Cylindrical rollers	12 = Forked washer
7 = Thrust washer	

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws (10) with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Install long cylindrical rollers (according to the Version) on the converter side !

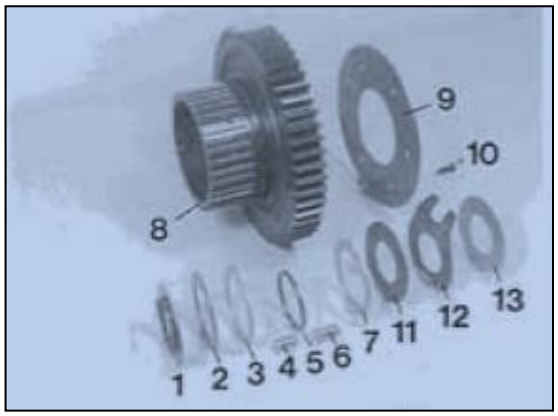


Figure 185

Install components 2 ... 6 (Figure 180), resp. 2 ... 10 (Figure 185).
Replace thrust plate 1 and thread up spur gear until all inner plates arc received.

NOTE :

Make thrust washers as well as cylindrical rollers adhere with grease.

Figure 186

3.2.6.3 Plate pack K1

Install plate pack and check clearance.

NOTE :

Plate arrangement, see

Plate installation, Page 118 ... 122 !

Figure 187

3.2.6.4 Pre-assemble and install spur gear K 1

NOTE :

According to the Transmission Version, resp. operating conditions, different spur gear bearings arc possible, see corresonding Spare Parts List as well as the following Figures(188 … 190) !

Spur gear bearing K1, Version "A" Fig. 188

1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Needle cage
4 = Spur gear
5 = Sleeve
6 = Ball bearing

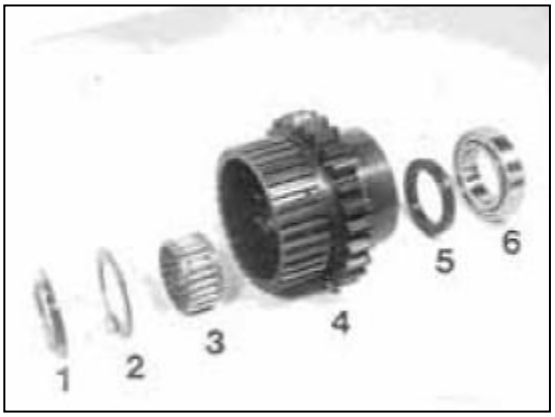


Figure 188

Spur gear bearing K1, Version "B" Fig. 189
1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Spur gear
4 = Angle ring
5 = Roller cage
6 = Circlip (2x)
7 = Ball bearing
8 = Disk (optional)

NOTE :

Make thrust washer (2) adhere with grease.
Install broad butting faces of angle rings (4) always facing the bearing rollers. Adjust ball bearing (7) free of play by means of disk !

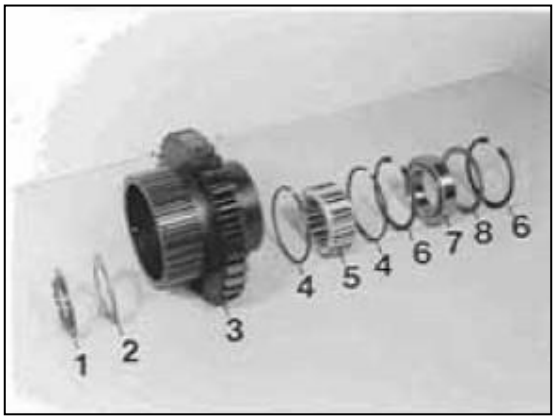


Figure 189

Spur gear bearing K1, Version "C" (K1-Fixing, Figure 190 and 191)
1 = Thrust plate
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Needle cage
4 = Spur gear
5 = Sleeve
6 = Ball bearing
7 = Disk (optional)
8 = Circlip

NOTE ;

Make thrust washer adhere with grease. Pay attention to :he installation position of the sleeve, Figure 190 !

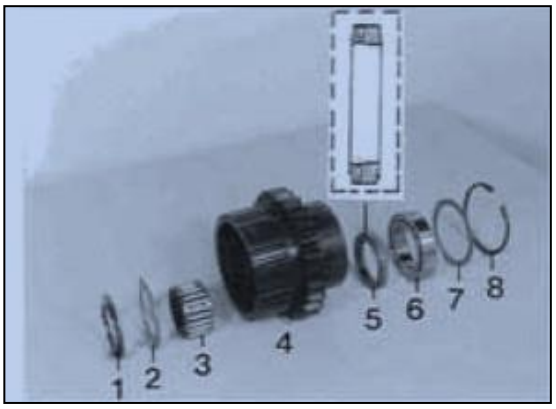


Figure 190

Adjust ball bearing (6) free of play by means of disk ! Figure 191 shows the fixing of the spur gear after the installation of the clutch.
1 = Clutch shaft
2 = Housing
3 = Cylindrical roller
4 = Sleeve
5 = Set screw
6 = Ball

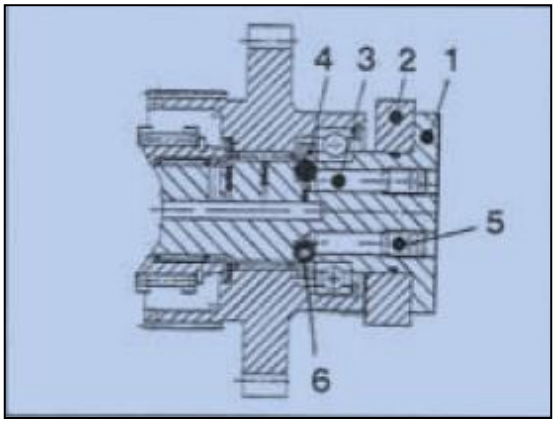


Figure 191

Install components according to Figure 188, 189, resp. 190.
Replace thrust plate (1) and thread up spur gear until all inner plates are received.

Figure 192

3.2.6.5 Install clutch KV/K1

Adjust end play of clutch 0,1 ... 0,3 mm
Determine Dimension Ⅰ from the flange-mounted surface/axle to the plane surface/housing.
Dimension 1 e.g. 254,40 mm
NOTE:
In case of spur gear bearing KV, Version "B" (Figure 185), lay forked washer and thrust washer upon the plane surface of the housing and measure up to the thrust washer.

Figure 193

Measure Dimension II from the butting face/bearing rollers to the flange-mounted surface.
Dimension Ⅱ e.g. 27,00 mm

Example “J ” , for the determination of the housing dimension .
Dimension Ⅰ e.g. 254,40 mm
Dimension Ⅱ e.g. - 27,00 mm
Difference = Housing dimension e.g. 227,40 mm

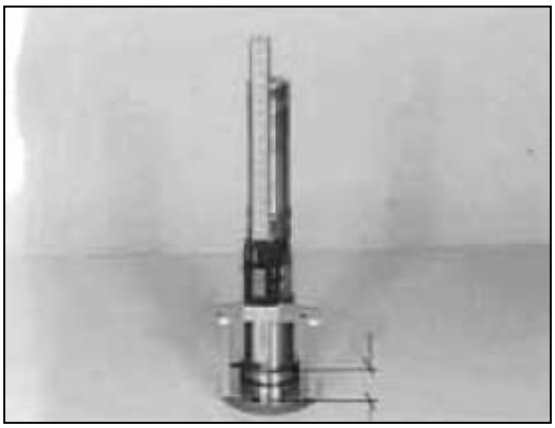


Figure 194

Place clutch on a suitable surface plate and determine Dimension III from the end face of the bearing inner race to the surface plate.

Dimension III e.g. 223,80 mm

Example “K”, for the determination of the installation housing dimension .

Dimension III e.g. 223,80 mm

End play e.g. + 0,20 mm

gives Installation dimension

- Clutch 224,00 mm

Example "L” for the determination of the shim

Housing dimension e.g. 227,40 mm

Installation dimension

- Clutch e.g. - 224,00 mm

Difference = Shim e.g. s = 3,40 mm

Figure 195

Insert clutch KV/K1 by means of lifting device in the housing and position it.

ATTENTION :

For different Transmission variants, the output gear of the lateral power take-off must be installed prior to the installation of the clutch axles KV/K1 and KR/K2 (narrow installation space).

If necessary, handle steps of Figure 216 ... 219 first.

Figure 196

Align the two clutches (KV/K1 and KR/K2) by means of drift and fix them provisionally.

(S) Montagedorn 5870 345 025

Figure 197

Install thrust washer, locked washer and shim, resp. shim (according to the Version)(Figure 198 ... 201)

For the moment, tilt housing 90° and place the complete clutches in direction of Arrow against shoulder.
Now, tilt gear case forward in the horizontal position.

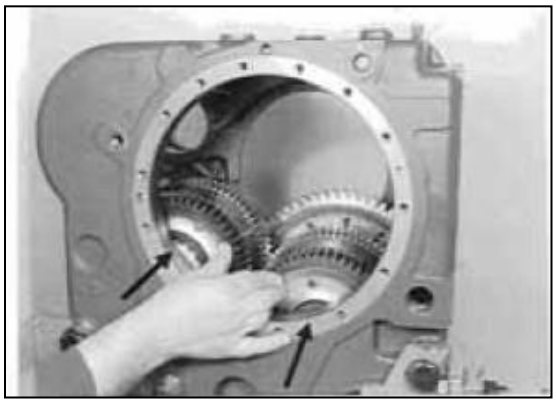


Figure 198

Pull drift downwards until the thrust washer, forked washer and shim (Figure 199), resp. the shim (Figure 200) can be installed.
Now, align the complete clutch as well as the shims again, using drift, and fix them.
NOTE :

Figure 199

Shim thickness for KV/KI and KR/K2, see corresponding Examples 1
Install thrust washer (plastic) facing the spur gear !
Pay attention to a correct fixing of the forked washer !

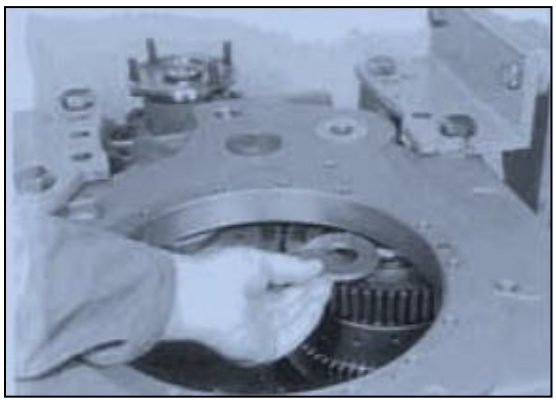


Figure 200

Tilt gear case in a vertical position (90°) and place the complete clutches in direction of Arrow against shoulder.
Now, tilt forward in the original position (Figure 197).

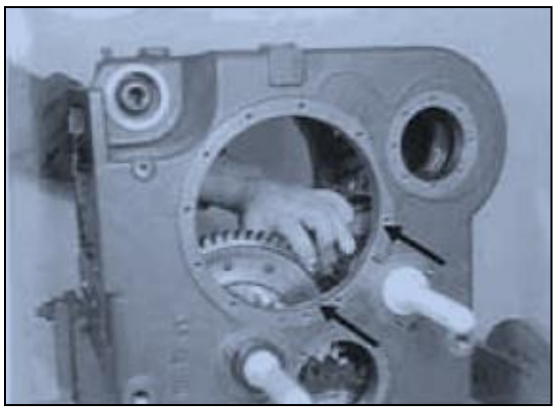


Figure 201

Install axle KR/K2 (Figure 202 ... 205)

Squeeze in rectangular rings (1) and engage them.

Install O-Ring (2).

NOTE ;

Grease rectangular rings and align them centrically !

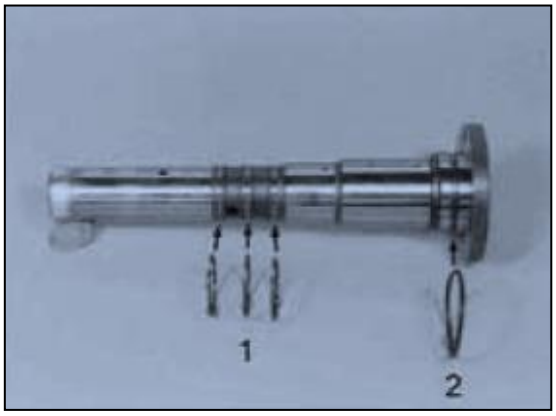


Figure 202

Heat housing bore (about 90° C).

(S) Hot-air blower	220 V	5870 221 500
(S) Hot-air blower	110 V	5870 221 501

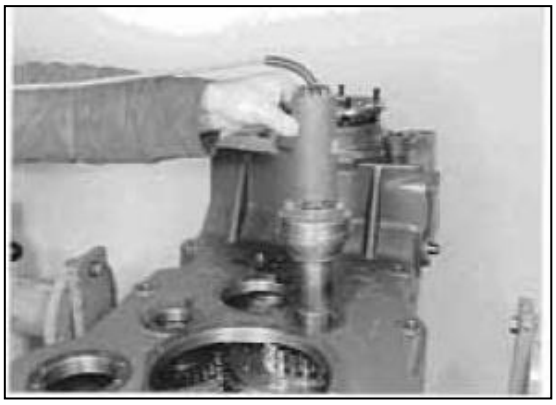


Figure 203

Thread up axle (compl.) until contact is obtained.

Figure 204

Fasten axle by means of hex. nuts.

Torque limit (M8/ 8) 23 Nm

Figure 205

Check operation of clutches KR and K2 by means of compressed air.

NOTE :

If the components are correctly installed, the closing, resp. opening of the clutches is clearly audible !

Install axle KV/KI (Figure 207 ... 210)

NOTE :

The following steps (Figure 207 ... 210) are describing the installation of the clutch axle for the Version with internal Spur gear fixing K1 (see also Figure 190 and 191) !

In case of the Version without Spur gear fixing, install the clutch axle KV/KI accordingly as KR/K2 (Figure 202 ... 206).

Figure 206

The illustration on the left shows the components.

1= Clutch axle
2 = Rectangular rings (3 pieces)
3 = Ball (2 pieces)
4 = O-Ring
5 = Cylindrical roller (2 pieces)
6 = Set screw (2 pieces)

Squeeze in and engage rectangular rings. Install O-Ring.

Insert the two balls with grease in the bores (Arrow).

NOTE ;

Cylindrical rollers and set screws will be installed later !

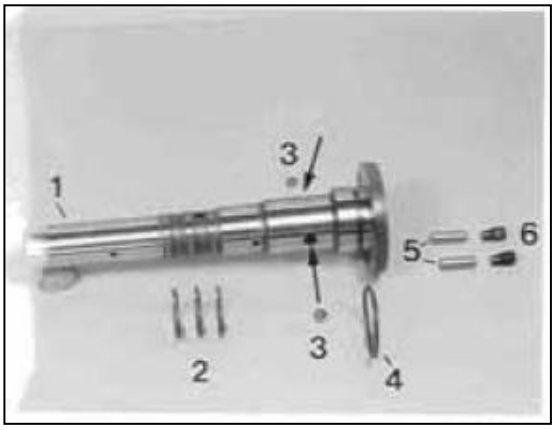


Figure 207

Heat housing bore (about 90℃) and introduce the pre-assembled axle until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Crease and align rectangular rings centrically prior to the introduction of the axle !

Figure 208

Fasten axle by means of hex. nuts (2 pieces).

Torque limit (M8/8) 23 Nm

Figure 209

Insert cylindrical rollers with the conical surface showing downwards in the bores (Arrows), and fix them by means of set screws.

Torque limit 10 Nm

NOTE :

To ensure the correct fixing of the spur gear, the spur gear K1 must be lifted, at the uniform tightening of the two set screws, in direction of the Arrow !

Figure 210

Insert set screws with Loctite (Type-No. 241)!

Check operation of the clutches K1 and KV by means of compressed air.

NOTE ;

If the components are correctly installed, the closing, resp. opening of the clutches is clearly audible I

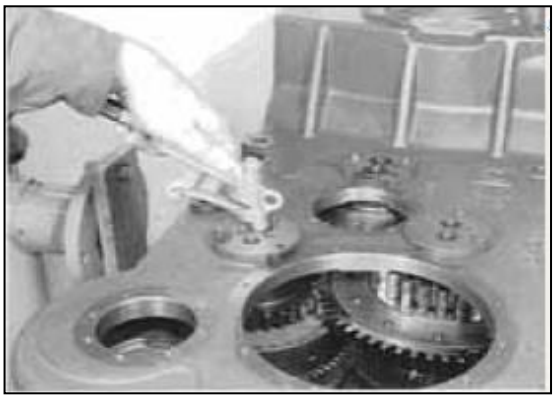


Figure 211

Check end play of the clutches 0,1 ... 0,3 mm again and correct if necessary !

Figure 212

3.2.7 **Emergency steering pump**

Squeeze in circlip (4), assemble spur gear (3) until contact is obtained and fix it free of play by means of disk (2) and circlip (1).
Introduce O-Ring into the annular groove (Arrow) and grease it.

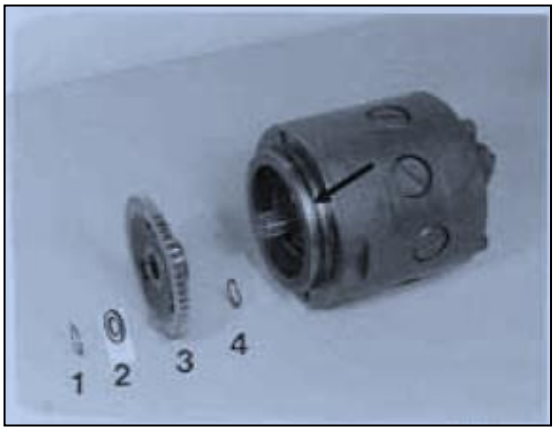


Figure 213

Insert studs (4 pieces) with Loctite (Type-No. 241) and assemble emergency steering pump until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the radial installation position !

A slight rotation on the final drive makes the threading up easier !

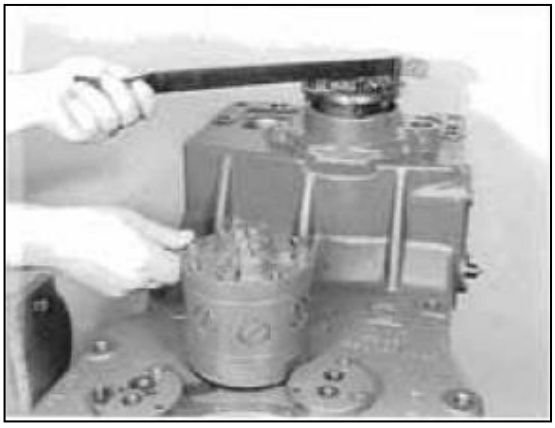


Figure 214

Fasten emergency steering pump by means of hex. nuts.

Torque limit (M8/ 8) 23 Nm

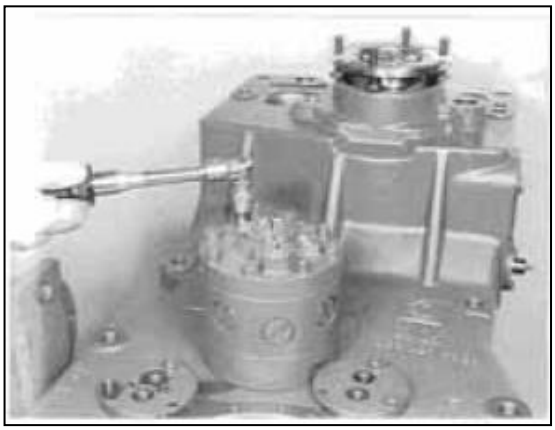


Figure 215

3.2.8 Lateral power take-off

Squeeze the two snap rings into the groove of the lower housing bore.

Figure 216

Lay expanding ring (S) upon the snap rings and mount ball bearing, with the recess showing upwards (Figure 217).

Now, tap and drive ball bearing in, until the upper snap ring engages in the ball bearing groove (Figure 218).

(S) Expanding ring 5870 345 038

Figure 217

Figure 218

Position spur gear with the long hub side showing downwards.

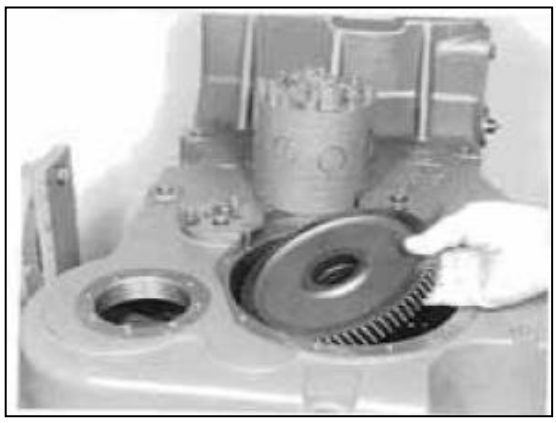


Figure 219

Squeeze snap ring into the annular groove (Arrow) of the driving shaft.

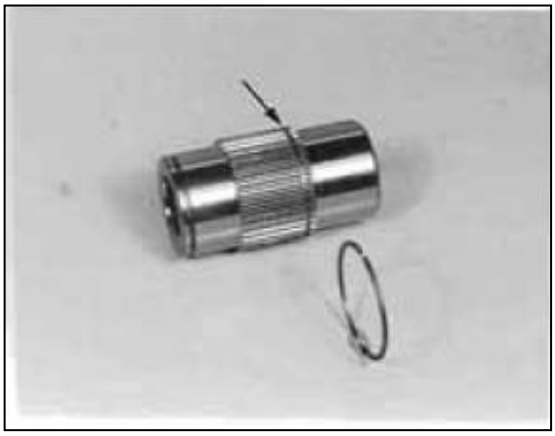


Figure 220

Heat ball bearing (Figure 221) and introduce driving shaft until contact is obtained (Figure 222).

Figure 221

Figure 222

Fix driving shaft by means of circlip (Arrow).

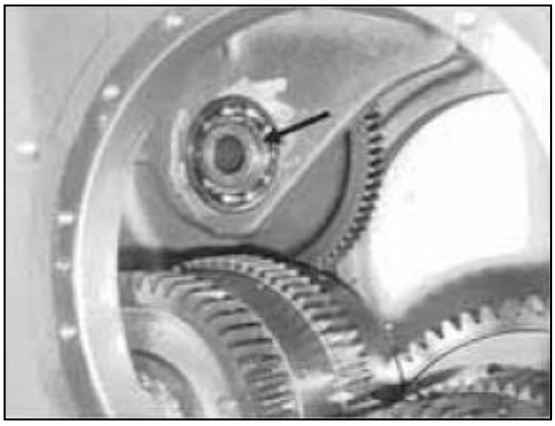


Figure 223

Press needle bush (Arrow) by means of drift into the pump flange until contact is obtained and fix it by engaging the snap ring.

NOTE ;

The needle bush is marked on one end face.

At the pressing in, the marking must be facing the drift (upwards).

(S) Drift 5870 506 060

Figure 224

Install two adjusting screws, mount flat gasket and place pump flange against shoulder.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 200 011

Figure 225

Fasten pump flange by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8, DIN 6912) 16 Nm

Figure 226

Install oil supply - power take-off.

NOTE :

Use new sealing rings !

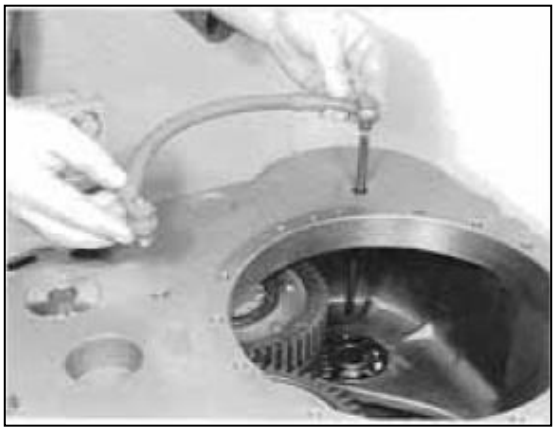


Figure 227

Fasten shield by means of hex. head screw (mount flat washer).

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screw with Loctite (Type-No. 241) !

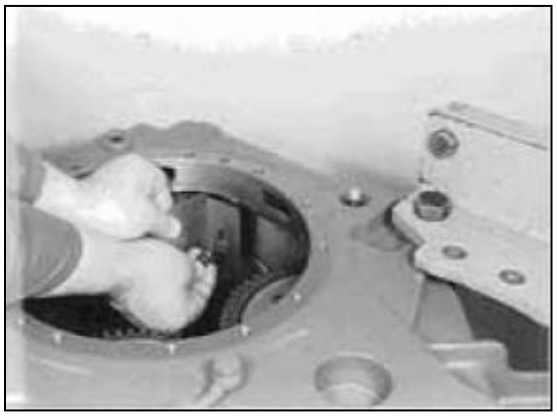


Figure 228

3.29 Converter control valve Components

1 = Disk
2 = Spring
3 = Spool
4 = Valve sleeve
5 = O-Ring
6 = Screw plug
7 = Connecting piece (temperature)
8 = O-Ring

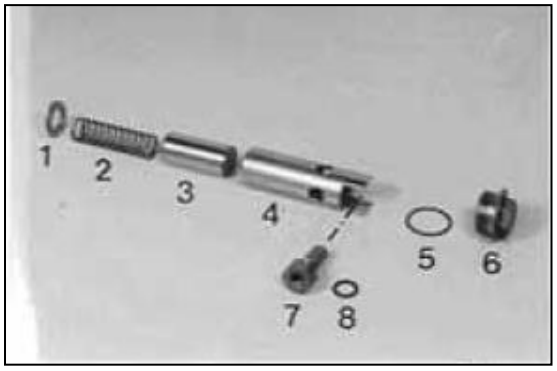


Figure 229

Thread up disk, spring, spool and the valve sleeve.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the valve sleeve !

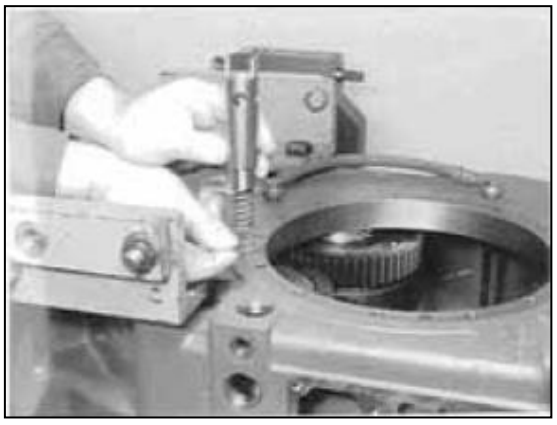


Figure 230

Install connecting piece.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position, see Figure 229 !

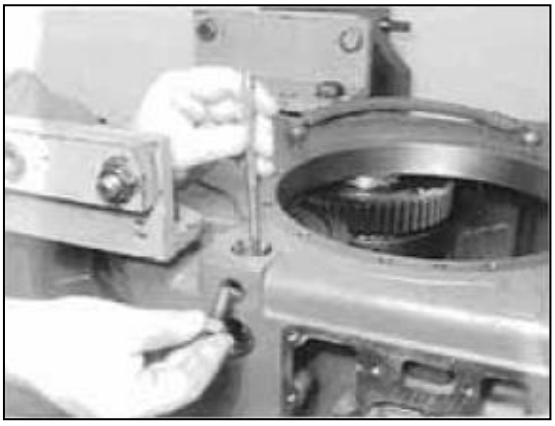


Figure 231

Install screw plug.

Figure 232

Mount closing cover until it is flush.

NOTE ;

Wet sealing surface with Loctite (Type-No.270).

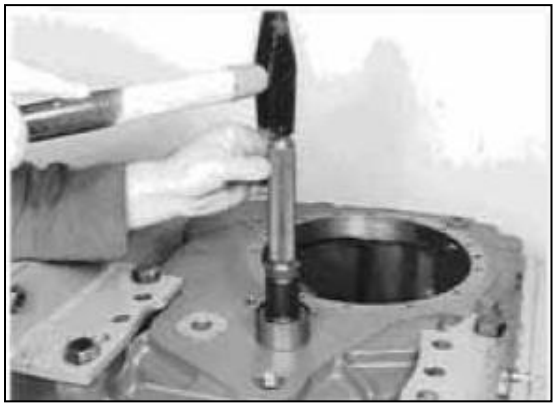


Figure 233

3.2.10 Converter charge pump and control pressure pump

Squeeze rectangular rings into the annular grooves of the drive shaft and engage them.

Insert the two roll pins (1,5x5 and 2,5x5 mm) flush-mounted in the bore (Arrow).

Figure 234

Press bearing outer race firmly against shoulder

Figure 235

Thread up drive shaft.

Figure 236

Install bearing inner race.

Figure 237

Position spur gear with the long hub side (Arrow) showing upwards (facing the ball bearing).

Figure 238

Back up drive shaft and oil supply flange by means of Assembly aid (S).

Assemble disk (according to the Version with or without).

NOTE :

The exact installation position of the drive shaft is determined by means of the Assembly aid !

(S) Assembly aid 5870 345 032

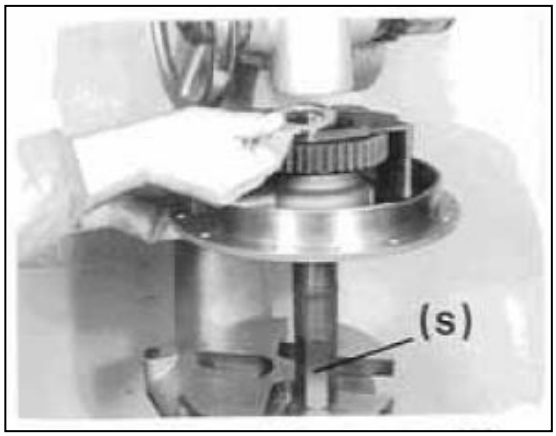


Figure 239

Press ball bearing against shoulder.

Figure 240

Squeeze circlip into the annular groove of the drive shaft.

Figure 241

The Illustration on the right shows the output shaft along with bearing as well as the pump.
1 = Circlip
2 = Ball bearing
3 = Shim (optional)
4 = Pump
5 = Ball bearing
6 = Circlip
7 =Rectangular ring
8 = Output shaft
9 = Adjusting spring
Squeeze in circlip (Arrow).

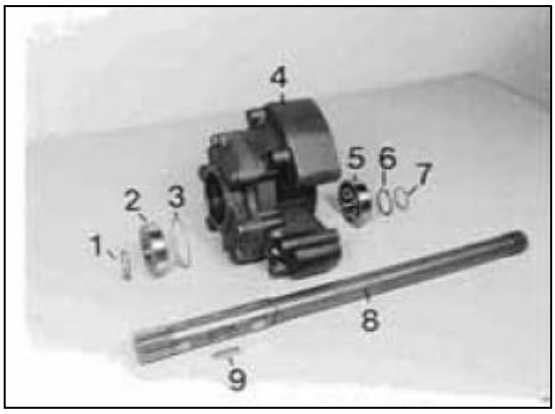


Figure 242

Press ball bearing against circlip until contact is obtained.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation position of the ball bearing, closed bearing side is facing the circlip (upwards) !

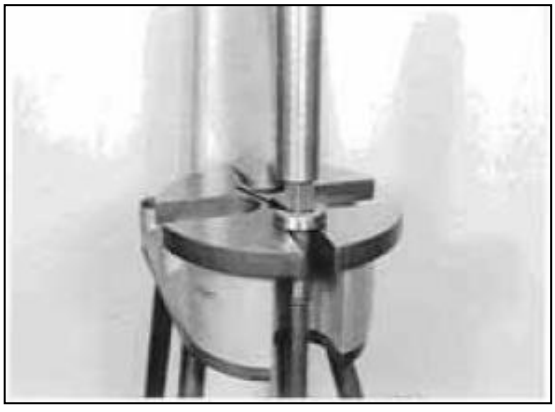


Figure 243

Install adjusting spring (Arrow).

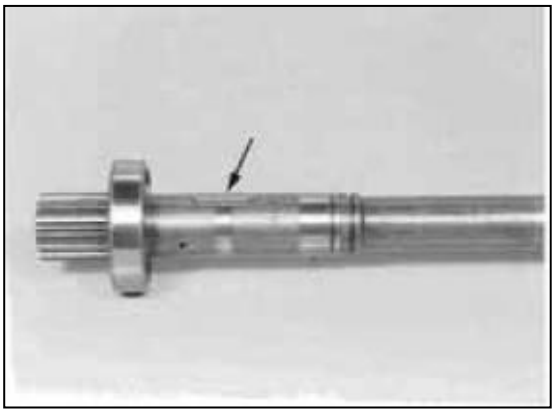


Figure 244

Install shim s = 0,8 mm (empirical value) and press output shaft against shoulder.

NOTE :

The end play of the output shaft of 0,2…0,4 mm is adjusted by means of shim (e.g.s = 0,8 mm) !

Figure 245

Press ball bearing against shoulder, with the closed side showing upwards.

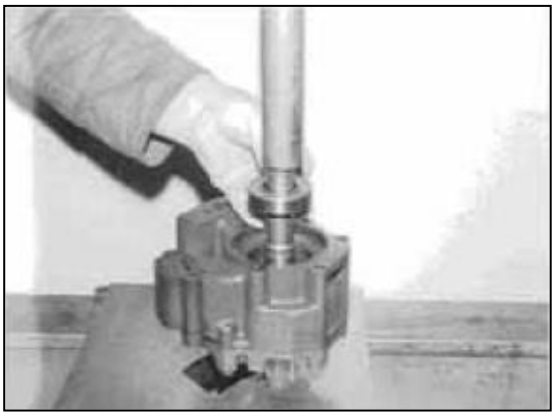


Figure 246

Squeeze in circlip.

Check end play 0,2 ~ 0,4 mm between circlip and bearing inner race, using feeler gauge.

NOTE :

In case of deviations from the required end play, correct by means of shim (Figure 245).

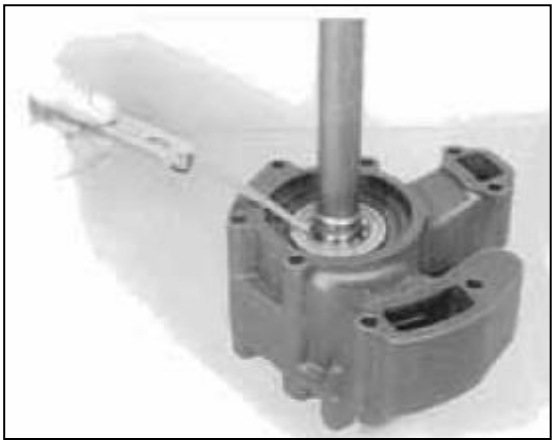


Figure 247

Relax the output shaft bearing by tapping.

NOTE ;

Use plastic hammer !

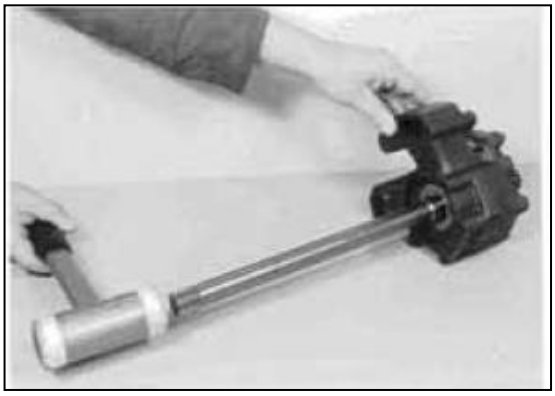


Figure 248

Squeeze in rectangular ring (Arrow) and engage it.

Now, grease rectangular ring and align it centrically.

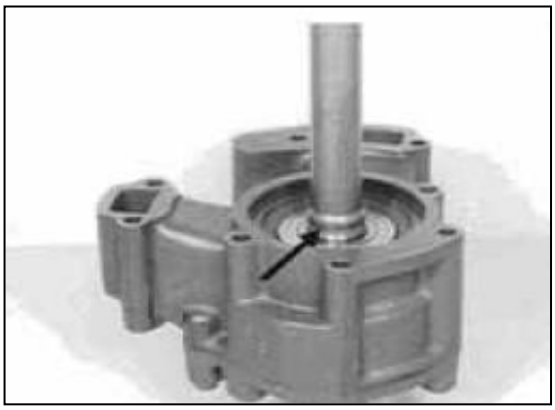


Figure 249

Adjust the end play of the drive shaft bearing 0,2 ... 0,4 mm (Figure 250 ... Example “M”)

Determine Dimension Ⅰ from the flange-mounted surface to the contact area/ball bearing.

Dimension Ⅰ e.g. 7,10 mm

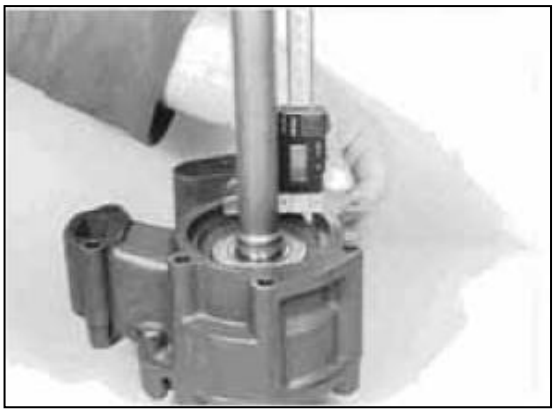


Figure 250

Replace gasket and measure Dimension II from the end face/ball bearing to the gasket (flange-mounted surface).

Dimension 11 e.g. 6,05 mm

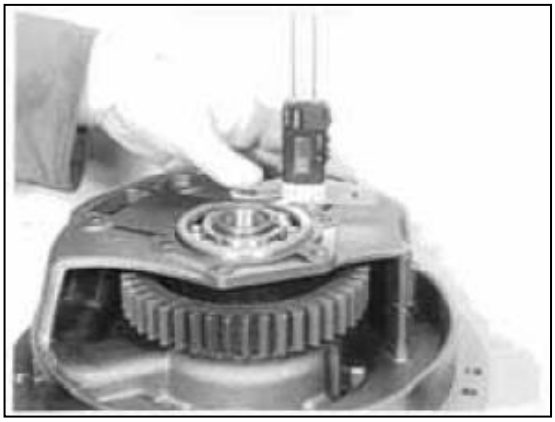


Figure 251

Example "M" ;

Dimension I	7,10 mm
Dimension II	- 6,05 mm
Difference	1,05 mm
Required end play e.g.	- 0,30 mm
gives Shim e.g.	s = 0,75 mm

Make shim (e.g. s = 0,75 mm) adhere with grease.

Figure 252

Install two adjusting screws, mount flat gasket and install converter relief valve (ball and spring).

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

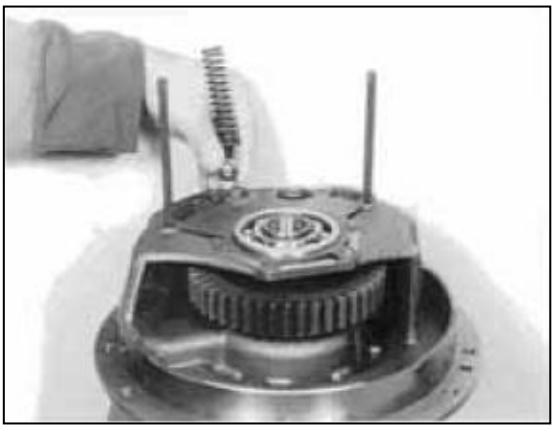


Figure 253

Place pre-assembled pump against oil supply flange and fasten it by means of hex. Head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

Figure 254

Relax the output shaft bearing by tapping and check the free movement of the spur gear.

Figure 255

Heat housing bore.

(S) Hot-air blower	220 V	5870 221 500
(S) Hot-air blower	110 V	5870 221 501
(S) Pre-heating sleeve		5870 801 003

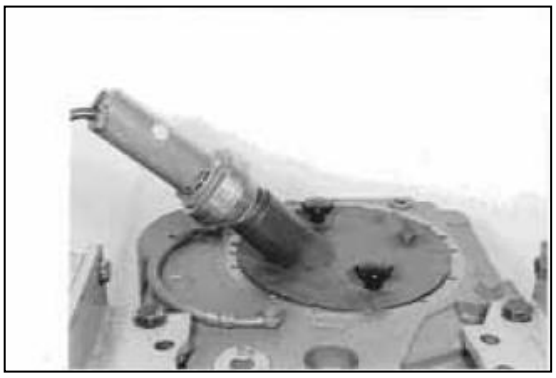


Figure 256

Wet oil supply flange in the area of suction ports and pressure ports with Loctite (Type- No. 221).

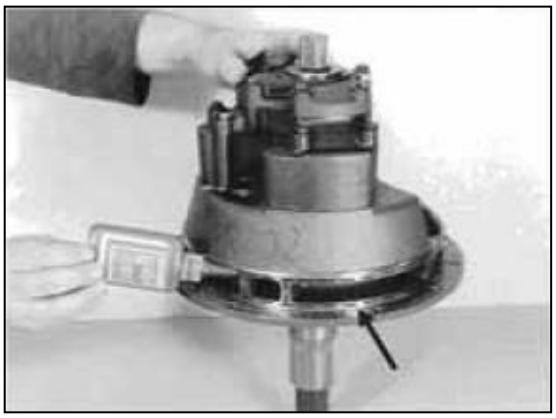


Figure 257

Install two adjusting screws. Install flat gasket (Arrow) and thread up oil supply flange until contact is obtained.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

ATTENTION ;

For different Transmission Versions, one O-Ring must be installed instead of the flat gasket !

Installation position of the O-Ring see Arrow/ Figure 257 !

Figure 258

NOTE ;
To ensure an exact sealing of the suction ports and pressure ports, resp. to avoid the breaking away of the Loctite, fix oil supply flange by a provisional installation of the two outer roll pins (10x50 mm) as well as hex. head screws (3 pieces) radially and axially, see Figure 259 ! The inner roll pins (6x50 mm) arc installed only after the attachment of the engine connecting case (Figure 262).
Hardening time of the Loctite about 10…30 minutes.

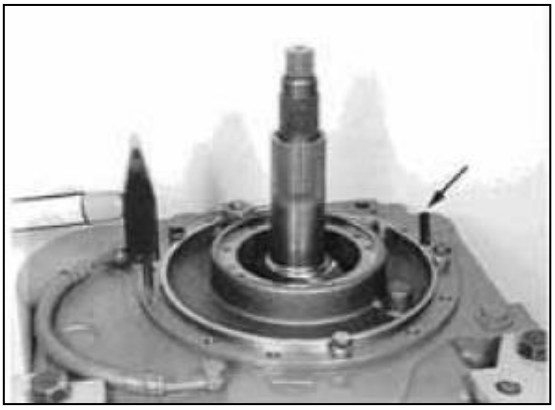


Figure 259

3.2.11 Engine connection

Install needle bearing (1) and shaft seal (2).
NOTE :
The needle bush is marked on one end face.
At the pressing in, the marking must be facing the drift (upwards) !
The exact installation position is obtained by application of the prescribed Special Tool.
Wet shaft seal outer diameter with sealing compound !

(S) Driver	5870 058 058
(S) Driver	5870 055 022
(S) Handle	5870 260 002

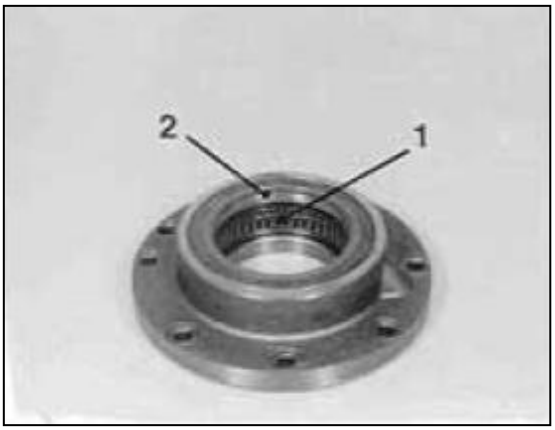


Figure 260

Install two adjusting screws and mount flat gasket.
Assemble bearing cap and fasten it by means of hex. head screws.
Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm
NOTE ;
Pay attention to the radial installation position!
(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

Figure 261

Fasten engine connecting case by means of hex. head screws and mount the two inner roll pins (6x50 mm).
Torque limit (Ml0/10.9) 68 Nm

Figure 262

Mount oil line (Arrow).

NOTE ;

Use new sealing rings !

Figure 263

3.2.12 Coaxial power take-off (controllable)

Install snap rings and needle bush.

NOTE :

The needle bush is marked on one end face.

At the pressing in, the marking must be facing the drift (S) !

(S) Drift 5870 506 060

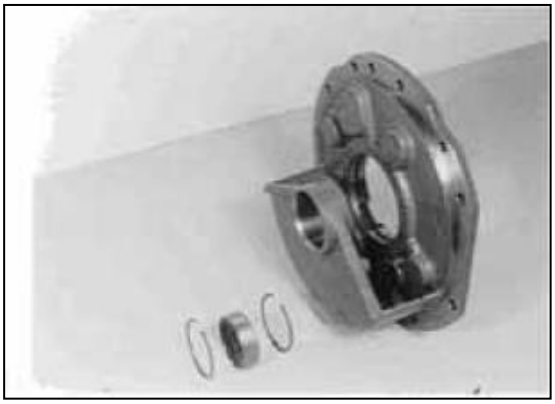


Figure 264

Squeeze the two snap rings into the annular groove of the housing.

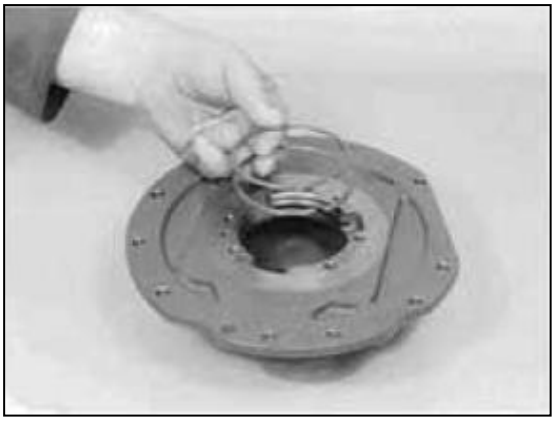


Figure 265

Assemble roller cage and collar shim, and fix them by means of circlip.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation position of the roller cage (annular groove)!

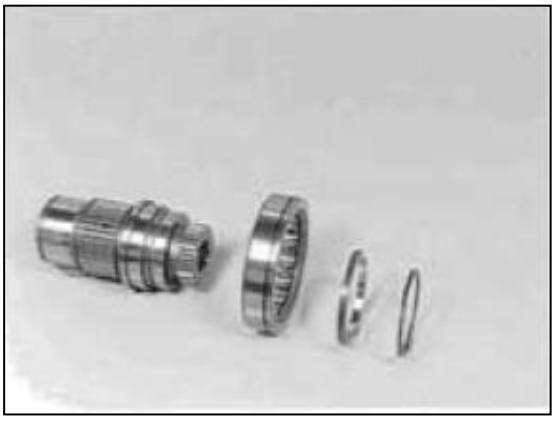


Figure 266

Position spur gear and thread up drive dog until the snap ring is located.

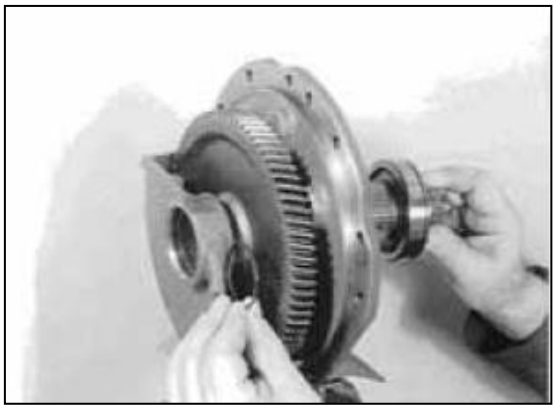


Figure 267

Expand the two snap rings, align them centrically and tap drive dog into the housing until the first snap ring engages in the annular groove of the roller bearing.

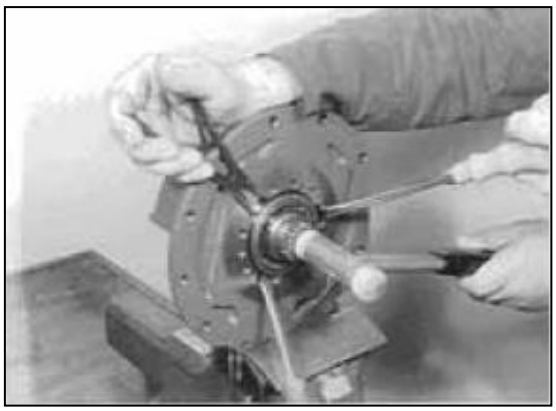


Figure 268

The illustration on the left shows the installation position of the snap rings, see Arrow!

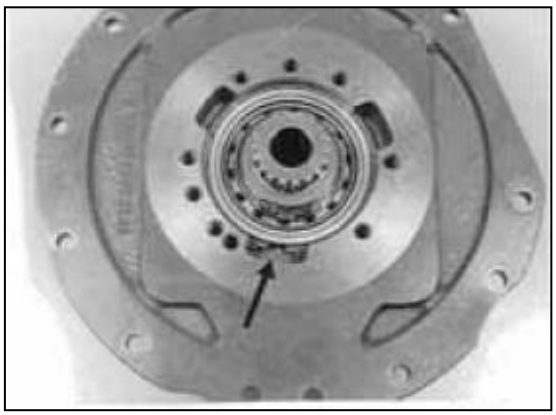


Figure 269

Locate snap ring finally, thus fixing the spur gear.

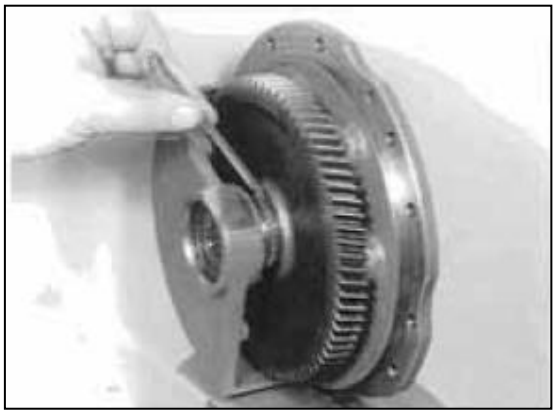


Figure 270

Relax the bearing by tapping.

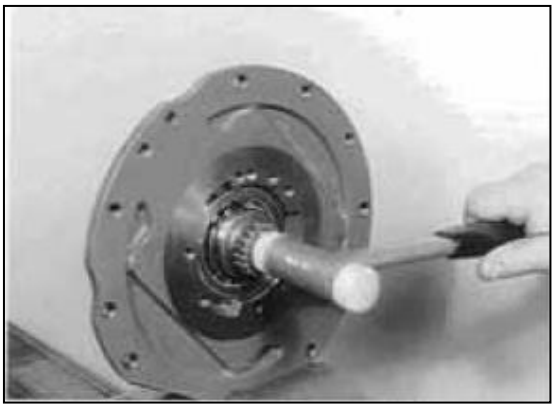


Figure 271

Insert stud (Arrow 1), install two adjusting screws and assemble flat gasket (Arrow 2).

NOTE ;

Insert stud with Loctite (Type-No. 242) !

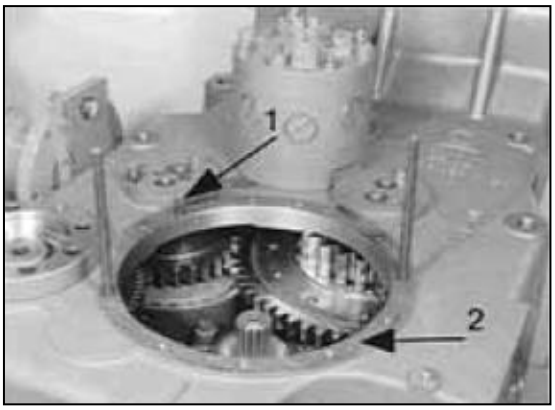


Figure 272

Thread up pre-assembled power take-off and fasten it by means of hex. head screws and hex. nuts.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

Figure 273

Install shaft seal (Arrow) flush-mounted with the sealing lip showing inwards.

(S) Driver 5870 048 074

Figure 274

Install two adjusting screws and assemble flat gasket.

Place housing against shoulder and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M8/I0.9) 34 Nm

Figure 275

Install shim (s = 3,0 mm), see Arrow and thread up shift fork.

NOTE ;

Use installer (S) !

(S) Installer 5870 651 018

Figure 276

Thread up locking device composed of pin and two compression springs, and fix it by means set screw.

NOTE ;

Insert the set screw with Loctite (Type-No. 242) !

Figure 277

Assemble shim (s = 1,5 mm) and install adjusting spring.

Install shift lever free of pressure (a small end play is permitted), and fix it by means of hex. head screw.

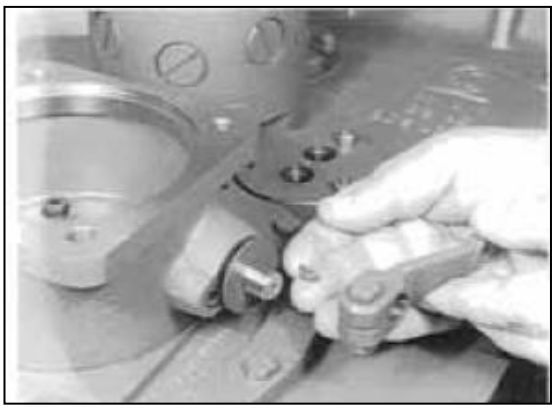


Figure 278

Insert O-Ring (Arrow), assemble pump flange and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (Ml2/8.8 DIN 7984) 55 Nm

NOTE :

Pay attention to the radial installation position of the pump flange !

Install sliding collar and sliding block prior to the reassembly of the pump !

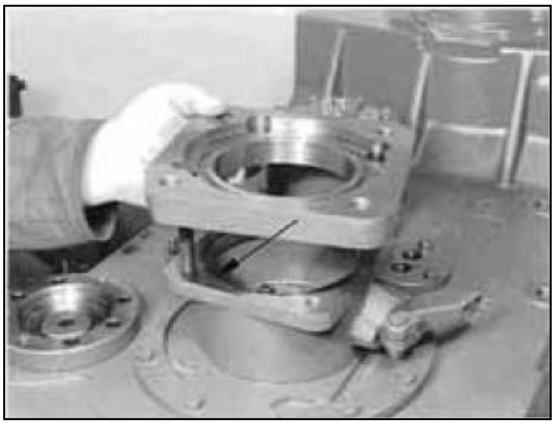


Figure 279

ATTENTION ;

The following Description and Illustrations show the attachment and installation of different assemblies and components, in relation to a specific Transmission Variant.

Deviating steps of other possible Versions can be carried out without difficulty by trained personnel.

In this connection, see also the Perspective Illustration of the corresponding Spare Parts Lists.

Thread up torque converter by means of lifting device until contact is obtained.

(S) Set of eye bolts 5870 204 002

Figure 280

Mount edge protection (Arrow) and fasten cover plate by means of hex. head screws (mount flat washers).

Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9,5 Nm

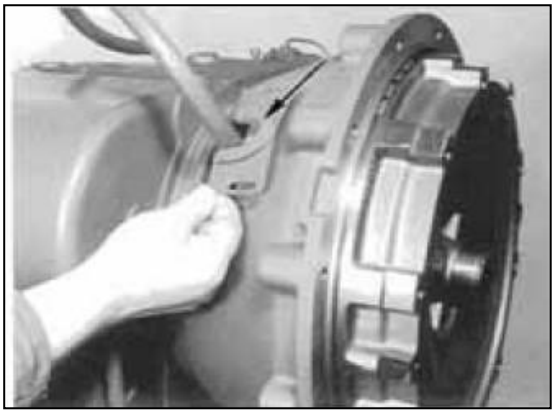


Figure 281

Install screw plug (Arrow 1) and breather (Arrow 2).

Figure 282

Mount suction pipe.

NOTE ;

Install new gaskets

Figure 283

Install oil level pipe.

NOTE ;

Install new gaskets as well as baffle plate.

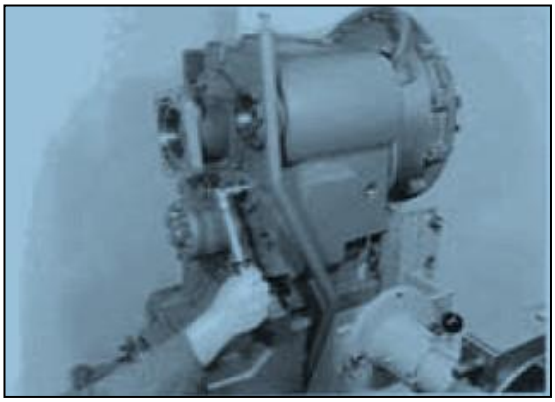


Figure 284

Install compl. cover plate.

NOTE ;

Install new gaskets.

Figure 285

3.2.1.3 Inductive transmitter

Adjust required gap 0,50$^{+0,3}$ mm between the contact area/inductive transmitter and the spur gear (tooth tip).

Figure 286 to Example "N".

Ref. Figure 286 : 1 = Inductive transmitter
2 = Shim
3 = Measuring pin(S)

Measuring pin (S) 5870 200 040

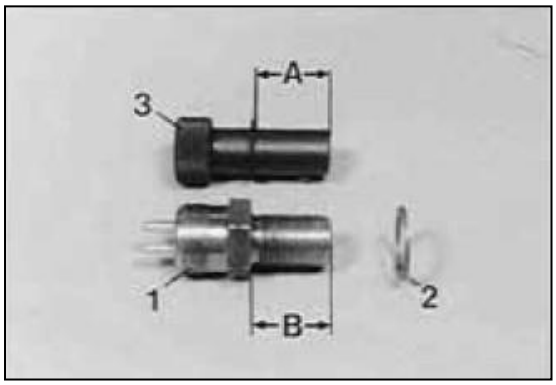


Figure 286

Insert measuring pin until the end face has got contact on the tooth tip of the spur gear as well as the circlip is located on the screwin surface of the housing.

NOTE ;

The tooth tip must be centrically located to the housing bore, if necessary, align the spur gear accordingly !

Figure 287

Remove measuring pin and measure Dimension "A" from the end face/measuring pin to the circlip (see Figure 286).

Dimension “A” e.g. 26,00 mm

Determine Dimension "B" from the contact surface/inductive transmitter to the contact area (see Figure 286).

Dimension "B” e.g. 27,10 mm

Example "N” :

Dimension "A” 26,00 mm
required gap e.g. - 0,60 mm
Difference = Adjustment dimension 25,40 mm
Dimension "B” 27,10 mm
Adjustment dimension - 25,40 mm
Difference = Shim(s) e.g. 1,70 mm

Assemble corresponding shim and install the inductive transmitter.

NOTE :

Wet thread of inductive transmitter with sealing compound !

4. RETARDER

4.1 DISASSEMBLY

Loosen hose lines.

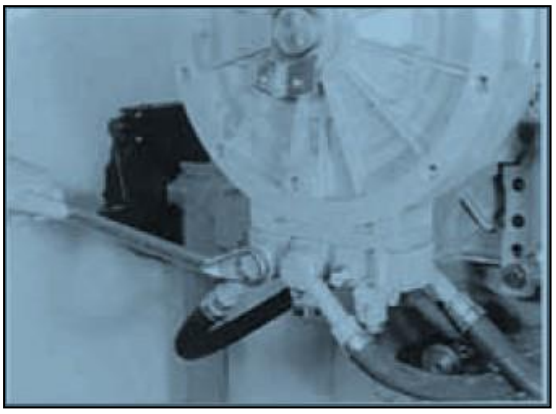


Figure 1

Loosen hex. head screws and remove retarder valve.

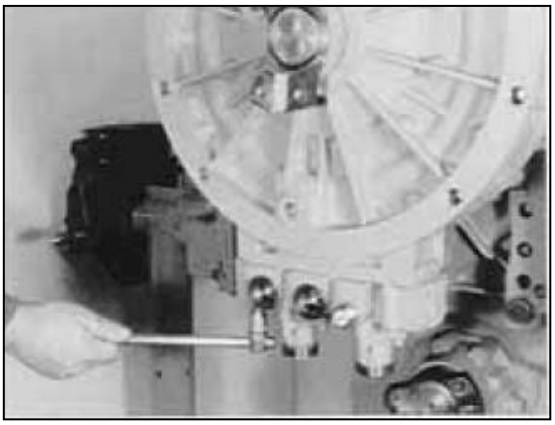


Figure 2

Demount temperature sensor and the two connecting pieces (see Arrows).

Figure 3

Loosen hex. head screws, remove the two covers and demount components.

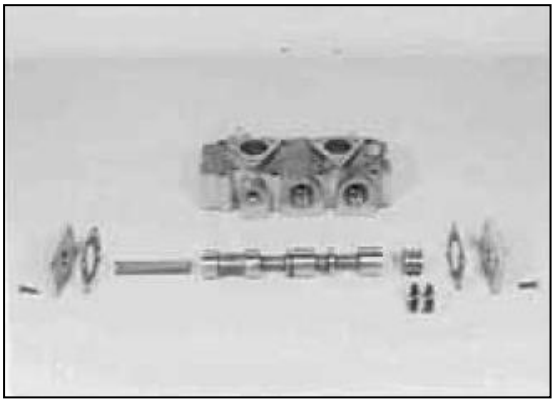


Figure 4

Tilt gear case 90°.
Remove lock plate.
Loosen hex. head screws and pull off output flange.

NOTE ;

If only operations on the transmission are necessary, the complete retarder can be separated from the converter compartment by loosening the screwed connection (Figure 8)!

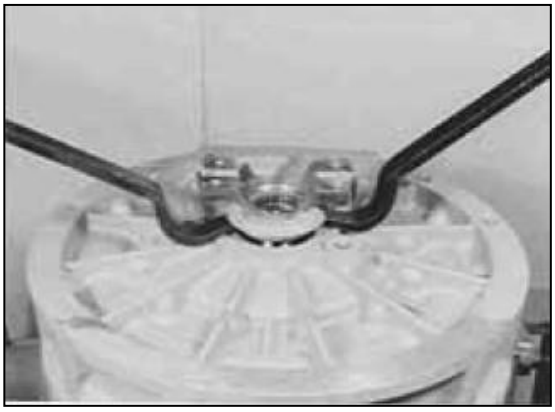


Figure 5

Loosen screw plug.

Figure 6

Loosen first hex. head screw and remove it by means of magnetic rod.
Remove the remaining hex. head screws accordingly.

Figure 7

Loosen screwed connection.

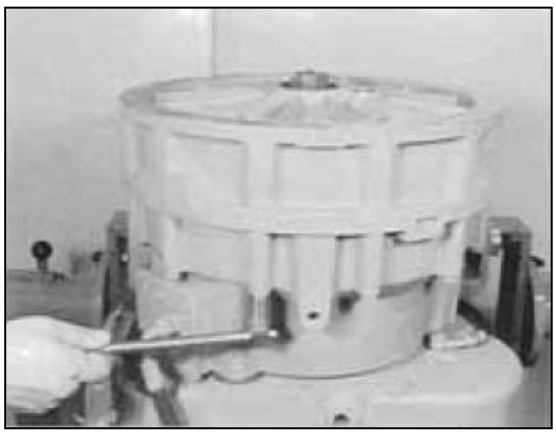


Figure 8

Separate the complete retarder from the converter compartment, using lifting device.

(S) Set of eye bolts 5870 204 002

Figure 9

Loosen socket head screws.

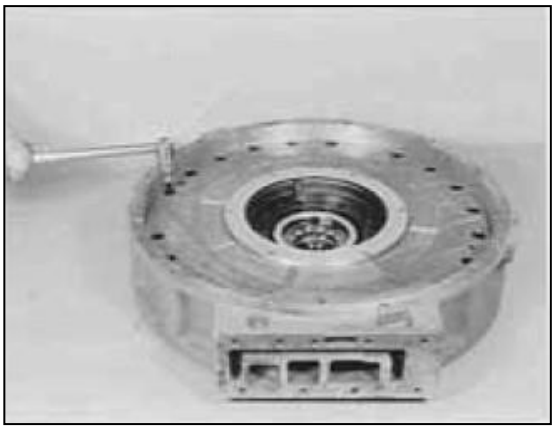


Figure 10

Separate cover from stator.

(S) Set of eye bolts 5870 204 002

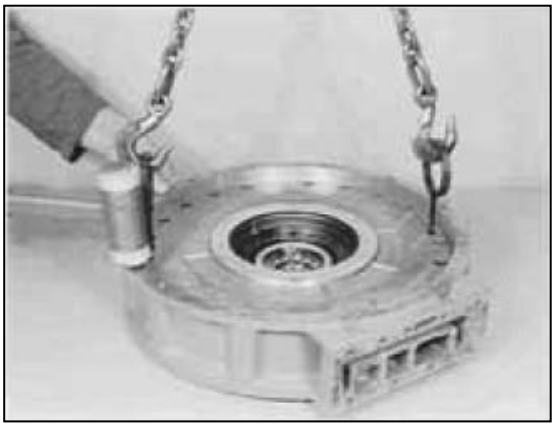


Figure 11

Remove rectangular ring.

Figure 12

Remove rotor.

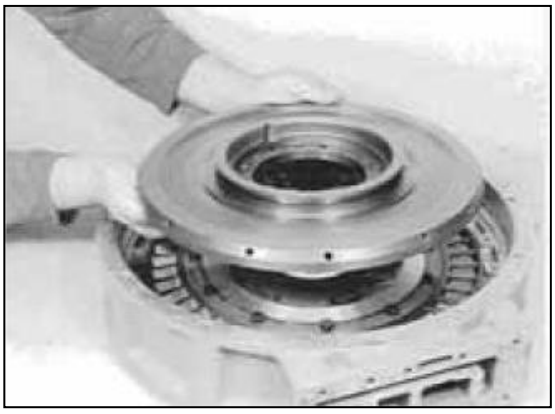


Figure 13

Loosen screwed connection and remove thrust ring.

Figure 14

Remove stator ring.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the released components !

Figure 16

Squeeze out circlip and remove shim.

Figure 16

Remove shaft seal.

(S) Pry bar 5870 345 065

Figure 17

Drive 4-point bearing out of the bore.

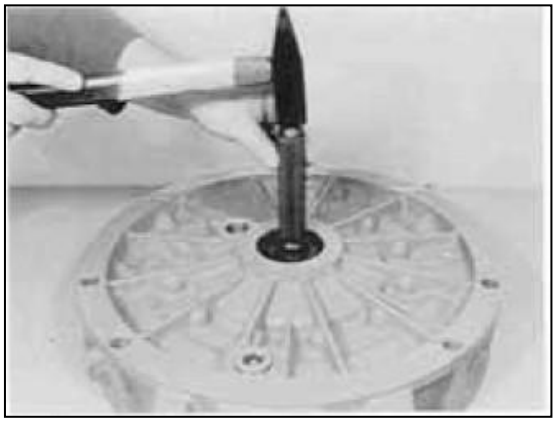


Figure 18

4.2 REASSEMBLY

4.2.1 Pre-assemble and attach Retarder

Heat bearing bore and insert 4-point bearing firmly against shoulder.

Figure 20

Adjust the 4-point bearing free of play by means of disk (optional) and circlip.

NOTE :

Pay attention that the two bearing inner races are present !

Figure 21

If necessary, insert upper bearing inner race and intall shaft seal.

NOTE :

The exact installtion position is obtained by application of the prescribed driver !

(S) Driver 5870 048 068

Figure 22

Install stator ring.

Figure 23

Fasten thrust ring by means of hex. Head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE :

Secure hex. head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 241) !

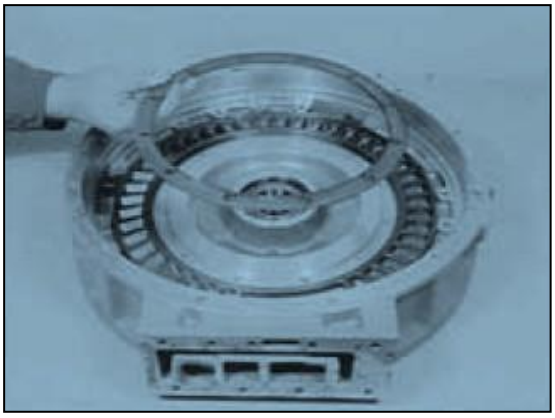


Figure 24

Pre-assemble dampers (3 pieces) according to Figure 25 and 26.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation dimension B

= l,6$^{+0,5}$ mm !

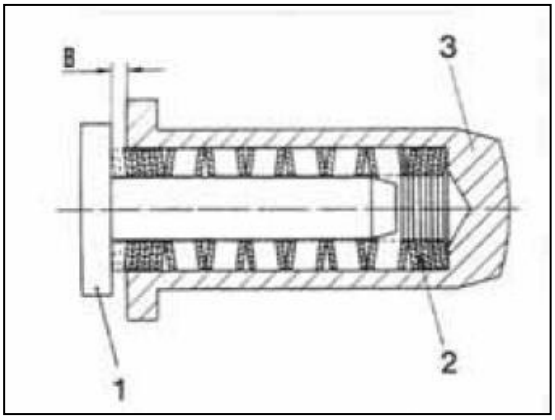


Figure 25

Ref. Figure 23 and 26 :

1 = Guide pin

2 = Cup spring packs (8 packs with 6 cup springs each)

3 = Spring guide

4 = Compression spring

5 = Spring guide

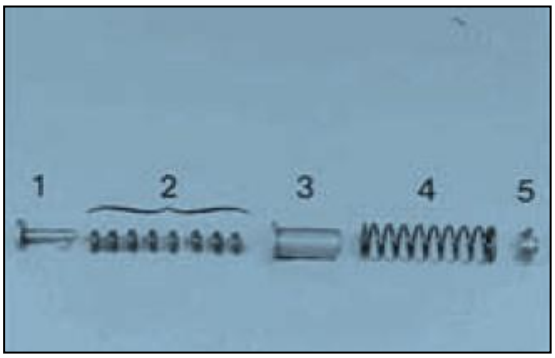


Figure 26

Install pre-assembled dampers, see Arrows !

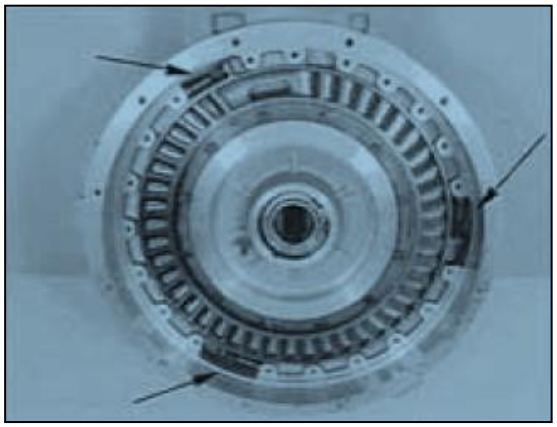


Figure 27

Slide rectangular ring into the recess of the rotor and preload it by means of 3 straight pins Φ 6 mm (Assembly aid) (Figure 28 and29).

(3x) Straight pin 0631 306 178

Figure 28

Figure 29

Oil rectangular ring, slide rotor into the stator case until contact is obtained and remove straight pins again.

Figure 30

Slide second rectangular ring into the recess (Figure 31).

Make the bore of the rectangular ring as well as of the rotor overlap and fix rectangular ring by means of suitable pin (Φ1 mm) (Figure 32).

Figure 31

Figure 32

Insert O-Ring in the annular groove of the cover (Arrow Ⅰ) and grease it.

Install two adjusting screws and insert cover until contact: is obtained.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the radial installation position (oil duct, see Arrow 2) !

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

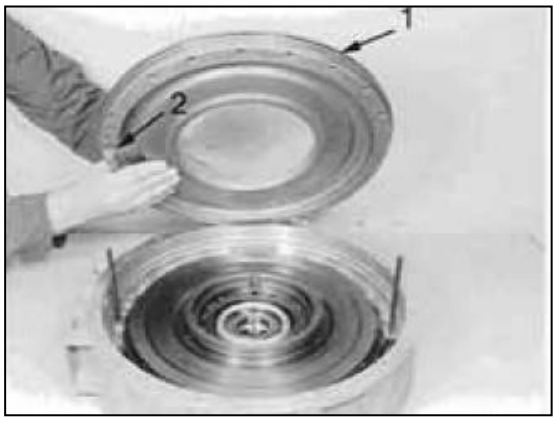


Figure 33

Now, remove guide pin (Assembly aid) again and fasten cover by means of socket head screws (mount flat washers).

NOTE :

Secure socket head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 640) !

Torque limit (M8/I0.9) 34 Nm

Figure 34

Fasten oil slinger by means of countersunk screws.

NOTE ;

Wet thread of countersunk screws with Loctite (Type-No. 640) !

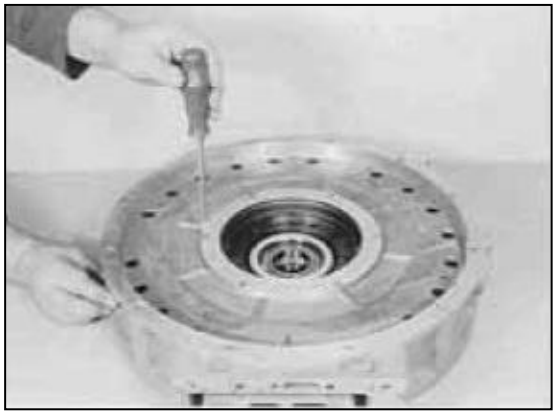


Figure 35

Adjust gap between Rotor and Stator ring = 0,8 … 1,6 mm (Figure 36 ... 38) :

Measure Dimension Ⅰ from the contact surface (4-point bearing) to the flange-mounted surface.

Dimension Ⅰ e.g.	12,00 mm
(S) Straightedge	5870 200 022
(S) Gauge blocks	5870 200 046
(S) Digital depth gauge	5870 200 072

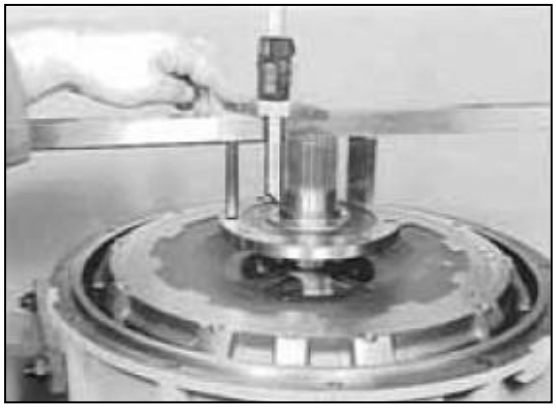


Figure 36

Determine Dimension Ⅱ from the flange mounted surface (drive flange) to the bearing inner race.

Dimension Ⅱ e.g.	10,65 mm
EXAMPLE "A" ;	
Dimension Ⅰ	12,00 mm
Dimension Ⅱ	-10,65 mm
Difference	1,35 mm
Required gap	
Rotor-Stator ring e.g.	- 1,20 mm
gives Shim	s = 0,15 mm

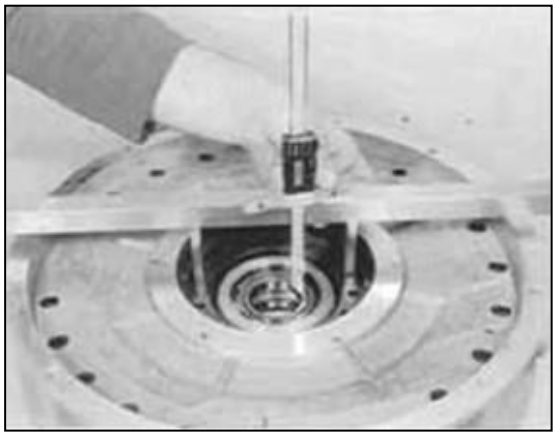


Figure 37

Assemble shim (e.g. s = 0,15 mm).

Figure 38

Heat bearing inner race and place it against shoulder.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to the installation position, ball running surface is showing upwards !

Figure 39

Mount flat gasket, assemble the retarder until contact is obtained and fasten it by means of hex. head screws.

Torque limit (M10/8.8) 46 Nm

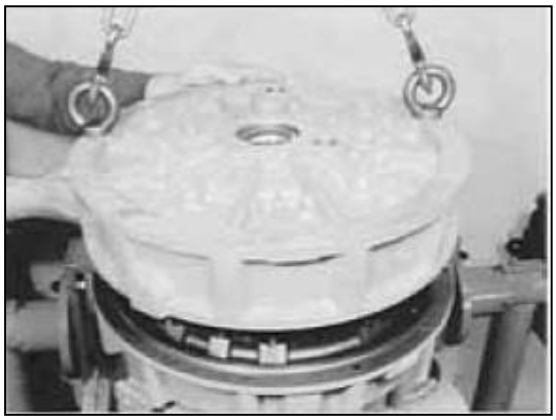


Figure 40

Fasten rotor at the drive flange.

NOTE :

Tighten hex. head screws uniformly (180° displaced) and secure them with Loctite (Type-No. 241) !

Torque limit (M10/8.8) 46 Nm

Figure 41

Install the two screw plugs, see Arrows !

NOTE ;

Install new O-Rings !

Figure 42

Assemble drive flange and fasten it by means of disk and hex. head screws.

NOTE :

Wet contact area of disk with sealing compound !

Torque limit (M8/10.9) 34 Nm

Now, fix hex. head screws by means of lock plate.

(S) Driver 5870 057 010

(S) Handle 5870 260 002

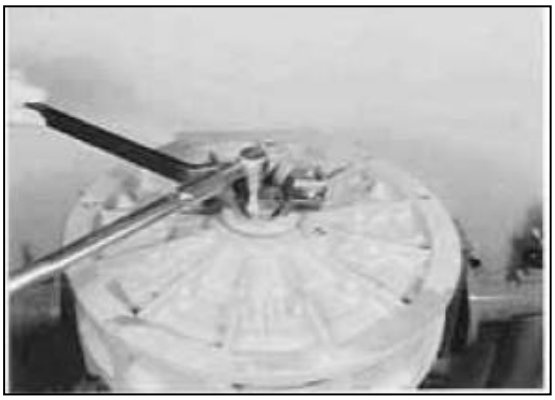


Figure 43

4.2.2 Pre-assemble and attach Retarder valve

Install components according to the Figure on the right.

1 = Case
2 = Hex. head screw
3 = Cover
4 = Gasket
5 = Compression spring
6 = Spool
7 = Spool
8 = Grooved rings

NOTE ;

Install grooved rings (8) with the sealing lip facing the pressure chamber !

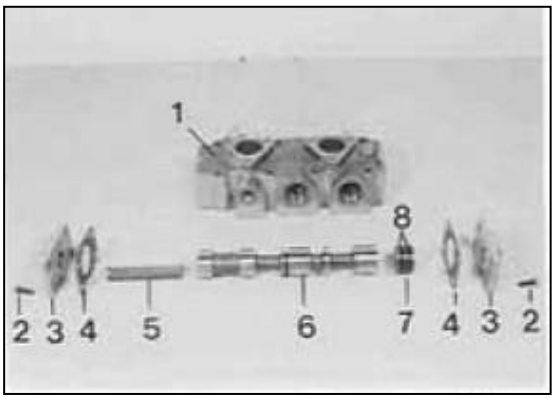


Figure 44

Fasten the two connecting pieces by means of socket head screws.

Install temperature sensor (Arrow).

NOTE :

Install new O-Rings !

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

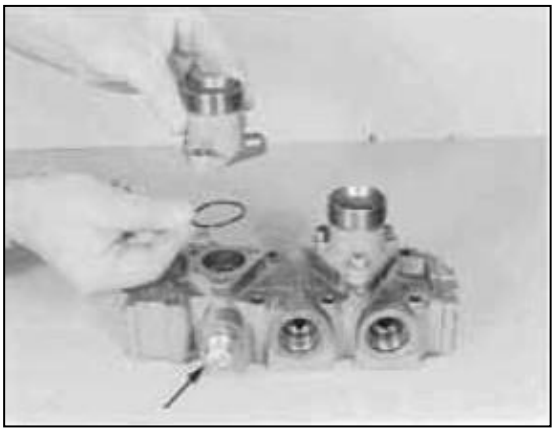


Figure 45

Install screw plug (Arrow).

NOTE ;

Install new O-Ring !

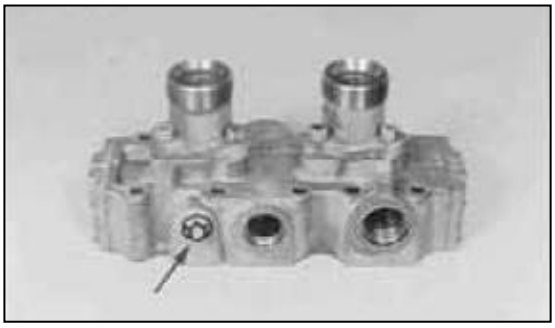


Figure 46

Install two adjusting screws.

Assemble first gasket, intermediate plate and second gasket.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

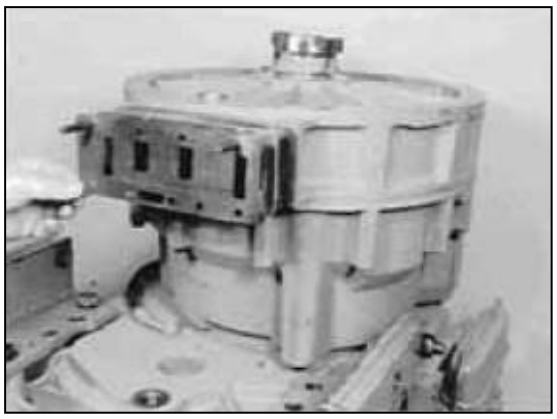


Figure 47

Place retarder valve against shoulder and fasten it by means of hex. head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

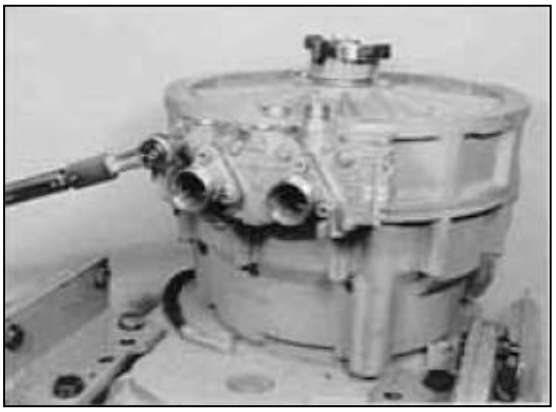


Figure 48

4.2.3 Install delivery lines

Install delivery lines according to the Draft on the right.

1 = To the Retarder

2 = Converter exit

3 = Return to Sump

4 = To the Lubrication

NOTE :

Install new O-Rings.

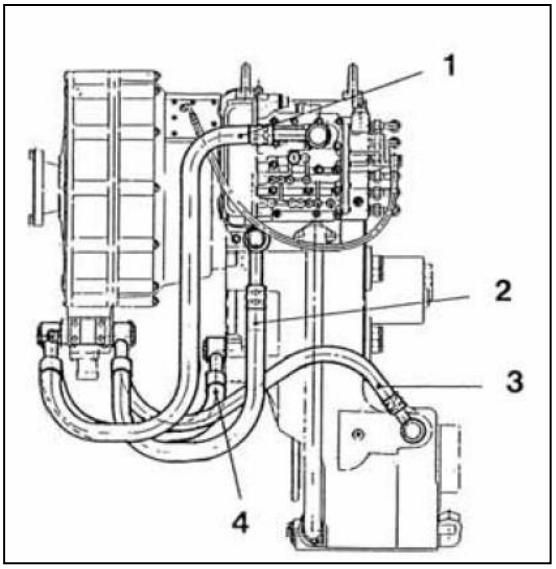


Figure 49

5. AXLE DECLUTCH

5.1 DISASSEMBLY

Loosen socket head screws and separate axle declutch from gear case.

(S) Pry bar 5870 345 065

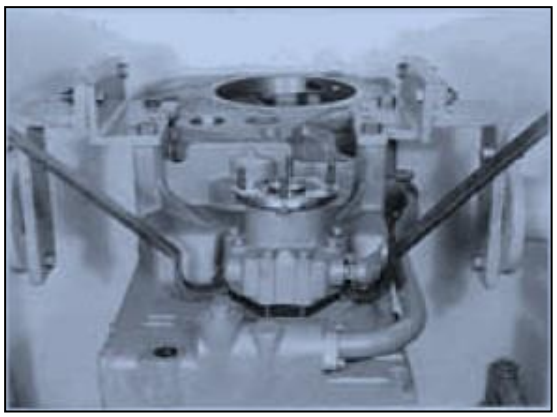


Figure 1

Remove lock plate, loosen hex. head screws and remove disk.

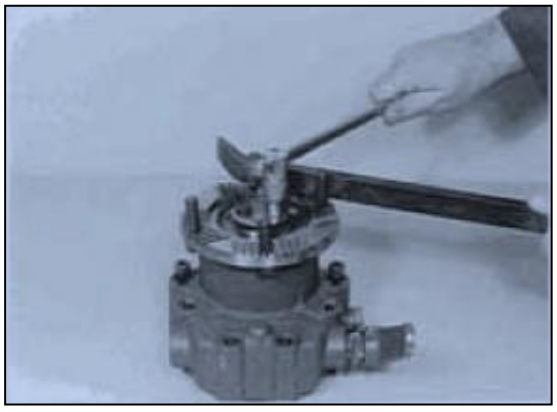


Figure 2

Pull flange from output shaft.

(S) Three-leg puller 5870 971 003

Figure 3

Pry shaft seal out of the bore.

(S) Crowbar 5870 345 071

Figure 4

Squeeze out circlip.

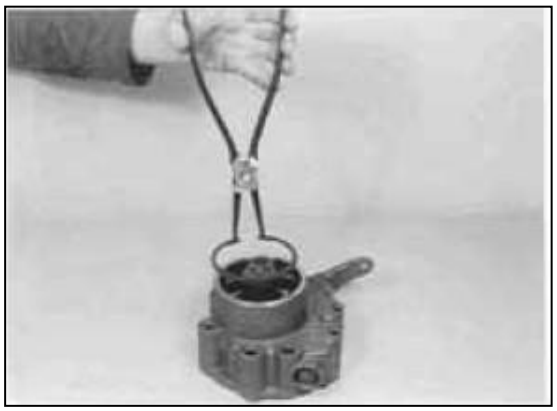


Figure 5

Press output shaft out of the housing.

Figure 6

Remove sliding collar.

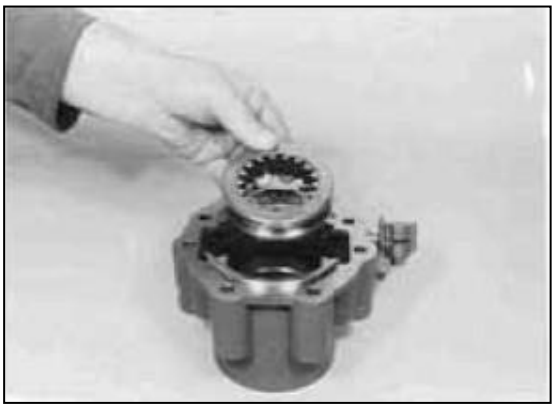


Figure 7

Loosen the two set screws and remove gearshift shaft.

If necessary, separate shift lever from gearshift shaft - mark radial installation position !

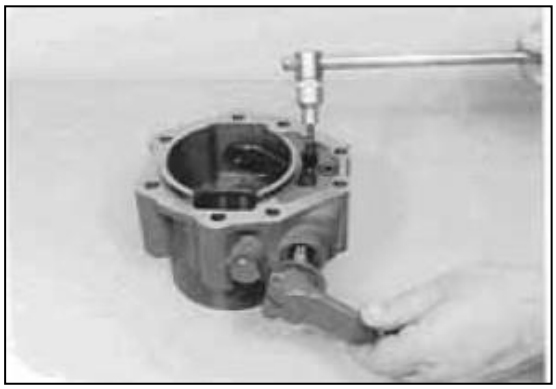


Figure 8

Demount locking device and remove shift fork.

Figure 9

Squeeze out circlip and remove shim(s).

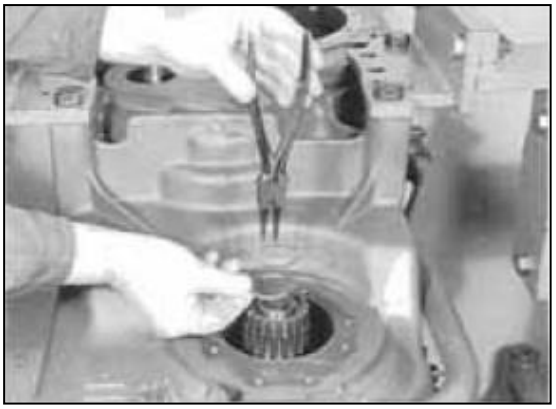


Figure 10

Demount sleeve and disk.

Figure 11

Remove needle bearing.

Figure 12

5.2 REASSEMBLY

Press ball bearing in until contact is obtained.

Figure 15

Adjust ball bearing free of play by means of disk and circlip.

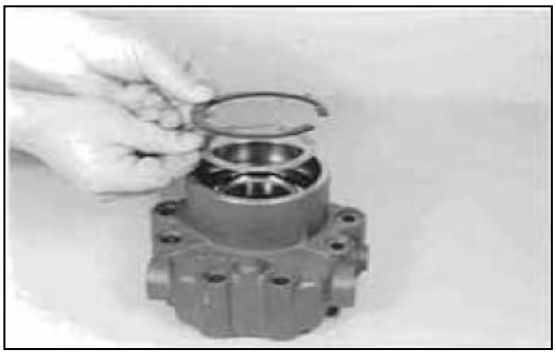


Figure 16

Install shaft seal (Arrow) with the sealing lip facing the oil chamber.

NOTE :

The exact installation position is obtained by application of the prescribed driver (S) !

If the outer diameter of the shaft seal is rubberized, wet the sealing surface with spirit !

If not, use sealing compound (Curilt T) !

Grease sealing lip !

(S) Driver 5870 048 057

Figure 17

Insert shaft seal until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Wet rubberized outer diameter with spirit !

Grease sealing lip !

(S) Driver 5870 048 031

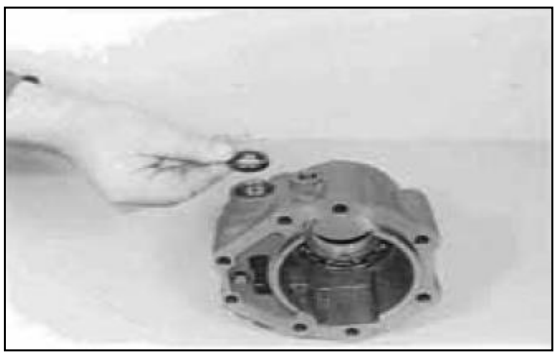


Figure 18

Insert shim (1) and straight pin (2) in the housing bore (Arrow).

NOTE :

The overlapping of the locating bore to the countersinking-shift fork is determined by means of shim(s), e.g. s = 0,50 mm (empirical value) I

However, a later check (Figure 27) is absolutely essential !

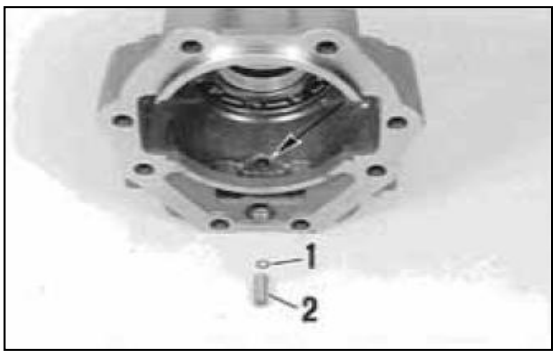


Figure 19

Install sliding blocks (Arrow I), position shift fork and fix by means of gearshift shaft.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the sliding blocks, see Figure !

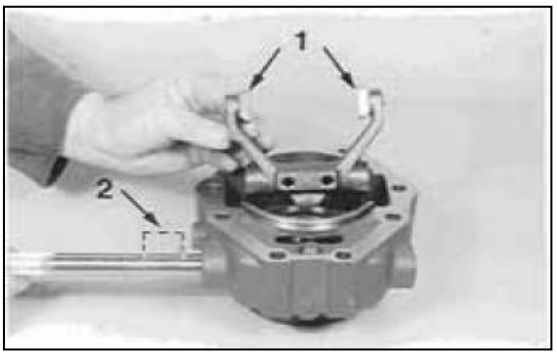


Figure 20

Realize the overlapping of the gearshift shaft countersinkings (Arrow 2, Figure 20) and the tapped holes of the shift fork, and install the two set screws.

NOTE :

Secure set screws with Loctite (Type-No.242) !

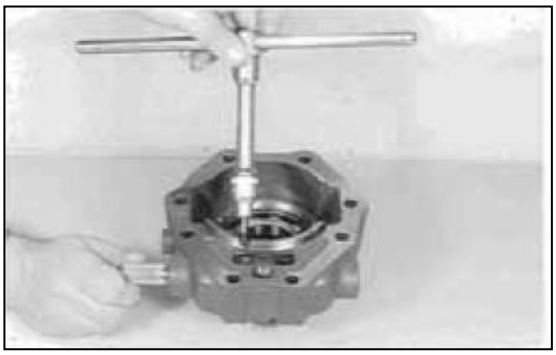


Figure 21

Insert disk.

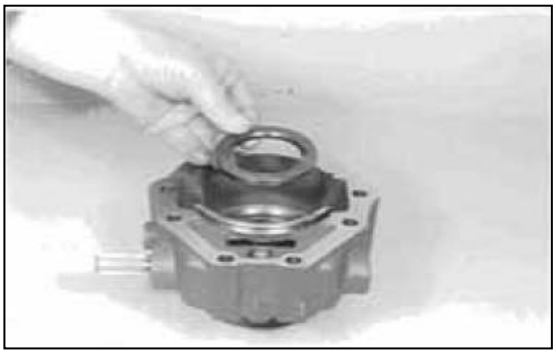


Figure 22

Thread up sliding collar.

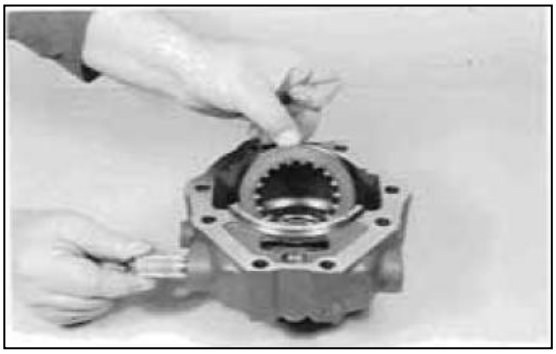


Figure 23

Thread up output shaft and press it against shoulder.

Figure 24

Assemble shim(s), e.g. s = 2,00 mm and mount socket head screws.

Torque limit (M10/8.8, DIN 7984) 32Nm

NOTE :

By means of shim, e.g. s = 2,00 mm (empirical value), the sliding collar will be adjusted free of pressure (Figure 26) !

Secure socket head screw with Loctite (Type- No. 242) !

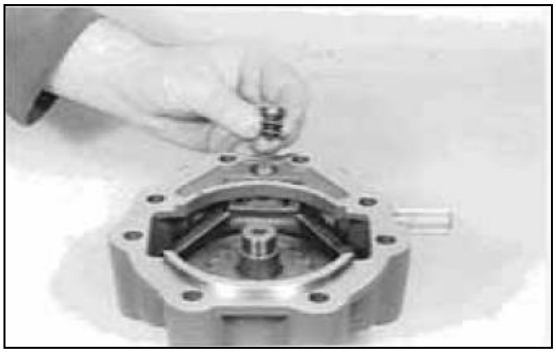


Figure 25

Cheek the pressureless condition of the sliding collar !

NOTE :

In a pressureless condition, a small tilting play on the sliding collar can be noted !

If necessary, correct by means of shim (Figure25) !

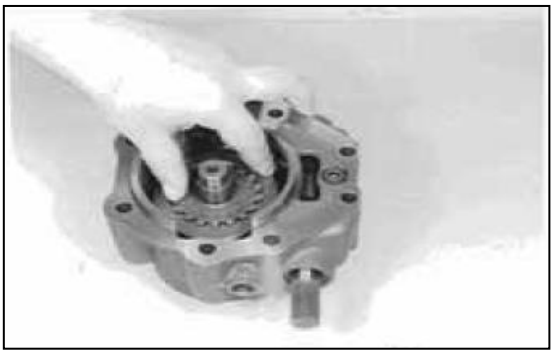


Figure 26

Bring shift fork, in direction of Arrow, to the upper stop position (final drive is engaged).
In this position, the countersinking of the shift fork must be centric to the tapped hole of the housing.
If necessary, correct by means of corresponding shims (Figure 19) !

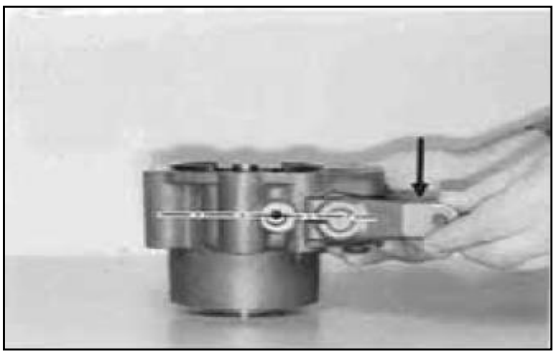


Figure 27

The Illustration on the left shows the components of the locking screw.
1 = Spring bush
2 = Sealing ring
3 = Compression spring
4 = Ball

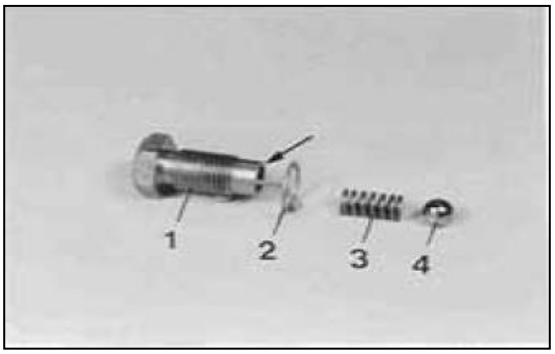


Figure 28

Fix the ball by indents (3 x 120°) on the end face of the spring bush (see Arrow, Figure28).
Insert compression spring and ball in the spring bush and preload them in a vise.

Figure 29

Assemble new sealing ring and install locking screw.

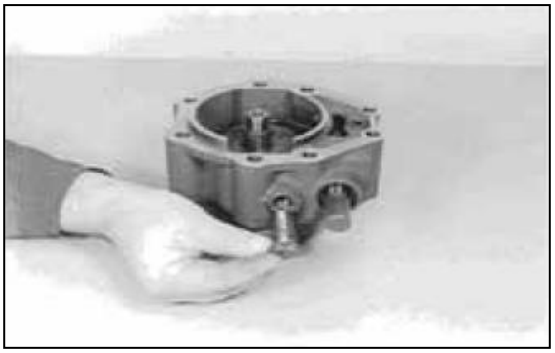


Figure 30

Assemble shift lever flush-mounted to the end face of the shaft and fix it by means of clamping screw.

NOTE :

Radial installation position of the shift lever according to the Indications of the Manufacturer of the vehicle, resp. according to the markings !

Figure 31

Insert closing cover (Arrow) until contact is obtained and fix it by slight central tapping.

NOTE :

Wet sealing surfaces with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

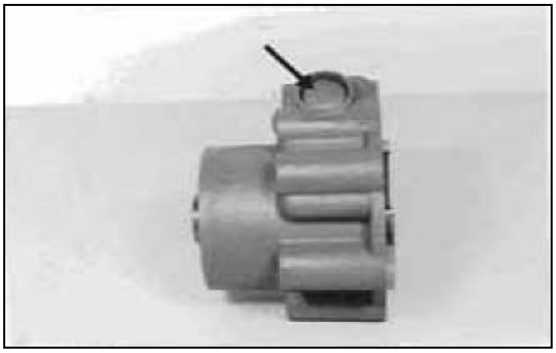


Figure 32

Insert socket head screws (Arrow) in the housing bores.

Insert hex. head screws in the bores of the output flange, heat output flange and assemble it until contact is obtained.

NOTE ;

Pay attention to a correct contact !

If necessary, press it against shoulder, see Figure 34 !

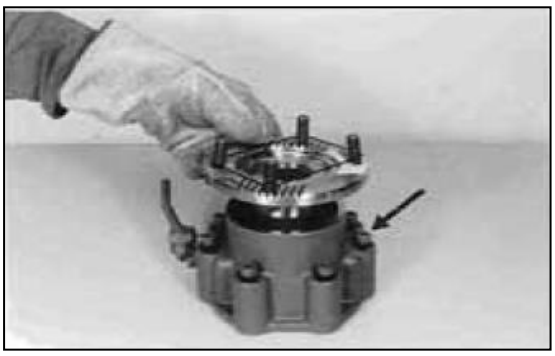


Figure 33

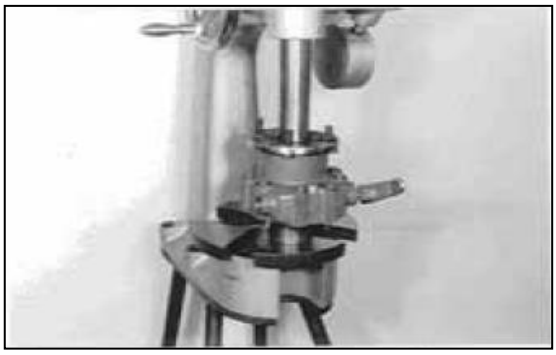


Figure 34

Fasten output flange by means of disk and hex. head screws.

NOTE :

Wet contact area of the disk and the screw heads with sealing compound !

Torque limit (M8/10.9) 34 Nm

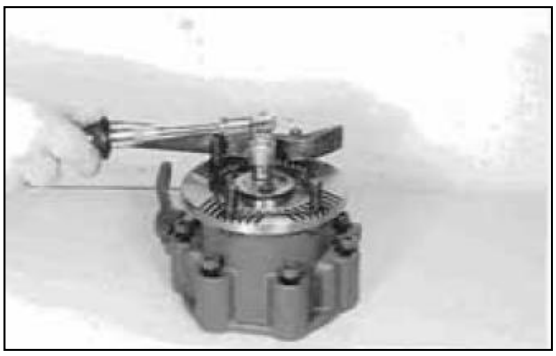


Figure 35

Fix hex. head screws by means of lock plate.

(S) Driver 5870 057 011

(S) Handle 5870 260 002

Figure 36

Install disk and assemble driving bush.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the driving bush, see Figure !

Figure 37

Fix driving bush free of play by means of shim(s) and circlip.

Figure 38

Insert needle ring (Arrow) in the output shaft bore.

Install two adjusting screws and assemble flat gasket.

(S) Adjusting screws (MI0) 5870 204 021

Figure 39

Place axle declutch assembly against housing until contact is obtained, and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (M10/8.8) 46 Nm

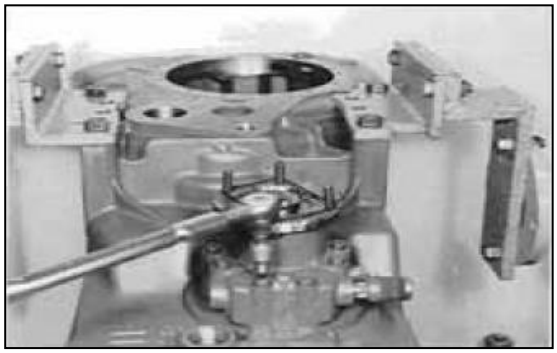


Figure 40

6. AXLE DIFFERENTIAL

6.1 SHIFT-CONTROL HOUSING

6.1.1 DISASSEMBLY

Pull off output flange.

Figure 1

Loosen socke head screws and separate axle declutch unit from gear case by means of pry bar.

(S) Pry bar 5870 345 065

Figure 2

Remove hollow shaft.

Figure 3

Loosen the two socket head screws and remove them along with disk.

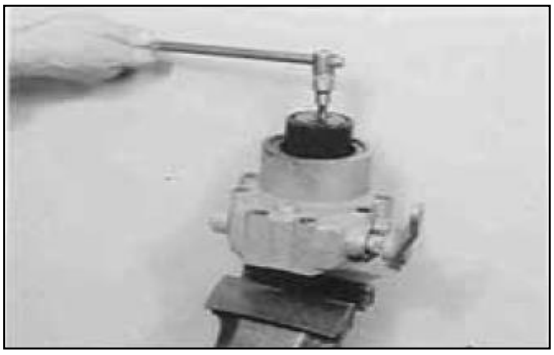


Figure 4

Pull sleeve from the output shaft.

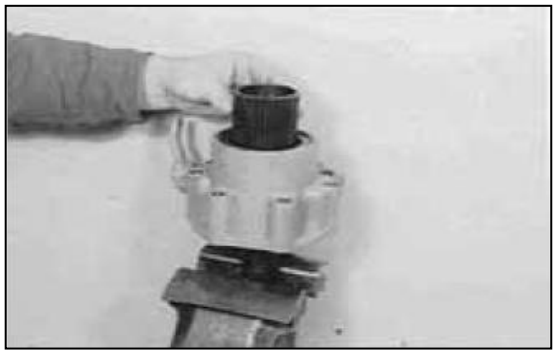


Figure 5

Press output shaft out of the housing.

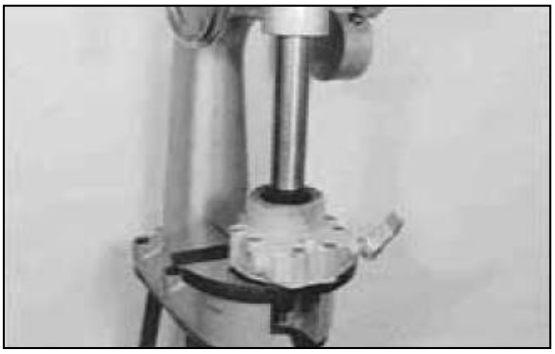


Figure 6

Demount locking screw and shift lever, and remove sliding collar.

NOTE :

Mark the radial installation position of the shift lever !

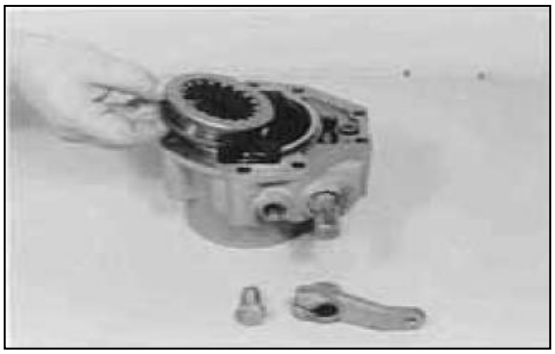


Figure 7

Loosen the two set screws.

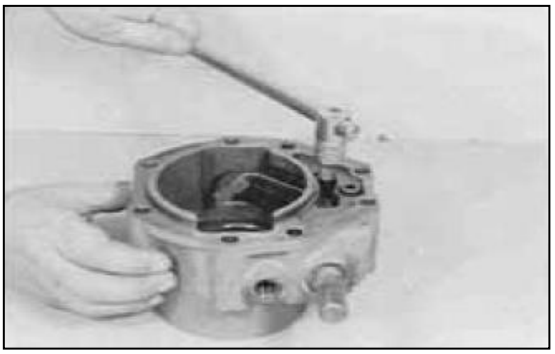


Figure 8

Demount gearshift shaft and remove the shift fork.

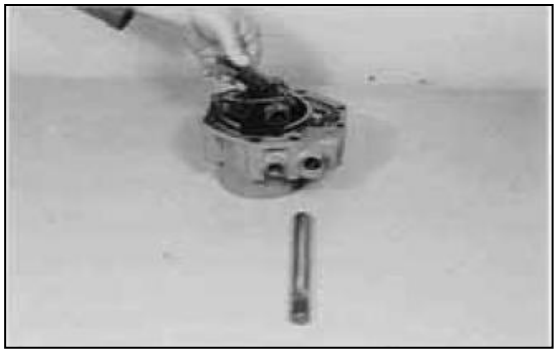


Figure 9

Remove disk.

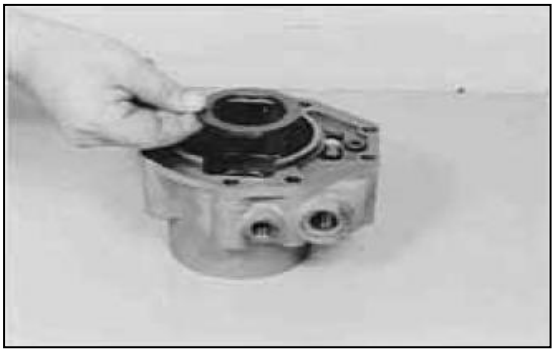


Figure 10

Fasten housing in a vise - use protecting jaws and pry shaft seal out of the housing bore.

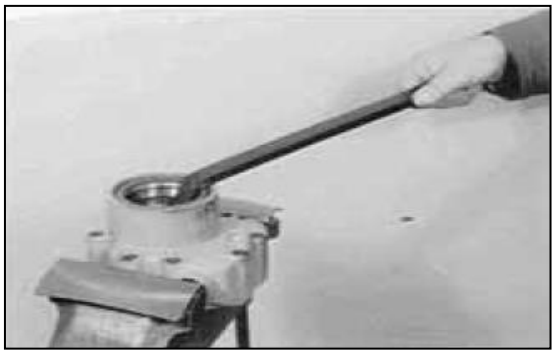


Figure 11

Remove sleeve and squeeze circlip out.

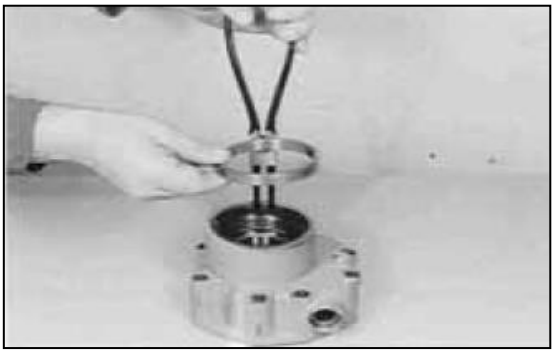


Figure 12

Press ball bearing out of the housing bore.

Figure 13

6.1.2 REASSEMBLY

Press ball bearing against shoulder until contact is obtained.

Figure 15

Fix ball bearing by means of circlip and lay sleeve upon it.

Figure 16

Install shaft seal with the sealing lip lacing the oil chamber.

NOTE ;

By application of the prescribed driver, the exact installation position is obtained !

If the outer diameter of the shaft seal is rubberized, wet the sealing surface with spirit!

If not, use a sealing compound !

Grease sealing lip !

(S) Driver 5870 048 134

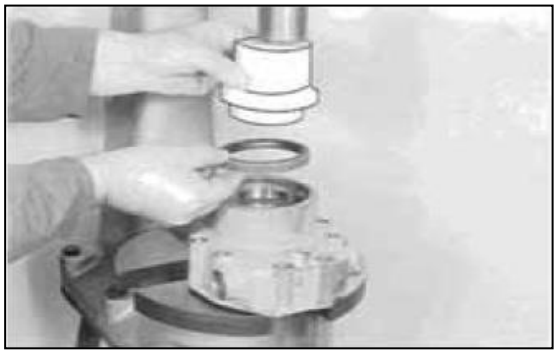


Figure 17

Insert shaft seal until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Wet rubberized outer diameter with spirit !

Grease sealing lip !

(S) Driver 5870 048 031

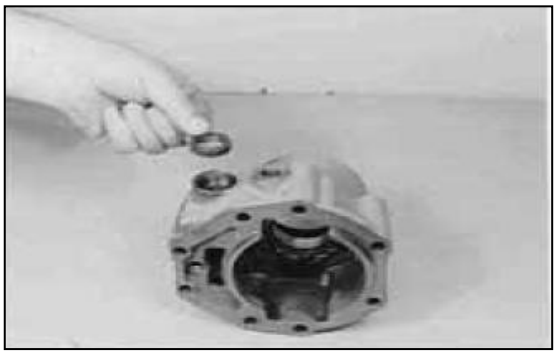


Figure 18

Insert shims (1) and straight pin (2) in the housing bore (Arrow).

NOTE :

The shifting travel is adjusted with the shims, total thickness s = 0,6 mm (empirical value) !

However, a later check is absolutely essential (see Figure 25) !

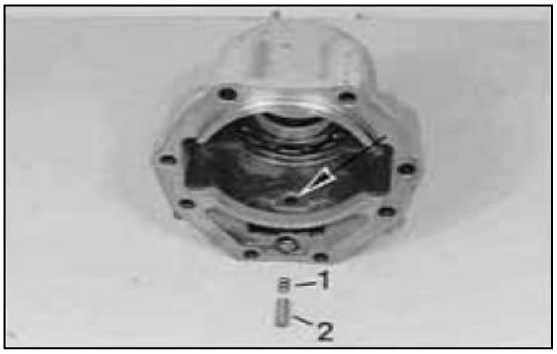


Figure 19

Install sliding blocks (Arrows 1), position shift fork and fix it by means of gearshift shaft.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the sliding blocks - chamfered end face is showing to the rear !

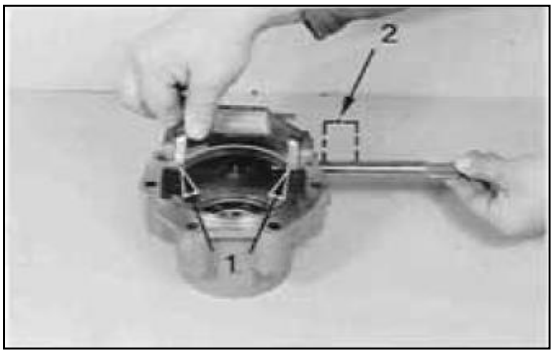


Figure 20

Realize the overlapaping of the gearshift shaft countersinkings (Arrow, Figure 20), and the tapped holes of the shift fork, and install the two set screws.

NOTE ;

Secure set screws with Loctite (Typc-No.242)!

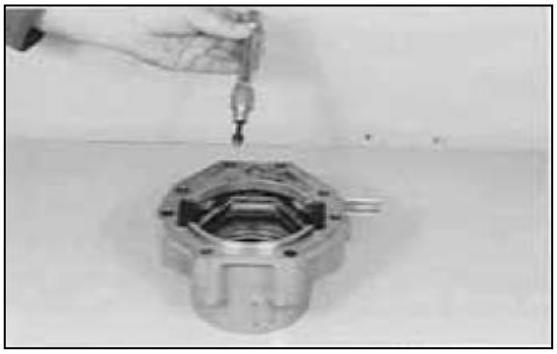


Figure 21

Insert disk and assemble sliding collar.

Figure 22

Introduce output shaft and press it against shoulder until contact is obtained.

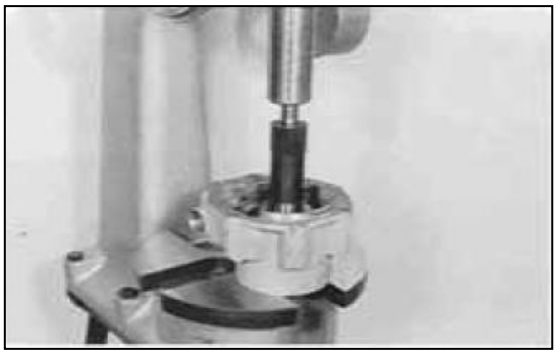


Figure 23

Assemble the hollow shaft in order to check the shifting travel.

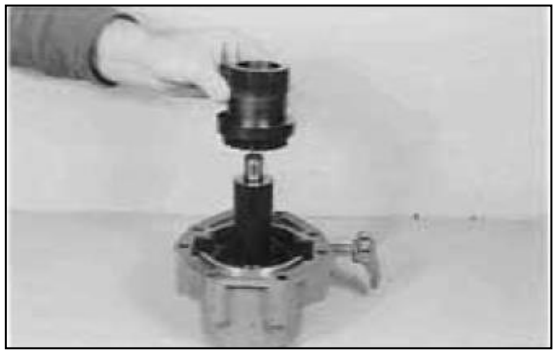


Figure 24

Place sliding collar by means of gearshift lever into the upper stop position (direction of Arrow) and determine the play between sliding collar and plane surface-hollow shaft.

NOTE ;

If the required end play = 0.1 ... 0.2 mm is not obtained, correct with corresponding shims (see Figure 19) !

Now, remove hollow shaft again.

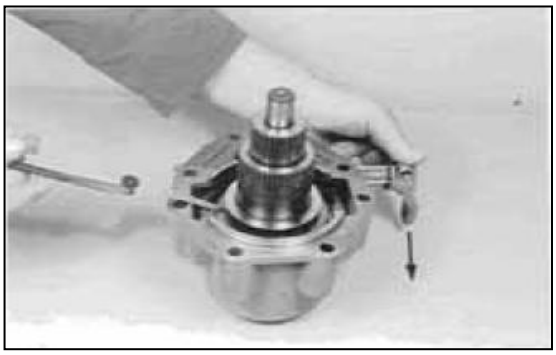


Figure 25

Assemble shim(s) e.g. s = 2.00 mm and install socket head screw.

Torque limit (Ml0/8.8 DIN 7984) 32 Nm

NOTE :

The sliding collar is adjusted free of pressure by the shim s = 2,00 mm (empirical value) (Figure 27) !

Secure socket head screw with Loctite (Type-No. 242) !

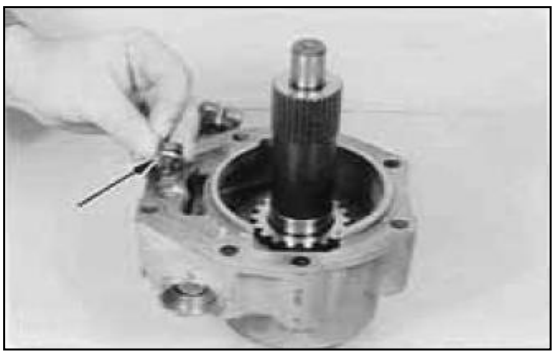


Figure 26

Place sliding collar by means of gearshift lever into the lower stop position and check the pressureless condition.

NOTE ;

In case of a correct adjustment, a slight tilting play on the sliding collar can be noted !

If necessary, correct it by means of shim (Arrow/ Figure 26) !

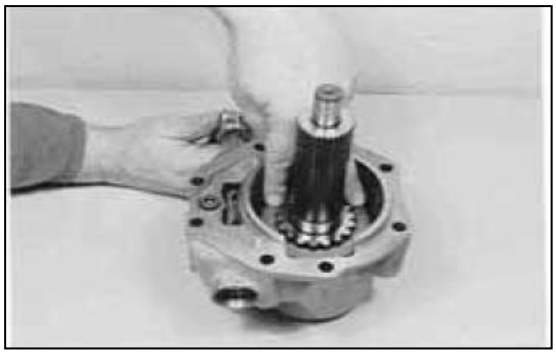


Figure 27

The Illustration on the right shows the components of the locking screw.

1 = Spring bush

2 = Sealing ring

3 = Compression spring

4 = Ball

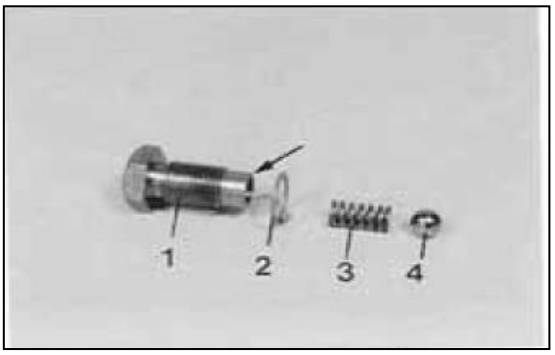


Figure 28

Insert compression spring and ball in the spring bush and preload them in a vise.

Fix the ball by indents (3 x 120°) on the end face of the spring bush (see Arrow Figure 28).

Figure 29

Assemble new sealing ring and install locking screw (Arrow I).

Assemble gearshift lever (Arrow 2) flush mounted and fix it by means of hex. Head screw.

NOTE :

Radial installation position of the gearshift lever according to the Indications of the

Manufacturer of the vehicle, resp. according to the markings !

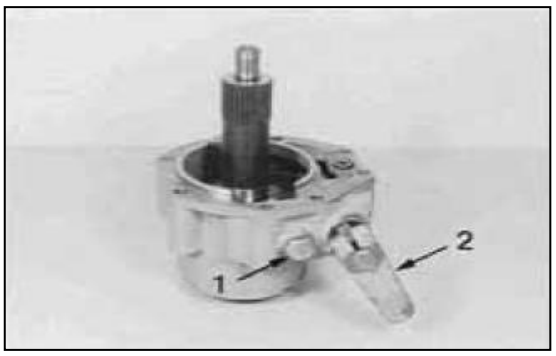


Figure 30

Insert closing cover (Arrow) until contact is obtained and fix it by slight central tapping.

NOTE ;

Wet sealing surfaces with Loctite (Type-No. 270) !

Figure 31

Insert disk and assemble sleeve.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position of the sleeve !

Figure 32

Fix sleeve by means of disk and socket head screws.

Torque limit (M10/8.8 DIN 6912) 32 Nm

NOTE :

Secure socket head screws with Loctite (Type- No. 270) !

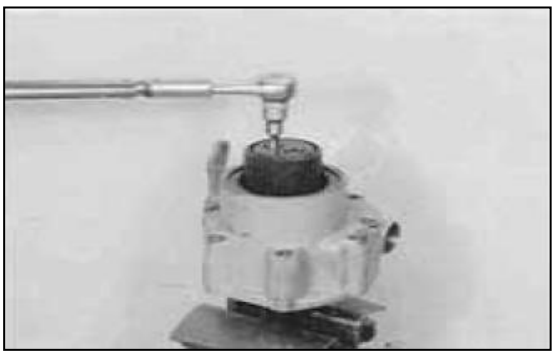


Figure 33

6.2 DIFFERENTIAL

6.2.1 Remove and dismantle differential

Pull roller bearing by means of puller device out of the housing bore.

(S) Internal puller 5870 300 010

Figure35

Tilt gear case 180°.

Loosen hex. head screws and pull output flange from the shaft

(s) Clamping yoke 5870 240 025

Figure 36

Pry shaft seal out of the housing bore.

(S) Pry bar 5870 345 071

Figure 37

Remove circlip and shim.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

Figure 38

Loosen hex. head screws and pull complete speedometer drive out of the housing bore.

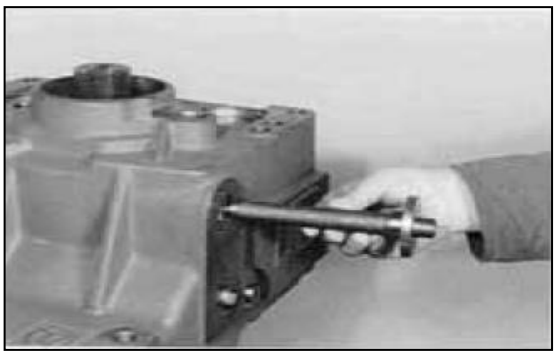


Figure 39

Drive output shaft by means of striker out of the housing bore.

(S) Striker 870 650 001

Figure 40

Squeeze circlip out and remove shim.

Figure 41

Pull roller bearing out of the housing bore.

(S) Puller 5870 300 010

Figure 42

Loosen closing cover by central tapping and remove it.

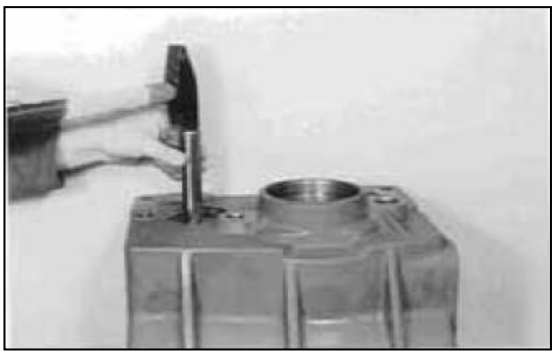


Figure 43

Loosen hex. head screws and remove them along with flat washers (Figure 44).

Now, take cover plate out of the gear case (Figure 45).

Figure 44

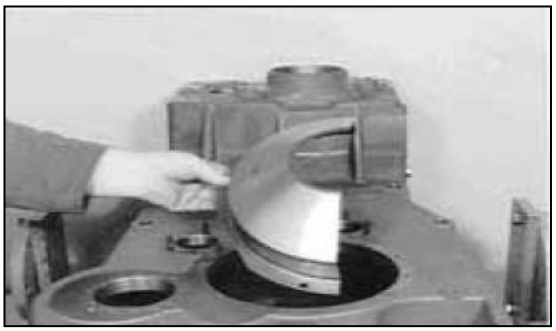


Figure 45

Loosen socket head screws and remove supporting tube.

NOTE ;

Socket head screws are secured with Loctite !

(S) Allen screw A/F-8 5870 290 001

Figure 46

Tilt gear case 180°.

Take cover plate out of the housing.

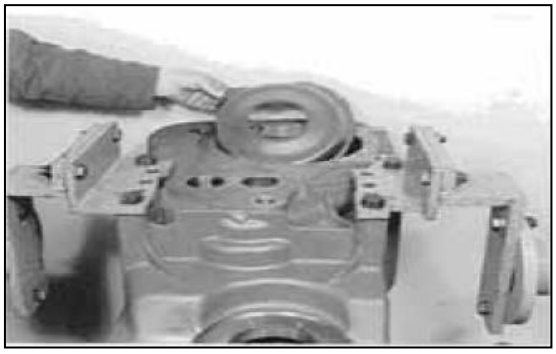


Figure 47

Loosen the screw connection (Figure 48) and separate the supporting plate by means of back-off screw (M8) from the output gear (Figure 49).

(S) Back-off screws (M8) 5870 204 008

Figure 48

Figure 49

Take supporting plate out of the gear case.

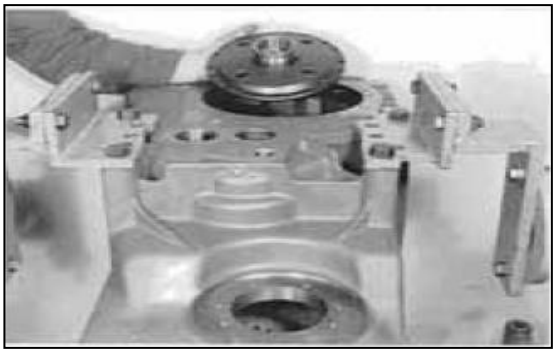


Figure 50

Displace output gear in direction of arrow until the removal of the planetary carrier is ensured.

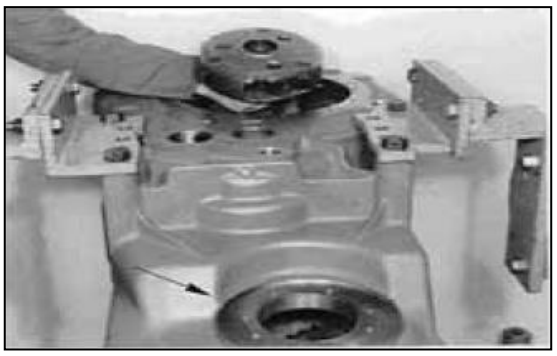


Figure 51

Take the output gear out of the gear case.

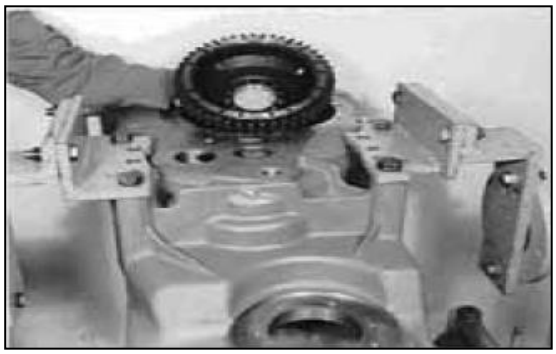


Figure 52

Drive roll pins carefully in until contact is obtained.

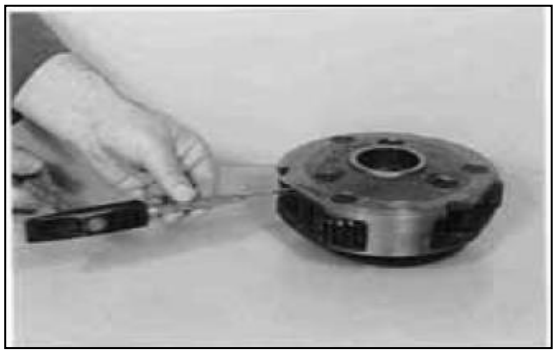


Figure 53

Press planetary shafts out of the bores and remove released components.

Figure 54

6.2.2 Pre-assemble and install differential

The Illustration on the left shows the com-ponents of the planetary carrier.
1 = Planetary carrier
2 = Thrust washer
3 = Sun gear
4 = Thrust washer (small inner diameter)
5 = Thrust washer
6 =Planetary gear
7 = Needle rollers (replace in sets only)
8 = Roll pin
9 = Planetary shafts

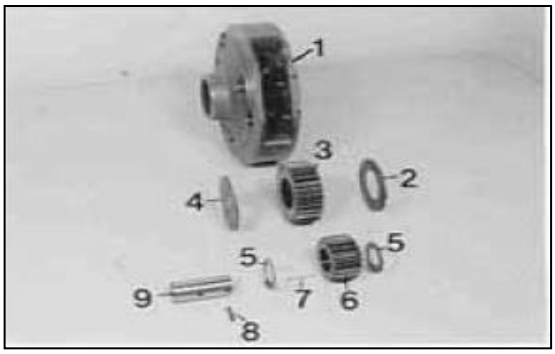


Figure 55

Install sun gear and thrust washers (Figure 56).
NOTE:
Pay attention to the installation position of the thrust washer 4 (smaller inner diameter) see Arrow!

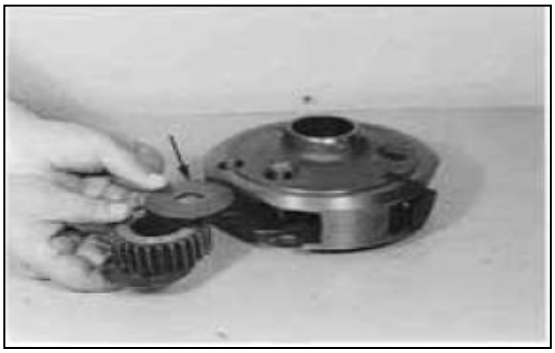


Figure 56

Insert needle rollers 7 with grease in the planetary gear.
Position planetary gear as well as thrust washers and align them centrically.
Undercool planetary shafts, introduce and fix them by means of roll pin.
Install the remaining planetary gears accordingly.
NOTE:
Pay attention to the installation position of the planetary shafts (lubricating hole)!

Figure 57

Figure 58 shows the installation position of the roll pins!

Figure 58

Insert output gear in the housing and displace it in direction of Arrow, to make the later reassembly of the planetary carrier possible.

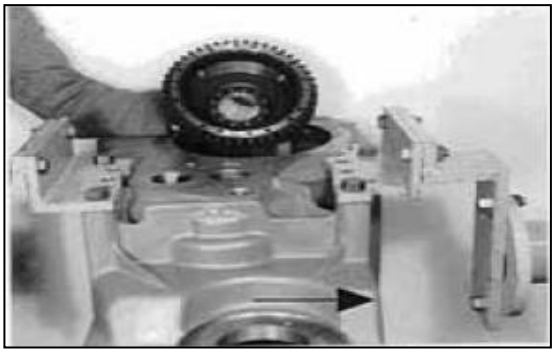


Figure 59

Introduce planetary carrier with the long hub side showing downwards, into the internal gear.

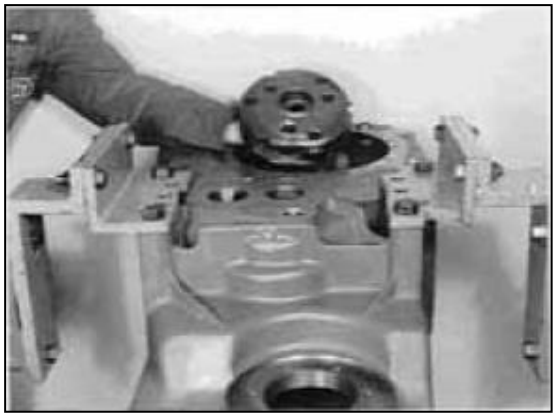


Figure 60

Lay supporting plate upon the output gear (Figure 61) and fix it by uniform tightening of the socket head screws (Figure 62).

Torque limit (Ml0/10.9) 68 Nm

NOTE:

Secure socket head screws with Loctite (Type No. 241)!

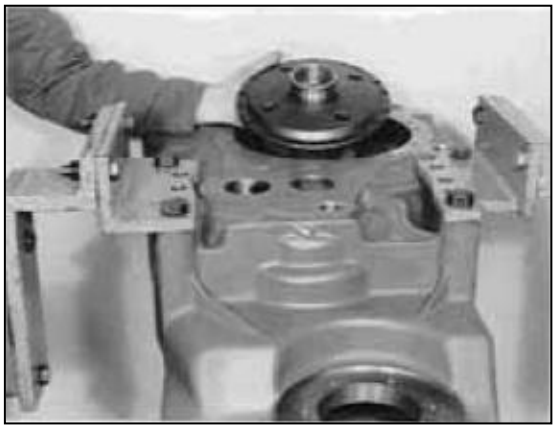


Figure 61

Figure 62

Lay cover plate upon the supporting plate (Figure 63).

Now, tilt gear case 180° .

ATTENTION:

Differential is not fixed!

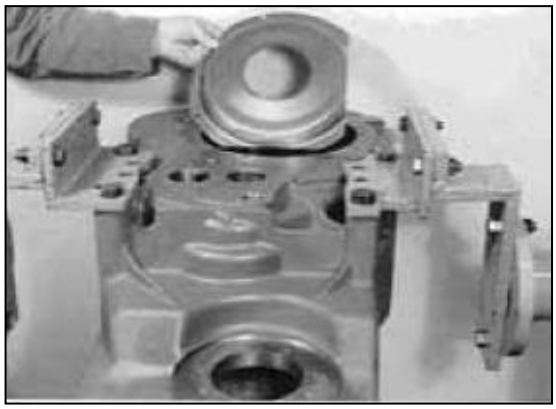


Figure 63

Squeeze in the first snap ring, press needle bearing against shoulder and fix it by means of second snap ring.

NOTE：

Install the needle bearing with the reinforced shell facing the pressing tool!

(S) Pressure piece 5870 100 035

Figure 64

Introduce supporting tube and fasten it by means of socket head screws.

Torque limit (Ml0/10.9) 68 Nm

NOTE :

Secure socket head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 241)!

(S) Allen screw A/F-8 5870 290 00I

Figure 65

Insert roller bearing until the supporting tube is received.

NOTE:

In order to ensure a possible disassembly, the roller bearing must be installed with the open cage side showing outwards (on top)!

The exact fixing is carried out later!

Figure 66

Insert cover plate in the gear case.

Figure 67

Position the two cover plates and fasten them by means of hex. head screws (install flat washers).

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE:

Secure hex. head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 241) !

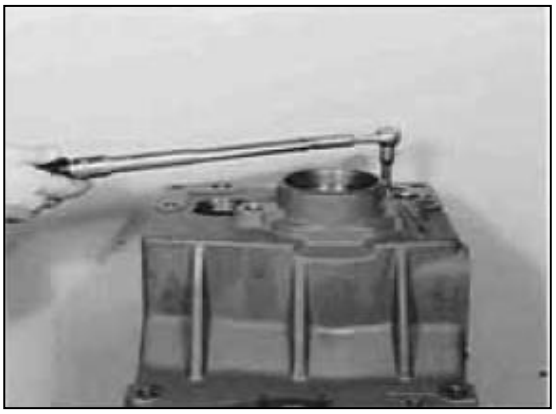


Figure 68

Tilt gear case 180°.

Insert roller bearing until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Pay attention to the installation position, open cage side of roller bearing is showing outwards (on top)!

Figure 69

Insert sleeve (Arrow) flush-mounted in the hollow shaft.

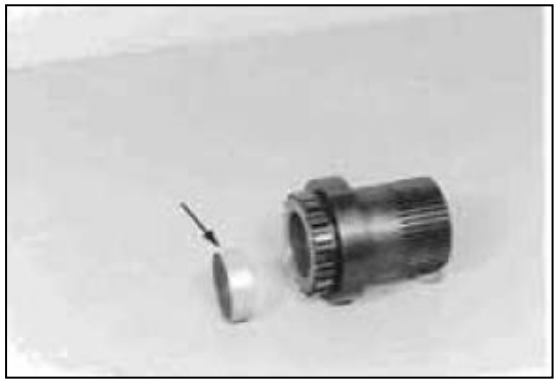


Figure 70

Introduce hollow shaft until contact is obtained.

Figure 71

Install two adjusting screws, replace 11a: gasket and place compl. shift-control housing against gear case until contact is obtained.

Fasten shift-control housing by means of socket head screws and install output flange (Arrow).

Torque limit (Ml0/8.8 DIN 7984) 32 Nm

(S) Adjusting screws (MI0) 5870 204 007

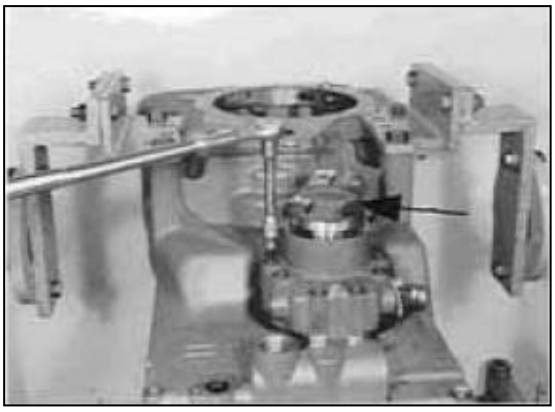


Figure 72

Tilt gear case 180°.

Drive differential assembly by careful tapping upon the roller bearing downwards, until the exact contact of the lower roller bearing (Figure 69) on the shift-control housing (Figure 72) is ensured.

Figure 73

Adjust end play of the differential 0,4 0,6 mm (Figure 74 ... 76)

Squeeze in circlip.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

Figure 74

Push circlip in direction of Arrow against shoulder and determine play between circlip and end face/bearing outer race, using feeler gauge.

Dimension I e.g. 1,50 mm

Figure 75

EXAMPLE "A" :

Dimension I e.g. 1,50 mm

required end play (0,4 ... 0,6 mm)

e.g. – 0,50 mm

Difference = Shim e.g. s = 1,00 mm

Install shim e.g. 1,00 mm (see Example "A") and squeeze circlip in.

Figure 76

Insert needle bush 1 flush-mounted in the bore of the output shaft 2.

Press ball bearing 3 against shoulder until contact is obtained.

NOTE :

Install needle bush with the reinforced shell facing the pressing tool!

(S) Driver 5870 058 023

(S) Handle 5870 260 002

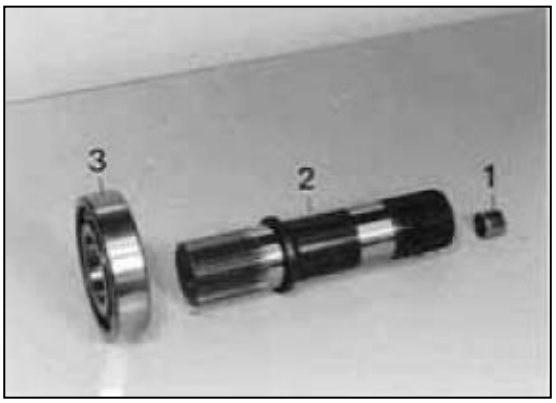


Figure 77

Introduce pre-assembled output shaft until contact is obtained.

NOTE:

Pay attention to the exact contact of the ball bearing!

Figure 78

Fix ball bearing free of play by means of shim and circlip.

Figure 79

Install shaft seal with the sealing lip facing the oil chamber.

NOTE:

By application of the prescribed driver, the exact installation position is obtained!

If the outer diameter of the shaft seal is rubberized, wet the sealing surface with spirit!

If not, use a sealing compound!

Grease sealing lip!

(S) Driver 5870 048 150

Figure 80

Assemble up output flange and fasten it by means of disk and hex. head screws.

NOTE:

Wet contact surface of disk and screw heads with sealing compound !

Torque limit (M10/8.8) 46 Nm

Now, fix hex. head screws with lock plate.

(S) Clamping yoke 5870 240 025

(S) Driver 5870 057 009

(S) Handle 5870 260 002

Figure 81

Install the two closing covers.

Figure 82

NOTE:

Wet sealing surfaces with Loctite (Type-No.270)!

(S) Driver	5870 057 015
(S) Handle	5870 260 002

Fasten closing covers by means of hex. Head screws and mount screw plug (Arrow).

NOTE:

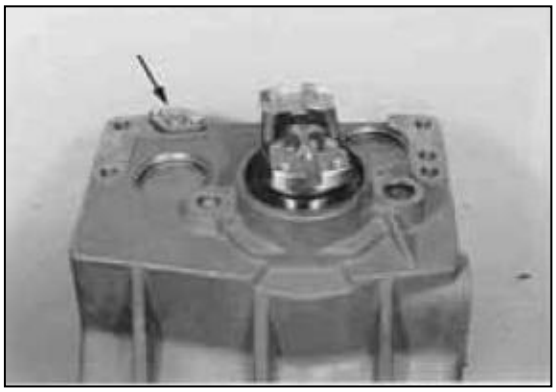


Figure 83

In tall new flat gasket as well as O-Ring !

Torque limit	
(Hex. head screws M8/8.8)	23 Nm
Torque limit	
(Screw plug M22x1.5)	60 Nm

Assemble flat gasket and fasten speedometer (compl.) by means of hex. head screws on the gear case.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

Figure 84

7. POWER TAKE-OFF

CONTROLLABLE UNDER LOAD

7.1 DISASSEMBLY

Loosen hex. head screws and remove shift-control housing

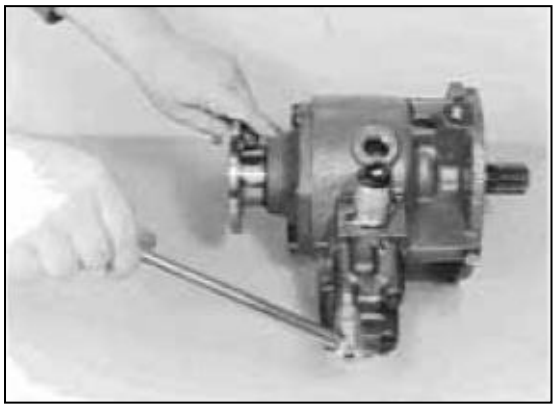


Figure 1

Remove components according to the Illustration on the right.

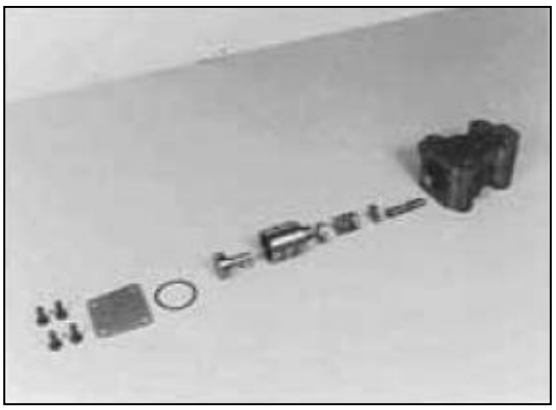


Figure 2

Loosen socket head screws and remove solenoid valve.

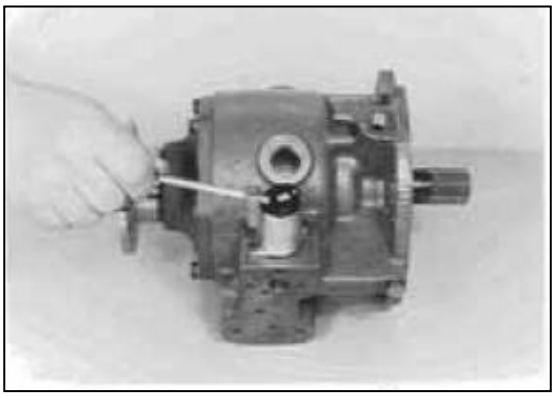


Figure 3

Loosen hex. head screws and pull the output flange from the output shaft, using puller.

(S) Clamping yoke 5870 240 025

Figure 4

Pry shaft seal out of the housing bore.

Figure 5

Loosen hex. head screws and pull complete clutch out of the housing.

Figure 6

Squeeze circlip out and remove backing plate as well as plate pack.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

Figure 7

Remove rectangular ring.

Figure 8

Preload compression spring, squeeze circlip out and remove released components.

(S) Assembly jig 5870 345 028

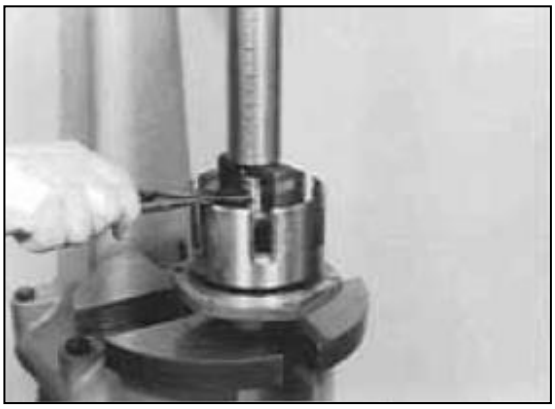


Figure 9

Remove piston.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 007

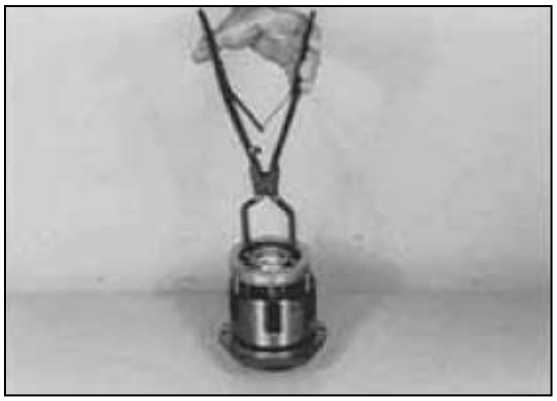


Figure 10

Squeeze out circlip.

Figure 11

Press output shaft (compl.) out of the ball bearing.

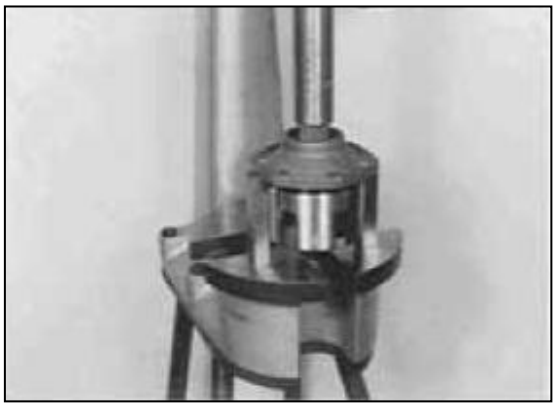


Figure 12

Squeeze circlip out.

Figure 13

Press ball bearing out of the cover.

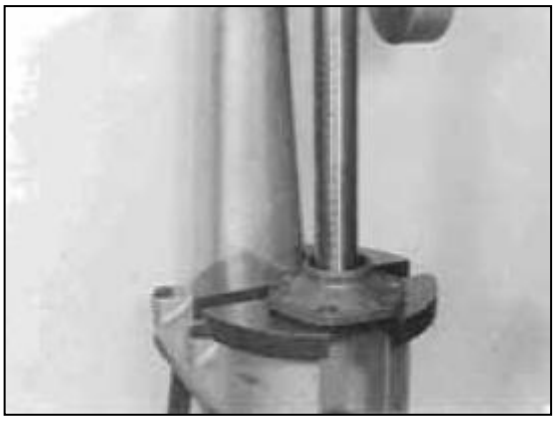


Figure 14

Preload circlip (Arrow), align it centrically and squeeze it out.

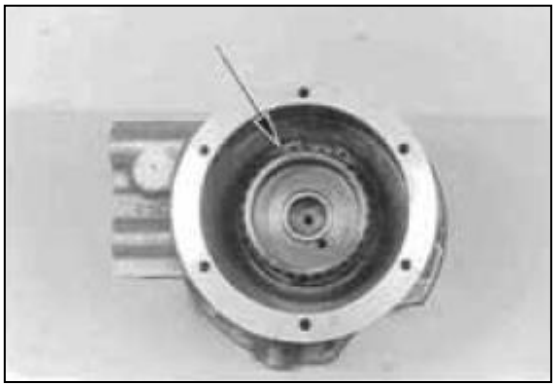


Figure 15

Press drive shaft out of the housing bore.

Figure 16

Squeeze out snap rings (3 pieces).

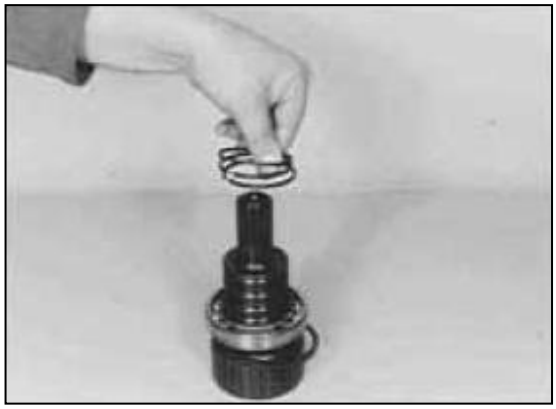


Figure 17

Squeeze circlip out.

Figure 18

Press ball bearing from the drive shaft.

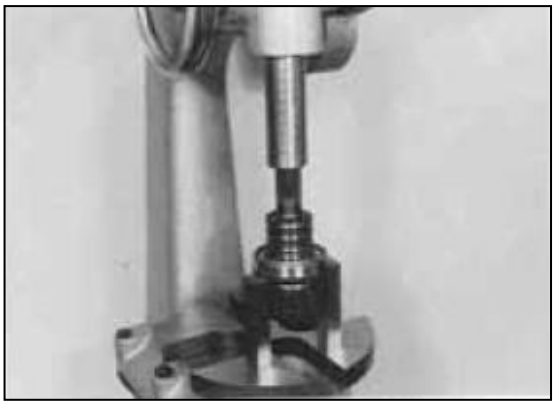


Figure 19

Pull needle bush out of the drive shaft bore.

(S) Internal puller 5870 300 004

(S) Back-up tool 5870 300 003

Figure 20

7.2 REASSEMBLY

Close the two bores by means of set screws see Arrows !

NOTE:

Insert set screws with Loctite (Type-No.270).

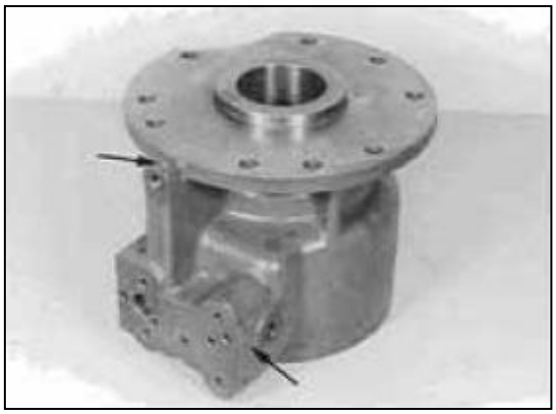


Figure 21

Mount circlip and press ball bearing against shoulder until contact is obtained.

Figure 22

Insert needle bush in the drive shaft bore until contact is obtained.

NOTE ;

Install needle bush with the reinforced shell facing the pressing tool.

(S) Driver	5870 058 013
(S) Handle	5870 260 002

Figure 23

Fix ball bearing by means of circlip.

Figure 24

Squeeze in and engage snap rings (3 pieces).
Now, grease snap rings and align them centrically.

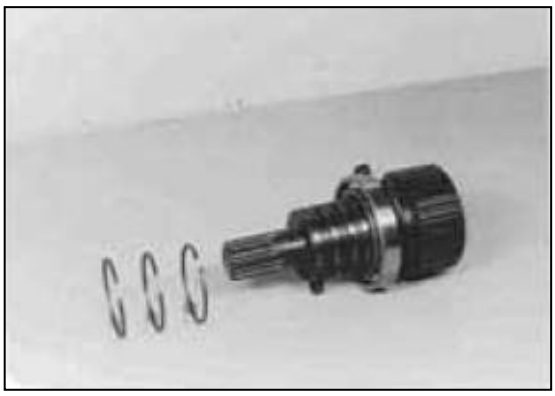


Figure 25

Press drive shaft into the housing bore until contact is obtained.

Figure 26

Preload circlip, align centrically and squeeze it into the annular groove of the housing.

Figure 27

Install radial lip-type sealing rings according to the Figure on the left.

1 = Piston

2 = Radial lip-type sealing ring (internal)

3 = Radial lip-type sealing ring (external)

4 = Pressure side

NOTE :

Sealing lip facing the pressure side !

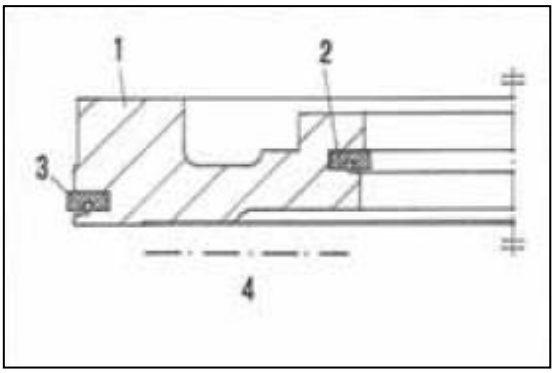


Figure 28

Oil radial lip-type sealing rings and insert piston carefully until contact is obtained.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 007

Figure 29

Install compression spring and disk.

NOTE :

Install disk with the reduced plane surface facing the compression spring !

Figure 30

Preload compression spring by means of assembly jig (S) and fix it by means of circlip (Arrow).

(S) Assembly jig 5870 345 028

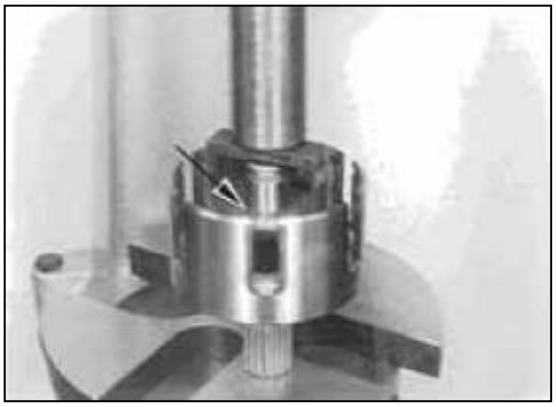


Figure 31

Assemble outer and inner plates alternately, starting with one outer plate.

NOTE ;

Quantity of outer and inner plates, see corresponding Spare Parts List !

Oil plate pack prior to the installation !

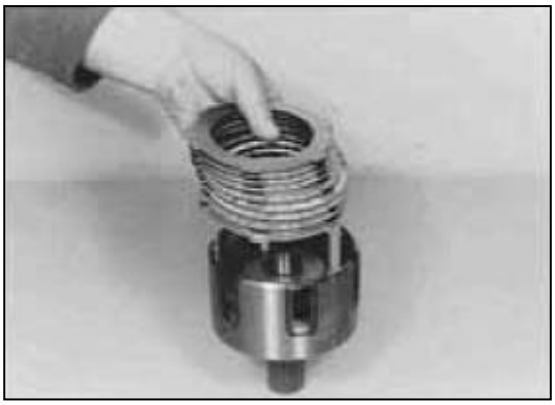


Figure 32

Mount backing plate and fix plate pack by means of circlip.

(S) Clamping pliers 5870 900 021

Figure 33

Check operation of the clutch by means of compressed air.

Figure 34

Squeeze rectangular ring into the annular groove (Arrow) and engage it.

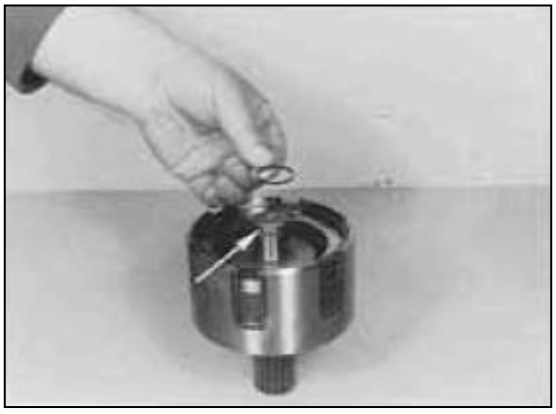


Figure 35

Press ball bearing against shoulder until contact is obtained.

Figure 36

Fix ball bearing by means of circlip.

Figure 37

Install shaft seal with the sealing lip facing the oil chamber (downwards).

NOTE :

By appliation of the prescribed driver, the exact installation position is obtained !

If the outer diameter of the shaft seal is rubberized, wet the sealing surface with spirit !

If not, use a sealing compound !

Crease scaling lip !

(S) Driver	5870 055 05«
(S) Handle	5870 260 002

Figure 38

Support the bearing inner race of the ball bearing and press cover against shoulder until contact is obtained.

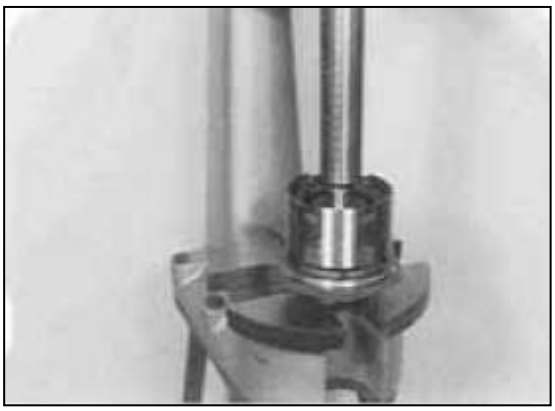


Figure 39

Heat output flange and press it against shoulder until contact is obtained.

Figure 40

Fix output flange by means of disk and hex. head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

NOTE :

Wet contact surface of disk as well as of the screw heads with sealing compound !

Insert hex. head screws with Loctite (Type-No. 241) !

(S) Clamping yoke 5870 240 025

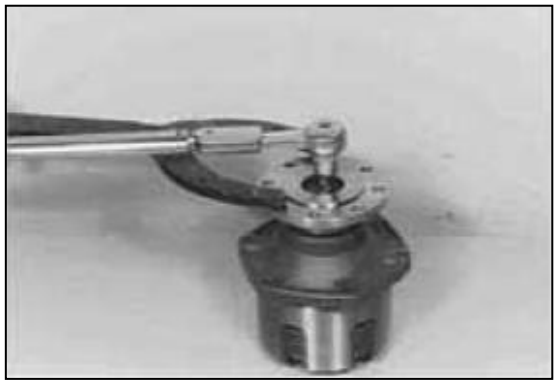


Figure 41

Install two adjusting screws and replace flat gasket.

Grease rectangular ring (Figure 35), align it centrically and introduce the complete clutch until contact is obtained.

(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011

Figure 42

Fasten clutch by means of hex. head screws.

Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm

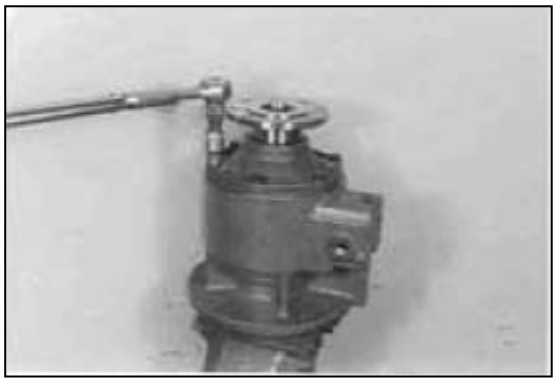


Figure 43

Make O-Ring (26 x 3 mm, see Arrow) adhere with grease in the countersinking Of the housing.
Introduce solenoid valve until contact is obtained and fasten it by means of socket head screws.
Torque limit (M 5/8.8) 5,5 Nm

NOTE ;

Employ new O-Rings for the solenoid valve !

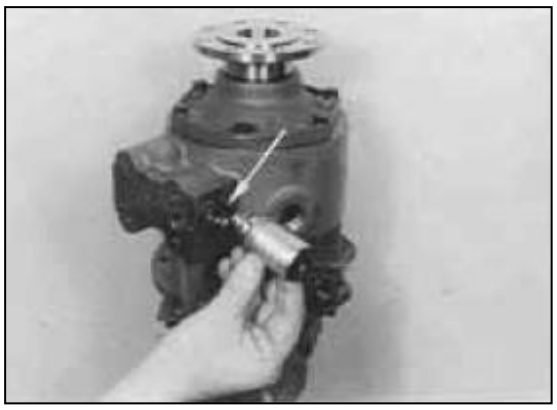


Figure 44

Install components according to the Illustration on the left.
1= Housing
2 = Spool
3= Disk
4 = Spring
5 = Disk
6 = Sleeve
7 = Spool
8 = O-Ring
9 = Cover
10 = Hex. head screw

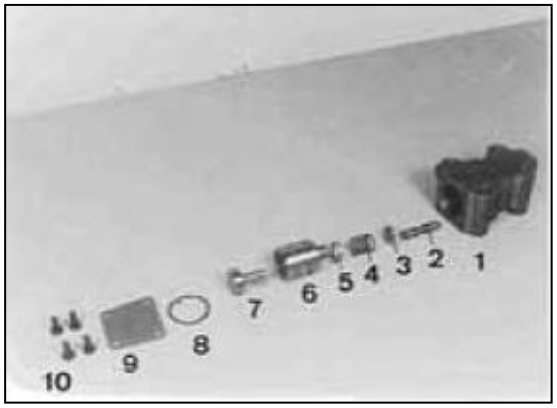


Figure 45

Torque limit (M6/8.8) 9,5 Nm

NOTE:

Pay attention to the installation position of the spool (2) !

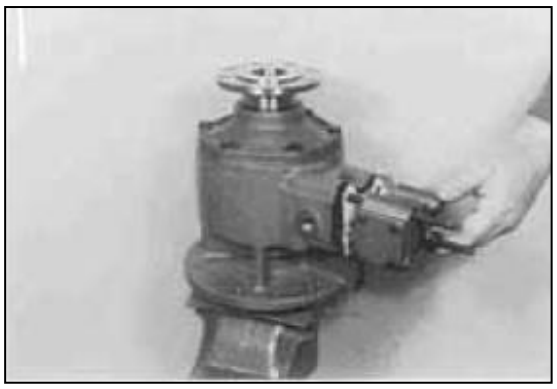


Figure 46

Install disk (5) with the chamfering facing the sleeve !
Install two adjusting screws and assemble flat gasket as well as shift-control housing.
Now, fasten shift-control housing by means of hex. head screws (use flat washers).
Torque limit (M8/8.8) 23 Nm
(S) Adjusting screws (M8) 5870 204 011
Install screw plug (Arrow).

NOTE :

Install new sealing ring !

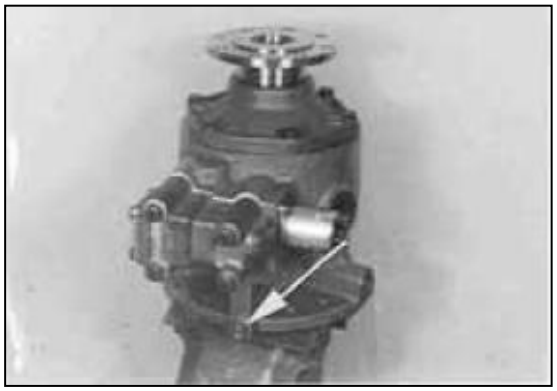


Figure 47

TABLE OF CONTENTS

HYDRAULICS

SP002347

CYLINDERS

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Description

Working principle

It is usually composed of cylinder body, piston rod and sealing parts, internal of cylinder body is divided into two parts and connect with a oil hold respectively. Since compression of liquid is very small, when oil coming into one oil hole, piston will be propelled to make oil going out from another oil hole, piston drives piston rod stretching (compressing), on the contrary as before.

Cylinder is the implementing part of the straight line movement of output force and piston effective area and the pressure difference at both sides. It is used to change hydraulic energy into mechanic energy. The input of cylinder is flow rate and pressure of fluid, the output is speed and force of straight line movement. Piston of cylinder can finish straight line alternating motion, the output straight line displacement is limited. Cylinder is the energy converting device from hydraulic energy to mechanic energy for alternating straight line movement. Cylinder is basically composed of cylinder barrel, cylinder cover, piston, piston rod, sealing device and cushioning device.

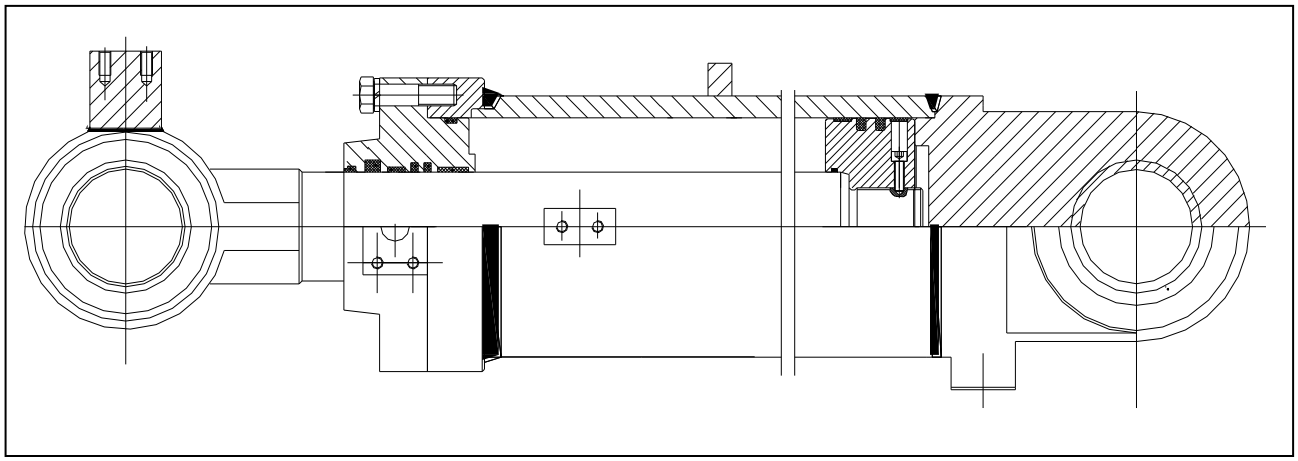


Figure 1

Detailed list of spare parts

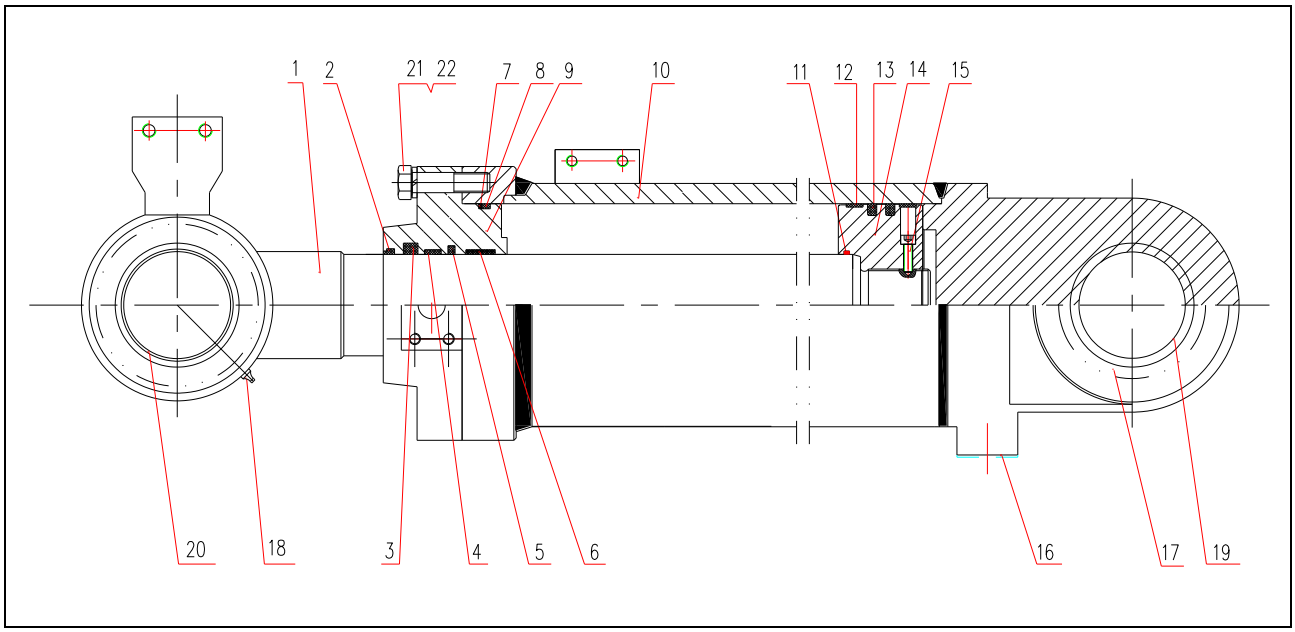


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Cylinder rod	12	Support ring
2	Dust ring	13	SPGO
3	Obturating ring	14	Piston
4	Support ring	15	Socket head cap screw
5	Cushion seal	16	Port protecting cover
6	Support ring	17	Hole protecting cover
7	Four fluorine block circle	18	Oil cup
8	O-RING	19	Cylinder end bush
9	Guide sleeve	20	Bush
10	Cylinder block	21	Bolt
11	O-RING	22	Washer

Disassembling and assembling steps

Disassembling steps

Note： *Prepare a container which can store all hydraulic oil of the maintained cylinder, hydraulic oil will flow out from cylinder*.

1. Put the cylinder on special supporting vertically, screw down bolts of cylinder cover with pneumatic wrench or torque wrench.

Figure 3

2. Hang piston rod assembly out from cylinder and put it on special protective support.

Figure 4

3. Twist piston lock screw with special tools.

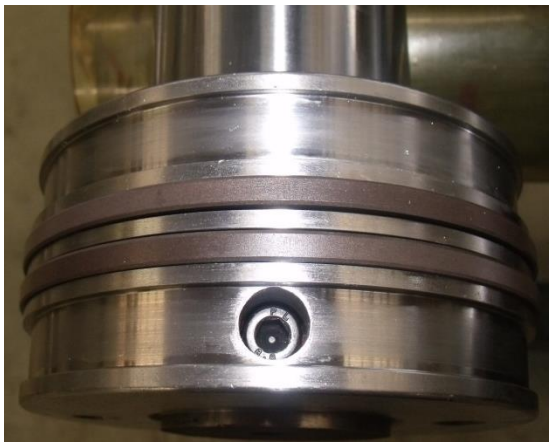


Figure 5

4. Dismantle piston with special piston tightening tool and jackhammer.

Figure 6

5. Dismantle piston and cylinder cover assembly.

Figure 7

6. Dismantle sealing parts with special tools.

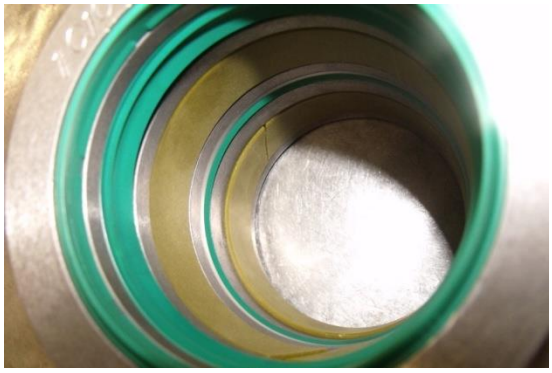


Figure 8

Assembling steps

1. Install sealing parts of cylinder.

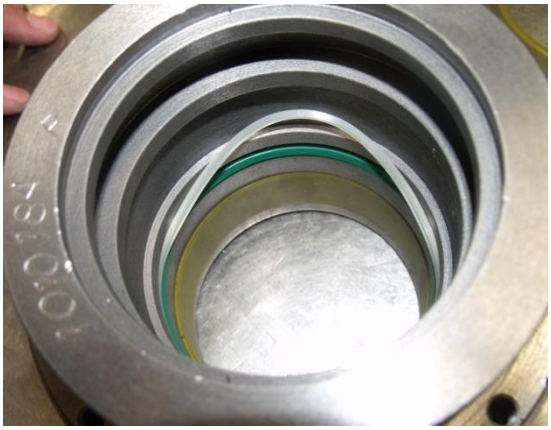


Figure 9

2. Install cylinder cover assembly.

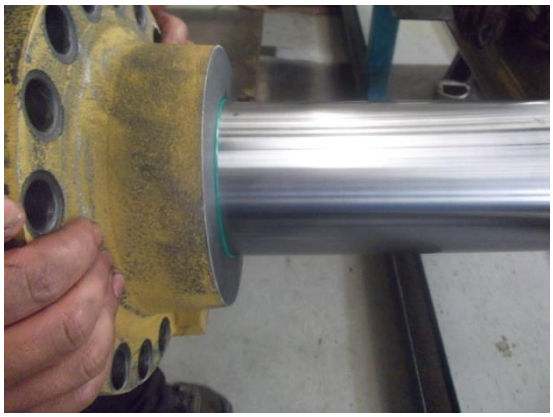


Figure 10

3. Install piston with special tools.

Figure 11

4. Screw down piston bolts with special tools.

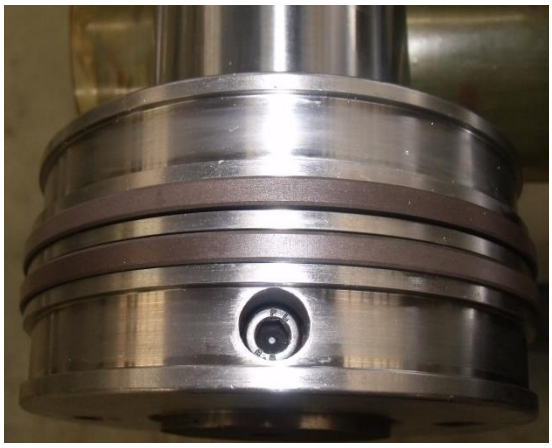


Figure 12

5. Put piston rod in cylinder barrel.

Figure 13

6. Screw down bolts of cylinder cover and cylinder barrel.

Figure 14

Main Pump

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Work principle

When active gear 4 rotates with clockwise direction, driven gear 10 rotates with anti-clockwise direction, partial vaccum is formed when teeth of two gears are away from the area in oil in side (left area shown in the figure), with effect of atmospheric pressure, hydraulic oil enters oil suction chamber of oil pump and fills in teeth area. At the other oil outlet side, the size is smaller because of gear mesh, hydraulic oil is squeezed out, gear keeps rotating, gear teeth keeps squeezing out hydraulic oil to enter into work oilway and realize constant oil supplying of the system.

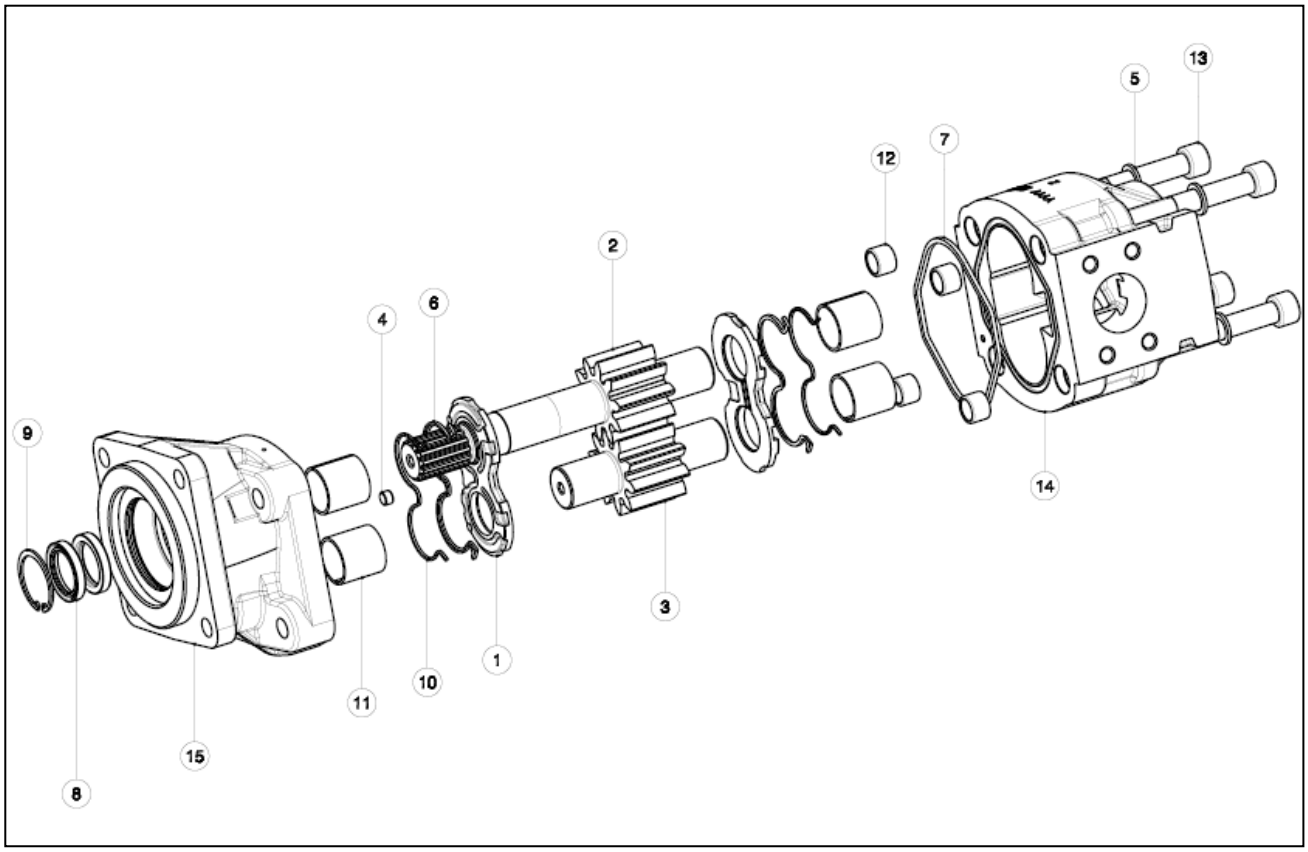


Figure 1

PARTS LIST

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Thrust Palte	9	Ring
2	Drive Shaft	10	Back-up Ring
3	Driven Gear	11	Sleeve Bearing
4	Grub Screw	12	Steel Bushes
5	Washer	13	Screw
6	Seal	14	Body
7	Parker Ring	15	Front Cover
8	Shaft Seal		

Parts replacement principle

If main pump needs to be repaired to reach the original performance index, parts replacement principle must be followed to replace parts, following is the detailed replacing rules:

1. Side plate: replace side plate when it is scratched, there is pit, spray and finishing layer sheds, burnt, deformed and cavitation corrosion.

2. Gear: replace gear when one of the following conditions happens: shaft diameter of gear shaft is scratched or worn in sealing zone; teeth surface of gear is worn, scratched, broken or deformed; addendum circle is damaged seriously; multiple spline or flat key and spindle nose are worn, deformed and broken.

3. Castings (front cover, pump body, and rear cover):

3.1 If there is flaw on castings, and sealing zone has chip, rust, deformed pin hole, then replace castings.

3.2 Replace pump body when one of the following conditions happens: oil mouth is broken, pump body is broken and rusty; when bore depth of pump body ＞0.08mm.

4. Round pin: round pin must be replaced when the matching does not comply with requirements, pin is broke and deformed, replace the front cover, pump body and rear cover matched with round pin when it is necessary.

5. Rolling bearing: new parts must be replaced when quill roller drops, retainer is damages, quill roller has surface pitting, roller path has surface pitting, oversintering.

6. Secondary sealing ring: replace with new parts when there is inner diameter abrasion, end face abrasion, thickness is milled, deformed, surface is coarse.

7. Non-metal sealing parts: all non-metal sealing parts must be replaced.

8. Outboard bearing: replace with new parts when parts are worn and rusty.

9. Fastener: replace it when it is drawn out, deformed and damaged.

Preparation before disassembling

1．Clean the surface of pump, and check if the surface has chip and rust.

2． Check model and factory releasing number on nameplate, if there is no nameplate on pump, check factory releasing number at seam allowance of front cover.

3．Fill in relative information on main pump returned for maintenance card before disassembling, such as manufacturer, applicable machine model, applicable working condition, pump model, factory releasing number, factory releasing date, head and marks of fabricator, working parameters (pressure, rotation, impact and the constant running time at the highest pressure) on main machine, total working time of main pump and reason for returning for maintenance, etc.

4．Make sure the production is released from the factory as a whole and it is not disassembled after releasing, otherwise it is not maintained.

5. If there is external leaking, do gas tightness checking to the entire pump and find out leaking position.

6．Check tightening torque of bolts (screw down bolts again with torque wrench, record the Max. tightening torque), learn if tightening torque of all bolts have reached the required specification.

Disassembly and assembly steps

Disassembly steps

1. Loosen and remove the assembling bolts and washers from the pump

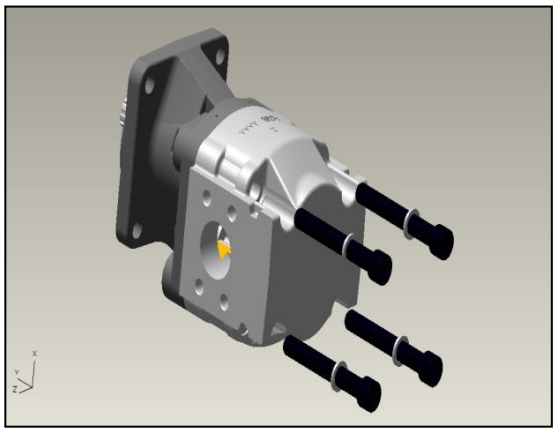


Figure 2

2. ① Remove mounting flange taking care to keep it as straight as possible during removal.
Tap around the edge with rubber mallet in order to break away from the body.
☞Ensure that while removing it, the drive shaft and other components remain position. Use proper tool to avoid shaft seal damage by sharp endge of shaft

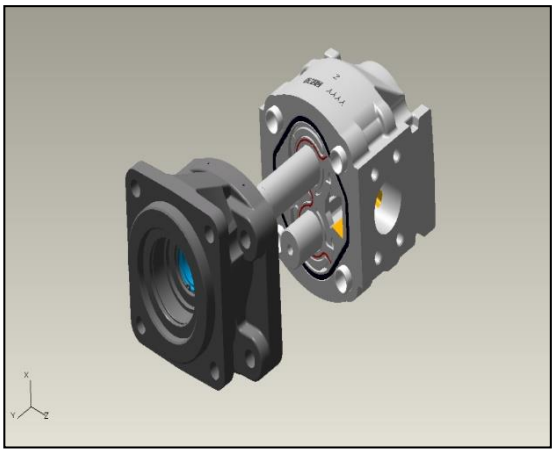


Figure 3

3. Take out snap ring with proper tool and Remove 2 shaft seal with (-) screwdriver.

☞Take out the shaft seals only needed.
Shaft seals disassembled from the mounting flange is not reusable

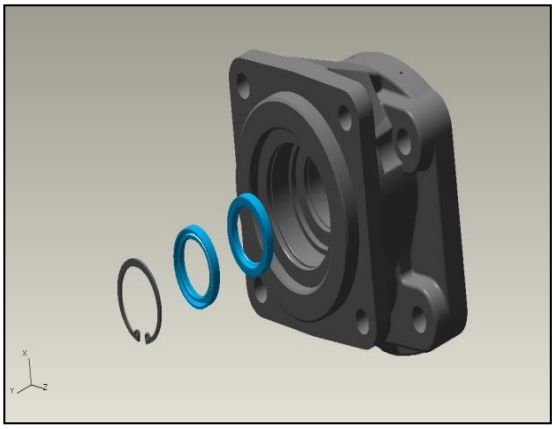


Figure 4

4. ① Remove the pressure plate with prearranged parts, O-ring & back up ring from the working section and examine it carefully.
② Take out square O-ring from the groove on the body.
☞Be careful not to give any damage on the surface of rings.

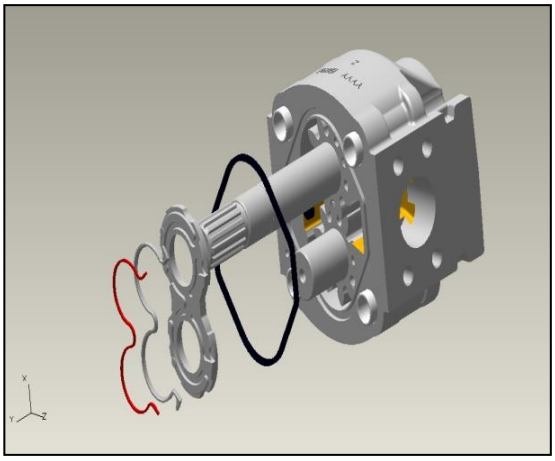


Figure 5

7. ① Pull out driving gear & driven gear keeping gears as straight as possible.

② Remove other pressure plate on rear side with same way for front side

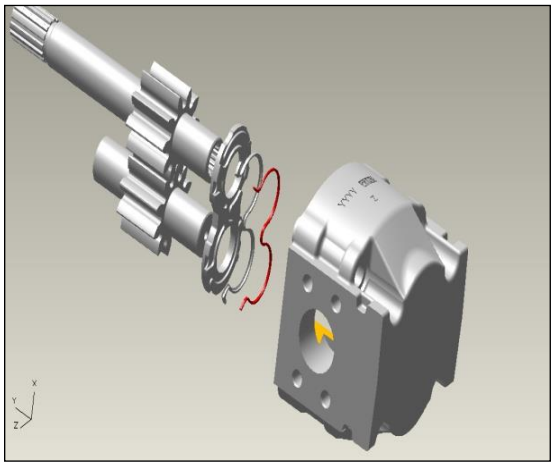


Figure 6

Assembly process

Assembling of sealing framework assembly

pressure plates for 1st working section

1. pressure plates for 1st working section

① Smear clean grease on pressure plate groove

②Locate O-ring into the grove on the aluminum pressure plate.

③Locate back-up ring upon the O-ring.

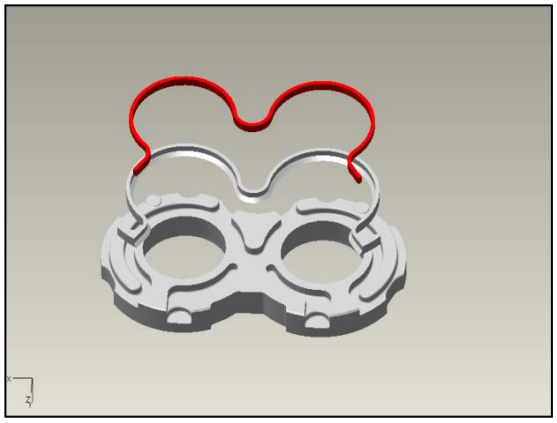


Figure 7

working body

2. ①Smear clean grease on the square groove

②Insert square rings into the groove and 4 alignment pins.

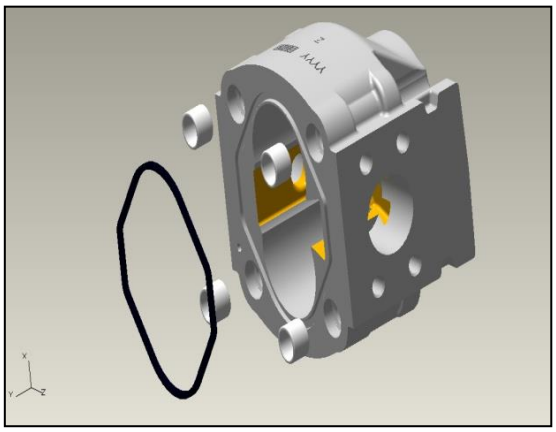


Figure 8

3. ① Locate shaft seal inside shaft hole to the end.
② insert snap ring and locate it into the groove prearranged.

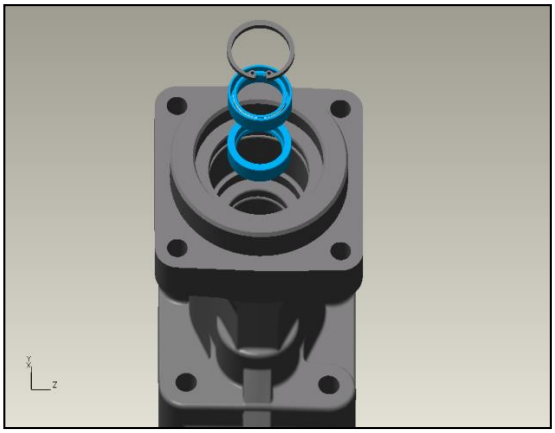


Figure 9

4. ① prepare cleaned 2nd body prearranged guard pins and square O- ring.
② Insert a pressure plate prearranged O-ring & back-up ring inside of body.

Opened area of O-ring should face to suction side. And O-ring side should face to the body.

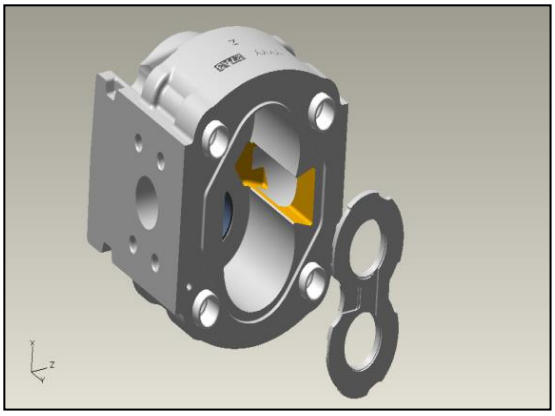


Figure 10

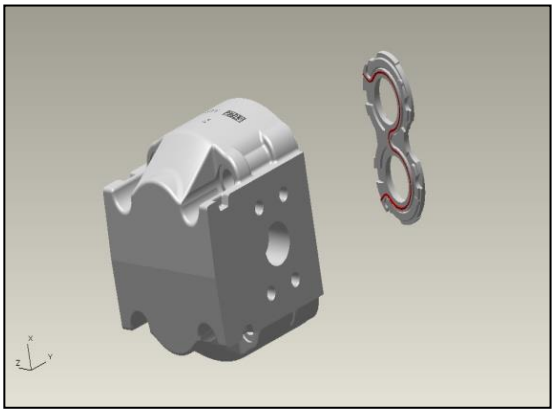


Figure 11

5. ① Locate driving gear and driven gear keeping as straight as possible during assembling.
② Locate one of pressure plates pre-assembled.

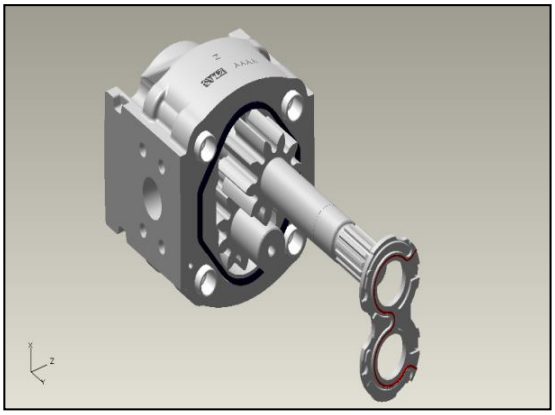


Figure 12

6. ① Assemble mounting flange to the body, use proper tools in order to avoid any damage on the shaft seals by sharp edge of shaft.
☞ Smear clean grease on the lips of shaft seals before assembling.

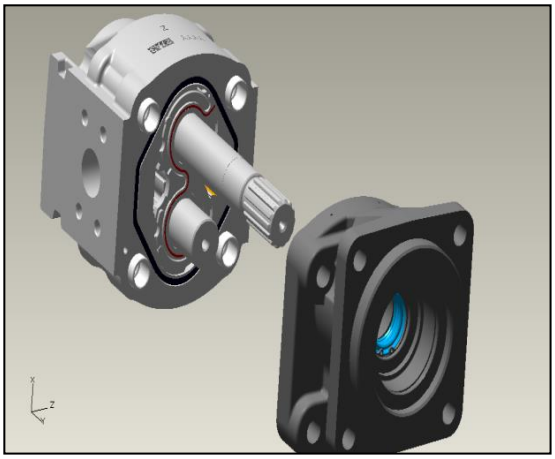


Figure 13

7. Assemble the bolts and tighten the bolts with in a crisscross pattern to a torque value of 280 Nm.

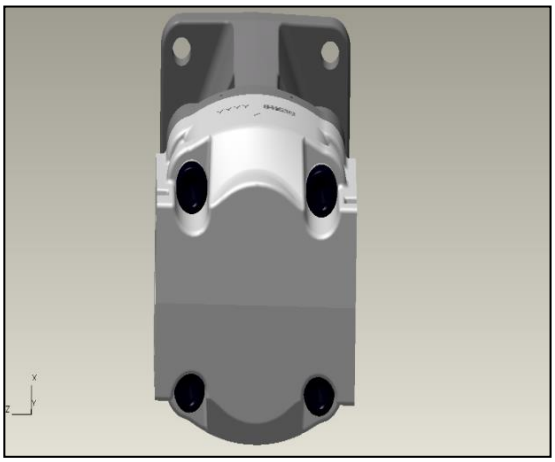


Figure 14

Steer Pump

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Work principle

When active gear 4 rotates with clockwise direction, driven gear 10 rotates with anti-clockwise direction, partial vaccum is formed when teeth of two gears are away from the area in oil in side (left area shown in the figure), with effect of atmospheric pressure, hydraulic oil enters oil suction chamber of oil pump and fills in teeth area. At the other oil outlet side, the size is smaller because of gear mesh, hydraulic oil is squeezed out, gear keeps rotating, gear teeth keeps squeezing out hydraulic oil to enter into work oilway and realize constant oil supplying of the system.

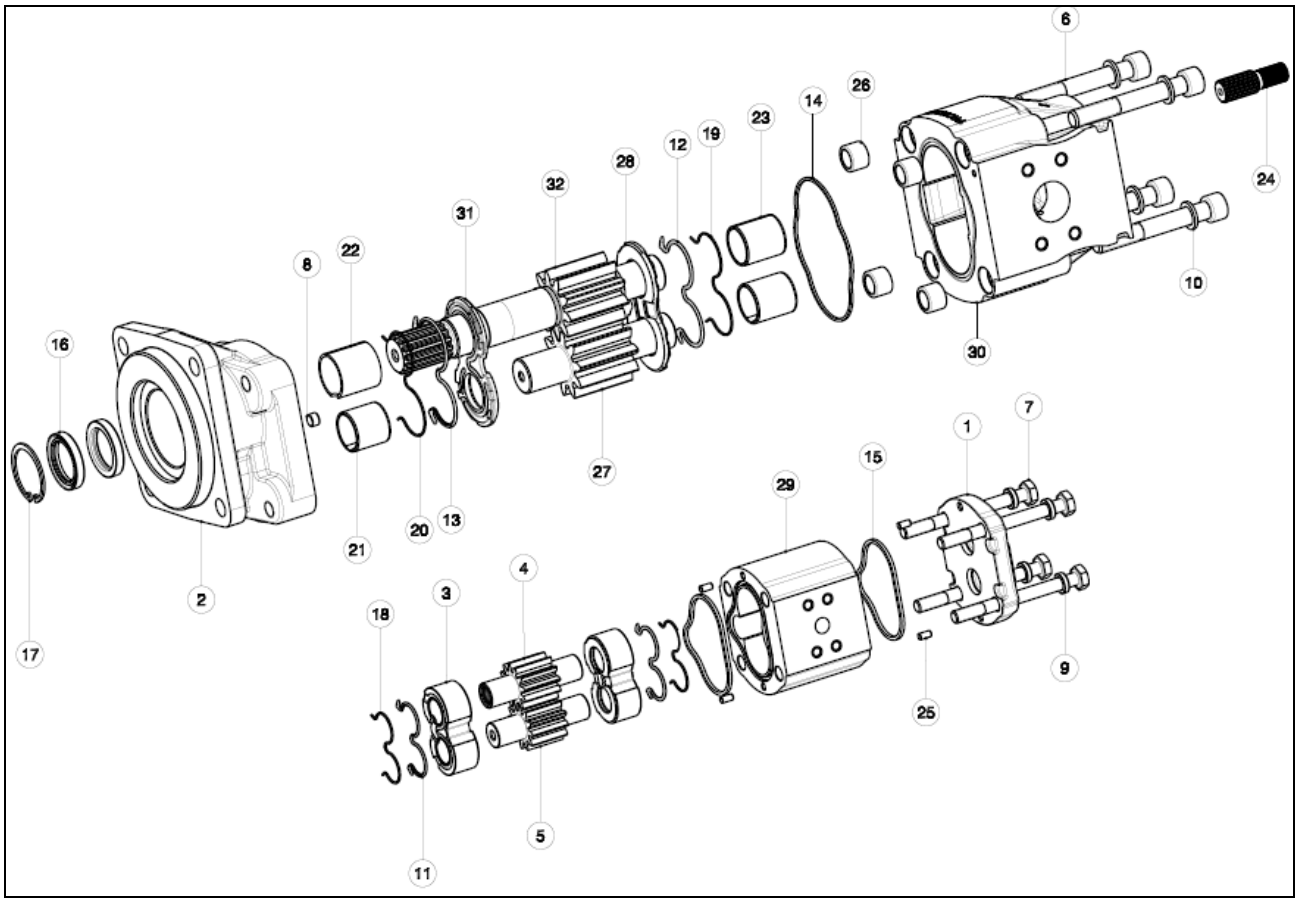


Figure 1

PARTS LIST

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Rear Cover	17	Ring
2	Cover	18	Antiextrusion PL-K20
3	Thrust Plate	19	Antiextrusion Ring
4	Drive Gear	20	Upper Antiextrusion Ring
5	Driven Gear	21	Sleeve Bearing
6	Screw TCEI	22	Upper Sleeve Bearing
7	Screw TE	23	Sleeve Bearing MB
8	Grub Screw	24	HUB
9	Washer 10	25	Dowel Pin
10	Washer 14	26	Steel Bushes
11	Seal PL-K20	27	Driven Gear
12	Seal FP-KP-HD30	28	Thrust Plate
13	Upper Seal	29	Body PL20
14	Standard Seal	30	Body PL30
15	Seal PL20	31	Upper Thrust Plate
16	Shaft Seal	32	Drive Shaft

Parts replacement principle

If main pump needs to be repaired to reach the original performance index, parts replacement principle must be followed to replace parts, following is the detailed replacing rules:

1．Side plate: replace side plate when it is scratched, there is pit, spray and finishing layer sheds, burnt, deformed and cavitati on corrosion.

2．Gear: replace gear when one of the following conditions happens: shaft diameter of gear shaft is scratched or worn in sealing zone; teeth surface of gear is worn, scratched, broken or deformed; addendum circle is damaged seriously; multiple spline or flat key and spindle nose are worn, deformed and broken.

3．Castings (front cover, pump body, and rear cover):

3.1 If there is flaw on castings, and sealing zone has chip, rust, deformed pin hole, then replace castings.

3.2 Replace pump body when one of the following conditions happens: oil mouth is broken, pump body is broken and rusty; when bore depth of pump body ＞0.08mm.

4．Round pin: round pin must be replaced when the matching does not comply with requirements, pin is broke and deformed, replace the front cover, pump body and rear cover matched with round pin when it is necessary.

5. Rolling bearing and sliding bearing

5.1 Rolling bearing: new parts must be replaced when quill roller drops, retainer is damages, quill roller has surface pitting, roller path has surface pitting, oversintering.

5.2 Sliding bearing: if one of the following conditions happens, bearing must be replaced: bearing surface is scratched, painting coat sheds, or copper basement is exposed.

6．Secondary sealing ring: replace with new parts when there is inner diameter abrasion, end face abrasion, thickness is milled, deformed, surface is coarse.

7．Non-metal sealing parts: all non-metal sealing parts must be replaced.

8．Outboard bearing: replace with new parts when parts are worn and rusty.

9．Fastener: replace it when it is drawn out, deformed and damaged.

Preparation before disassembling

1．Clean the surface of pump, and check if the surface has chip and rust.

2．Check model and factory releasing number on nameplate, if there is no nameplate on pump, check factory releasing number at seam allowance of front cover.

3．Fill in relative information on main pump returned for maintenance card before disassembling, such as manufacturer, applicable machine model, applicable working condition, pump model, factory releasing number, factory releasing date, head and marks of fabricator, working parameters (pressure, rotation, impact and the constant running time at the highest pressure) on main machine, total working time of main pump and reason for returning for maintenance, etc.

4．Make sure the production is released from the factory as a whole and it is not disassembled after releasing, otherwise it is not maintained.

5. If there is external leaking, do gas tightness checking to the entire pump and find out leaking position.

6．Check tightening torque of bolts (screw down bolts again with torque wrench, record the Max. tightening torque), learn if tightening torque of all bolts have reached the required specification.

Disassembly and assembly steps

Disassembly steps

1. ①Loosen and remove the assembling bolts and washers from the 2nd pump.

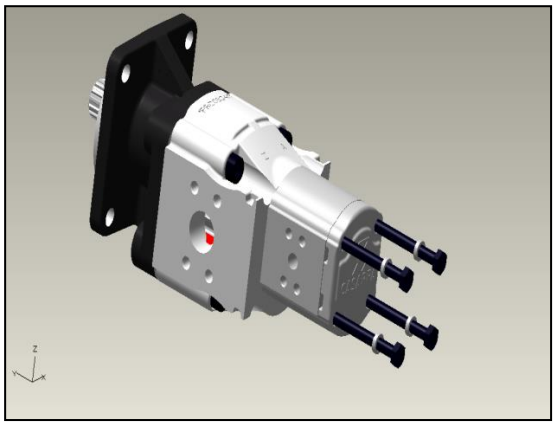


Figure 2

2. ①Remove the complete 2nd working section.
②Remove through hub

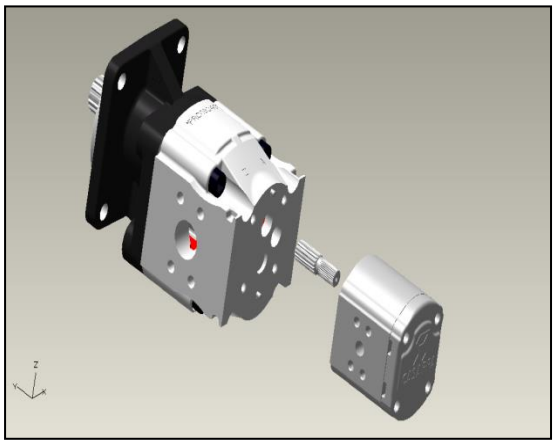


Figure 3

3. ① Loosen and remove the assembling bolts and washers from the 1st pump.

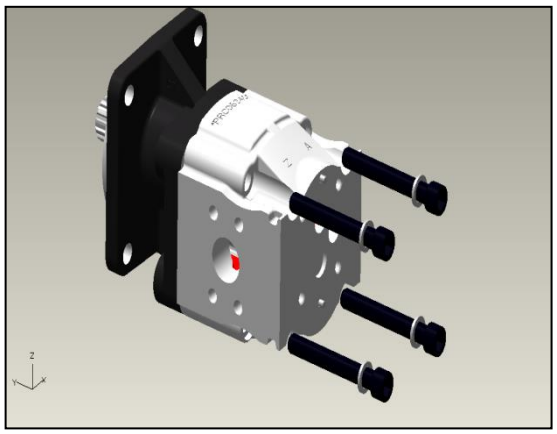


Figure 4

4. ① Remove mounting flange taking care to keep it as straight as possible during removal.
Tap around the edge with rubber mallet in order to break away from the body.
☞Ensure that while removing it, the drive shaft and other components remain position. Use proper tool to avoid shaft seal damage by sharp edge of shaft

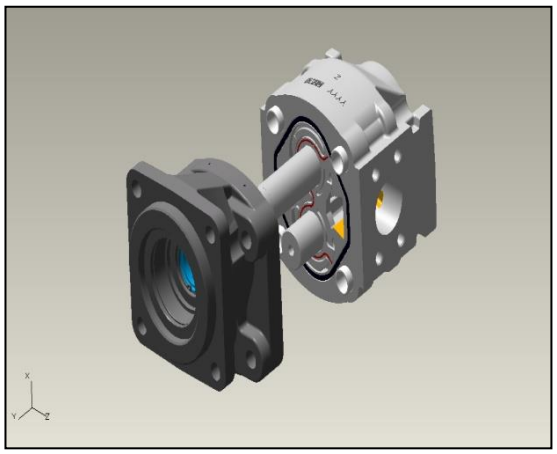


Figure 5

5. ① Take out snap ring with proper tool and Remove 2 shaft seal with (-) screwdriver.
☞Take out the shaft seals only needed: Shaft seals disassembled from the mounting flange is not reusable

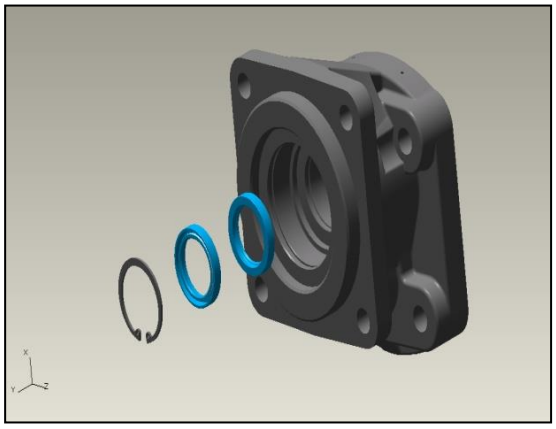


Figure 6

6. ① Remove the pressure plate with prearranged parts, O-ring & back up ring from the working section and examine it carefully.
② Take out square O-ring from the groove on the body.
☞Be careful not to give any damage on the surface of rings.

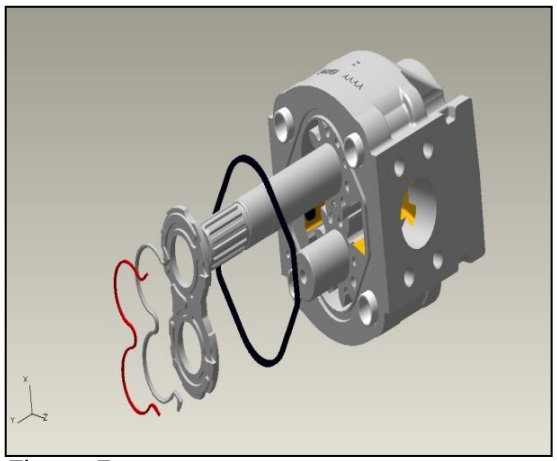


Figure 7

7. ① Pull out driving gear & driven gear keeping gears as straight as possible.

② Remove other pressure plate on rear side with same way for front side

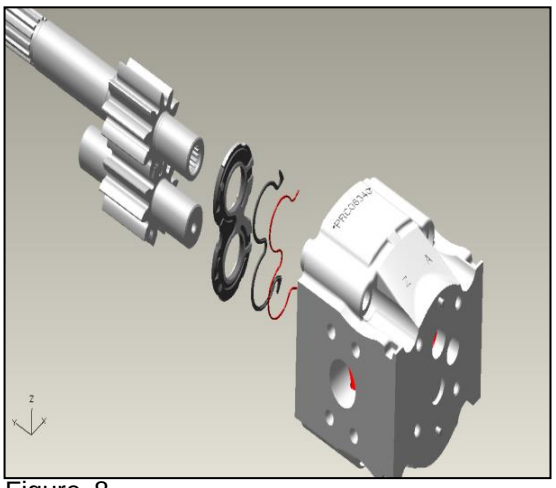


Figure 8

8. ①Remove the pressure plate with prearranged parts, O-ring & back up ring from the working section and examine it carefully.

②Pull out driving gear & driven gear keeping gears as straight as possible.

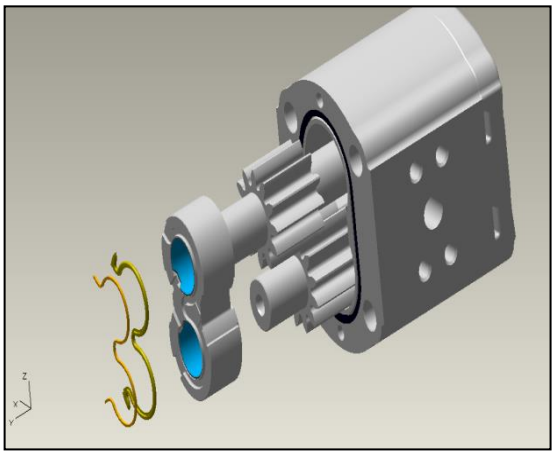


Figure 9

9. ①Remove rear cover and other pressure plate at rear side with same way for front side.

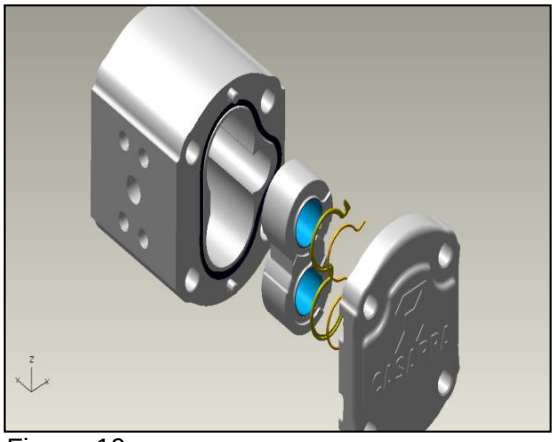


Figure 10

10. ①Take out two square rings from the body.

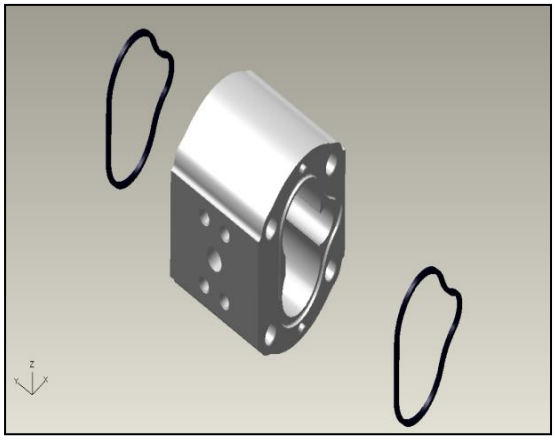


Figure 11

Assembling steps

Assembling of front cover assembly

1. ① Smear clean grease on pressure plate groove ②Locate O-ring into the grove on the aluminum pressure plate.

③Locate back-up ring upon the O-ring.

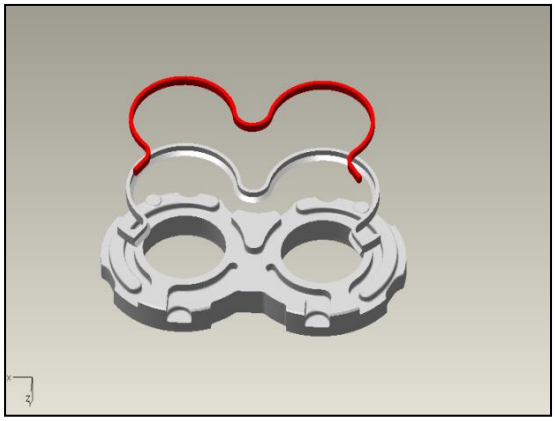


Figure 12

2. ① repeat same procedure.

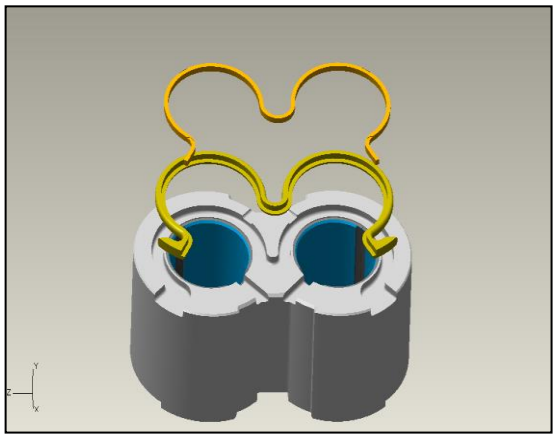


Figure 13

3. ①Smear clean grease on the square groove
②Insert square rings into the groove and 4 alignment pins.

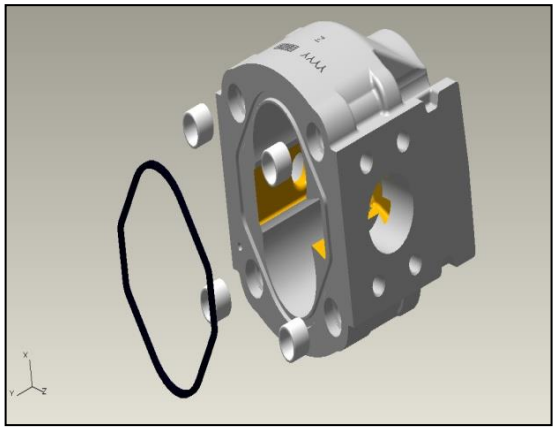


Figure 14

4. ①put one of preassembled pressure plates into the body and locate two gears, then load another plate upon the gears.

☞ pay attention the positions of gears and directions of pressure plates

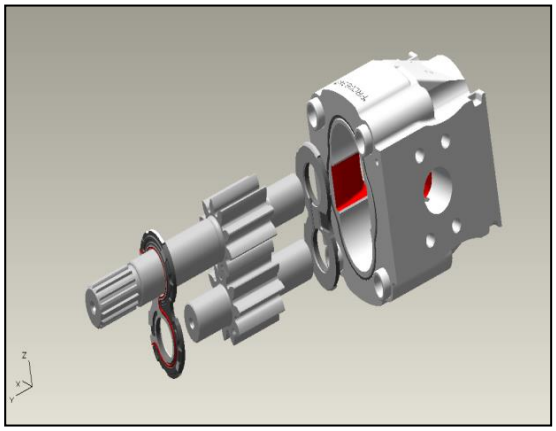


Figure 15

5. ①Smear clean grease on the square grooves
②insert square rings into the grooves.

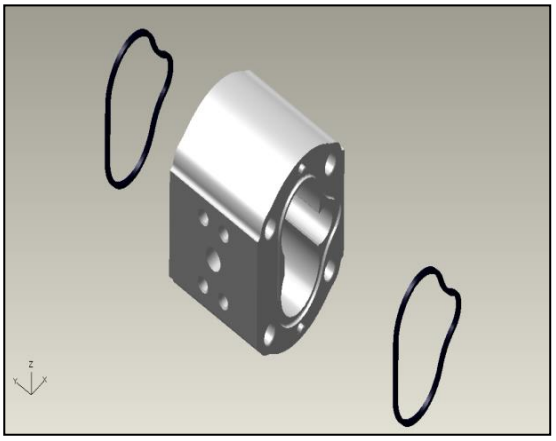


Figure 16

6. ①put one of preassembled pressure plates into the body and locate two gears, then load another plate upon the gears.

☞ pay attention the positions of gears and directions of pressure plates.

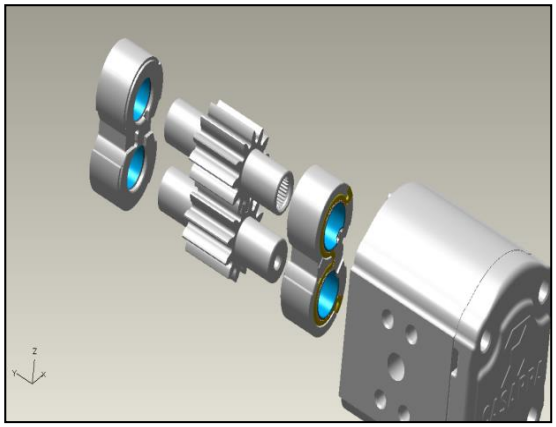


Figure 17

7. ① Locate shaft seal inside shaft hole to the end.

② insert snap ring and locate it into the groove prearranged.

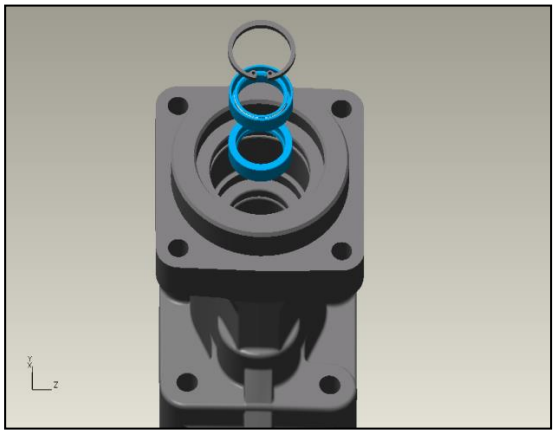


Figure 18

8. ① Assemble mounting flange to the body, use proper tools in order to avoid any damage on the shaft seals by sharp edge of shaft

☞ Smear clean grease on the lips of shaft seals before assembling.

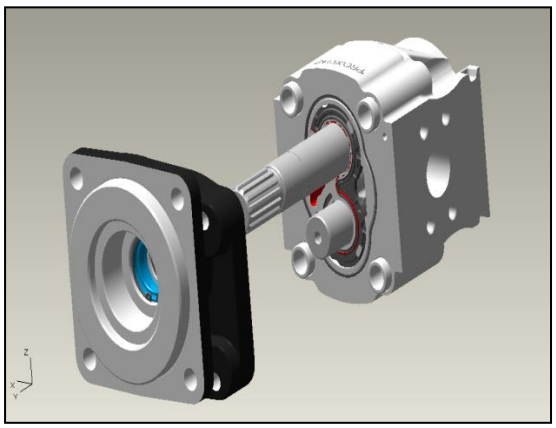


Figure 19

9. ① Assemble the bolts and tighten the bolts with in a crisscross pattern to a torque value of 140 Nm.

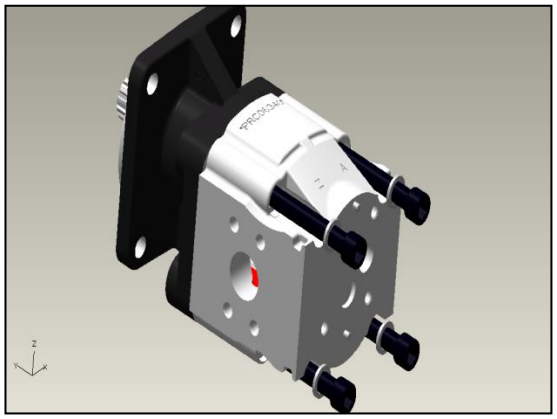


Figure 20

10. ① insert a through shaft to the 1st working section.

② locate 2nd working section to the rear of 1st working section

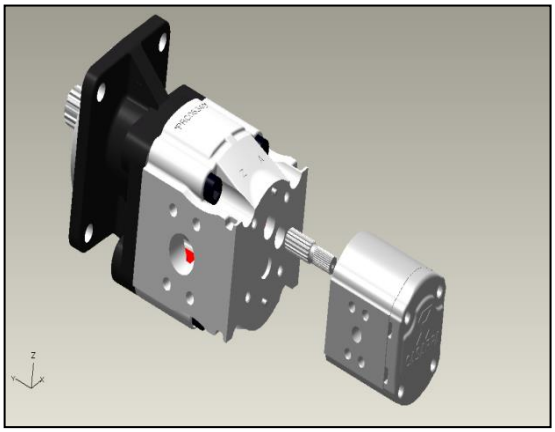


Figure 21

11. ① Assemble the bolts and tighten the bolts with in a crisscross pattern to a torque value of 45 Nm.

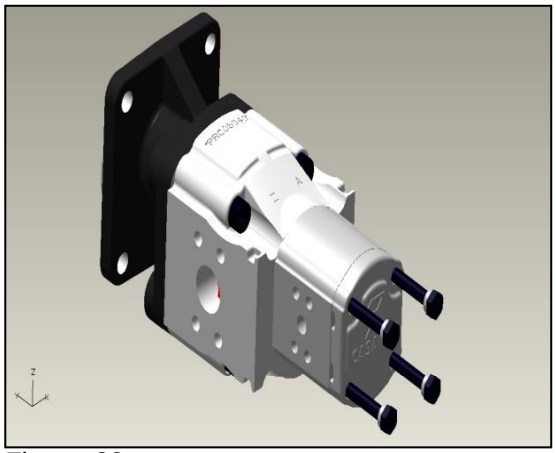


Figure 22

12. ① Check that the pump rotates freely when the drive shaft is turned by hand, if not a possible, plate seal may be pinched.

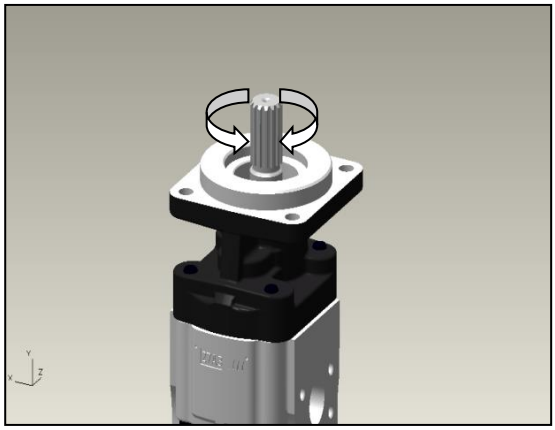


Figure 23

Main Control Valve

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General description

Schematic Diagram

1. Source: the hydraulic multi-way directional valve is domestic assorting parts for 950B, 966D and 980S wheel loaders introduced in from abroad.
2. Purpose: the valve is combined with DJS pilot valve, mainly used for ZL40, ZL50, ZL60 and other medium and large size loaders, it can also be used for hydraulic system of bulldozers and other medium and large size engineering machines.
3. Characteristics:
   a. Adopt decompression type pilot valve to control which reduce reversing operating force greatly;
   b. Improve jogging feature of multi-way valve greatly.
   c. Relief valve, overload valve, oil compensating valve and check valve adopt plug-in mounting which has good generality and easy for maintenance.
   d. Four floating is easily realized on the basis of three main valves, which make four main valve structure simple.
   e. It is convenient for pipe lay out, and reduces pressure loss of the system.
4. Schematic diagram

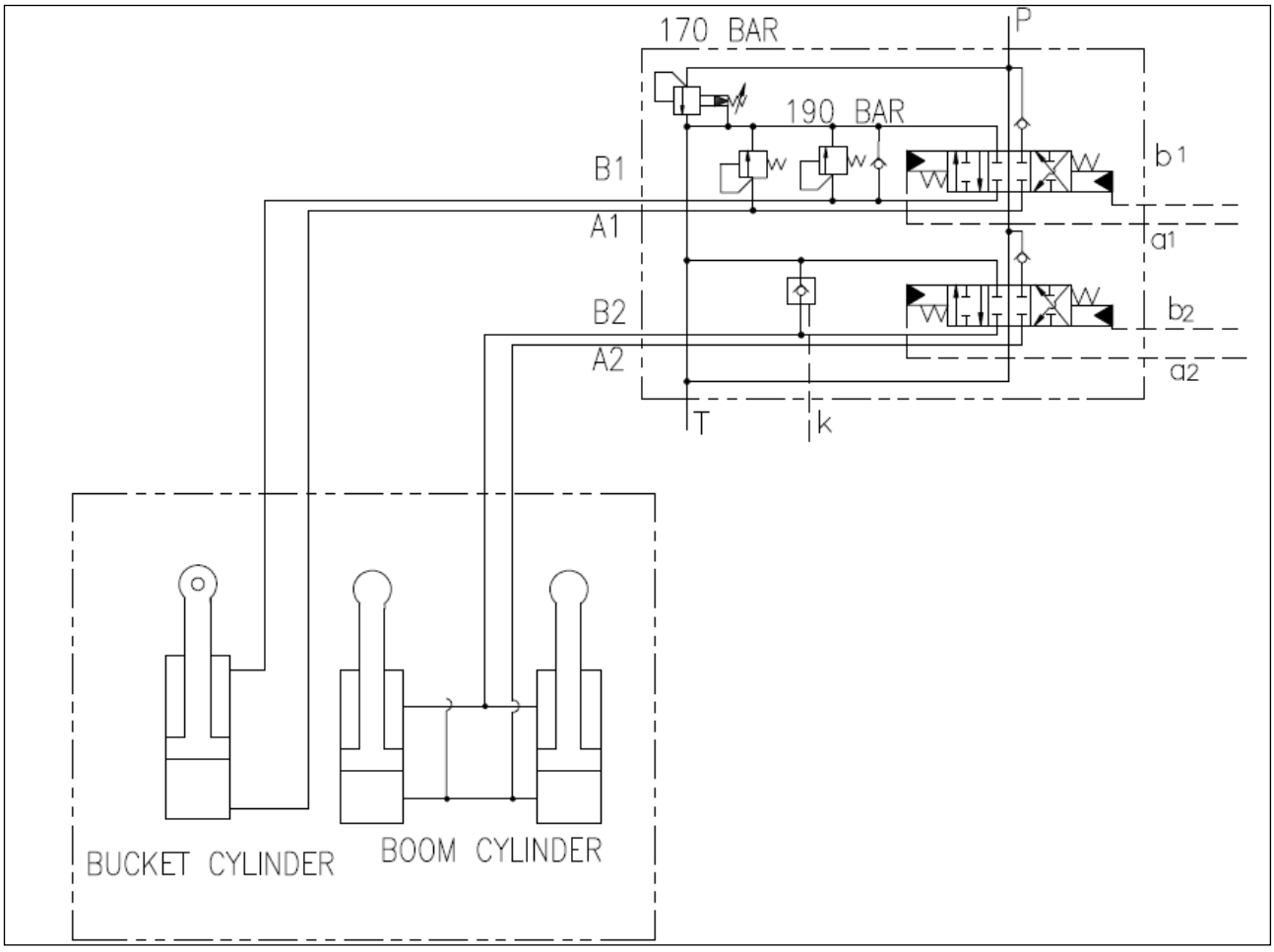


Figure 1

Detailed list of spare parts

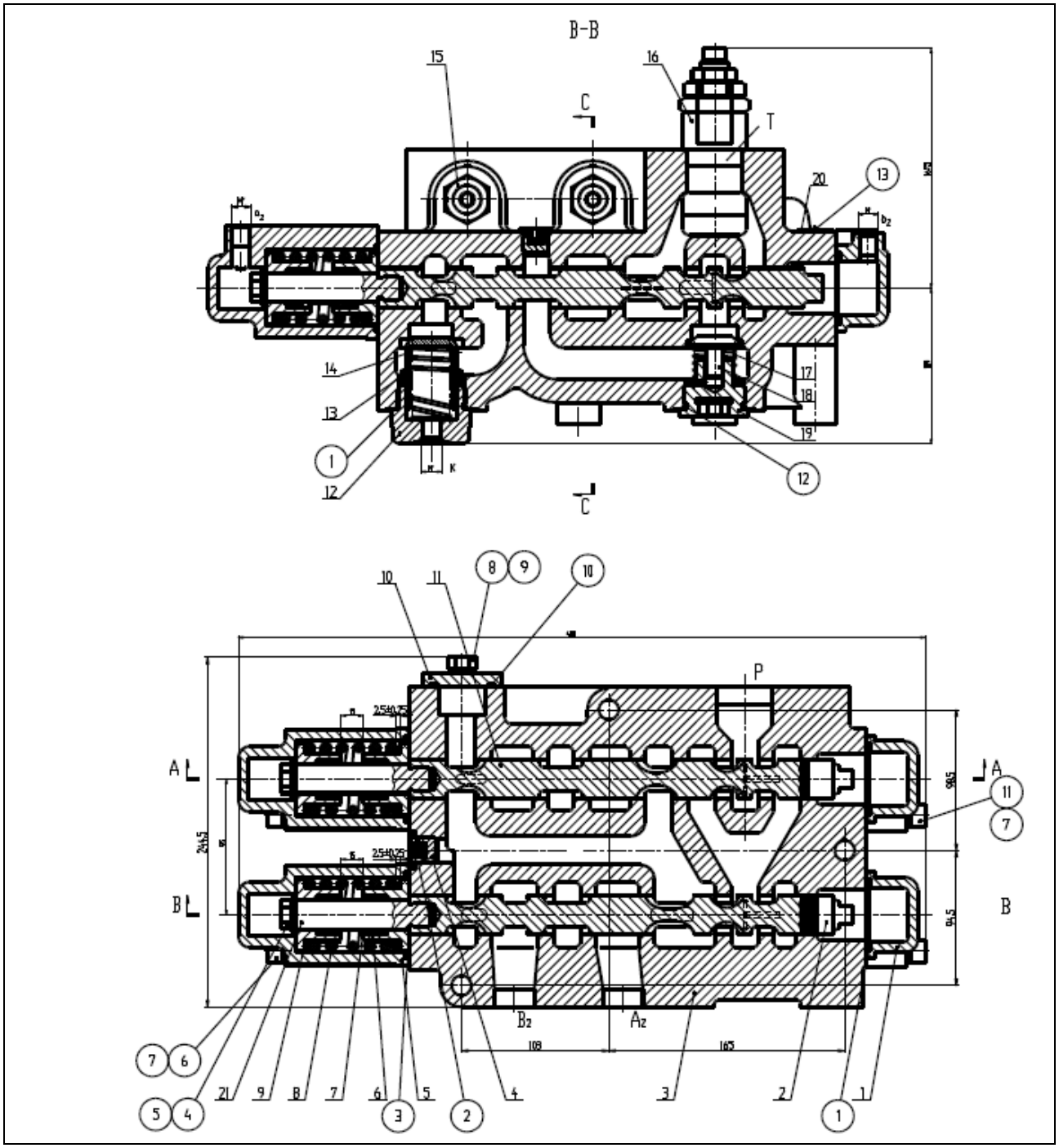


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Cover	18	Check valve
2	Boom Valve spool	19	Cover
3	Valve body	20	Name Plate
4	Check valve	21	Spool joint
5	Cover	①	O-Ring 50x3.1
6	Spring seat	②	O-Ring 20x2.4
7	Spring	③	O-Ring 60x3.1
8	Spring	④	Gasket2
9	Spring gasket	⑤	Bolt M12x20
10	Cover board	⑥	Bolt M10x100
11	Bucket valve spool	⑦	Gasket10
12	Cover	⑧	Gasket12
13	Spring	⑨	Bolt M12x30
14	Make up valve	⑩	O-Ring 45x3.1
15	Overload valve	⑪	Bolt M10x45
16	Relief valve	⑫	O-Ring 44x3.5
17	Spring	⑬	Rivet 2x4

Disassembly and assembly steps

When repairing the entire valve, put multi-way valve at a flat and clean place, clean all parts after disassembly and then assemble.

1. Dismantle and assemble overload valve and relief valve, do not loosen locknut when dismantling, put wrench at cartridge valve, mark signs on high and low pressure overload valve. Check sealing ring of cartridge valve; assemble again when it is confirmed well.

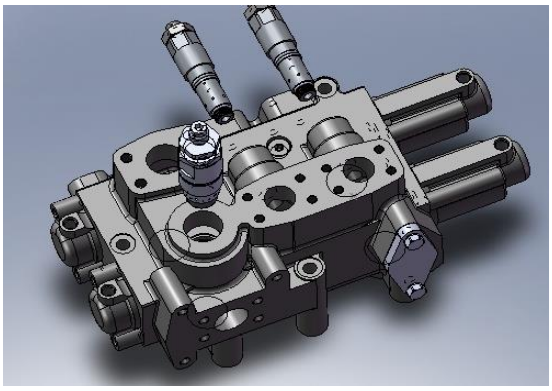


Figure 3

2. Dismantle end cap at both sides with inner hexagon screw, check if sealing ring is good. Pull out valve rod from long end cap; check if the valve rod and valve surface is impacted; install valve rod to valve when it is moving smoothly and there is no blockage, put O ring in oil seal groove of end cap, keep end cap connection oil mouth upward when installing end cap, fastening torque of end cap bolts is 35～40N.m.

Figure 4

3. If valve rod end spring needs to be replaced, fix valve rod with special fixture, screw out end cap bolts with wrench. Check if the spring is broken or deformed, when installing spring and valve rod, the clearance between return spring and spring seat when spring is at free state is around 2.5mm.

Figure 5

4. Dismantle and assemble check valve. Dismantle three end caps of check valve with inner hexagon screw, mark on each end cap with chalk, check if the check valve is leaking by checking if the spring is deformed and surface normal line of check valve is good. Guarantee check valve and valve seat can move flexibly during installation; while check if 1.0 hole on tope of the hydraulic control check valve is blocked before installation. Check if all screw plugs are complete, check if screw plug is screw down and sealing ring is complete when oil is leaking.

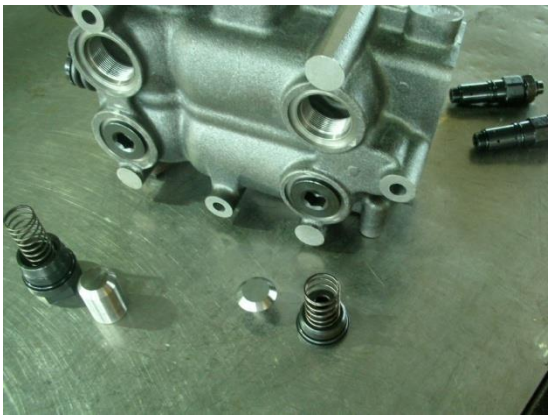


Figure 6

Basic faults and overcoming

S/N	Faults	Reasons	Overcoming methods
1	Working pressure is not enough	Pressure of relief valve is regulated too low	Adjust pressure of relief valve
		Slide valve of relief valve is blocked	Dismantle, clean and assemble again
		Pressure regulation spring is broken	Replace with new one
		System pipe pressure is lost too much	Replace pipeline or regulate pressure of relief valve within the allowable pressure range
2	Working flow is not enough	Oil supply of the system is not enough	Check oil source, check oil pump
		Leakage in valve is large	
		a. Oil temperature is too high, viscosity decreases	a. Take measures to reduce oil temperature
		b. Selection of oil is improper	b. Replace oil
		c. Clearance between slide valve and valve is too large	c. Replace slide valve according to reasonable clearance
		Fault of relief valve	Repair relief valve
3	Resetting does not work	Resetting spring is damaged or deformed	Replace new ones
		There is pollutant between valve rod and valve	Clean parts
4	External leakage	Sealing ring is damaged	Replace new ones
		Fasteners are loosed	Screw down fasteners
5	Slippage of swing arm is large	Clearance between multi-way valve and valve rod increases	Replace valve rod
6	Rotating bucket falls	Overload valve or oil compensating valve is blocked by pollutant	Dismantle, clean and reassemble

Pilot Control Valve

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General description

Schematic diagram

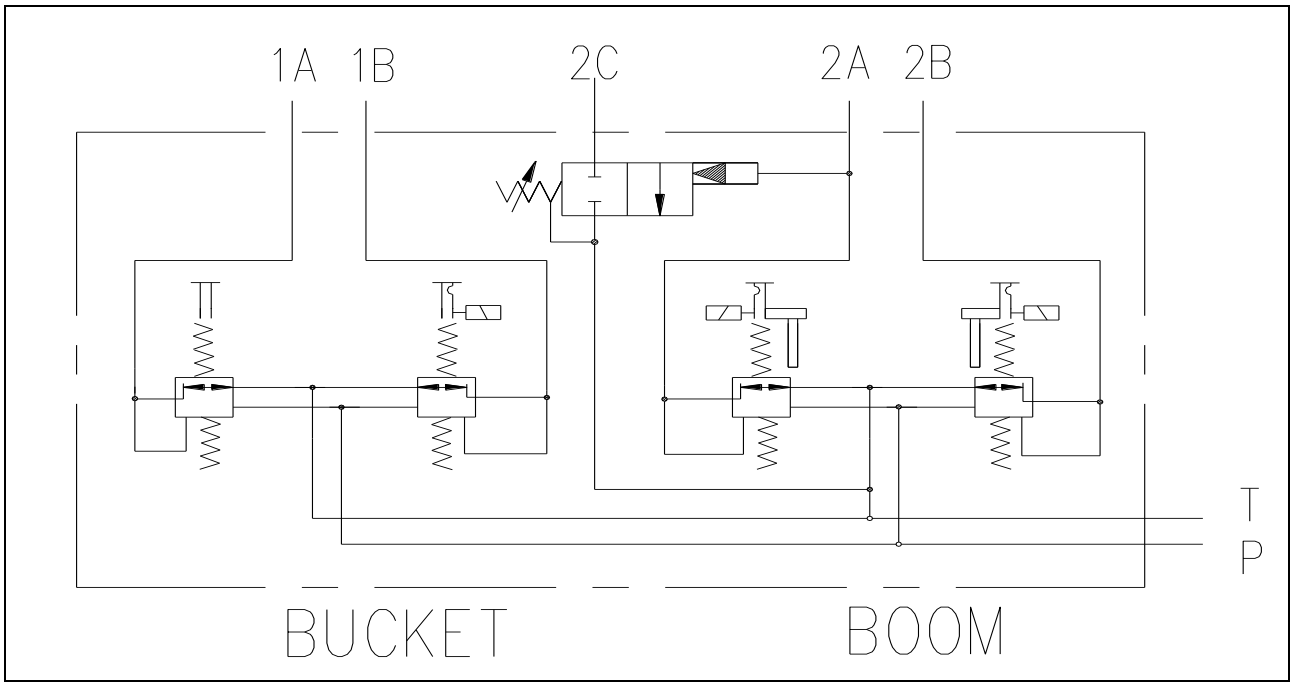


Figure 1

Detailed list of parts for DXS mono lever pilot control valve

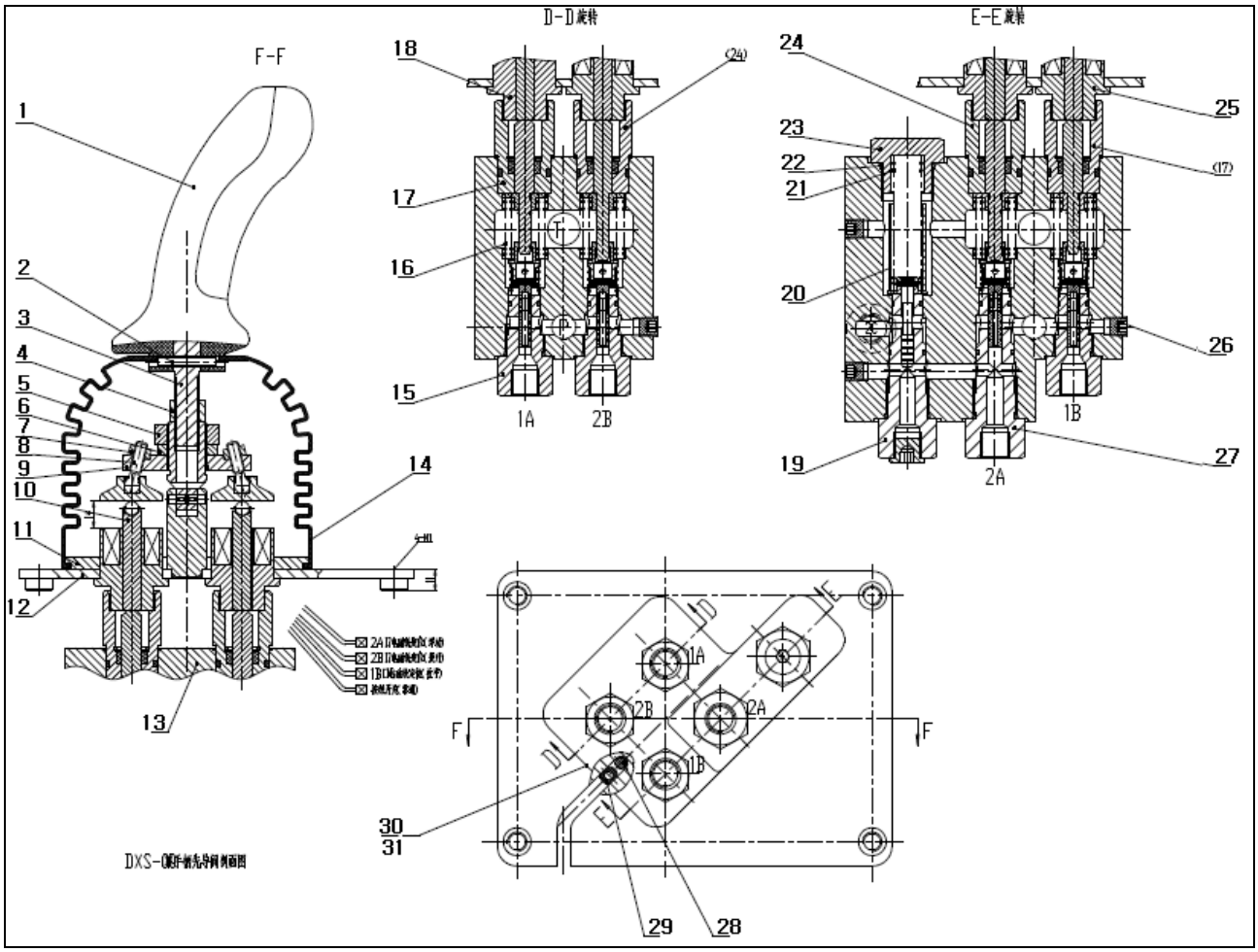


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Handle assembly	**17**	Compression bar I
2	Elastic round pin	**18**	Shaft sleeve
3	Handle joint	**19**	Sequence valve
4	Nut	**20**	Guide sleeve
5	Nut	**21**	Spring
6	Small gasket	**22**	O ring
7	Nut	**23**	Screw plug
8	Pressing plate assembly	**24**	Compression bar II
9	Fixing plate	**25**	Electromagnet
10	Pressure pin group	**26**	Cone screw plug
11	Shield plate	**27**	Measuring assembly II
12	Mounting plate assembly	**28**	Bolt
13	Valve	**29**	Rubber plug
14	Rubber cover	**30**	Name plate
15	Measuring assembly I	**31**	Rivet
16	Spring		

Disassembly and Assembly Steps of DXS Mono Lever Pilot Control Valve

Disassembly steps of DXS mono lever pilot control valve

1. Loosen two screws on head with wrench

Figure 3

2. Dismantle handle assembly and pressing plate assembly.

Figure 4

3. Screw off four cock screws with wrench and take out cover plate and installation plate assembly.

Figure 5

4. Take out pressing plate assembly with vice clamp, take out spool assembly.

Note：*Compression bar of swing arm leaguer is different from that of rotating bucket league; mark well to avoid wrong assembling.*

Figure 6

Enclose: When spool is only need to be taken out, it can be dismantle at the bottom, loosen bottom valve seat with wrench. Check if O ring is good, take out spool assembly.

Figure 7

Assembly steps of DXS monolever pilot control valve

1. Clean all parts before assembling, blow with compressed air, and guarantee there is no oil, dirt and other sundries.
   When only the bottom seats is dismantled, clean spool and replace spring and assemble directly, and lock valve seat.

Figure 8

2. Install spool assembly and pressing plate assembly from upward to downward in order, keep the hole on the sleeve outside as is shown in the picture, assemble well and press down.

Figure 9

3. Install electromagnet, pressing plate assembly and cover plate, fix with bolts, keep electromagnet clean. Pay attention to color of electromagnet wire.

Figure 10

4. Install pressing plate assembly and press pin assembly, adjust with small inner hexagonal wrench, keep the clearance between pressing plate and press pin assembly between 0.2-0.5.

Figure 11

5. Pull handle, adjust nuts to make four pressing plates can coincide with electromagnet, lock nuts, install handle assembly and lock.

Figure 12

Basic faults and overcoming

	Faults	Reasons	Overcoming methods
1	Resetting does not work	Resetting spring of pilot control valve deforms	Replace with new products
		There are pollutants between pressing bar and matching hole	Clean parts
2	Location is not reliable	Suction of electromagnet is not enough	Replace with new ones
		Electric current and voltage of electric circuit does not comply with requirements	Overhaul
		There are pollutants between electromagnet and pressing plate	Get rid of pollutants
		Clearance between pressing bar and pressing lever is not adjusted according to requirements	Adjust according to requirements
3	Control of pilot valve is not flexible	Measuring spool is blocked or moving is not flexible	Check if oil is clean, clean spool and valve port
		Measuring spring deforms	Replace spring
		Control flow rate or pressure is not enough	Check if oil supplying system of pilot is normal

Priority Valve

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Description

Work principle

YSF25 steering control valve is control valve parts of steering system, its premise is to guarantee oil supplying to steering system preferentially, when the loader is working under high pressure and small flowrate, the extra oil of steering system can discharge load automatically under lower pressure. Load discharging pressure can be regulated by relief valve according to working conditions, this makes up the shortage of priority valve, reduces power consumption and reduce temperature rising of the system.

The valve is installed at steering oilway, it is between steering pump and load sensing hydraulic steering gear. P mouth is oil inlet which is connected with steering pump. CF mouth is the steering mouth connected with oil inlet of steering gear, EF mouth is the work mouth connected with multiway valve, LS mouth is control mouth connected with load sensing mouth of steering gear, T is load discharging mouth connected with oil tank.

When the load does lifting work, oil from steering pump goes through P mouth and a hole and reaches right side of priority valve spool, it will overcome control pressure of priority valve spring with the effect of pressure oil, pushes priority spool moving to the left, oil from steering pump opens check valve and goes to work system through EF mouth to satisfy big flow rate requirements of the loader. When the loader is under high pressure and small flow rate, high pressure oil of EF mouth will make load discharging relief valve I start, control oil goes to the left side of load discharging spool through b oilway, reaches T mouth through c small hole, the pressure difference makes load discharging spool overcome spring force of relief valve and move to the right, oil from P mouth will go to load discharge mouth T and discharge load directly.

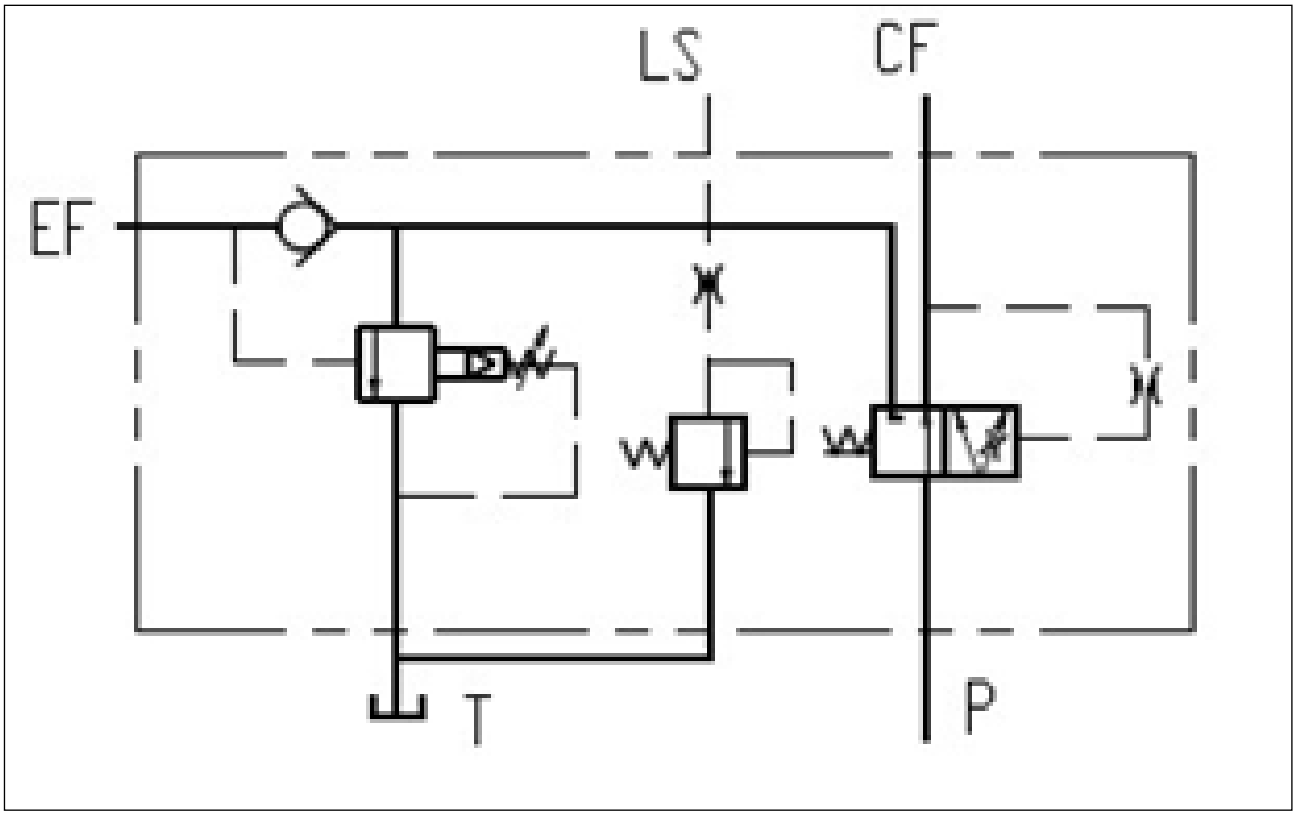


Figure 1

Detailed list of spare parts

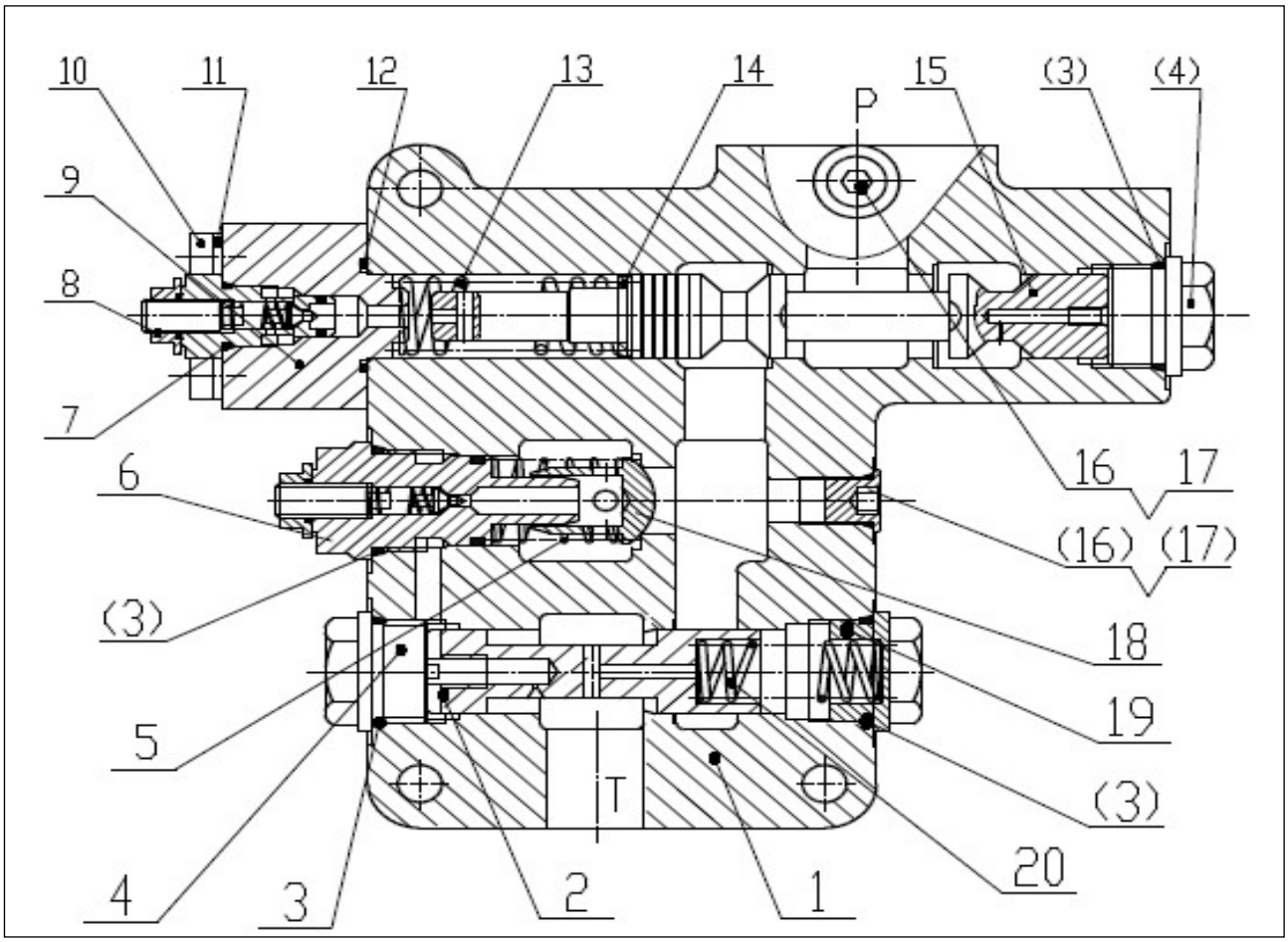


Figure2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Valve body	11	Gasket 10
2	Valve spool	12	O-Ring 28X2.65
3	O-Ring 26.5X2.65	13	Priority Valve Spring
4	PlugI	14	Priority Valve Gasket
5	Check Valve Spring	15	Priority Spool
6	Relief ValveI	16	O-Ring 11.8X2.1
7	O-Ring 15X1.8	17	Plug
8	Relief ValveII	18	Check Valve
9	Relief Valve seat	19	PlugII
10	Bolt M10X50	20	Relief Valve Spring

Disassembly steps of priority valve

1. Screw off screw plug I on the left, take out load discharging spool, load discharging spring, screw out plug II from the right side.

Tools: torque (electric) wrench, m27 sleeve

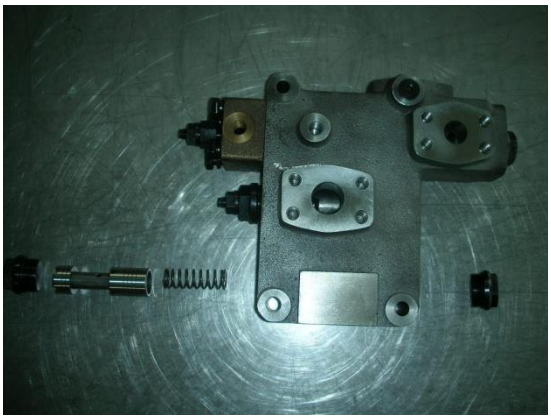


Figure 3

2. Open relief valve I from the left side, take out check valve spring, check valve, and screw out plug from the right side.

Tools: torque (electric) wrench, m27 sleeve, m6 inner hexagonal spearhead

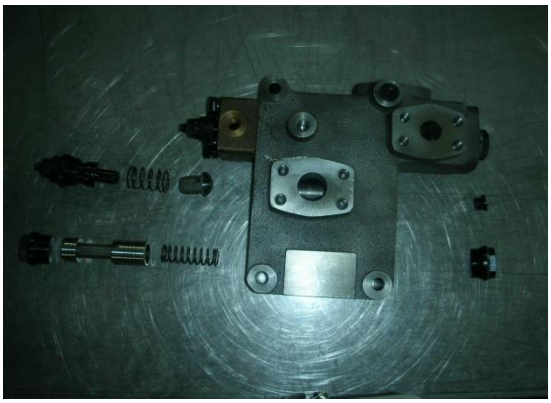


Figure 4

3. Screw off relief valve I and relief valve seat on the left, take out priority spring, priority spool and screw out plug I from the right side.

Tools: torque (electric) wrench, m27 sleeve, m22 sleeve and m16 sleeve

Figure 5

Matters need attention for disassembling priority valve

1. Plug of pressure mouth is only screwed out when testing pressure; it does not belong to disassembling range (same principle for assembling).
2. Pull out valve spool slowly, pay attention to protect valve body hole, plug combination surface and thread from damaging.
3. Check if O ring is deformed, trimmed and aged after disassembling, usually O ring cannot be used again after disassembling.
4. After disassembling, valve body and spool shall be cleaned with 32# hydraulic oil, check if spool surface has obvious scratch; do not use spool and valve body if there is scratch.

Assembling steps of priority valve

1. Install relief valve II, relief valve seat, priority spring, priority spool and plug I into valve body from left to right.

   Tools: torque (electric) wrench, m27 sleeve, m22 sleeve and m16 sleeve

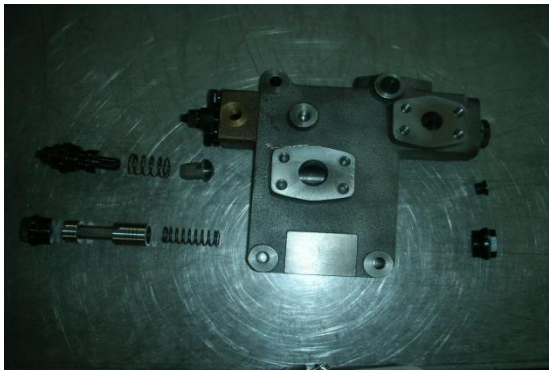


Figure 6

2. Install relief valve I, check valve spring, check valve and plug into valve body from left to right.

   Tools: torque (electric) wrench, m27 sleeve, m6 inner hexagonal spearhead

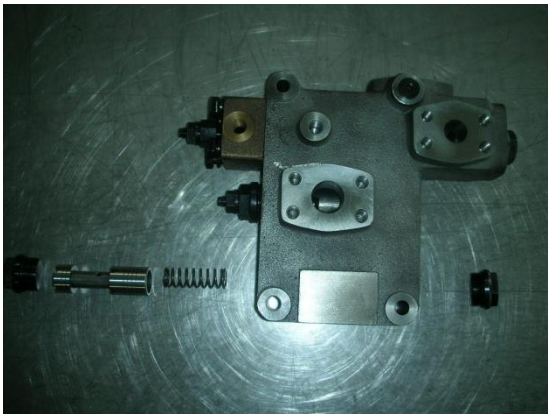


Figure 7

3. Install plug I, load discharging valve spring, load discharging valve spool and plug II into valve body from left to right.

   Tools: torque (electric) wrench, m27 sleeve

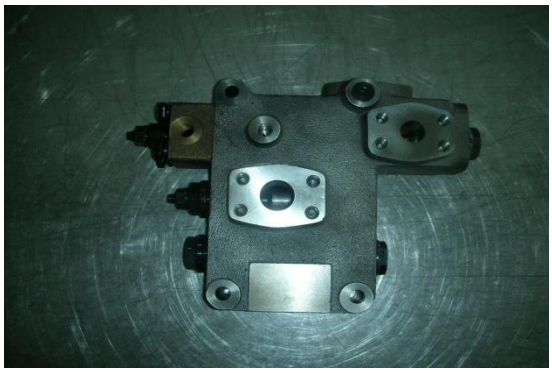


Figure 8

Matters need attention for assembling priority valve

1. Keep all parts clean before assembling.
2. During installation, all spools shall be installed slowly and guarantee they can slide flexibly, if there is blockage, grind spool surface and sharp corner slightly with find abrasive paper, reclean the valve.
3. Avoid to damage trim of O ring when screwing on screw plug, it is better to coat grease on the surface before installation.

Tools for disassembly and assembly

Main tools for disassembly and assembly are:

Torque wrench (Electric wrench)

M27 sleeve

M22 sleeve

M16 sleeve

M6 inner hexagonal spearhead

Figure 9

Steering Unit

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General description

Work principle

When steering unit is in the middle, spool and valve bush is at meso-position with the effect of spring lamination, oil from oil pump will enter spool from two rows of holes of valve bush and spool, then returns to oil tank through T oil mouth.

When steering wheel turns right (or left), spool is driven to turn to the right (or left), since the Max. rotation quantity between spool and valve bush is 10.5°, so spool rotates against valve bush, at this moment, oil groove is connected with oil inlet way of valve bush, oil goes through valve bush and oil groove of spool, returns to rotor and stator from valve bush, drives rotor rotating against stator. At the same time, oil from rotor and stator enters one of the chamber of cylinder through oil mouth A (or B) to make cylinder piston stretch out (compress inside), and push steering wheel turns right (or left), oil from the other chamber of cylinder enters valve bush through oil mouth B (or A), returns oil groove through spool, and goes back to oil tank through T oil mouth from valve bush. The relative rotation angle of spool and valve bush is 1.5°, oil way is connected, and rotation of rotor makes oil connects with cylinder, oil supplying quantity and rotation angle of steering wheel become direct ratio.

When steering wheel turns right (or left) for an angle and keeps the state, since the above mentioned oilway is open and oil from oil pump will push rotor to turn right (left), when rotation angle of rotor is the same with rotation angle of steering wheel, since valve bush and rotor is connected through linkage axle, so rotor will drive valve bush to turn right (or left) to keep the same angle with steering wheel. At this moment, valve bush and spool form the position without rotation angle, oilway going to rotor and oil cylinder is closed, oil from oil pump will go into spool through two rows of holes through valve bush and spool, oil goes back to oil tank through T oil way from valve bush. At this time, tyre stops moving, this is hydraulic feedback servo action.

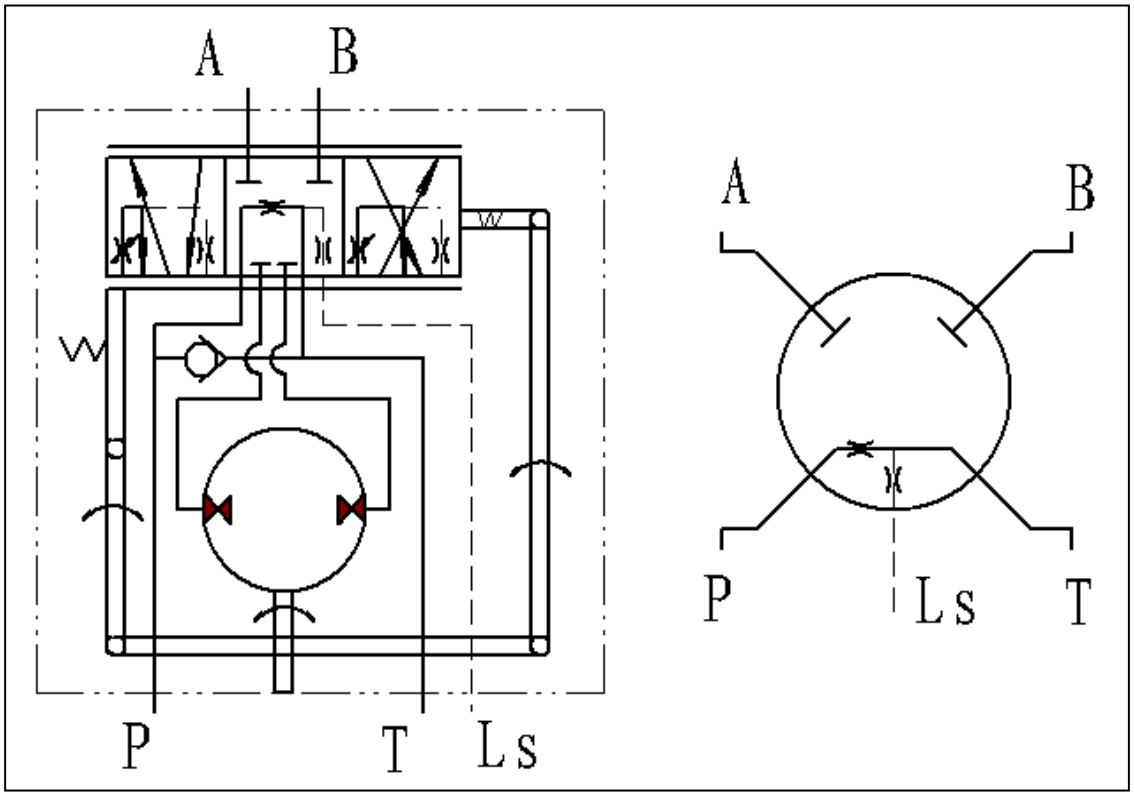


Figure 1

Detailed list of spare parts

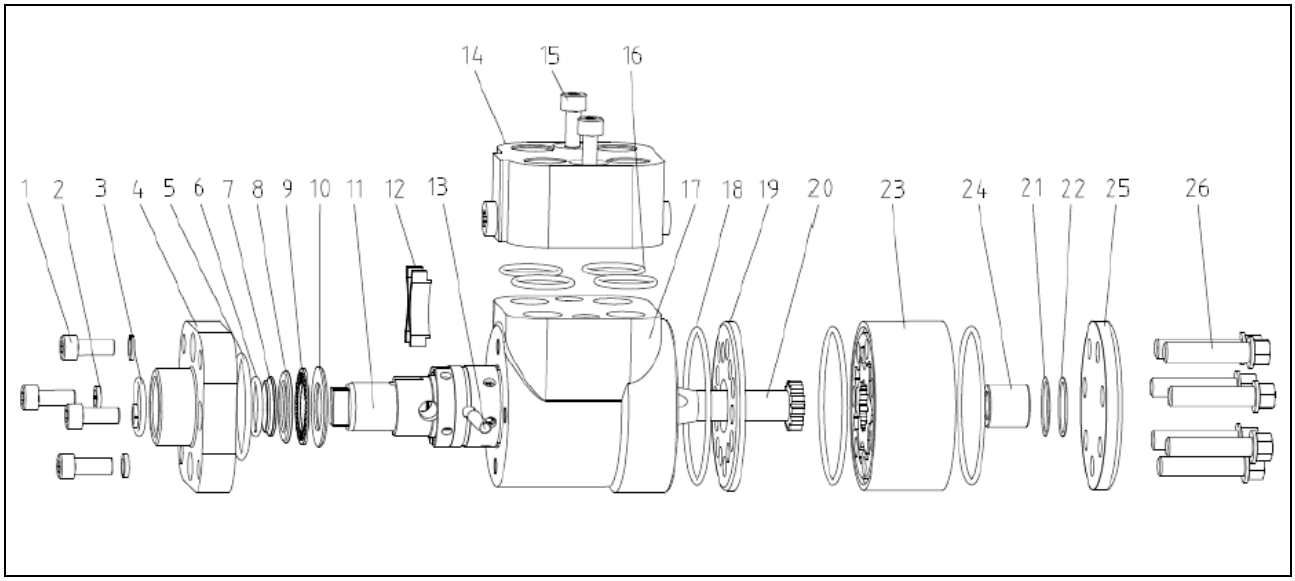


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Screw, Bushing	14	Valve block
2	Washer	15	Screw, Valve block
3	O-ring	16	O-ring
4	Gland Bushing	17	Housing
5	O-ring	18	O-ring
6	Shaft seal 1	19	Wear plate
7	Shaft seal 2	20	Drive
8	Race, Bearing	21	Backup washer
9	Needle Bearing	22	Ring, Seal
10	Race, Bearing	23	Gerotor S/A
11	Spool/Sleeve S/A	24	Spacer
12	Center spring	25	End cap
13	Pin	26	Screw, Cap

Disassembly steps of steering unit

Cleanliness is extremely important when repairing a steering control unit. Work in a clean area. Before disconnecting lines, clean port area of unit thoroughly. Use a wire brush to remove foreign material and debris from around external joints of the unit.

Note :Although not all drawings show the unit in a vice bench, we recommend that you keep the unit in vice bench during disassembly. Follow the clamping procedures explained throughout the manual.

1. Remove Valve block: Clamp unit in vice, Valve block up. Clamp lightly on edges of housing (do not clamp on LS port). Use protective material on vice jaws. Housing distortion can result if jaws are over tightened.

Figure 3

2. Remove M8 screws. Remove valve block.

Remove seal from valve block.

Figure 4

3. Clamp unit in vice, Gerotor end up. Clamp lightly on edges of port face sides (do not clamp on LS port).

Figure 5

4. Remove M10 cap screws. Remove end cap. Remove spacer. Remove seal from Gerotor.

Figure 6

5. Remove Gerotor Set. Be careful not to drop star. Remove seal

Figure 7

6. Remove drive. Remove spacer plate .
Remove seal from housing.

Figure 8

7. Carefully remove the spool-sleeve assembly from housing in upright position.
Note: Do not cock spool-sleeve assembly in housing. Rotate spool- sleeve assembly slowly when removing it from housing
Remove housing from vice.

Figure 9

8. Remove the bearing race, needle thrust bearing and bearing race, step by step from the housing.

Figure 10

9. Remove M8 bushing screws

Remove gland bushing

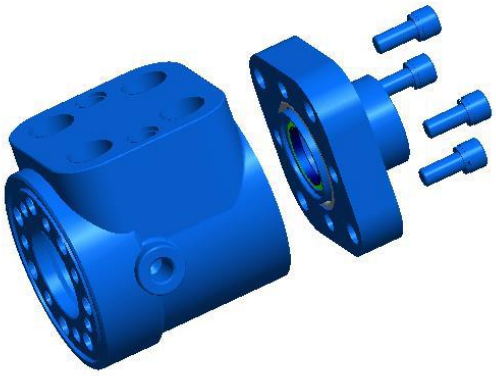


Figure 11

10. Remove Shaft seals and O-rings

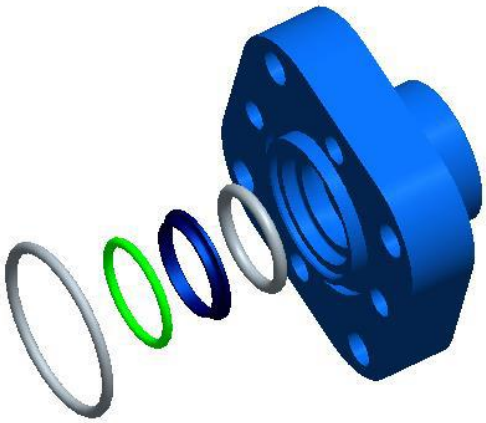


Figure 12

11. Push pin from spool-sleeve assembly.

Figure 13

12. Push spool partially from control end of sleeve, then carefully remove centering springs from spool by hand (see figure).
Make matching mark on spool and sleeve.

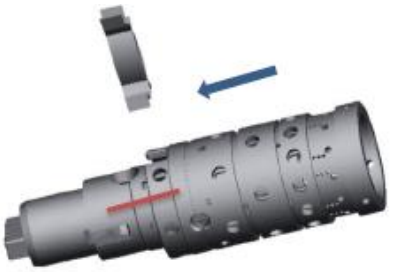


Figure 14

Assembly steps of steering unit

Check all mating surfaces, Replace any parts that have scratches or burrs that can cause leakage. Clean all metal parts in clean solvent. Blow dry with air. Do not wipe dry with cloth or paper towel because lint or other matter can get into the hydraulic system and cause damage. Do not use grit paper or file or grind these parts.
Note: Recommend replace all old seals with new seals.

1. Assemble spool and sleeve carefully so that spring slots line up at the same end. Rotate spool while sliding parts together. Test for free rotation. Spool should rotate smoothly in sleeve. Align spool and sleeve by matching marks, if present.

Figure 15

2. Position centering springs so that the notches line up, and arched center sections are nested together. Next, with spring notches facing sleeve, insert one end of entire spring set into spring installation tool. Compress extended end of spring set and push into spool-sleeve assembly. Keep pressure on spring ends while with drawing installation tool and pushing forward on springs at same time. Springs down evenly and flush with upper surface of spool and sleeve

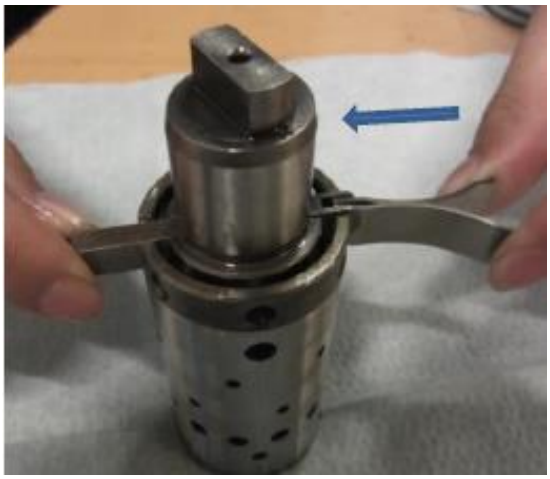


Figure 16

3. Center spring set in spring slots. Seat springs down evenly and flush with upper surface of spool and sleeve
Insert pin through spool-sleeve assembly until pin is within the outside diameter of sleeve.

Figure 17

4. Lubricate seal (see parts list) before installation in gland bushing in housing. Use proper seal-installation tool, to make sure seal enters gland bushing without being cut or nicked. Do not use any seal that falls freely into counter-bore of gland bushing.

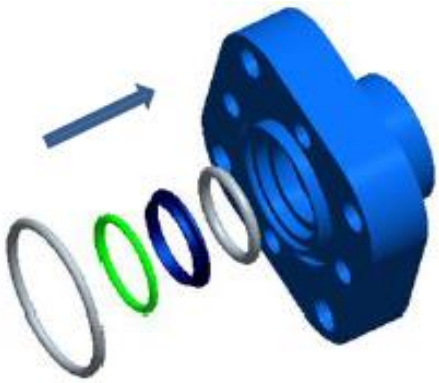


Figure 18

5. Install gland bushing with 4 M8 screws, cross tighten the screws.

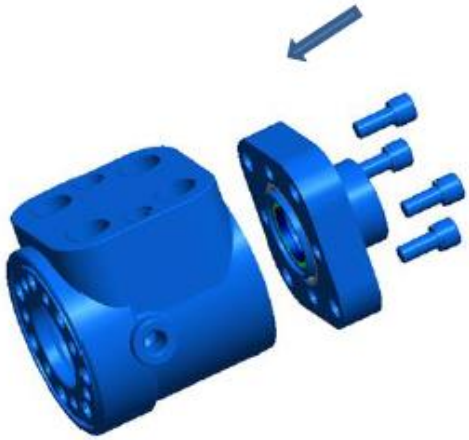


Figure 19

6. Clamp housing in vice, as shown in figure (do not clamp on LS port). Clamp lightly on edges of mounting area; do not over-tighten jaws.

Figure 20

7. Install two bearing races and needle thrust bearing as shown in figure.

Figure 21

8. Position spool-sleeve assembly so that shaft end of spool enters open end of housing first.
Caution: While inserting spool-sleeve assembly into housing, make sure parts do not tilt out of position. Push assembly gently into place with slight rotating action, keeping pin from moving out and getting stuck in the internal groove. Bring spool-sleeve assembly entirely within housing bore. With spool-sleeve assembly in flush position, check for free rotation within housing by turning assembly of spool sleeve set.

Figure 22

9. Install 77.5 ID seal in housing.
Install spacer plate. Align bolt holes in spacer plate with tapped holes in housing.

Figure 23

10. Rotate spool and sleeve assembly until pin is parallel with port face. Install drive, making sure drive is engaged with pin. To assure proper alignment, mark drive as shown in figure. When marking drive, note relationship of slotted end of drive to splined end of drive.

Lubricate and install 77.5 ID seal in Gerotor ring. The lubrication will hold seal in place.

Align star valleys with pin. Note parallel relationship of reference lines A,B,C and D in figure. Align bolts holes without disengaging Gerotor star from drive.

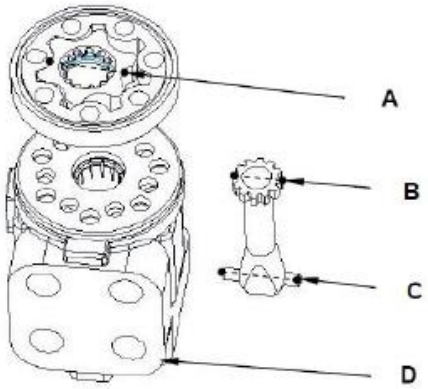


Figure 24

11. Install spacer in Gerotor star.

Lubricate and install 77.5 ID seal in Gerotor ring

Install end cap on gerotor , aligning holes.

Figure 25

12. Install 7 dry cap screws in end cap. Pre-tighten screws to 17Nm, then torque screws to 35~40Nm in sequence show in figure.

Check for proper timing by turning the spool clockwise and feeling pressure in the “R” port.

Figure 26

13. Check the manual torque, the steering should turn freely.

14. Install well assembled valve spool and valve bush into valve body

Figure 27

15. Install big baffle ring, needle roller thrust bearing and small baffle ring

Figure 28

Matters need attention during assembling

1. Clean all parts (except rubber ring) with gasoline or kerosene before assembling. If there is paint on combination surface, clean with acetone, it is forbidden to clean parts with cotton yarn or cloth, soft banister brush or silk shall be used to clean parts, it is better to blow with compressed air, after steering unit is installed well, add 50-100ml hydraulic oil before install in machines, turn around spool, install in machine for test if everything is normal
2. Combination surface of valve body, spacer plate, stator and rear cover must be highly clean, do not knock or scratch.
3. There are spot mark on end surface of rotor and linkage shaft, that is teeth of linkage shaft groove shall align with multiple spline groove inside rotor teeth bottom, pay attention to the relative position during installation.
4. Bolts of rear cover shall adopt qualified combined gaskets.
5. when fastening seven bolts of rear cover, screw on every two bolts in order, screw on gradually, the fastening torque is 40～50 N.m.
6. (Note) “P”, ”T”, ”A”, “B” oil mouth of valve body and valve block shall align with each other one by one during installation.

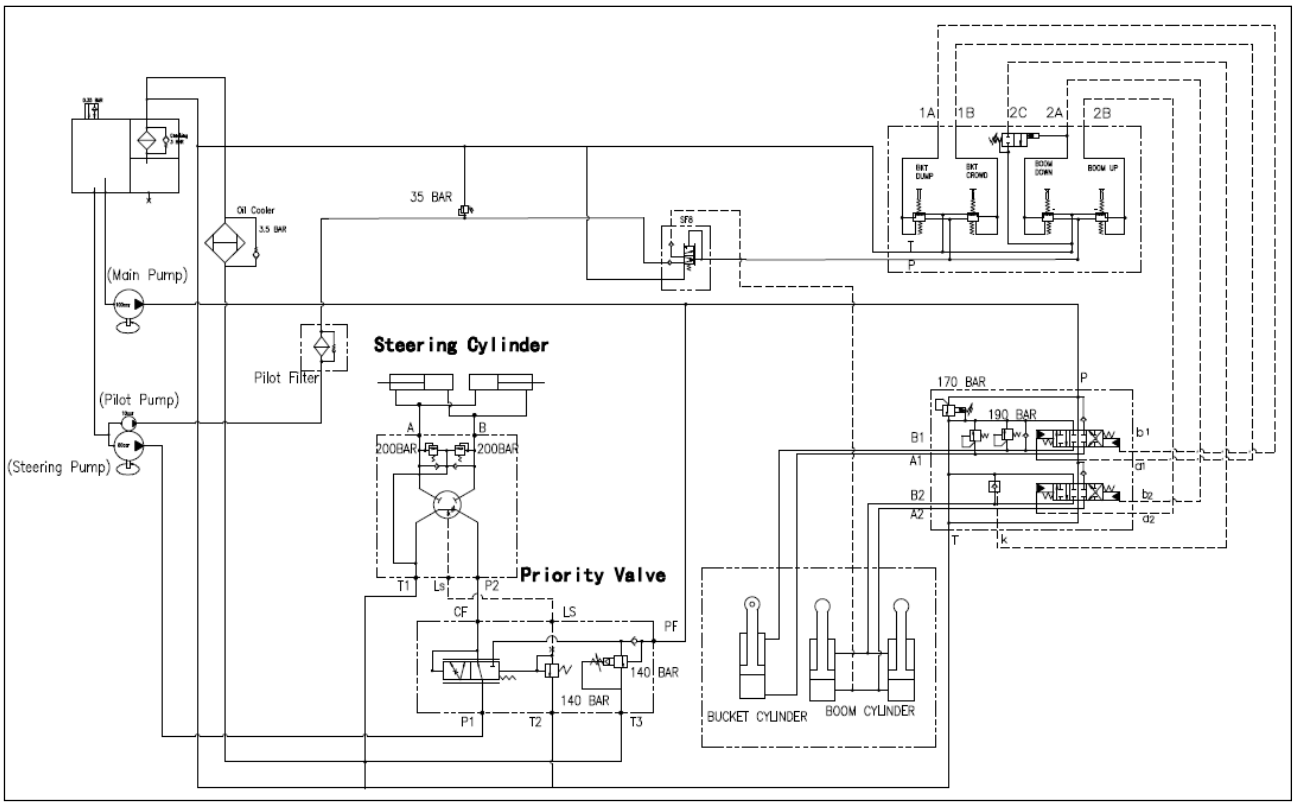
Hydraulic Schematic

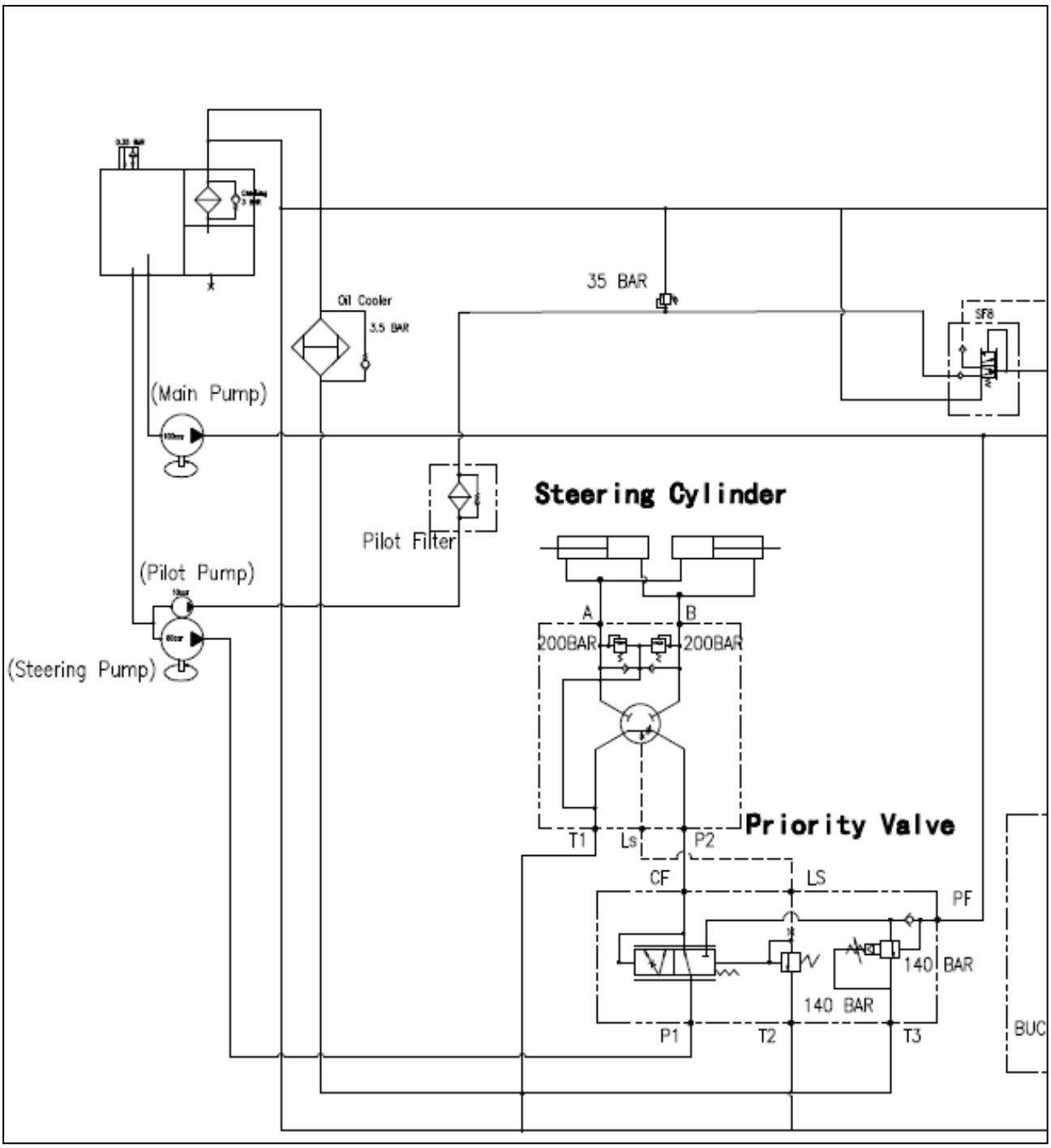
⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

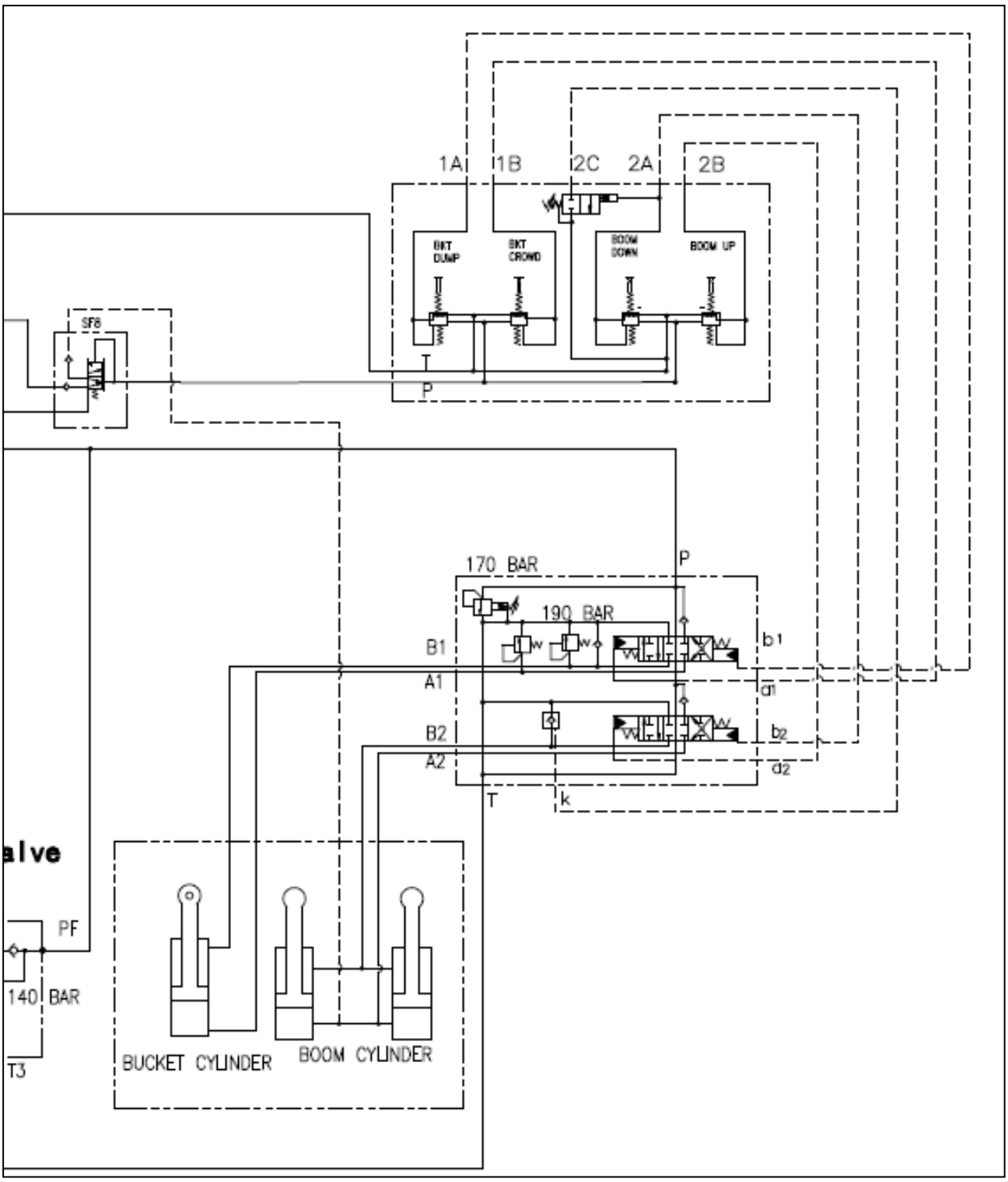
TABLE OF CONTENTS

General description

Schematic diagram




35 BAR
Oil Cooler
3.5 BAR
SF8
(Main Pump)
Steering Cylinder
Pilot Filter
(Pilot Pump)
(Steering Pump)
A
B
200BAR
200BAR
Priority Valve
T1
Ls
P2
CF
LS
PF
140 BAR
140 BAR
P1
T2
T3
BUC


1A
1B
2C
2A
2B
BKT DUMP
BKT CROWD
BOOM DOWN
BOOM UP
SF6
P
170 BAR
P
190 BAR
B1
A1
B2
A2
b1
a1
b2
a2
T
k
alve
PF
140 BAR
T3
BUCKET CYLINDER
BOOM CYLINDER

BRAKE

BRAKE SYSTEM

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Description

Structure of Travelling Brake:

It usually includes air compressor, oil-water separation combination valve (oil-water separator, pressure control valve), air tank, pneumatic brake valve, air booster pump and caliper disc brake. If it is equipped with emergency braking function, it usually also includes emergency and stopping brake control valve, brake air chamber, quick release valve. In air circuit of brake system, there are some other accessories, such as switch of brake light, switch of power off, etc.

Working Principle of Travelling Brake:

Compressed air is output from air compressor driven by engine, and enters into air tank through oil-water separation combination valve (oil-water separator, pressure control valve). When air pressure in air tank reaches the highest braking pressure (usually around 0.784MPa) of brake system, pressure control valve will close the exit going to air tank, open load discharging mouth and discharge the compressed air from air compressor to the air directly. When compressed air in air tank reaches the lowest pressure (usually around 0.71MPa) of brake system, pressure control valve will open the exit going to air tank, and close load discharging mouth to let compressed air from air compressor into air tank for supplementation until the compressed air in air tank reaches the highest working pressure of brake system.

Following is the fundamental diagram:

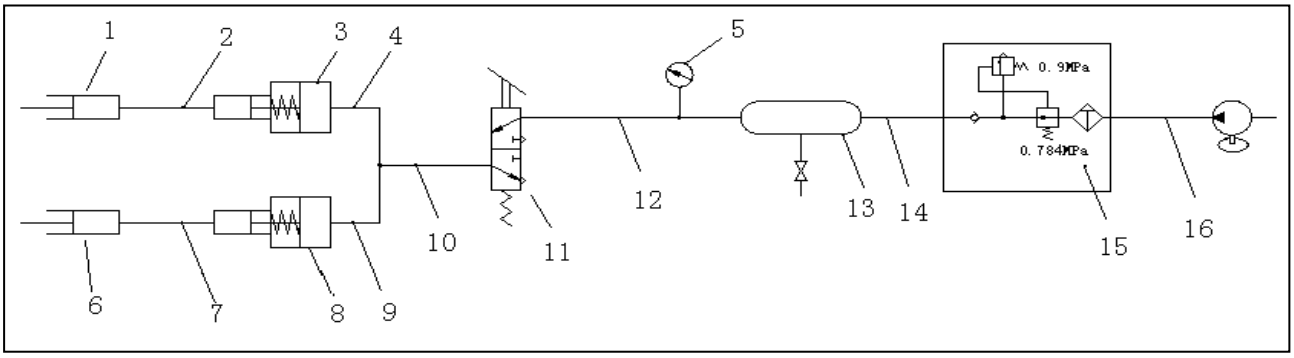


Figure 1

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	REAR AXLE	9	HOSE
2	HOSE	10	HOSE
3	PUMP	11	PEDAL
4	HOSE	12	HOSE
5	SWITCH;PRESSURE	13	ACCUMULATOR
6	FRONT AXLE	14	HOSE
7	HOSE	15	VALVE
8	PUMP	16	HOSE

PARTS LIST

1. Structure Chart of Brake System

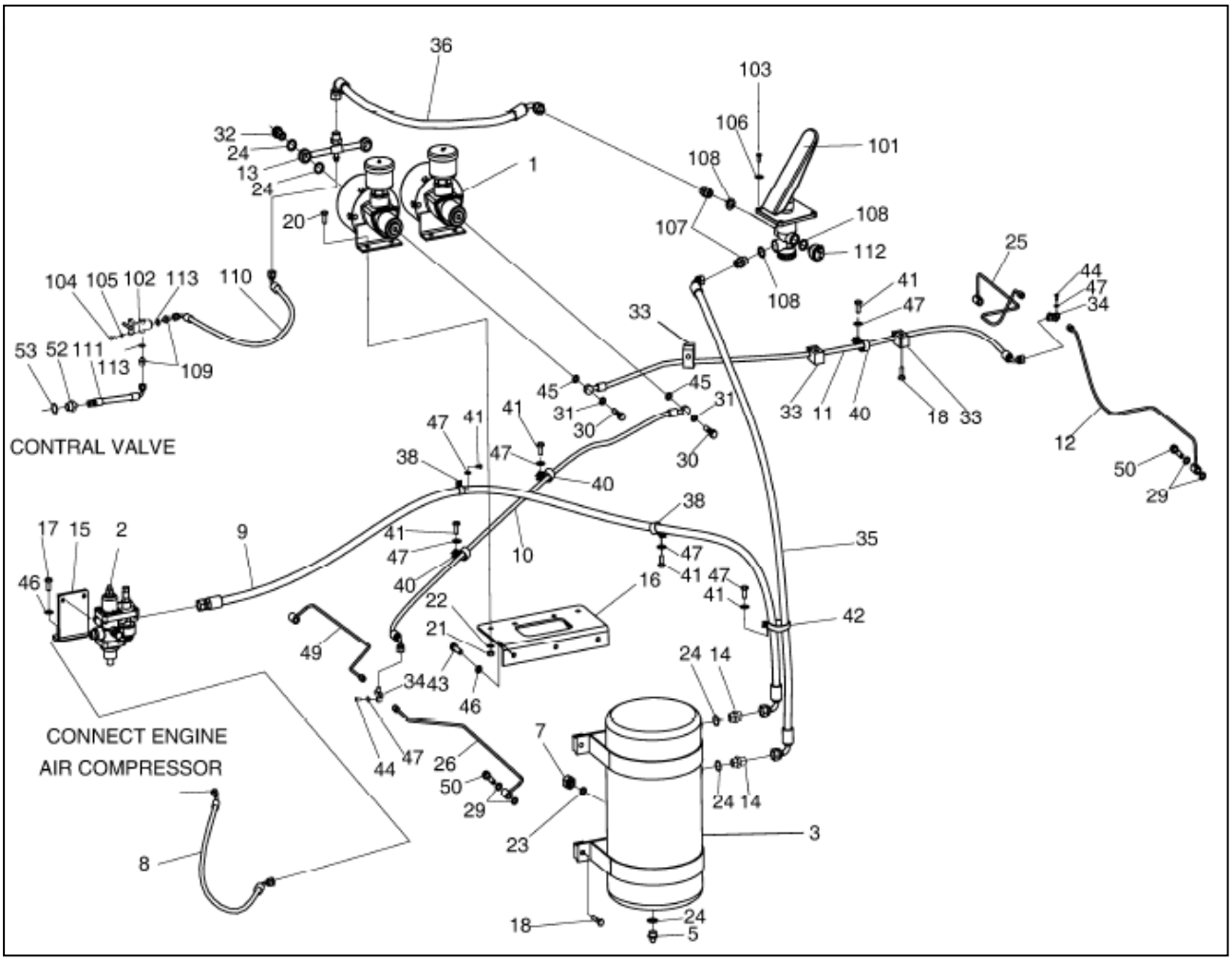


Figure 2

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	PUMP	35	HOSE,AIR
2	VALVE	36	HOSE,AIR
3	ACCUMULATOR	38	CLIP
5	VALVE	40	CLIP
7	SWITCH;PRESSURE	41	BOLT
8	HOSE,AIR	42	CLIP
9	HOSE,AIR	43	BOLT
10	HOSE	44	BOLT
11	HOSE,FLUID	45	SEALRING
12	TUBE	46	WASHER;PLAIN M10
13	PIPE,AIR	47	WASHER
14	ADAPTER	49	TUBE
15	PLATE	50	BOLT
16	BRACKET	52	ADAPTER
17	BOLT	53	WASHER
18	BOLT	-	BRAKE ASSY
20	BOLT M12X1.75X30	101	VALVE,BRAKE PEDAL
21	NUT	102	SWITCH;SHUT OFF
22	WASHER;PLAIN	103	BOLT
23	SEAL RING	104	BOLT (M5X0.8)
24	WASHER,SEAL	105	WASHER;PLAIN M5
25	TUBE	106	WASHER
26	TUBE	107	ADAPTER
29	WASHER	108	WASHER,SEAL
30	BOLT	109	ADAPTER
31	SEALRING	110	HOSE; ;
32	BOLT	111	HOSE
33	CLAMP	112	SWITCH,LAMP
34	TEE	113	SEAL RING

2. Oil-water separator

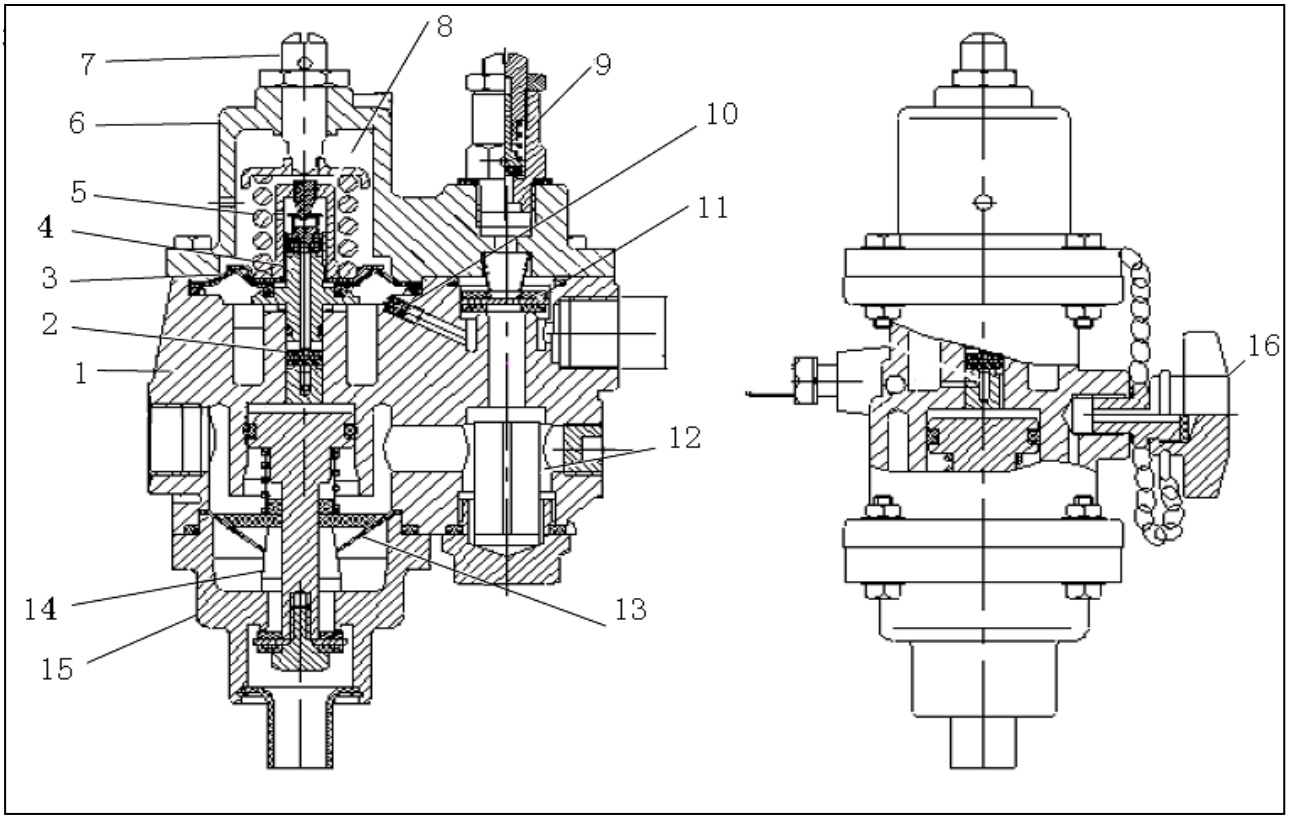


Figure 3

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	SHELL ASS'Y	9	RELIEF VALVE ASS'Y
2	REGULATING VALVE	10	ORIFICE PLUG
3	EAR DRUM	11	ONE-WAY VALVE
4	STEM	12	FILTER ASS'Y
5	REGULATING SPRING	13	OIL COLLECTOR
6	UPPER COVER	14	AIR BLEEDING PISTON
7	REGULATING SCREW	15	LOWER SHELL
8	CONTROLING PISTON ASS'Y	16	AEROFIOL NUT

3. Pneumatic brake valve

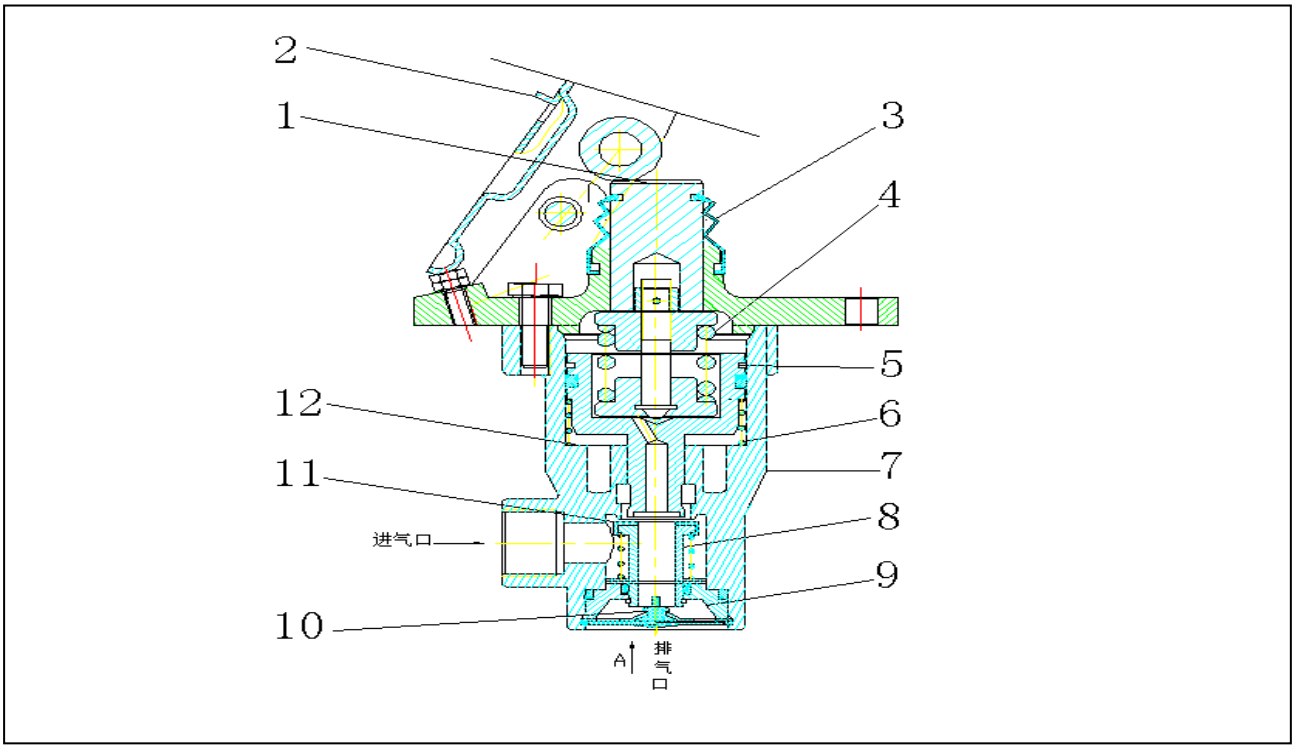


Figure 4

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	MANDRIL	7	VALVE BODY
2	PEDAL ASS'Y	8	INTAKE VALVE ASS'Y
3	ANTIDUST COVER	9	VALVE ASS'Y
4	BALANCING SPRING	10	OUTLET VALVE ASS'Y
5	PISTON ASS'Y	11	SEALING FIN
6	PISTON FOUR SPRING	12	SPRING SEAT

4. Booster pump

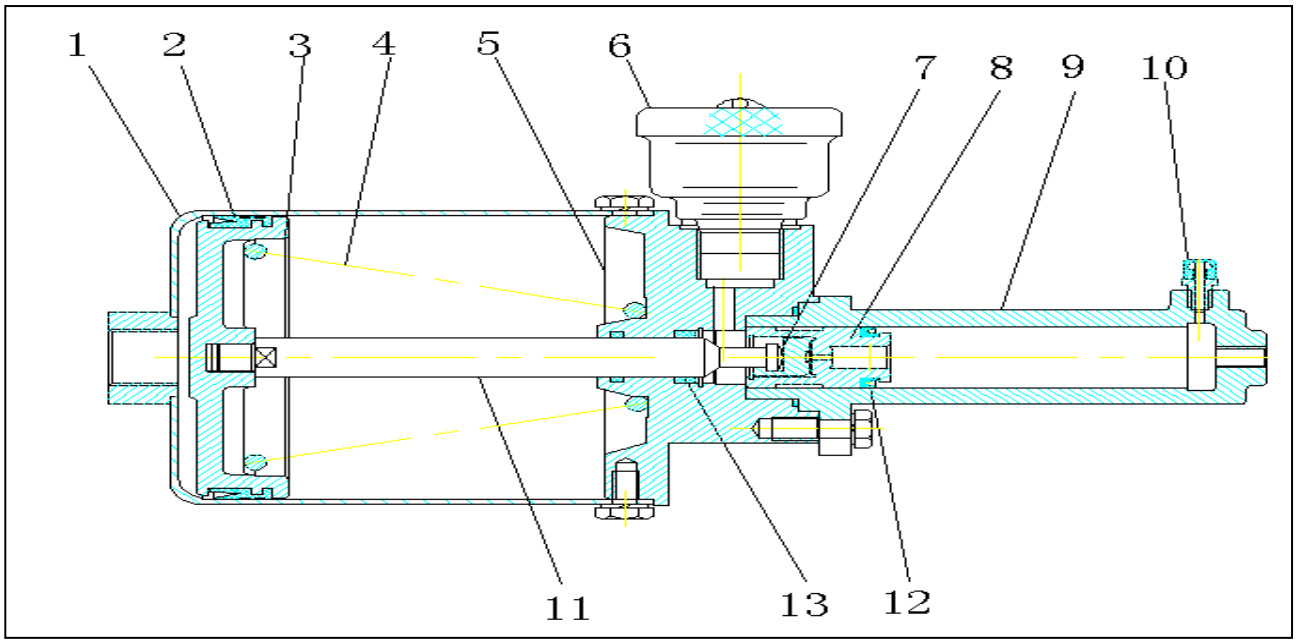


Figure 5

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	STRENGTH CYLINDER	8	PISTON
2	Y-SEAL RING	9	BREAKING PUMP
3	PISTON	10	AIR OUTLET SCREW
4	RELEASING SPRING	11	PUSHING BORER
5	ENDPLATE	12	MAIN PUMP FUR BOWL
6	STORAGE CUP	13	X-SEAL RING
7	PUTTING SEAT		

SPECIAL TOOLS AND MATERIALS

LUBRICANTS, SEALANTS AND OIL

System Maintenance and Failures Analysis

Brake caliper is locking

The so called “locking” failure refers to brake caliper does not return to the original position, that is one of the common failures of brake system. There are many reasons causing such kind failures, such as brake caliper is blocked, booster pump is blocked or brake caliper valve is blocked. If the brake caliper of front and rear bridge is locking, it is may caused by blocking of pneumatic brake caliper. When the failures are solved, loosen pipeline between booster pump and brake caliper, manually check if the brake caliper can return, if it does not work, it may be caused by blocking of brake caliper, if it can be returned manually, but booster pump may be blocked.

No brake or brake distance is too long

1. Pressure adjustment is improper, which causes pressure of compressed air is too low, brake moment is too small. Adjust pressure gauge to the regulated range.
2. It may be caused because air compressor is air leaking or air inlet and outlet valve are blocked because wearing of cylinder barrel and piston ring is too much, driving belt is too loosened. The worn parts shall be replaced in time.
3. Foot brake valve is adjusted improperly, when brake pedal is stepped to the end, air inlet valve of brake valve is not totally opened, air throttle is caused, air pressure becomes weak when going through foot brake valve, and it cannot reach rated working pressure. Adjust the adjusting screw of brake pedal.
4. Failure of booster pump: sealing ring of booster pump is worn, compressed air goes into low pressure chamber, and movement of brake pump piston is slow, or even there is no moving distance, which cause braking power is not enough; compensation hole of brake pump is blocked by dirt, brake fluid cannot go into ante chamber of piston and oil in brake oilway is not enough.

Brake lags behind

1. Air in brake system is not evacuated, air is compressed when braking, air resets when releasing brake, which affects returning of friction plate.
2. Brake air pressure is not enough;
3. Piston of brake caliper is blocked;
4. Foot brake air bleeder or filter screen is blocked, return spring of valve core is broken, piston cannot return and blocks outlet of air hole, which makes brake air discharging is not smooth, brake pressure and oil pressure cannot reduce quickly, brake moment cannot be released, thus it is laged behind.
5. The hole of non-pressure chamber of booster pump connecting with air is blocked or return spring is broken, which affects sensitivity of chamber piston return and cause lag.

Braking deviation

The direct reason of braking deviation is the brake moments of the left side and right side wheels are different, the common phenomenon are:

1. Brake caliper of one side of the wheel is locking, it is hard to trip off during travelling, and usually the rectangle sealing ring of brake caliper is broken.
2. When stepping foot pedal, one side brake caliper is braking, while the other side is inside leaking and oilway is blocked, brake fluid cannot go into brake caliper, which makes different brake moments and causes deviation. Under such kind of condition, please check if the sealing rings of gas cap and brake caliper are turned up or the pipelines are blocked.

There is scream during braking, and brake is hot

1. Connection screws between brake caliper and drive axle are loosed, they rub, impact or abrade each other.
2. There are hard things between brake lining and brake disc.

Storage and usage of brake fluid

1. Brake fluid belongs to inflammable goods; please pay Note to avoid evaporation and fire during usage and storage.
2. Brake fluid shall be stored in warehouse or other assigned place, but it cannot be stored in open air and close to hot source to avoid deteriorating and become invalid.
3. The using department shall set up independent room for storage and there must be obvoid marks.
4. It is forbidden to mix and use brake fluid of different brands to avoid layering and lose braking effect.
5. There must be special containers to store brake fluid to avoid mixing of other oil and cause reaction and invalidity.
6. Containers storing brake fluid must be clean and covered to avoid mechanical sundries and water. If the surface of brake fluid has dust and sundries, they must be removed before using, do not mix them, clean and special tool shall be used to add brake fluid.

Replacement of brake fluid and Notes:

Technicians shall guide clients to use and replace brake fluid strictly, when following conditions appear, all brake fluid must be replaced immediately.

1. When brake fluid is mixed with mineral substance, such as gas oil and diesel.
2. When vehicle is travelling normally, brake is light and heavy.
3. When brake fluid in the system is less or when the vehicle having liquid level is warning.
4. When oil color of brake fluid is muddy or there are sundries and sediment.

Notes during replacement:

1. When replacing brake fluid, clean the residual liquid in brake system, and check new brake liquid.
2. When replacing brake fluid, try to reduce the contacting time between brake fluid and air to avoid reducing performance of brake fluid.
3. Before replacing brake fluid, it is better to clean brake system with alcohol, release air in the oilway after replacement.

Treatment of air source

1. Clean air filter core in time.
2. Release water from air tank in time.

PARKING SYSTEM

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Description

Structure of parking brake

Brake is located at the front end of output axle of gearbox.

Driven method is pneumatic control. Pneumatic control usually has emergency brake function. When brake pressure is lower than safe pressure, the system can stop loader automatically.

Working principle of parking brake:

When the loader is driven normally, emergency and parking brake control valve are normally open. Compressed air from air tank goes through emergency and parking brake control valve, quick release valve, one part goes into brake chamber to push piston, compressed spring in brake chamber and store energy. The other part goes into the small chamber of stop valve of variable speed control valve, and connects with shift gear oilway. When emergency and parking brake are needed, emergency and parking brake valve is controlled to stop compressed air, brake chamber, compressed air in stop valve chamber will be discharged into air through quick release valve, shift gear oilway is stopped, gear box is on empty gear automatically, at the same time spring in brake chamber is released to push piston driven shoe brake in brake chamber to realize parking brake or emergency brake. When pressure of brake system is lower than safe pressure (0.3MPa usually), emergency and parking brake control valve will act automatically to realize emergency brake.

PARTS LIST

Assembly structure chart

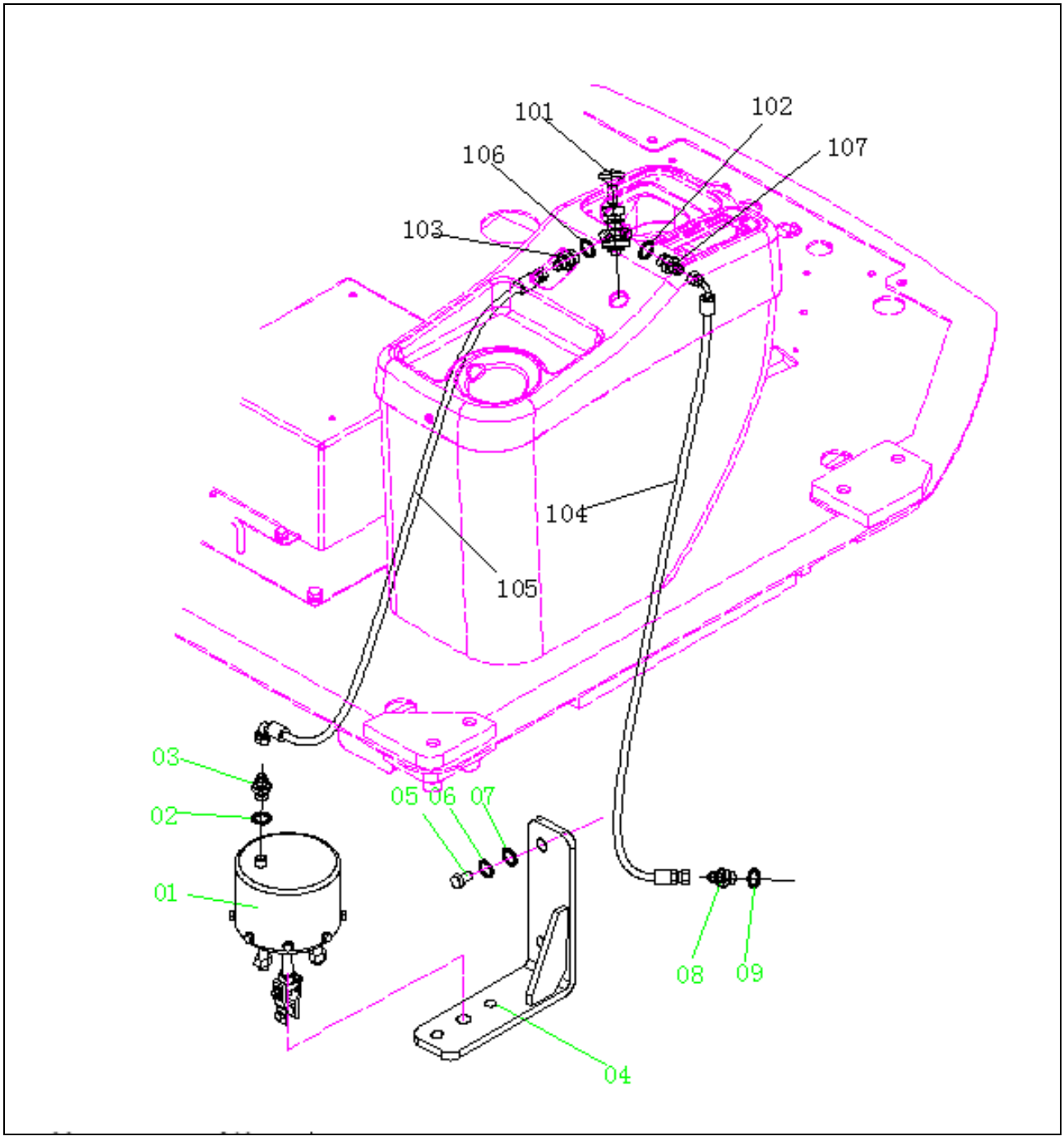


Figure 1

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	ACCUMULATOR	9	WASHER
2	WASHER	101	VALVE;CONTROL
3	ADAPTER	102	WASHER
4	BRACKET	103	ADAPTER
5	ADAPTER	104	HOSE ,AIR
6	WASHER;SPRING	105	HOSE ,AIR
7	WASHER;PLAIN	106	WASHER

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

⚠ CAUTION!
Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section. **Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.** **Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.** **Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OVERVIEW

Voltage of electrical system of the machine is DC 24V, the rated voltage of all electrical parts is 24V. Electrical cable wire adopts single wire system, and negative earth is adopted. Electrical system includes two serial 12V storage batteries and three phase DC generator with entire rectifier. Wire harness of the system can be distinguished by different insulation color. Each color symbol used for electrical system is listed below.

Electric Wire Color

Symbol	Color
W	White
G	Green
Or	Orange
B	Black
L	Blue
Lg	Light Green

Symbol	Color
R	Red
Gr	Gray
P	Pink
Y	Yellow
Br	Brown
V	Violet

NOTE: *RW: Red wire with White stripe.*

R - Base Color, W - Stripe Color.

NOTE: *0.85G: Nominal sectional area of wire core less insulator = 0.85 mm2 (0.03 in2).*

ELECTRIC SUPPLY SYSTEM

Power circuit supplies electric current to each electrical part. It is composed of storage battery, generator, fusible line and fuse box. Negative electrode of storage battery is earth connected and connects with balance weight.

Even if keys switch is at “OFF” position, when the general power is switched off, storage battery still supplies electric current to following parts, and returns back to fuse box through fusible link.

1. Input terminal of storage battery relay power supply.
2. Key switch terminal “B”.
3. Cabin light power supply terminal.
4. General stop electromagnet power input terminal.
5. Generator terminal “B”.
6. Preheat relay power input terminal.

When switch of keys is at “ON” and “START” position, electric current flows to fusible wire from storage battery, reaches key switch terminal “B”/”BR” through fuse box, and reaches storage battery relay control terminal “+” through guide line, activate storage battery relay coil and make the system power on.
When all contact terminals of storage battery are connected well, electrical device can be operated.

When generator does not work, all electrical equipments power source is supplied by storage battery. Once diesel engine is started, power will be supplied by generator.

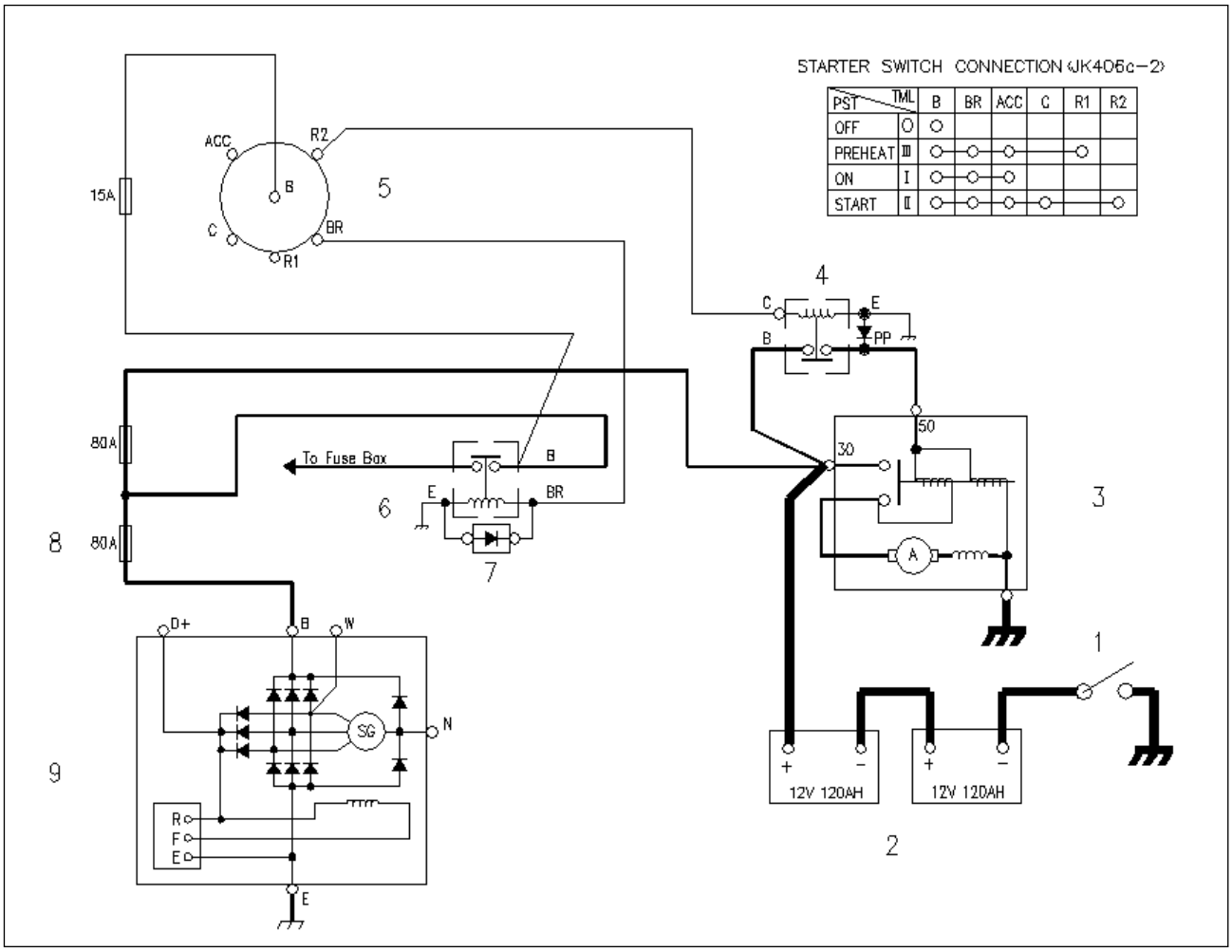


Figure 1 Power supply circuit diagram

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Disconnect Switch	6	Battery Relay
2	Battery	7	Diode
3	Starter	8	Fuse
4	Starter Relay	9	Alternator
5	Starter Switch		

ENGINE STARTING CIRCUIT

Operation during start process

Turn key switch (6) to “ON” position, connect terminal “B” and “BR”, output electric current starts power relay (8), then fuse box is power on.

After key switch (6) is turned to “ON” position, terminal “R2” and “B” are connected, starter relay (4) is started, then other contact terminals “B” and “PP” are connected, active gear of starter (3) is propelled to contact ring gear of flywheel and connect with contact terminal of starter.

Electric current comes out from storage battery (2), goes through terminal “B” and “PP” of starter relay (4) and arrives at starter (3) terminal “50”.

Operation after start process

Once generator is started, the belt will drive AC generator (9) to create electric current. Electric current goes through generator (9) terminal “B”, safety plate (7), power relay (8) terminal “B” and supply power to fuse box.

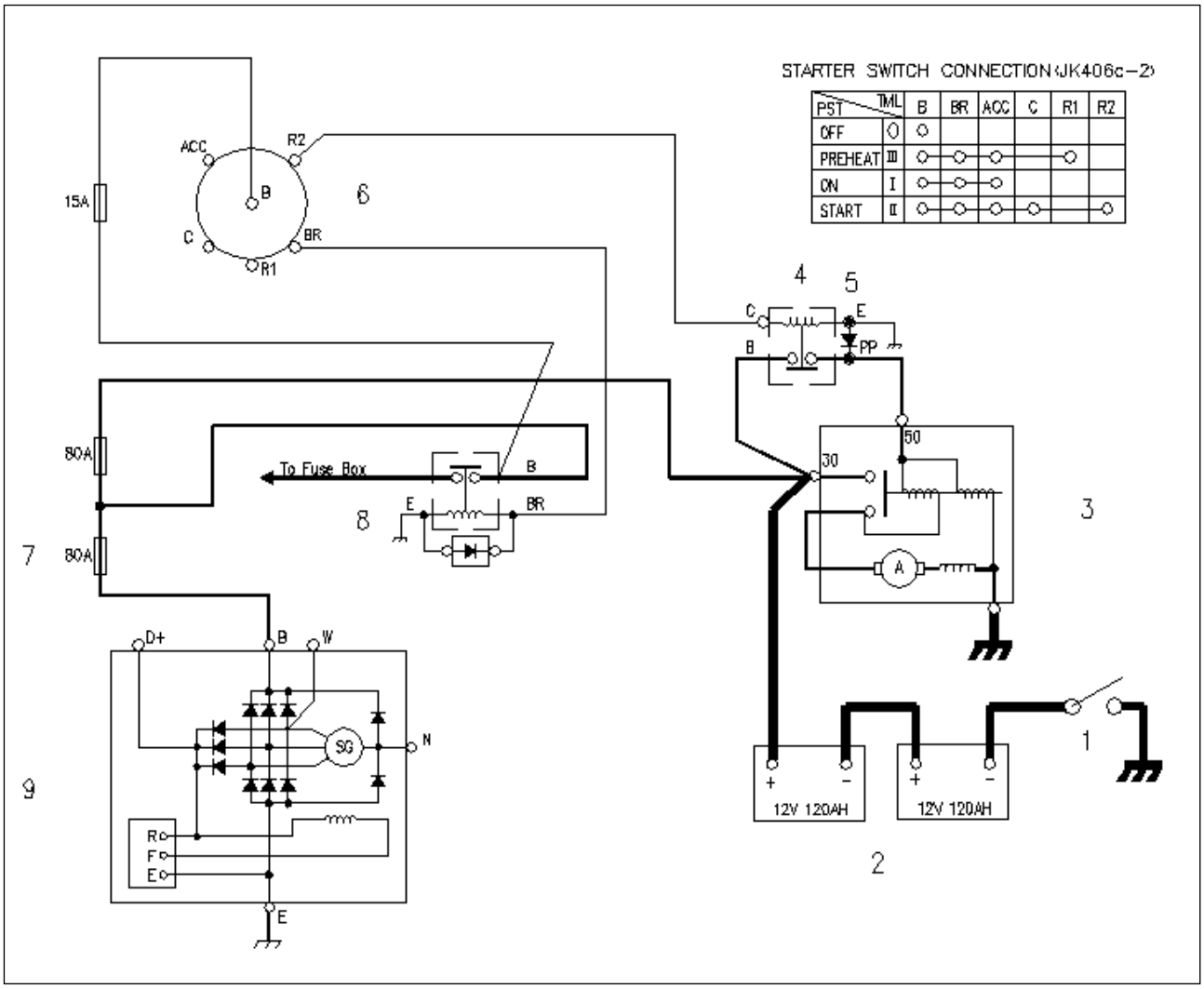


Figure 2 Starter circuit

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Disconnect Switch	6	Starter Switch
2	Battery	7	Fuse
3	Starter	8	Battery Relay
4	Starter Relay	9	Alternator
5	Diode		

Engine Preheating System

Engine preheating system is flame preheating system, its main functions are: heat air inlet temperature through burning diesel to solve the problem that engine is difficult to be started in winter resulted from low temperature. Main parts include: preheating switch (6), temperature sensor (11), preheating controller (7), preheating indicator (12), preheating relay (8), flame preheating solenoid valve (10) and preheating plug (9).

Working principle:

1. Preheating switch (6) is turned on;
2. When water temperature of engine is higher than 0℃ (water temperature Rt resistivity is smaller than 2700±300Ω), controller (7) is not at preheating state, preheating indicator light (12) is on for 2S and then off;
3. When water temperature of engine is lower than 0℃ (water temperature Rt resistivity is smaller than 2700±300Ω), controller (7) is at preheating state; preheating time is related with voltage;

Relationship between preheating time and voltage

Voltage（V）	18	20	22	24
Time （S）	55±5	41±4	30±3	26±2

4. When preheating time is up, preheating indicator light (12) is off (if ignition switch is off during preheating time, controller stops working), it enters into 30S period waiting for starting;
5. ①Turn off starting gear (ON) of ignition switch (4) during this period (preheating plug is power on during this period), oil supplying solenoid valve is connected, preheating indicator light (12) is on again, flame preheating plug (9) is power on;
6. ②Turn off starting gear (ON) of ignition switch (4) during this period, 24V voltage is not input into 50 terminals, engine is not starter, controller stops working;
7. After starting switch (40 is reset from starting position, if generator (3) does not send out “D+” signal to controller (7) (that is starting is unsuccessful), controller stops working after 6S; if generator sends out “D+” signal to controller (that is starting is successful), after entering into preheating period, working time RT resistivity and water temperature sensor (11) is functional relation, the longest is 120S, the shortest is 60S;
8. When Rt circuit of water temperature sensor (11) is broken, the system enters into preheating state, after all starting procedures are finished, preheating indicator light (12) blinks for 15S for warning, the heating time is the longest of the system after then;
9. When working voltage is lower than 15V, the system does not at preheating state, preheating indicator light (12) blinks for 15S for warning.
10. When controller (7) stops working under any working state, preheating switch (6) must be turned off to enter into preheating state again, that is cancelling 15 terminals voltage, connects with preheating switch (6) again.

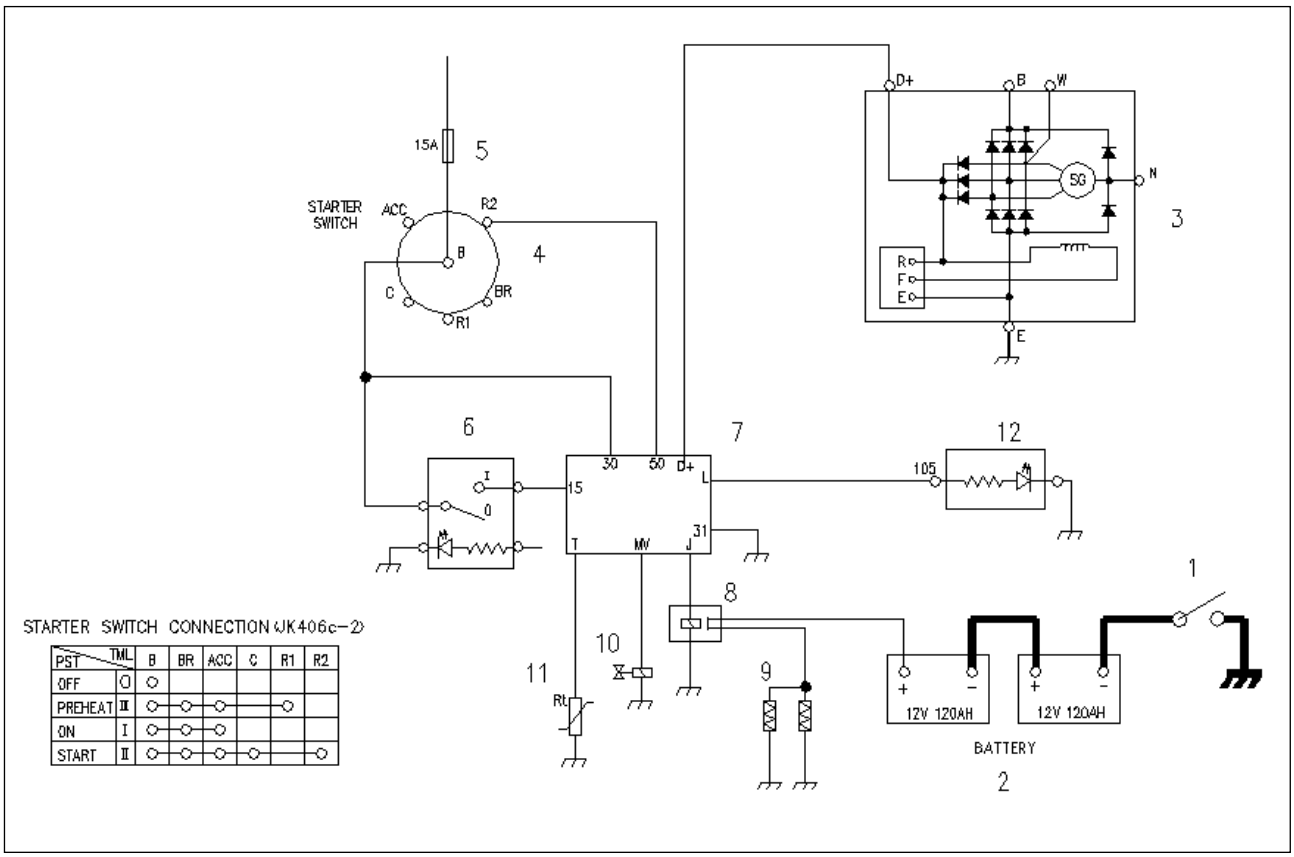


Figure 3 Control circuit of preheating system

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Disconnect Switch	7	Preheat Controller
2	Battery	8	Preheat Relay
3	Alternator	9	Pre heater
4	Starter Switch	10	Solenoid Fuel Valve
5	Fuse	11	Water Temperature Sensor
6	Preheat Switch	12	Preheat Indicator

ENGINE STOP SYSTEM

Engine stopping system is composed of key switch (4), flameout electromagnet (6) and flameout relay (5). There are two kinds of work process: before engine is started and engine flameout.

Working process before engine is started:

When key switch (4) is turned to “ON” gear, its terminal “ACC” and “B” is connected. Electric current goes through security of electrical box (3) through positive pole of storage battery (2) and “B” and “ACC” terminals of key switch, goes through holding coil of flameout electromagnet and earth connected and forms circuit.

Turns key switch to “START” gear, terminals “ACC”, “C” and “B” are connected. Electric current goes through insurance of electrical box (3) from positive pole of storage battery (2) and terminals “B” and “C” of key switch, flameout relay (5) coil is power on and works, terminal 15A and 269 are connected, flameout electromagnet (6) terminal 85 is power on, pulls in coil and works, fuel injection pump is opened and lever is closed.

Then key switch will be back to “ON” gear automatically, pulling in coil is broken, while coil is kept to be power on, keep the state of lever closing.

Work process of engine flameout:

Turns key switch (4) to “OFF” gear, its terminals “ACC” and “C” are power off. Electric current going through flameout electromagnet (6) holding circuit and flameout replay (5) coil is cut off. Closing lever of fuel injection pump is reset, fuel supplying is stopped, engine flames out.

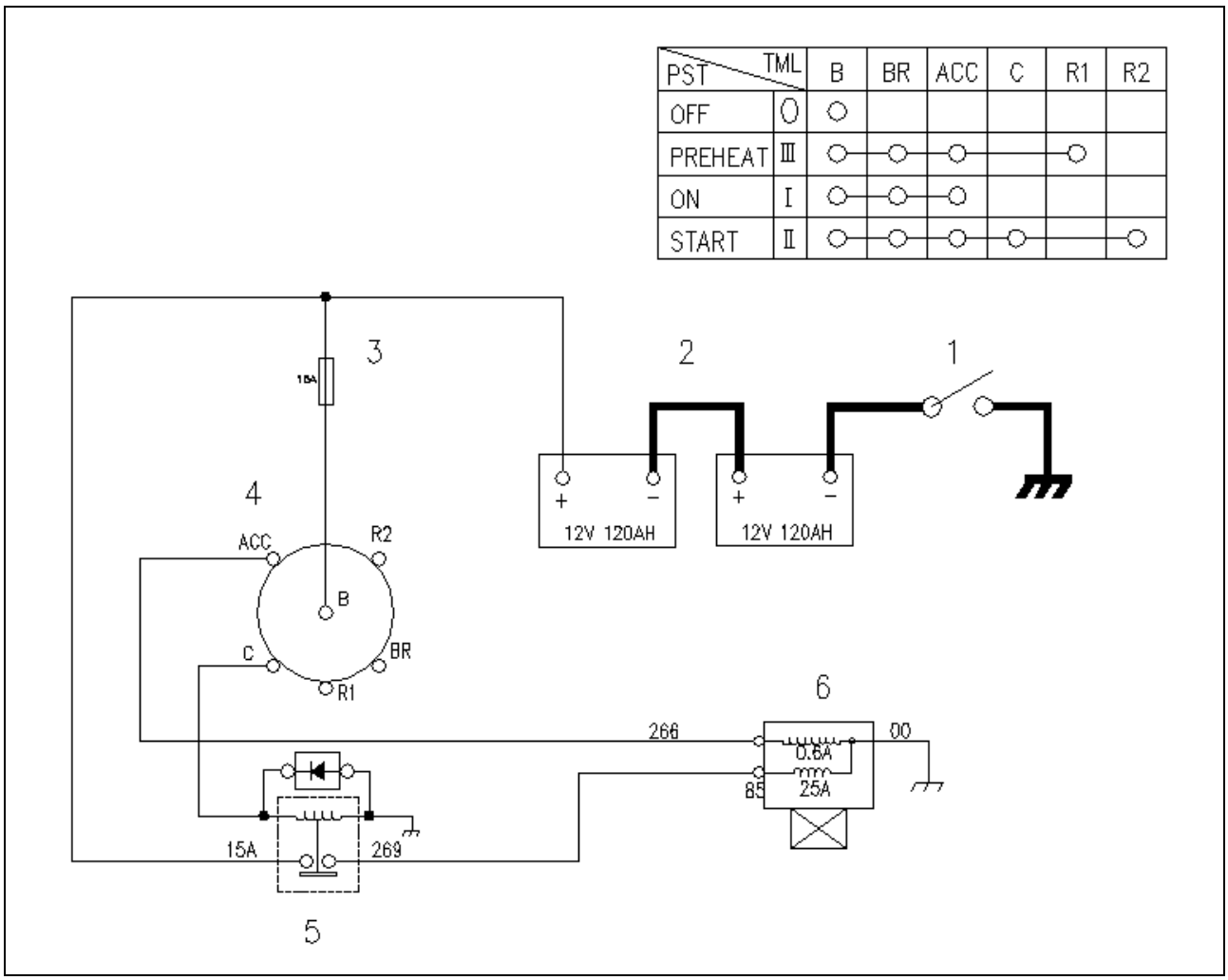


Figure 4 Engine stalling system

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Disconnect Switch	4	Starter Switch
2	Battery	5	Engine Stop Relay
3	Fuse	6	Engine Stop Motor

Charging System

Turn key switch (5) to “ON” position, its terminals “BR” and “B” are connected, power relay (6) acts, terminals “02A” and “02” are connected, electric current coming from storage battery (2) goes through fuse box (4), power relay (6), charging indication light (8) and excitation resistance (9) and reaches “D+” terminal of generator (5), earth connected and forms a circuit, charging indication light (8) is on to warn and supplies excitation electric current for generator (5). After engine is started, generator (5) starts charging. Electric current comes from terminal “B+” of generator (5), goes through fuse box (4) and reaches storage battery (2). Charging indication light (8) is off.

Generator (5) also supplies power to other electrical parts through fuse box (4) and power relay (6).

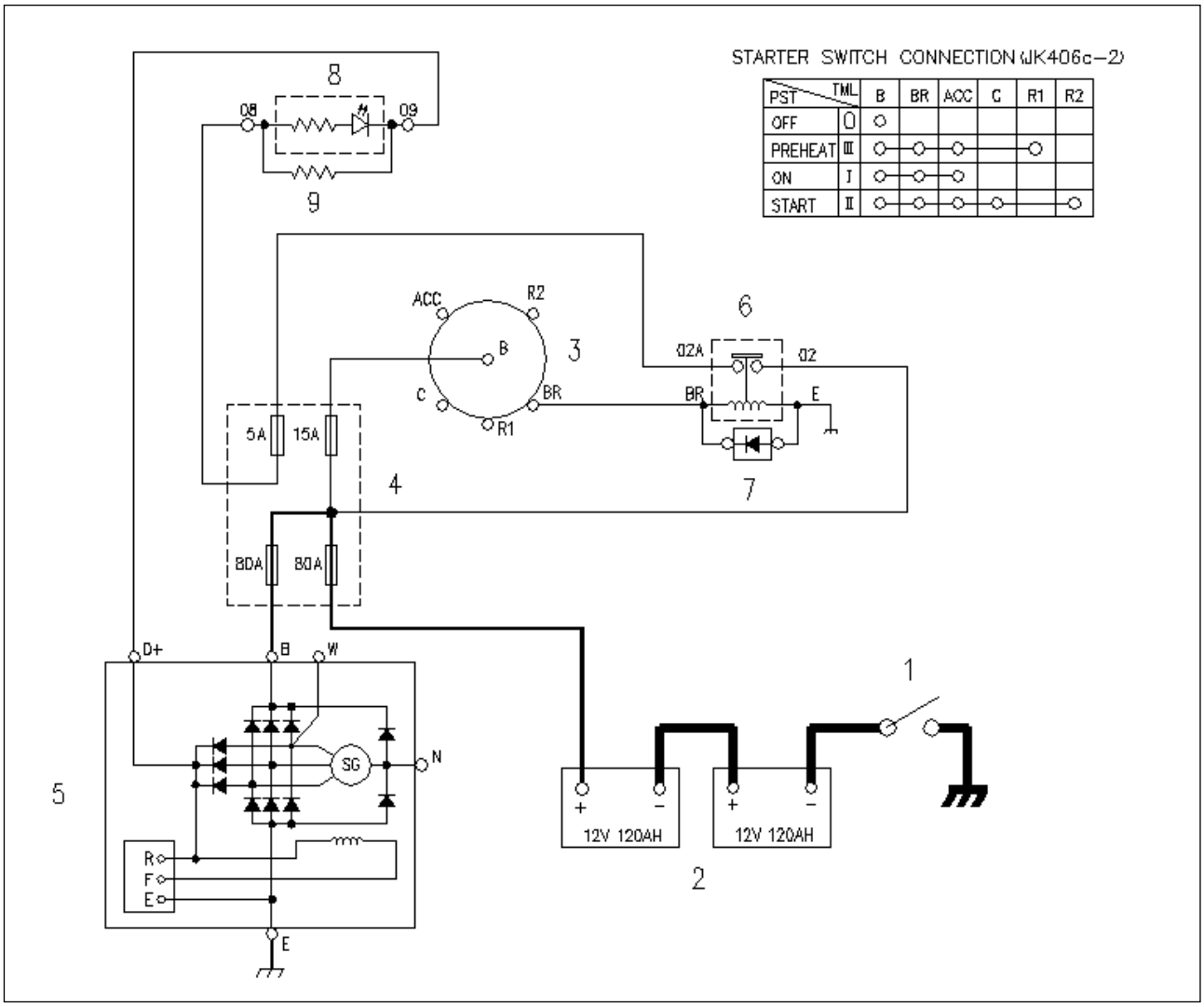


Figure 5 Charging system circuit diagram

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Disconnect Switch	6	Battery Relay
2	Battery	7	Diode
3	Starter Switch	8	Charge Indicator
4	Fuse Box	9	Resistor
5	Alternator		

Monitoring System

Monitoring system of the equipment includes all kinds of oil pressure gauges, oil pressure sensor plug, water temperature gauge, water temperature sensor plug, voltmeter, barometer and low pressure warning device, etc.

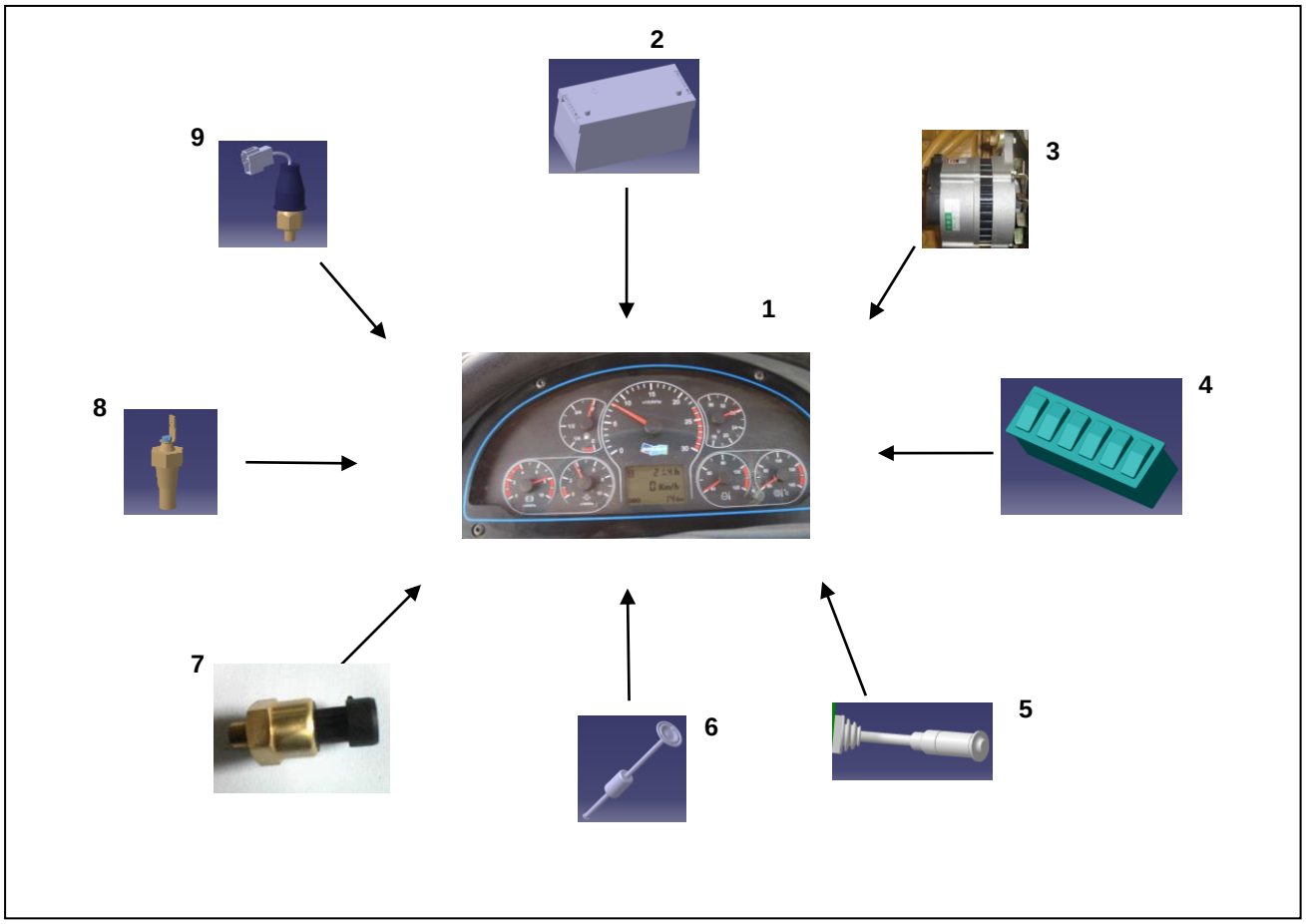


Figure 6 Monitoring system

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Gauge Panel	6	Fuel Sensor
2	Battery	7	Sensor
3	Alternator	8	Temperature Sensor
4	Rocker Switch	9	Back Buzzer Switch
5	Switchgroup		

Monitoring system will process information collected from all sensors, the instrument panel will indicate all data and warning signals.

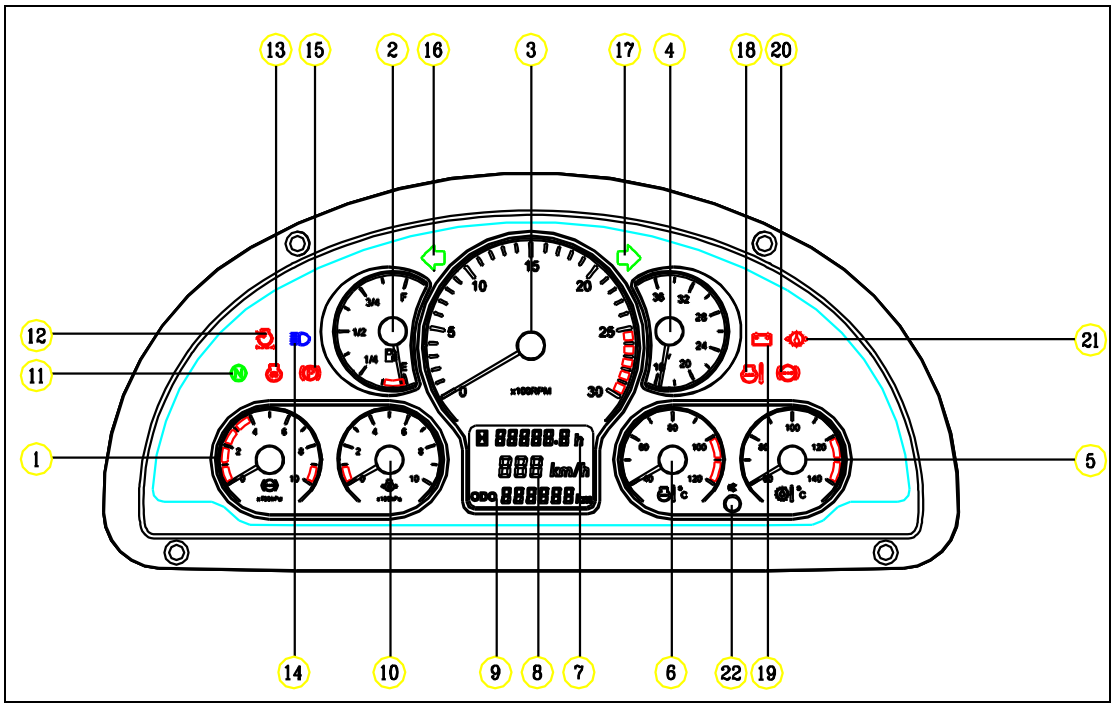
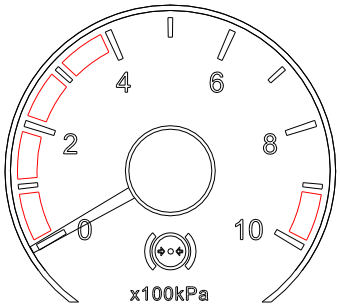
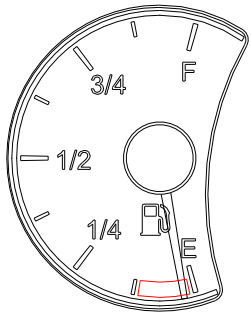
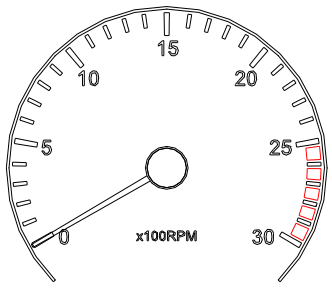
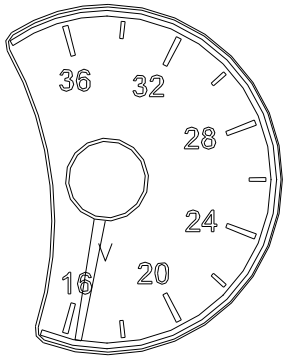
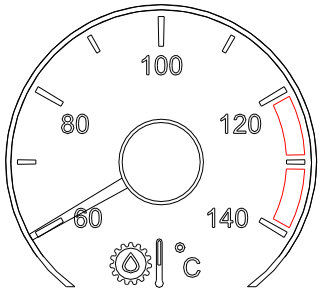
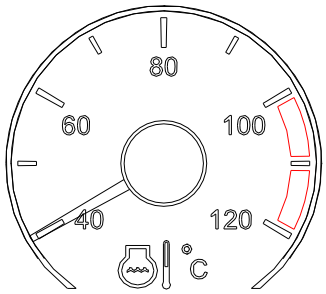
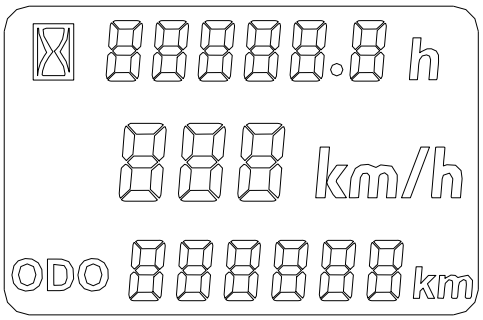
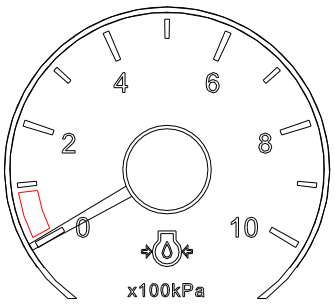


Figure 7 Gauge panel

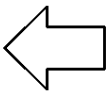
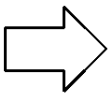
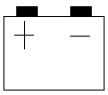
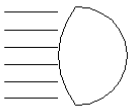
Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Tachometer & Hour meter	9	Charging Warning Light
2	Speed Meter & Voltmeter	10	High Beam Indicator
3	Air Pressure Meter	11	Preheat Indicator
4	Fuel Gauge	12	Parking Brake Indicator
5	Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	13	Reserve Zone
6	Torque Converter Oil Temperature Meter	14	Transmission Oil Pressure Warning Light
7	Turn and Hazard Warning Light	15	Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light
8	Air Pressure Warning Light	16	Turn and Hazard Warning Light

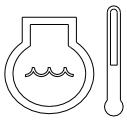
Instruments

Function	Display	Sensor Specification	
		Input Terminal	Input Specification
Air Pressure Meter		CN-29	0.1MPa——0.9V 0.4MPa——2.1V 0.6MPa——2.9V 0.7MPa——3.3V 0.8MPa——3.7V
Fuel Gauge		CN-03	0——80 Ω 1/2——32 Ω F——8 Ω
Tachometer		CN-10	12.66 pulse/r
Voltage meter		CN-11	

Function	Display	Sensor Specification	
		Input Terminal	Input Specification
Torque Converter Oil Temperature Meter		CN-09	0℃——98.96KΩ 60℃——2.476KΩ 80℃——1.25KΩ 100℃——0.6744KΩ 120℃——0.4071KΩ
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge		CN-02	0℃——98.96KΩ 40℃——5.312KΩ 60℃——2.476KΩ 80℃——1.25KΩ 100℃——0.6744KΩ 120℃——0.4071KΩ
Hour meter Speedometer Odometer		CN-04 CN-27	
Engine oil pressure meter		CN-08	0.1MPa——0.9V 0.2MPa——1.3V 0.3MPa——1.7V 0.4MPa——2.1V

Indication light

Function	Display	Input Terminal	Description	Remarks
	Turn left and dangerous indication light	CN-24	The light is on when turning left signal or dangerous warning light is turned on (the Max. terminal input is 24V)	
	Turn right and dangerous indication light	CN-22	The light is on when turning right signal or dangerous warning light is turned on (the Max. terminal input is 24V)	
	Charging	CN-16	The light is on when not charging (Generator D + terminal output voltage reduces to 24V)	Under normal condition, light is on when starting, light is off when engine starts working
	Headlights on full beam	CN-25	The light is on when headlight on full beam is turned on (The Max. terminal input is 24V)	
	Oil pressure of gear box	CN-17	The light is on when pressure decreses to 1.1Mpa.	
	Preheat	CN-01	The light is on when preheating system is working	
	Parking brake	CN-18	The light is on when brake switch is turned on (pressure switch is off when pressure is more than 0.3Mpa, the Max. input terminal is 24V)	When braking, the light is on before engine is started under any conditions.

Function	Display	Input Terminal	Description	Remarks
	water temperture.	CN-02	When the engine temperature more than 103 ℃, the lamp is lit,	
	Nertral position	CN-06	When control handle in a neutral position, the lamp is lit,	
	filter	CN-20	When pressure vacuum reach 6KPa, lamp is lit	
	Brake pressure	CN-29	When pressure is reduced to 0.4 MPa ,the lamp is lit,	

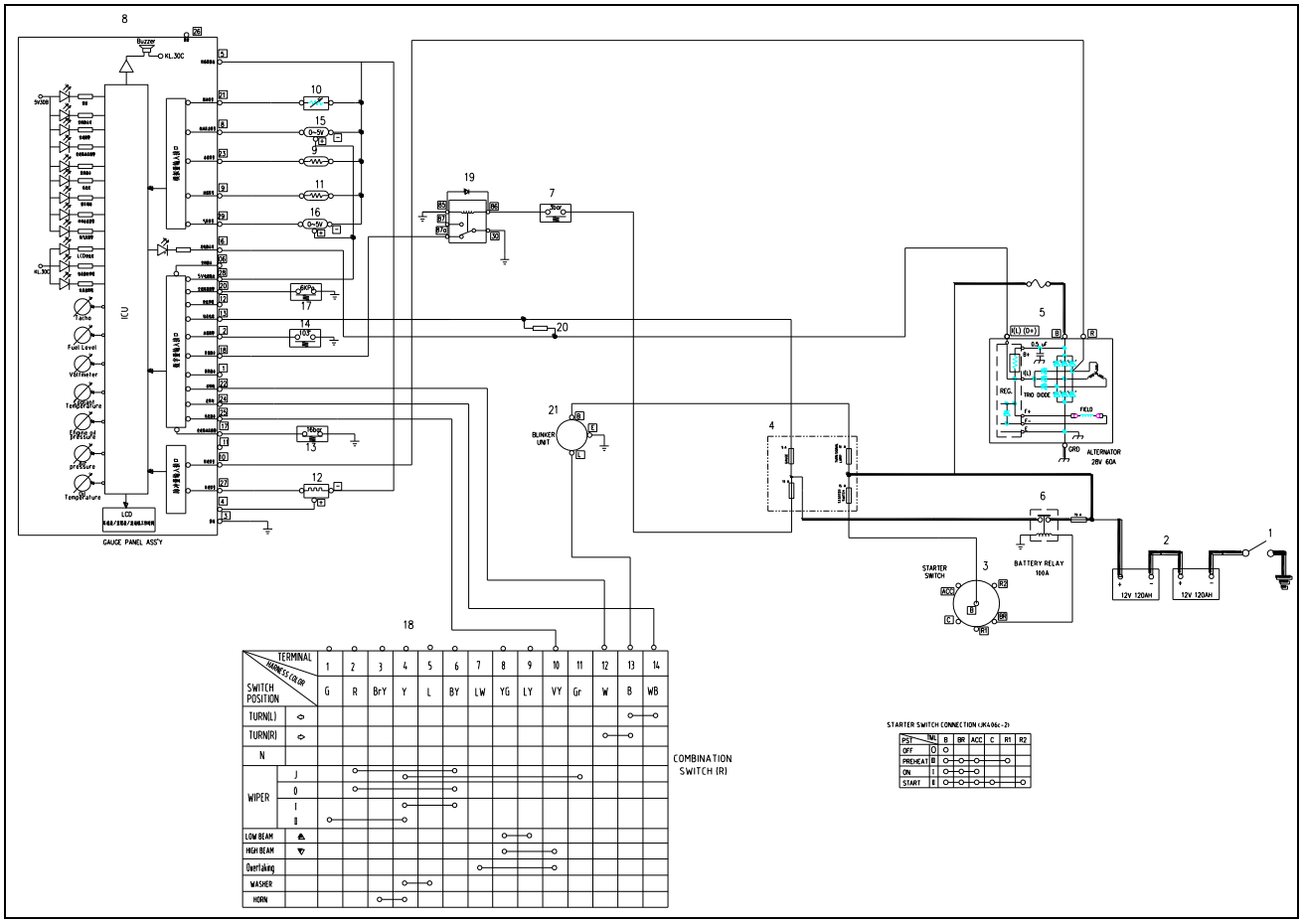


Figure 8 Schematic diagram of monitoring system

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Disconnect Switch	12	Speed Sensor
2	Battery	13	T/M Oil Pressure Switch
3	Starter Switch	14	Water temp. Switch
4	Fuse Box	15	Eng. Oil Pressure Switch
5	Alternator	16	Air Pressure Alarm Switch
6	Starter Relay	17	Empty filter jams switch
7	Park press switch	18	Combination Switch
8	Gauge Panel	19	Relay
9	Water Temperature Sensor	20	Excitation resistance
10	Fuel Sensor	21	Blinker Unit
11	Transmission Temp Sensor		

Windshield Wiper

Windshield wiper can be operated by combination switch (2).

1. Low speed wiper (I gear)
   When wiper is running with low speed, electric current comes from fuse box (1), goes through wire inlet terminal and terminal “L” of wiper motor (3), reaches terminal “6” and “4” of combination switch (2) and connects with earth.
2. High speed wiper (II gear)
   When wiper is running with high speed, electric current comes from fuse box (1), goes through wire inlet terminal and terminal “H” of wiper motor (3), reaches terminal “1” and “4” of combination switch (2) and connects with earth.

Through the rocket switch (7) control rear window wiper blade and scrubber

1 .Single windshield wipers gear (not automatic reset)
   When Wiper blade in the running gear, the current from the fuse box (1) through the windscreen wiper motor (5) into line terminal to rocket switch (7) terminal "4", "2", then grounding.

2. The windshield wipers and scrubber combination gear (can be automatically reset).
   When Wiper blade in the running gear, the current from the fuse box (1) through the windscreen wiper motor (5) and washing machine (6) into line terminal to rocket switch (7) terminal "1", "7",then grounding.

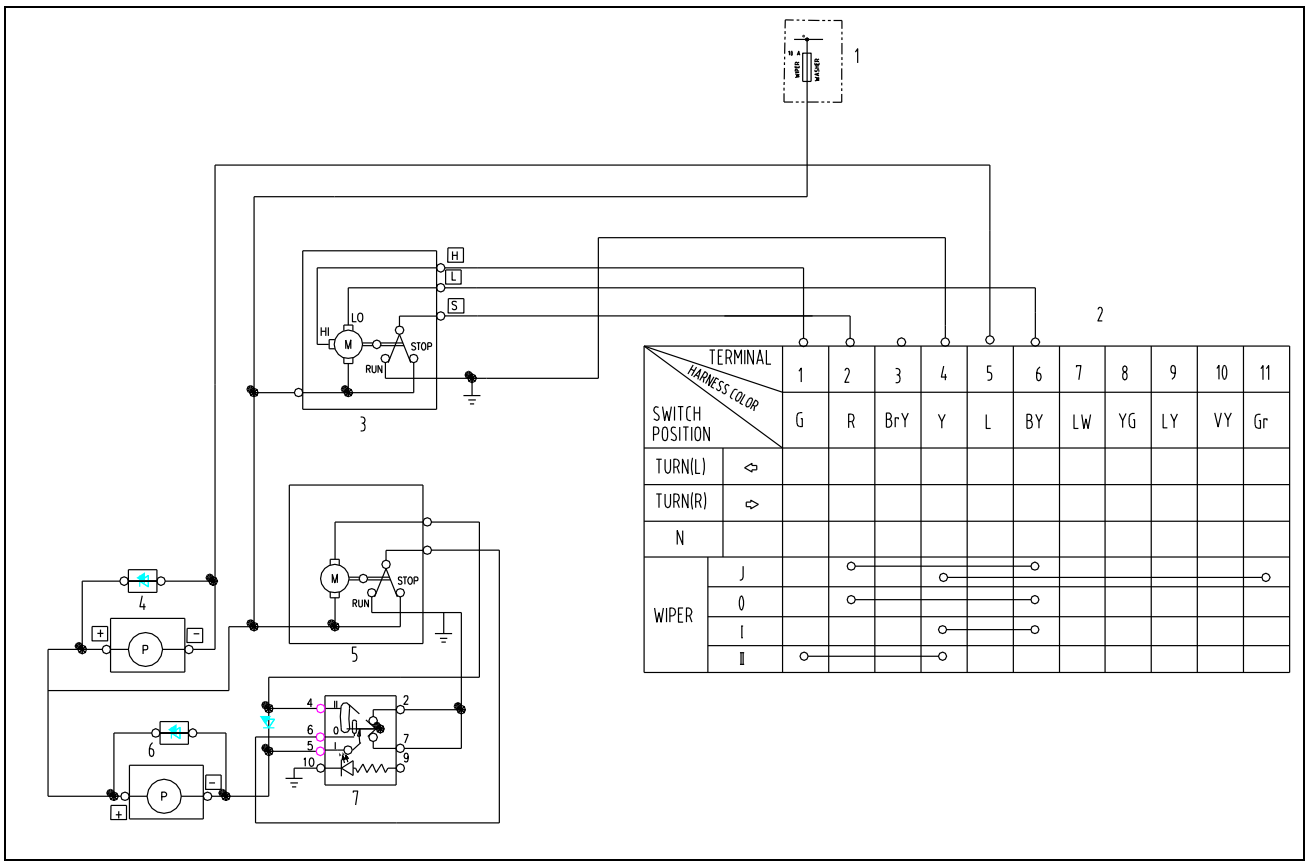


Figure 9 Circuit diagram of front windshield wiper

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Fuse Box	5	Rear Wiper
2	Combination Switch	6	Rear Washer
3	Wiper	7	Rocker switch
4	Washer		

Lighting System

Lamping system includes main lamp, position lamp, turning signal lamp, dangerous lamp, parking lamp, working lamp and switches of all lamps.

1. When indoor lamp (4) is turned on, electric current goes to indoor lamp from fuse box (1), indoor lamp is on.
2. Press front lamp switch (18), combination switch (2) is turned to passing lamp, terminal “8” and “9” are connected, electric current from fuse box (1) is sent to coil terminal “86” of passing lamp relay (6), passing lamp relay (6) works, its terminal “30” and “87” are connected, passing lamp of front lamp(12) and (13) gets power and works.
3. Press front lamp switch (18), combination switch (2) is turned to distance lamp, terminal “8” and “10” are connected, electric current from fuse box (1) is sent to coil terminal “86” of distance lamp relay (5), distance lamp relay (5) works, its terminal “30” and “87” are connected, distance lamp of front lamp (12) and (13) gets power and works.
4. Combination switch (2) is turned to left handed rotation, its terminal “13” and “14” are connected, electric current from fuse box (1) goes through flasher (7), combination switch (2) and reaches left turning lamp of front combination lamp (12) and rear combination lamp (14).
5. Combination switch (2) is turned to right handed rotation, its terminal “13” and “12” are connected, electric current from fuse box (1) goes through flasher (7), combination switch (2) and reaches right turning lamp of front combination lamp (13) and rear combination lamp (15).
6. When brake switch (3) works, electric current from fuse box (1), reaches brake lamp of rear combination lamp (14) and rear combination lamp (15), brake lamp works.
7. When pressing switch of position lamp (17), its terminal “5” and “1” are connected. Electric current from fuse box (1) reaches small lamps of (10), (11, (16), (17), and (18), and front combination lamp (120 and (13), position lamp of rear combination lamp (14) and (15).
8. When pressing switch of working lamp (10), its terminal “5” and “1” are connected. Electric current from fuse box (1) reaches working lamp (9), working lamp is on.
9. When pressing rear lamp switch (11), its terminal “5” and “1” are connected. Electric current from fuse box (1) reaches working lamp (8), rear working lamp is on.
10. When pressing dangerous lamp (16), terminal “5” and “1”, “2” and “37” are connected. Electric current from fuse box (1) is sent to turning lamp of front combination lamp (12) and (13), and rear combination lamp (14) and (15).

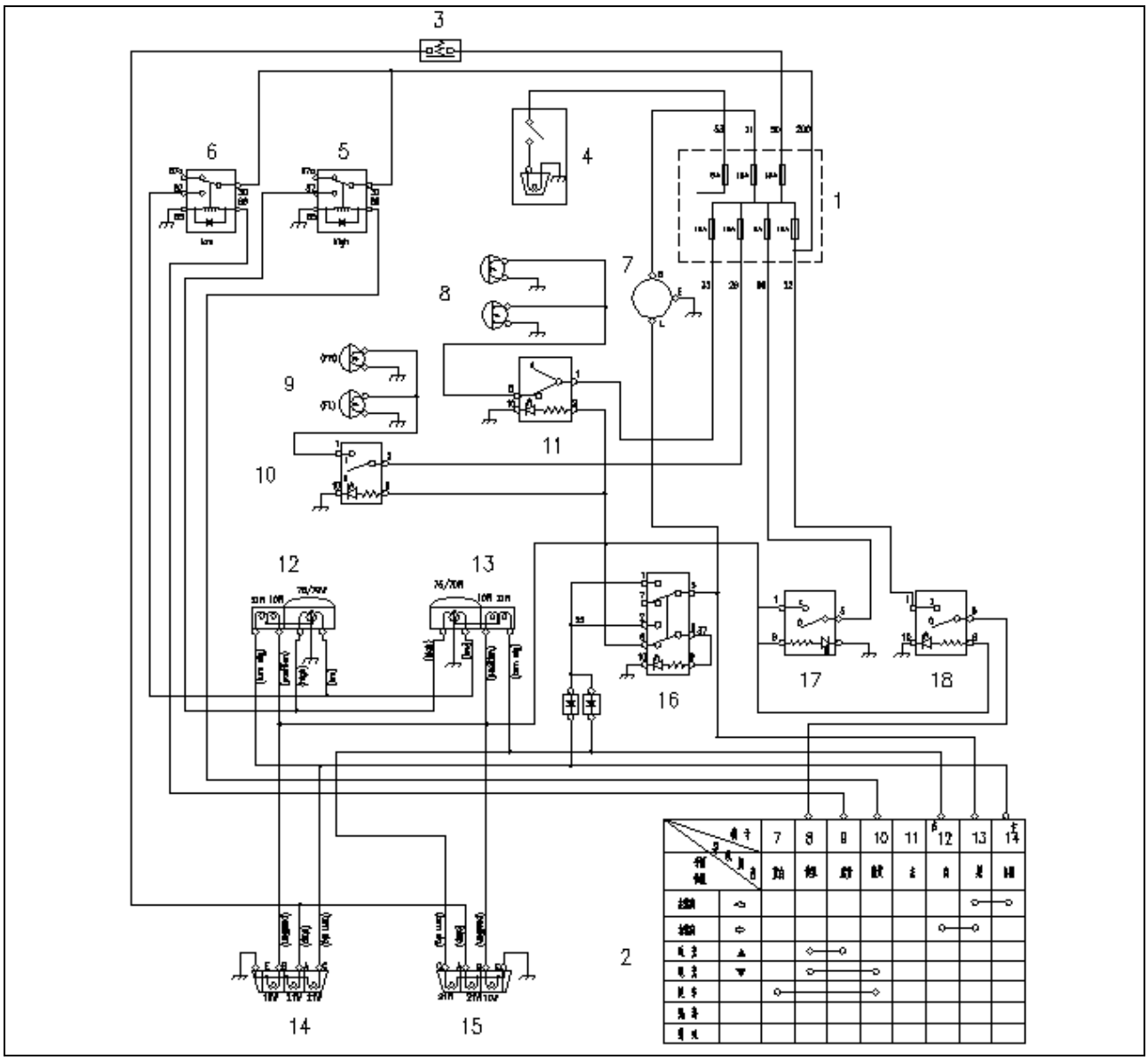


Figure 10 Lighting system circuit diagram

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Fuse Box	10	Working Lamp Switch
2	Combination Switch	11	Rear Lamp Switch
3	Stop Lamp Switch	12	Front Combination Lamp(L)
4	Room Lamp	13	Front Combination Lamp(R)
5	High Lamp Relay	14	Rear Combination Lamp(L)
6	Low Lamp Relay	15	Rear Combination Lamp(R)
7	Blinker Unit	16	Hazard Switch
8	Rear Lamp	17	Position Lamp Switch
9	Working Lamp	18	Front Lamp Switch

Electric Detent System

Electric detent system includes swing arm lifting limitation system and cylinder automatic laid flat system.

Electric circuit

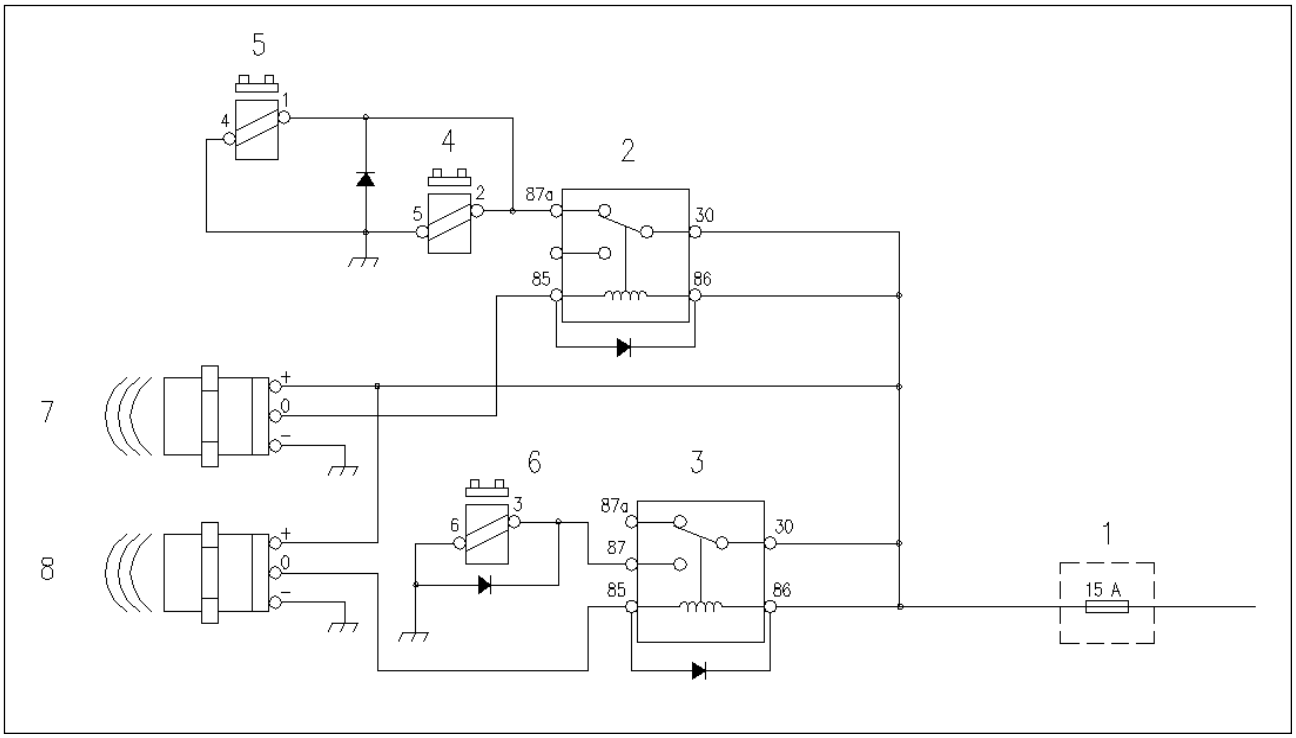


Figure 11 Electric detent system circuit

Reference Number	Description	Reference Number	Description
1	Fuse Box	5	Float Magnet
2	Raise Relay	6	Return to Dig Magnet
3	Return to Dig Relay	7	Proximity Switch 1
4	Raise Magnet	8	Proximity Switch 2

BOOM KICK-OUT

1. Swing arm lifting limitation

When swing arm operation handle is pulled to the rear limitation position, swing arm operation handle will be gripped by swing arm lifting electromagnet (4) (swing arm operation handle will not return to middle-position after loosening hands), swing arm will keep lifting; when swing arm reaches the limitation, proximity switch (7) works, its terminal “0” and “-” are connected, coil of lifting relay (2) is power on and works, its terminal “30” and “87a” disconnect. Lifting limitation electromagnet (4) and float electromagnet (5) are power off and lose suction ability, swing arm operation handle will return middle-position automatically with the effect of resetting spring, lifting hydraulic circuit of cylinder is cut off, and swing arm does not lift again.

2. Swing arm floating device

When swing arm operation handle is pushed to the limitation, swing arm operation handle will be gripped by swing arm floating electromagnet (5) (swing arm operation handle will not return to middle-position after loosening hands), at this moment, swing arm is at floating state, the swing arm operation handle will return middle-position when releasing swing arm floating state. When swing arm descends, it can be pushed to floating position, swing arm will descend with effect of dead weight. At this moment, the driver can operate other items (such as flat bucket) with the right hand, thus working efficiency is improved. Push swing arm operation handle to floating position during slicking, bucket will rise along with rising of ground, and will not damage the road.

RETURN TO DIG

When bucket is at material discharging state, pull bucket operation handle to rear limitation, since proximity switch (8) is at suction state, its terminal “0” and “-” are connected, automatic laid flat relay (3) coil is power on and pulls in, bucket operation handle is gripped by bucket collecting holding electromagnet (6) and keep at the rear limitation position (bucket operation handle will not return to middle-position after loosening hand), bucket will keep rotating backward until reaching limitation, proximity switch (8) acts, its terminal “0” and “-” are disconnected, automatic laid flat replay (3) is power off and disconnect, bucket collecting holding electromagnet loses power and gripping ability, bucket operation handle returns to middle-position with effect of resetting spring, bucket stops rotating, swing arm descends, when bucket reaches to the ground, bucket bottom is flat with the ground.

PROXIMITY SWITCH

Operating distance：10mm ± 1mm

Operation indication light： Indication light is on when proximity switch is acting.

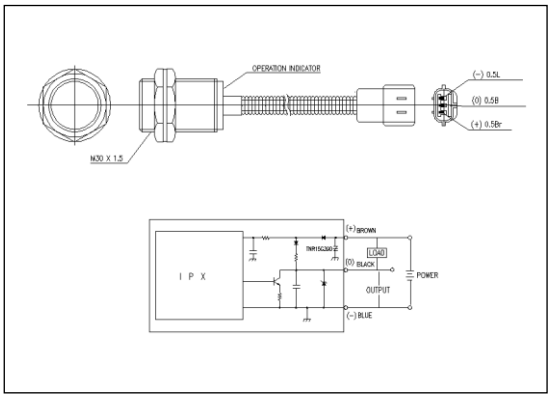


Figure 12 Proximity switch

SPC000070

SCHEMATIC

⚠ CAUTION!

Follow all safety recommendations and safe shop practices outlined in the front of this manual or those contained within this section.

Always use tools and equipment that is in good working order.

Use lifting and hoisting equipment capable of safely handling load.

Remember, that ultimately safety is your own personal responsibility.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Description

Schematic diagram shown in this section is shown in folio page.

The overlapped edge has been considered for convenient copy, a complete schematic diagram can be formed when they are put together.

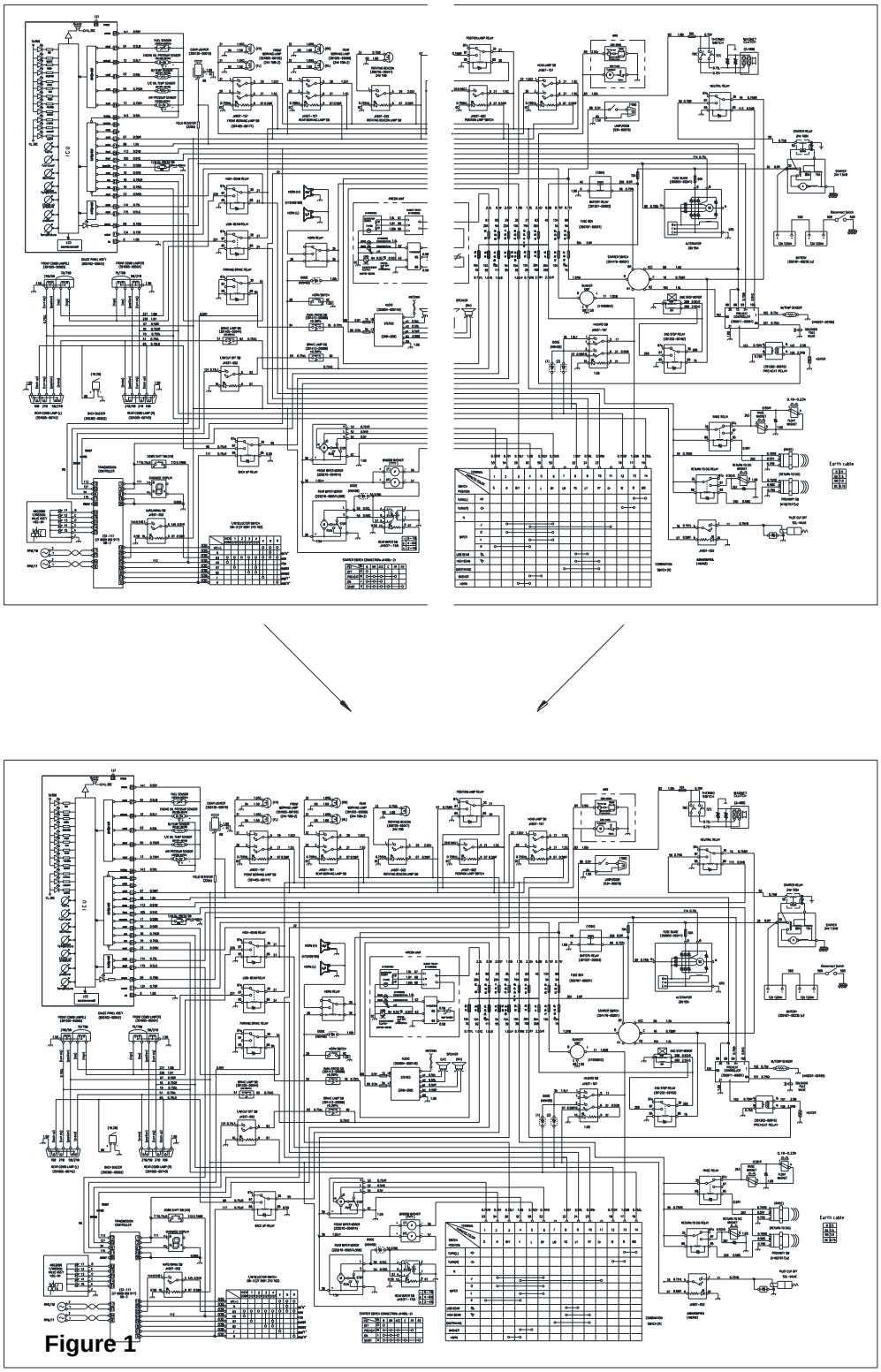


Figure 1

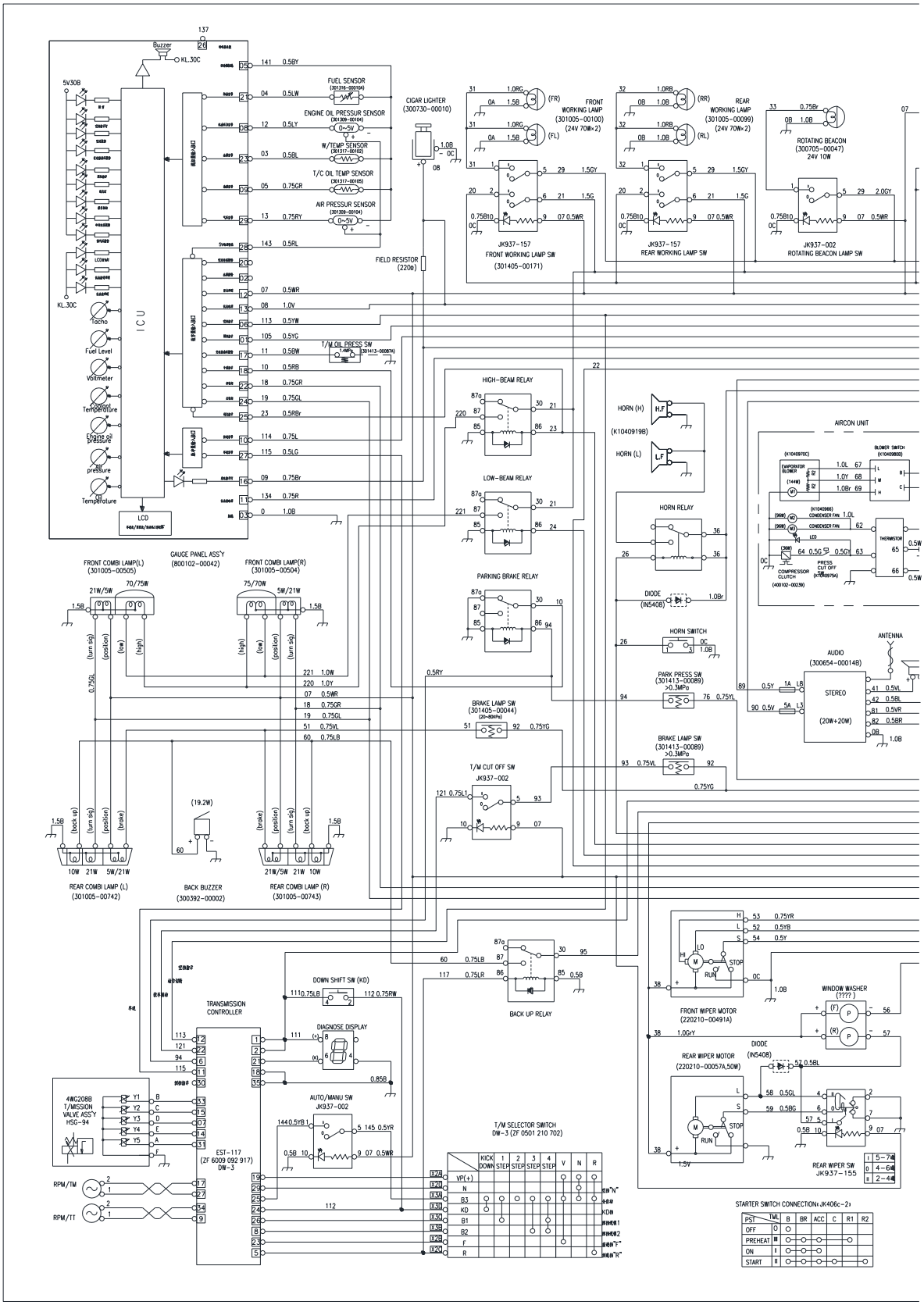

ICU
Buzzer
KL.30C
FUEL SENSOR
ENGINE OIL PRESSUR SENSOR
W/TEMP SENSOR
T/C OIL TEMP SENSOR
AIR PRESSUR SENSOR
CIGAR LIGHTER
FRONT WORKING LAMP (301005-00100) (24V 70W×2)
REAR WORKING LAMP (301005-00099) (24V 70W×2)
ROTATING BEACON (300705-00047) 24V 10W
JK937-157 FRONT WORKING LAMP SW (301405-00171)
JK937-157 REAR WORKING LAMP SW
JK937-002 ROTATING BEACON LAMP SW
FIELD RESISTOR (220Ω)
T/M OIL PRESS SW
HIGH-BEAM RELAY
LOW-BEAM RELAY
PARKING BRAKE RELAY
HORN (H)
HORN (L)
HORN RELAY
HORN SWITCH
DIODE (IN5408)
AIRCON UNIT
ANTENNA
AUDIO (300654-00014B)
STEREO (20W+20W)
PARK PRESS SW (301413-00089) >0.3MPa
BRAKE LAMP SW (301405-00044)
BRAKE LAMP SW (301413-00089) >0.3MPa
T/M CUT OFF SW JK937-002
FRONT COMBI LAMP(L) (301005-00505)
FRONT COMBI LAMP(R) (301005-00504)
GAUGE PANEL ASS'Y (800102-00042)
REAR COMBI LAMP (L) (301005-00742)
BACK BUZZER (300392-00002)
REAR COMBI LAMP (R) (301005-00743)
TRANSMISSION CONTROLLER
DOWN SHIFT SW (KD)
DIAGNOSE DISPLAY
AUTO/MANU SW JK937-002
BACK UP RELAY
4WG20BB T/MISSION VALVE ASS'Y HSG-94
EST-117 (ZF 6009 092 917) DW-3
RPM/TM
RPM/TT
T/M SELECTOR SWITCH DW-3 (ZF 0501 210 702)
FRONT WIPER MOTOR (220210-00491A)
REAR WIPER MOTOR (220210-00057A,50W)
DIODE (IN5408)
WINDOW WASHER (????)
REAR WIPER SW JK937-155
STARTER SWITCH CONNECTION‹JK406c-2›
OFF
PREHEAT
ON
START

Figure 2

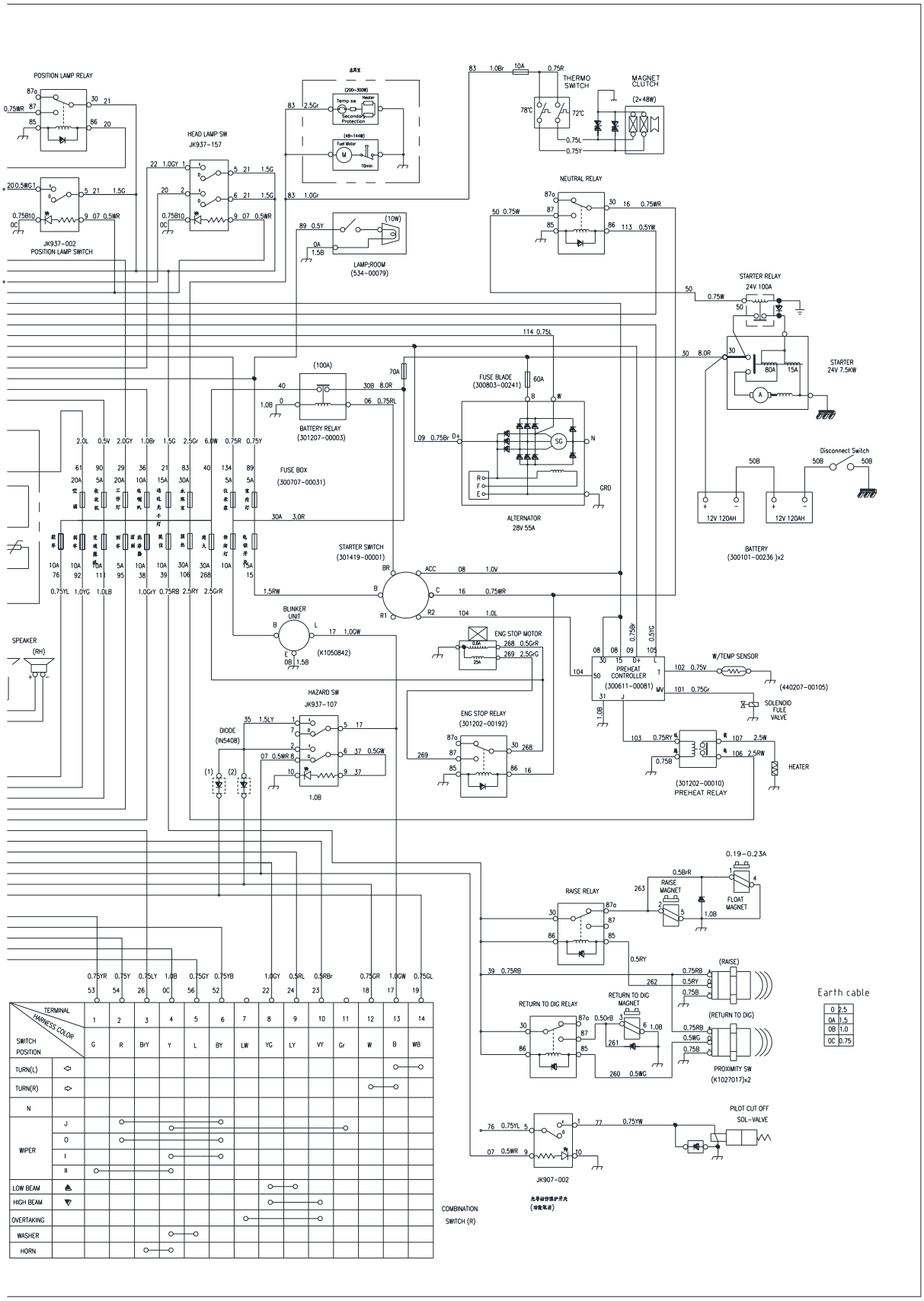

POSITION LAMP RELAY
HEAD LAMP SW
JK937-157
JK937-002
POSITION LAMP SWITCH
LAMP;ROOM
(534-00079)
THERMO SWITCH
MAGNET CLUTCH
(2×48W)
NEUTRAL RELAY
STARTER RELAY
24V 100A
STARTER
24V 7.5KW
Disconnect Switch
BATTERY
(300101-00236)×2
12V 120AH
FUSE BLADE
(300803-00241)
FUSE BOX
(300707-00031)
BATTERY RELAY
(301207-00003)
ALTERNATOR
28V 55A
STARTER SWITCH
(301419-00001)
BLINKER UNIT
(K1050842)
SPEAKER
(RH)
HAZARD SW
JK937-107
DIODE
(IN5408)
ENG STOP MOTOR
ENG STOP RELAY
(301202-00192)
PREHEAT CONTROLLER
(300611-00081)
W/TEMP SENSOR
(440207-00105)
SOLENOID FULE VALVE
HEATER
(301202-00010)
PREHEAT RELAY
RAISE RELAY
RAISE MAGNET
FLOAT MAGNET
RETURN TO DIG RELAY
RETURN TO DIG MAGNET
(RAISE)
(RETURN TO DIG)
PROXIMITY SW
(K1027017)×2
PILOT CUT OFF SOL-VALVE
JK907-002
COMBINATION SWITCH (R)
Earth cable
TERMINAL
HARNESS COLOR
SWITCH POSITION
TURN(L)
TURN(R)
N
WIPER
LOW BEAM
HIGH BEAM
OVERTAKING
WASHER
HORN

Figure 3

ATTACHMENTS